

**THE UNIVERSITY
OF ILLINOIS**

LIBRARY

**978.3
S.8
V.9**

File 162-4

Return this book on or before the
Latest Date stamped below.

~~LIBRARY SCIENCE LIBRARY~~

University of Illinois Library

MAR 19 1962

MAY 15 1962


JUN 24 1961

NOV 15 1995

MAY 23 1961

Oct. 23 1964

OCT 17 1967



THE LIBRARY
OF THE
UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS
Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015



PETER NORBECK
Governor of South Dakota

SOUTH DAKOTA

Historical Collections

Illustrated with Maps and Engravings

Compiled by
STATE DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

VOLUME IX
1918

HIPPLE PRINTING COMPANY
PIERRE : SOUTH DAKOTA

LETTER OF TRANSMITTAL

Hon. Peter Norbeck, Governor,
Pierre, South Dakota.

Sir: I have the honor to hand you herewith the Ninth Volume of the Collections of the Materials of History as required by Section 3285 of the Revised Political Code of 1903, for the biennium ending June 30, 1918.

DOANE ROBINSON,
Sec'y and Supt.

978.3
508
v.9

556282

TABLE OF CONTENTS

I.	Frontispiece, Portrait of Governor Peter Norbeck.	
II.	Letter of Transmittal	2
III.	Table of Contents	3
IV.	Financial Statement	5
V.	Officers and Committees	6
VI.	Roster of Members	7
VII.	Proceedings	9
VIII.	Annual Review of Progress of South Dakota 1916	10
IX.	Annual Review of Progress of South Dakota 1917	23
X.	Genealogy	36
XI.	The Slim Buttes Battlefield	47
XII.	Fort Tecumseh and Fort Pierre Journals	69
XIII.	Dakota's First Soldiers	241
XIV.	The LeSueur Tradition	336
XV.	Expeditions into Dakota, 1844-45	347
XVI.	Little Iowa	376
XVII.	Boundaries of South Dakota	380
XVIII.	Buffalo East of the Missouri in South Dakota	386
XIX.	Steamboat Wrecks in South Dakota	393
XX.	Naming the Child—Sioux Custom	403
XXI.	Ending the Outbreak	409
XXII.	Doud Diary	471
XXIII.	Buffalo Bill's Bluff	475
XXIV.	Sioux Games	486
XXV.	Lewis and Clark in South Dakota	514
XXVI.	General Index	597

556282

1250174
v.9
Set 6

FINANCIAL STATEMENT FOR THE BIENNIUM

RECEIPTS

Cash balance July 1, 1916.....	\$ 28.20
Appropriation 1917	7,140.00
Appropriation 1918	7,480.00
Sale of books	71.25
Membership fees	180.00
Certified copies	18.50
Refunds—	
Railway fares	51.00
Hotel bills	14.15
Total receipts	<u>\$14,983.60</u>

DISBURSEMENTS

Salaries five employes 2 years	\$11,920.00
Freight, drayage and express	129.92
Postage and stationery	461.34
Vital Statistics	534.37
Museum	344.70
Library	1,020.09
Census	50.00
Furniture and fixtures	98.35
Binding News papers	191.00
Railway fares	165.81
Hotel bills	59.65
Cash balance June 30 1918	8.37
Total disbursements	<u>\$14,983.60</u>

OFFICERS, 1918-1919:

Pattison F. McClure, Pierre.....	President
Edward P. Farr, Hot Springs.....	Vice President
G. H. Helgersen, Mount Vernon.....	Treasurer, Ex-officio
Doane Robinson, Pierre.....	Secretary

EXECUTIVE COMMITTEE:

Peter Norbeck, Governor.....	Ex-officio
Frank M. Rood, Secretary of State.....	Ex-officio
James E. Handlin, Auditor.....	Ex-officio
Charles E. DeLand.....	term expires 1919
Burton A. Cummins.....	term expires 1919
Moritz A. Lange.....	term expires 1919
Pattison F. McClure	term expires 1921
Edward P. Farr.....	term expires 1921
Isaac Lincoln	term expires 1921
Charles H. Burke.....	term expires 1921
Thomas L. Riggs	term expires 1923
Robert F. Kerr	term expires 1923
Charles B. Billingshurst.....	term expires 1923
Wilmer D. Nelson.....	term expires 1923

STANDING COMMITTEES:

Finance.....	Cummins, Rood and DeLand
Printing.....	DeLand, Kerr and Secretary
Library.....	Billingshurst, Riggs and Secretary
Gallery.....	Burke, DeLand and Secretary
Museum.....	Nelson, Lincoln and Secretary

MEMBERSHIP

The State Historical Society of South Dakota was duly organized on January 21, 1901, and was chartered as the Department of History on February 5, 1901 by act of the legislature. It is composed of the following life, annual, honorary and corresponding members.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| Ainsworth, Frank, Minnekahta | Halley, James, Rapid City |
| Albright, L. B., Pierre | Haney, Dick, Mitchell |
| ~Aldrich, Irwin Dayton, Big Stone | ~Hanson, Joseph Mills, Yankton |
| Anderson, John Q., Chamberlain | Hansen, Niels E., Brookings |
| Ash, Ben C., Faith | Hayes, John, Minneapolis |
| Ashley, Edward, Aberdeen | ~Hedger, Samuel C., Aberdeen |
| Ayres, George V., Deadwood | ~Herried, Charles N., Aberdeen |
| Batterton, J. J., Sisseton | Hipple, John E., Pierre |
| Bennett, Cassius C., Tulsa, Okla. | Holbrook, Royal H., Cedar Rapids, Ia. |
| Billinghurst, Charles B., Pierre | Howard, Chas. A., Aberdeen |
| Boettcher, F. W., Minneapolis | Hyde, Chas. L., Pierre |
| Boisseau, O. G., Holden, Mo. | Johnson, Nathan P., |
| ~Bullock, Seth, Deadwood | ~Johnson, Willis E., Aberdeen |
| ~Burke, Chas. H., Pierre | Kleinsasser, Peter Paul, Freeman |
| Brown, James M., Aberdeen | Kean, John T., Minneapolis |
| ~Brown, Sam J., Browns Valley, Minn. | Kennedy, Charles B., Madison |
| Carlisle, Martin G., Brookings | Kerr, Robert F., Brookings |
| Cheever, Walter M., Brookings | Kyes, Dr. W. S., Parker |
| Chilcott, Ellery V., Fairfax, Va. | Lange, Moritz A., Rapid City |
| Collins, E. E., Vermillion | Lasell, George G., Millarton, N. Dak. |
| Cook, Edmund, Wilmot | Lasell, M. C., Aberdeen |
| Crawford, Coe I., Huron | Lavin, John D., Anahiem, Cali. |
| Cummins, Burton A., Pierre | Lawrence, Philip, Huron |
| Daley, C. M., Columbia Falls, Mont. | ~Lincoln, Isaac, Aberdeen |
| DeLand, Chas. E., Pierre | Lindland, George, Vienna |
| Droppers, Garrett, Williamsport, Mass. | Lloyd, David E., Yankton |
| Dunlevy, William Peake, San Diego, Cali. | Logan, John D., |
| Eastman, David, Seattle, Wash. | Lord, Louis K., Parker |
| Ellerman, Herman, Yankton | Marble, A. B., Cheyenne, Wyo. |
| Elliott, James D., Sioux Falls | March, George Kieth, Spokane |
| ~Elrod, Samuel H., Clark | Marvick, Andrew, Sisseton |
| Farr, Edward P., Hot Springs | McClure, Pattison F., Pierre |
| Farr, Mary Noyes, Hot Springs | McDearmon, Ruby, Faulkton |
| Finch, Nelson L., Broadalbin, N. Y. | McKinney, Charles E., Sioux Falls |
| ~Fessenden, W. H., Wetonka | ~Mertens, John J., Gettysburg |
| ~Foncannon, Charles Boyd, Aberdeen | Morris, Frank A., Rathdrum, Idaho |
| French, Kathryn M., Elk Point | Mundt, Wm. J., Pierre |
| Gaffy, Loring E., Pierre | Murphy, Mathew W., Fargo, N. D. |
| Gamble, Robert J., Sioux Falls | Nash, George W., Bellingham, Wash. |
| Goodfellow, Ferd J. | Nelson, Wilmer D., Pierre |
| Haafke, Wm. F., Rapid City | |

Noteboom, E. H., Selby	Snow, George W., Springfield
Notson, Gary T., Mitchell	Spafford, Dr. F. A., Flandreau
Ochsenreiter, Louis G., Webster	Sterling, Thomas, Vermillion
O'Flaherty, Charles E., Mitchell	Stephens, James H., Springfield
O'Gorman, Thomas, Sioux Falls	Stevenson, C. Stanley, Sioux Falls
Parmley, Joseph W., Ipswich	Sutherland, John, Pierre
Perisho, Ellwood C., Brookings	Thrall, Herbert W., Huron
Person, Robert E.,	Tilton, Horace G., Vermillion
Puckett, Benj. F., Hosmer	TreFethren, E. B., Ipswich
Riggs, Theodore F., Pierre	Trumbo, Frank,
Riggs, Thomas L., Oahe	VanOsdel, Abraham L., Mission
Robinson, Doane, Pierre	Hill
Roddle, William H., Brookings	Waggoner, Alvin, Philip
Shober, Howard C., Huron	Warren, Cyrus C., Rapid City
Schamber, John, Rapid City	Williams, David, Duluth, Minn.
Sherrill, Myrtle Richmond, Lead	Wilson, E. H., Salem.
Smith, Richard L., Miller	

CORRESPONDING MEMBERS

Clay, M. J., Evanston, Ill.	Quaife, Milo M., Madison, Wis.
Libbey, O. G., Grand Forks, N. D.	Upham, Warren, St. Paul, Minn.
Sampson, F. A., Columbia, Mo.	Weber, Jesse P., Springfield,
Shambaugh, Benj. F., Iowa City,	Ill.
Iowa	

DECEASED MEMBERS

Ainsworth, Cephas W., February 17, 1908	Nash, Newman Curtis, February 8, 1905.
Armstrong, Moses K., January 11, 1906	Pyle, John L., February 21, 1902
Beebe, Marcus P., April 1, 1914	Reeves, James D., September 29, 1914
Berg, Otto C., August 1, 1905	Robinson, DeLorme W., September 26, 1910
Brauch, Emiel, November 24, 1912	Schellenger, George J., October 9, 1913
Chouteau, Pierre, 1911	Shanafelt, Thomas M., August 17, 1909
Crane, Frank, August 11, 1916	Snow, Alberta Mead, April 28, 1912
Dewell, Samuel Grant, November 8, 1916	Swenson, Ole S., October 29, 1916
Goddard, Thomas M., February 3, 1917	Westdahl, John, April 7, 1913
Gold, Sidney Russell, March 6, 1905	Warner, Ernest J., 1917
Green, Joseph M., July 6, 1908	Williamson, John P., October 4, 1917.

PROCEEDINGS

The Eighth Biennial meeting of the State Historical Society was held in the Senate Chamber on Wednesday evening, January 17, 1917. President P. F. McClure presided and made an interesting extemporaneous address. Hon. A. L. Van Osdel made the chief address of the occasion upon the native trails culminating in Pierre. Senator Dowdell recalled some of his own experiences at Pierre and in western South Dakota in 1876. Thomas L. Riggs, Robert F. Kerr, C. B. Billingshurst and Wilmer D. Nelson were duly elected members of the executive committee for the term of six years, ending in 1923. The executive committee chose Col. Pattison F. McClure president for the ensuing biennium and Col. Edward P. Farr, vice president.

Willis E. Johnson, Aberdeen, Matthew William Murphy of Fargo, North Dakota, Rev. Charles O'Flaherty, of Mitchell, Dr. W. S. Kyes of Parker, Cyrus C. Warner, of Rapid City, Charles Stanley Stevenson, of Pierre, Elwood Chapell Perisho, of Brookings, Martin G. Carlisle, of Brookings, Andrew Marvick of Sisseton, William F. Haafke, of Rapid City and Ruby McDearmon of Faulkton were duly elected to life membership.

SIXTEENTH ANNUAL REVIEW OF THE PROGRESS OF SOUTH DAKOTA, 1916

ANNUAL REVIEW OF THE PROGRESS OF SOUTH DAKOTA, 1916

The calling of the Fourth Regiment, South Dakota National Guard into the active service of the United States is perhaps the most notable event of the year. The call to arms came on the 19th of June and the regiment was mobilized at Camp Hagman, Redfield, on June 23rd where it was recruited to 1,000 men and kept in training until August 1, when it was transported to San Benito, Texas, on the Mexican border where it still remains.

SPECIAL SESSION: The first special session of the state legislature was convened on the 8th day of February by Governor Byrne, for the purpose of amending the primary election act to make it possible to avoid one primary election and likewise to choose delegates in time for attendance at the national Republican convention which was called essentially upon the date fixed by statute for our presidential primary. The legislature adjourned on the 11th having performed the duties for which convened.

PRESIDENTIAL PRIMARY: The presidential primary resulted in a harmonious delegation to the national republican convention, representing both factions of the party. A brisk contest between factions led by Senator Johnson and Congressman Gandy upon one side and Chairman Rock of the state central committee upon the other, engaged the attention of democrats and resulted in the choice of the Johnson-Gandy delegation. Both factions were favorable to the renomination of President Wilson.

STATE PRIMARY: The state primary campaign in both principal parties centered about the choice for governor. In the republican party the primary candidates were Peter Norbeck of Redfield, Richard O. Richards of Huron, and George W. Egan of Sioux Falls; the democrats divided between Orville V. Rhinehart of Rapid City and Edmund D. Morcum, of Sioux Falls. Norbeck and Rhinehart won in their respective parties. At the autumn election the state gave its vote to the republican national and state ticket throughout except that Congressman Harry Gandy democrat, was re-elected from

the Third Congressional District. There were tickets of socialists and prohibitionists.

PROHIBITION WINS: Nine amendments to the constitution were before the people for ratification. Prohibition, Good Roads and Coal Mining, Irrigation and Rural Credits amendments prevailed and equal suffrage, a revenue amendment, official salaries, leasing school land for agricultural purposes and calling constitutional convention failed of ratification. The chief interest centered about prohibition and equal suffrage.

INITIATED AND REFERRED LAWS: Three initiated and two referred laws were considered. The Richards primary law of 1912, having been repealed by the legislature of 1915, Mr. Richards again initiated it with some revision. It was defeated by a small margin. Two laws relating to bank deposit guaranty were initiated prior to the last session, but the legislature having enacted a satisfactory law both of the initiated measures were defeated. An act of the last legislature pertaining to local option voting was referred and was not approved. The passage of the prohibition amendment rendered it of no moment. The act providing for a civil verdict by a five-sixth common law jury was also defeated at the polls.

THE OFFICIAL VOTE: The official vote of the state upon the several officers and measures is as follows; the first name being republican and the second democratic, for each office:

President—		
Hughes	.....	64,217
Wilson	.....	59,191
Congress—		
1. Dillon	.....	28,674
Anderson	.....	19,846
2. Johnson	.....	28,366
Batterton	.....	16,342
3. Bartine	.....	12,203
Gandy	.....	16,581
Supreme Court—		
McCoy	.....	53,104
Marquis	.....	40,246
Governor—		
Norbeck	.....	72,589
Rhinehart	.....	50,545
Lieut. Governor—		
McMaster	.....	69,155
Anderson	.....	50,545
Secretary of State—		
Rood	.....	71,797
Bird	.....	47,703
Auditor—		
Handlin	.....	69,025
Gunderson	.....	50,041

Treasurer—	
Helgerson	71,501
Fergen	47,114
Land Commissioner—	
Knight	71,668
Michaels	47,832
Superintendent of Public Instruction—	
Lugg	69,459
Chamberlain	48,696
Attorney General—	
Caldwell	72,245
Conry	47,423
Railroad Commissioner—	
Wells	70,085
Boe	48,491

INITIATED AND REFERRED LAWS:

Richards Primary—	
Yes	52,410
No	52,733
Democratic Banking Law—	
Yes	47,925
No	50,226
Bankers Banking Law—	
Yes	47,715
No	52,205
License Act—	
Yes	49,174
No	54,039
Five Sixths Jury—	
Yes	49,601
No	51,529

CONSTITUTIONAL AMENDMENTS:

Prohibition—	
Yes	65,334
No	53,380
Equal Suffrage—	
Yes	53,432
No	58,350
Good Roads and Coal—	
Yes	75,922
No	33,521
Revenue and Finance—	
Yes	43,793
No	55,568
Rural Credits—	
Yes	51,569
No	41,957
Irrigation—	
Yes	58,775
No	44,238
Lease of School Lands—	
Yes	41,379
No	61,748
Salaries State Officers—	
Yes	39,169
No	61,223

New Constitutional Convention—

Yes	35,377
No	56,432

For the socialist ticket 3760 votes were cast and for the Third Party Prohibition ticket 1,774.

ASSESSED VALUATION. The assessed valuation for 1916 is as follows:

Aurora	\$ 18,965,045
Beadle	40,640,073
Bennett	759,616
Bon Homme	32,270,185
Brookings	34,640,687
Brown	63,009,195
Brule	17,005,323
Buffalo	2,981,621
Butte	9,632,707
Campbell	8,669,638
Charles Mix	25,148,515
Clark	26,464,865
Clay	23,410,168
Codington	30,810,624
Corson	7,564,102
Custer	5,792,252
Custer, Unorg.	401,258
Davison	25,208,215
Day	28,705,633
Deuel	20,885,231
Dewey	3,959,653
Douglas	13,549,022
Edmunds	17,627,889
Fall River	10,784,045
Fall River, Unorg.	381,171
Faulk	16,302,259
Grant	26,358,026
Gregory	20,138,879
Haakon	9,432,664
Hamlin	18,032,986
Hand	24,175,641
Hanson	18,742,260
Harding	6,157,606
Hughes	11,920,982
Hutchinson	38,794,648
Hyde	10,182,586
Jackson	5,691,002
Jackson, Unorg.	491,914
Jerauld	12,040,473
Kingsbury	31,676,859
Lake	27,707,312
Lawrence	35,340,429
Lincoln	33,490,202
Lyman	18,926,233
Lyman, Unorg.	1,554,796
McCook	26,266,146
McPherson	13,053,090
Marshall	18,794,657
Meade	13,705,194
Mellette	2,622,294

Miner	22,377,585
Minnehaha	70,074,828
Moody	25,417,468
Pennington	19,606,090
Perkins	12,781,229
Potter	9,982,684
Roberts	28,009,884
Sanborn	18,075,487
Spink	45,649,173
Stanley	7,230,081
Stanley, Unorg.	210,319
Sully	10,030,523
Tripp	13,623,210
Turner	35,793,276
Union	27,065,819
Walworth	11,988,265
Yankton	31,054,452
Ziebach	2,219,080
Private Car Companies	444,725
Total 1916	\$1,303,500,049
Total 1915	1,271,162,952
Increase	\$ 32,337,097

TAX LEVIES. The following table shows the total amount of taxes levied during the last fiscal year, for state, county, school, township and municipal purposes. Municipal taxes are levied against only a portion of the assessed property so that the average for that item cannot be applied to the state at large. No property pays both township and municipal tax. The true average tax rate for the entire state is 10.26 mills:

	Amount of tax	Average rate in mills
State Tax	\$1,268,269.07	1.00
County tax	4,025,572.76	3.17
School tax	4,651,258.07	3.71
Township tax	1,245,762.63	1.41
City and town tax	1,800,445.45	8.98
Total Levy	\$12,987,307.98	

STATE FINANCES. The total actual receipts into the state treasury for the year ending June 30, 1916, was \$2,973,863.21 and the total cost of state government and its institutions for the same year was \$2,373,883.81.

The sources of revenue were as follows:

Cash on hand July 1, 1915	\$ 241,299.53
Taxes	1,413,067.46
Fees and inheritance tax	341,422.33

U. S. Government aid	18,786.06
Capitol Building Fund	11,899.44
Local and Endowment funds (Institutions).....	282,182.09
Misc. Contingent funds	665,206.32

Total Receipts\$2,973,863.21

The total cost of maintaining the state government and all of its educational, charitable and penal institutions was as follows:

Warrants upon general fund.....	\$1,672,048.87
Warrants upon contingent funds.....	433,979.91
Warrants upon local and endowment funds.....	238,570.47
Capitol warrants paid and interest on revenue warrants	29,284.56

Total\$2,373,883.81

Excess of receipts over costs\$ 599,979.40

STATE DEBT. The state debt consisting of outstanding warrants changes from day to day. On July 1, the cash in the general fund of the treasury exceeded all outstanding warrants by more than ten thousand dollars and the state was then nominally out of debt.

For many years the state treasurer has upon the 12th of November made a statement of the condition of the debt upon that day. The condition upon November 12, 1916, was as follows:

Revenue warrant outstanding	\$300,000.00
Registered warrants	265,503.15

Total\$565,503.15

Less cash in general fund 135,741.09

Net debt\$429,762.06

The total debt on the 12th day of November in each year since 1909 has been as follows:

1909	\$1,081,000.00
1910	1,073,000.00
1911	873,864.00
1912	575,771.00
1913	483,482.40
1914	472,766.15
1915	493,900.87
1916	429,762.06

THE SCHOOL FUND. The following shows the condition of the state school fund at the beginning of the present fiscal year:

Fund invested July 1, 1915	\$11,920,150.32
Increase during year	1,260,243.98

Total permanent school fund July, 1916.....	\$13,180,447.30
Interest and income for last fiscal year.....	1,095,933.40
Children of school age census 1915.....	173,075.00
Sum apportioned to each pupil	6.33
Acres school land unsold July 1, 1916.....	2,958,480.17

STUDENT BODY. During the last school year the registration of students for all schools within the state was approximately as follows:

Common schools		122,612
Secondary Schools—		
High Schools	11,524	
Academy and preparatory	5,268	16,792
Regular Normal courses		1,670
Courses leading to College degree or post graduate—		
State supported institutions	1,011	
Sectarian institutions	365	1,376
Total		142,450
Total children of school age, census 1916....		177,067

We find no method of ascertaining the number of students from South Dakota pursuing courses in institutions outside this state.

VITAL STATISTICS. For calendar year ending December 31, 1915:

Total births	13,650
Total deaths	4,607
Total marriages	5,315
Total divorces	528
Citizenship—	
Declarations of intention	1,035
Final certificates	655

INSURANCE. Statistics of Fire Insurance for South Dakota for the year ending June 30, 1916:

Total fire risks at close of year.....	\$195,036,817.07
Total fire losses paid during year.....	1,445,704.64
Total premiums paid fire insurance.....	3,206,680.80
Life Insurance—	
Total life risks at close of year.....	\$ 31,802,960.07
Total losses paid in year.....	1,348,181.76
Total premiums paid for life insurance.....	4,002,797.56

RAILWAY MILEAGE. This table shows the railway mileage in South Dakota:

Miles of road	4,070
Miles second track	101
Miles of yard tracks, etc.....	619
Total	4,755
There has been no additions to the main lines during the year.	

BANK DEPOSITS. The total deposits of money in the banks of South Dakota upon September 12, 1916, as reported to the national and state banking departments is as follows:

	Bank Deposits	Ind. Deposits	Total
National banks ..	\$10,444,000.00	\$44,816,000.00	\$55,260,000.00
State banks	5,603,607.54	66,589,128.98	72,192,736.52
Total 1916 ...	\$16,047,607.54	\$111,405,128.98	\$127,452,736.52
Total 1915 ...	\$8,089,579.51	\$93,149,569.50	\$101,239,149.01
Increase	\$7,958,028.03	\$18,255,559.48	\$26,213,587.51

The progressive growth of bank deposits during the past score of years is perhaps the best indication of the growth of wealth in South Dakota. While population has grown about 49 per cent, bank deposits have grown more than 800 per cent.

The deposits for about September 1 in each year since 1898 has been as follows:

1898	\$ 10,104,185.43
1899	12,649,800.54
1900	14,732,983.71
1901	19,194,491.30
1902	29,422,224.96
1903	28,607,319.62
1904	30,611,115.32
1905	34,759,699.68
1906	45,046,204.73
1907	57,569,881.02
1908	68,832,999.41
1909	78,830,100.99
1910	87,783,967.78
1911	79,305,984.14
1912	84,505,674.01
1913	93,341,935.18
1914	97,070,631.98
1915	99,239,149.01
1916	127,452,736.52

THE WEATHER. A winter of deep snows opened normally but rather drier than usual, but with abundant rains in May and June. The first 20 days of July were intensely hot causing small grain crops to blight and rust geneally, injuring them very severely. The rainfall for the five growing months at representative points was as follows:

	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Total	1915
Aberdeen	2.15	6.48	5.24	5.76	5.15	24.78	23.60
Brookings	2.95	3.70	4.27	0.40	2.03	13.35	13.99
Cut Meat	0.93	2.62	2.62	0.30	3.15	9.62	
Deadwood	2.70	5.15	3.40	3.30	3.45	18.00	24.75
Eureka	0.88	3.59	4.16	3.70	4.62	16.95	14.92
Highmore	0.89	4.15	4.54	2.00	4.10	15.68	17.18
Huron	1.16	3.83	3.51	1.56	5.70	15.76	14.04
Milbank	2.78	4.07	5.04	1.42	5.18	18.43	19.68
Mitchell	2.18	5.40	3.39	0.96	2.84	14.77	23.60
Murdo	1.55	2.51	3.17	0.98	3.08	11.29	19.58
Pierre	1.06	5.81	2.33	2.50	4.65	16.35	15.97
Rapid City	1.24	4.75	2.30	1.42	2.36	12.07	20.14
Sioux Falls	3.50	4.53	3.44	2.75	1.83	16.05	17.91
Watertown	1.53	3.62	4.40	3.06	7.40	20.01	13.27
Yankton	1.74	3.35	4.68	3.83	1.70	15.30	20.82

LONG RECORD OF PRECIPITATION. An almost continuous record of precipitation has been kept in Central South Dakota since 1868. From the beginning of this period until 1891 it was officially kept at Fort Sully, 28 miles north of Pierre, and since 1891 by the weather bureau at Pierre. This is one of the longest records in the northwest; the seasonal rainfall given is for the five growing months, April, May, June, July and August:

Year	Seasonal	Annual
1869	13.43	16.15
1870	10.35	17.48
1871	11.13	23.74
1872	16.99	19.42
1873	11.58	14.62
1874	12.74	16.24
1875	10.35	13.99
1876	12.82	19.54
1877	14.45	22.91
1878	17.36	20.19
1879	20.80	23.50
1880	13.13	15.66
1881	9.88	14.85
1882	9.31	12.20
1883	16.00	19.91
1884	6.79	11.97
1885	17.31	22.72
1886	12.57	16.00
1887	12.22	14.26
1888	12.86	14.77
1889	11.82	15.29
1890	9.42	13.28
1891	8.94	13.18
1892	12.36	18.81
1893	8.49	14.56
1894	4.18	7.82
1895	12.94	16.85

1896	11.00	17.35
1897	12.98	16.85
1898	9.05	10.65
1899	13.90	20.00
1900	10.89	16.81
1901	11.33	17.04
1902	13.88	20.04
1903	14.48	19.53
1904	6.02	9.47
1905	16.02	Data lacking
1906	14.74	22.06
1907	11.56	14.02
1908	12.21	19.10
1909	8.58	12.99
1910	6.40	Data lacking
1911	7.60	12.67
1912	10.54	Data lacking
1913	8.73	11.45
1914	14.76	20.29
1915	15.98	23.57
Average	11.91	16.70

PRODUCTION. The following table of the productions of 1916 is, for cereals and potatoes, the figures supplied by the Federal Department of Agriculture, and the balance from the approximations made from the best available data by the Department of History:

Wheat, 25,011,000 bushels	\$ 36,515,000
Corn, 90,800,000 bushels	67,192,000
Oats, 55,236,000 bushels	23,751,000
Barley, 18,728,000 bushels	16,855,000
Flaxseed, 1,600,000 bushels	4,160,000
Potatoes, 4,986,000 bushels	5,986,000
Vegetables and fruits	2,450,000
Hay, 3,400,000 tons	18,700,000
Dairy products	10,000,000
Poultry and products	10,000,000
Livestock	63,113,000
Minerals	8,000,000

Total products 1916	\$267,222,000
Total 1915	244,163,000

Increase	\$ 23,059,000
----------	---------------

The annual productions since 1908 have been approximated by this department as follows:

1908	\$185,434,000
1909	202,362,000
1910	181,188,000
1911	139,281,000
1912	192,237,000
1913	190,991,000
1914	212,423,000
1915	244,163,000
1916	267,222,000

MARKETINGS. The total amount of products of the soil hauled by the railroads operating in this state from points in South Dakota to markets outside of the state for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1916, was as follows:

Wheat, 49,514,000 bushels.....	\$ 61,892,000
Corn, 20,916,000 bushels	14,641,000
Oats, 19,944,000 bushels	7,977,000
Barley, 16,862,000 bushels	11,803,000
Flaxseed, 816,000 bushels	1,387,000
Rye, 1,873,000 bushels	1,687,000
Cattle, 292,603,000 pounds	26,333,000
Hogs, 268,503,000 pounds	26,045,000
Horses, 37,000,000 pounds	4,440,000
Sheep, 24,163,000 pounds	2,295,000
All other products	25,000,000
Total 1916	\$183,494,000

The annual marketings for a number of years is given below:

1909	\$123,706,000.00
1910	118,402,000.00
1911	124,167,000.00
1912	80,385,000.00
1913	129,934,000.00
1914	141,286,000.00
1915	118,016,000.00
1916	183,494,000.00

NECROLOGY. Among the persons of prominence, resident or formerly resident of South Dakota, dying in 1916, are the following:

Orlin A. Abeel, long editor Alcester Union, at Kirkville, Missouri, September 20, aged 67.

Thomas Ball, postmaster Mitchell, August 9, aged 65.

Mrs. S. A. Boyles, wife of Judge Boyles, Yankton, aged 71.

H. D. Booge, early trader at Yankton, at Topeka, Kansas, June 30, aged 90.

Charles A. Blake, long editor of Wessington Times, at Huron, May 14, aged 60.

Ole Blegstad, pioneer, county treasurer of Deuel, Brandt, March 8, aged 68.

Will C. Brown, long publisher of the Hurley Herald, at Whittier, California, November 27, aged 27.

David B. Cable, pioneer, Hudson, January 2, aged 80.

Henry T. Cooper, banker and state senator, Whitewood, Feb. 2, aged 65.

Frank Crane, former state superintendent of schools and clerk supreme court, at Washington, August 11, aged 60.

James Crowe, pioneer, Yankton, October 22, aged 84.

Mrs. Elizabeth Dent, wife of Rev. Thomas J. Dent, Aberdeen, July 8, aged 61.

Samuel Grant Dewell, formerly postmaster at Pierre, at Center-ville, November 8, aged 52.

Peter B. Dirks, banker, Chamberlain, September 26, aged 47.

James W. Fowler, lawyer and legislator, Deadwood, August 10, aged 71.

H. J. Frank, legislator, formerly of Canton, at Long Beach, California, in July, aged 75.

John S. Frazee, former president Springfield Normal, at Medford, Oregon, August 26.

Mrs. F. W. Gardner, of Ree Heights, in Minneapolis, July 20.

Carl Gerner, former editor Iroquois Chief, at Waterloo, Indiana, September 26, aged 62.

Stewart Goodykoontz, lawyer, Mitchell, April 26, aged 80.

Mahlon Gore, pioneer editor, of Vermillion, first homesteader in United States, at Orlando, Florida, June 27, 79 years old.

Robert W. Haire, Catholic priest, father of initiative and referendum in America, at Aberdeen, March 4, aged 70.

James Hart, former legislator, at Dell Rapids, August 15, aged 73.

William Jayne, first governor of Dakota Territory, at Springfield, Illinois, March 20, aged 89.

Chas. A. Jewett, wholesale merchant Aberdeen and Sioux Falls, in California.

Edward Larson, pioneer merchant, at Sioux Falls, July 20, aged 79.

John L. Loeb, farmer and seedsman, Aberdeen, April 14, aged 65.

Simeon S. Meigs, commercial traveler, at Huron, August 31, aged 50.

Rebecca, (Mrs. William H.) McVey, pioneer of Yankton, at Portland, Oregon, December 4, aged 73.

Harlan C. Packard of Redfield, January 6, aged 38.

G. T. Page, physician, formerly of Sioux Falls, at Washington, September 20.

Mrs. Bessie V. Pettigrew, wife of former Senator Pettigrew, at Sioux Falls, April 8, aged 61.

William M. Powers, former mayor of Yankton and commissioner of Charities and Corrections, at Sioux City, April 12, aged 72.

Dr. L. A. Pickering, at Langford, November 3, aged 46.

Henry S. Rowe, banker and wholesaler, at Sioux Falls, July 15, aged 52.

Frank Bradley Smith, pioneer of Hot Springs, at Boulder, Colorado, August 13, aged 84.

William D. Stites, pioneer merchant and official, Sioux Falls, July 17, aged 72.

Haldo Sather, pioneer farmer, Volin, June 12, aged 84.

George H. Shannard, merchant, Bridgewater, June 6, aged 49.

Charles W. Stafford, former editor and state oil inspector, in Oregon, April 18.

William S. Stockwell, merchant, Yankton, July 26, aged 55.

Elias M. Thomas, Commissioner of Soldiers' Home, Huron, Dec. 4, aged 69.

Horace W. Tilden, D. D., Baptist minister at Pierre and Brookings, died at Dillon, Montana, October 21, aged 76.

Walter Van DeMark, state senator, lawyer, at Alexandria, Jan. 12, aged 34.

Henry Van Woert, Civil War veteran and legislator, at Canistota, March 27, aged 79.

William Walpole, pioneer of Yankton, at Philip, July 18, aged 70.

J. P. Ward, former Regent of Education, at Morgan Hill, California, Sept. 16, aged 82.

Robert Warren, Rhodes Scholar, son of Dr. H. K. Warren of Yankton, at Bordeaux, France, November 24, aged 25.

Mrs. George A. Silsby, pioneer of Mitchell, December 4, aged 69.

Eph Whitcher, notable frontiersman, at Chico, Cali., aged 70.

Edward P. Wilcox, Civil War veteran, former merchant and banker of Yankton, at Jamestown, New York, July 10, 1916.

Charles Wright, veteran of the Dakota Cavalry of 1862, at Yankton, April 25, aged 69.

Uriah Wood, veteran of the Dakota Cavalry, at Elk Point, Oct. 29, aged 69.

STOCK YARDS. Very extensive stock yards have been completed at Sioux Falls, which it is believed will make that point a strong competitor for the live stock marketed in the northwest.

BELLE FOURCHE PROJECT. After several years spent in "finding themselves" the settlers upon the Government Irrigation Project appear to have come into genuine prosperity. A government bulletin has been published revealing the present conditions which are highly gratifying. The cultivation of sugar beets has been undertaken with much success and the American Sugar Company have broken ground for an extensive refinery at Belle Fourche.

CONCLUSION. Health, morals and general conditions have been excellent throughout the year.

DOANE ROBINSON, Sec'y. & Supt.

December 1, 1916.

SEVENTEENTH ANNUAL REVIEW OF THE PROGRESS OF SOUTH DAKOTA, 1917.

ANNUAL REVIEW OF THE PROGRESS OF SOUTH DAKOTA, 1917

Military affairs have taken precedence over every other interest during the year. The Fourth Regiment, South Dakota Volunteer Infantry, which had been stationed at San Benito, Texas, upon the Mexican border since early in August, 1916, was returned north upon the 18th of February and was mustered out at Camp Crook, Omaha, on March 3rd, 1917, but the organization was preserved as the National Guard.

THE GERMAN WAR. War against Germany was declared by Congress upon April 6th and soon afterward arrangements were completed for the selective draft. Meantime, under the initiative of former Adjutant General, Charles H. Englesby of Watertown, a regiment of cavalry was recruited, known as the Fifth South Dakota in the first instance, but later changed to the First South Dakota Cavalry.

THE SELECTIVE DRAFT. The selective draft for the National Army occurred upon June 5th, when 58,014 young men between the ages of 21 and 31 registered in South Dakota. The total quota of the State was 6,854, upon which we received credits for men volunteering in other branches of the National Military Service of 4,137, leaving a call for 2,717 men who were finally drafted into the Service and sent to Camp Funston, Fort Riley, Kansas, for training.

THE MOBILIZATION. On July 14th, the First Cavalry was assembled at the home stations of the troops, where they remained until Sept. 15, when they left for the training camp at Deming, New Mexico. There the regiment was broken up and the men assigned to various organizations in the National Service. The Fourth South Dakota Infantry was assembled at the home stations of the companies upon July 15th and remained there until September 28th, when the organization left the State for the training camp at Charlotte, North Carolina. At Camp Green, Charlotte, N. C., the regiment was divided between the 146th and 147th U. S. Field Artillery, Col. Wales and his Staff being assigned to the 147th. The regiment remained at Camp Greene, only until October 23rd, when the 147th was transferred to Camp Mills, Mineola, Long Island.

THE REORGANIZATION. The companies of the Fourth South Dakota were assigned as follows: Company A, of Pierre, became

Battery C; Company B, of Sioux Falls, became Battery D; Company D, of Parker, Battery E; Company H, of Lead became Battery F, of the 147th Field Artillery; Companies B, of Brookings, and M, of Yankton, were broken up and the men assigned to the other companies to make up the requisite number of men required under the new rule which provides 193 men to a company. Company E, of Howard, Co. F, of Mitchell and G, of Redfield, were incorporated in the 116th Supply Train of which Major Shade of Redfield was given command. Company I, Rapid City, K, Lemmon, L, Aberdeen, were placed in the 148th Machine Gun Battalion and the Machine Gun Company of Ipswich was assigned to the 146th Machine Gun Battalion.

The First South Dakota Cavalry did not fare so well in the reorganization, being chiefly assigned to the 59th Depot Brigade, and Col. Englesby and Staff was detached and will be given a new command, not of South Dakotans.

INAUGURATION. The Biennial Inauguration of State Officers occurred on January 2, at which time the following were inducted into office:

Governor—Peter Norbeck, Redfield, First Term.

Lieut. Governor—William H. McMaster, Yankton, First Term.

Supreme Judge—Ellison G. Smith, Yankton, Third Term.

Supreme Judge—James H. McCoy, Aberdeen, Third Term.

Secretary of State—Frank M. Rood, Philip, Second Term.

Auditor—James E. Handlin, Sturgis, Second Term.

Superintendent Schools—Charles H. Lugg, Parkston, Second Term.

Attorney General—Clarence C. Caldwell, Sioux Falls, Second Term.

Railroad Commissioner—Frank E. Wells, Winner, First Term.

All of the foregoing officers are Republicans.

THE LEGISLATURE. The Legislature met January Second; Hon. A. C. Roberts of Day County was chosen speaker. Much very important legislation was effected. Some of the more important acts are:

General Codification of Statutes.

Vocational Education under Smith-Hughes Act.

Educational Survey of the State.

Establishing Office of Market Commissioner.

Creating Highway Commission, and providing State System of Highways.

Workmen's Compensation.

Bone Dry Prohibition Act.

Irrigation Act.

County Free Libraries.

Rural Credits Act.

Torrens Land Act.

Eleven Amendments to the Constitution were submitted as follows:

Providing for calling in Circuit Judges to sit in cases where Supreme Judges are disqualified; equal suffrage; affecting sales of School lands; classification of property for taxation; permitting State to engage in internal improvements; limiting the debt for internal improvements; permitting State to develop water powers; permitting State to manufacture cement; fixing compensation of State officers; for State hail insurance; for State operation of grain elevators, warehouses and mills.

Three hundred seventy-five acts were passed.

APPROPRIATIONS. The following table shows the appropriations of the last session compared with those of the previous session. The appropriations of each session are for two years:

	Session 1917	Session 1915
General bill	\$3,364,300.00	\$2,732,270.00
Special bills	2,133,948.34	598,902.83
Emergency Building fund.....	100,000.00	50,000.00
Standing appropriations	97,100.00	97,100.00
Total	\$5,695,348.34	\$3,478,272.83

The Emergency Building Fund is in lieu of insurance and is only used to replace buildings lost by fire or storm.

General administrative expenses	\$2,209,078.00
Educational affairs	1,953,317.00
Charities and corrections	1,530,000.00

Of the sum for general administrative purposes there is provided the sum of \$200,000 as a revolving fund for the starting of the Rural Credits Commission and \$250,000 for the State Highway Commission to meet the requirements of the Act of Congress for Government aid. Stripped of these items the appropriation for the administration of State affairs proper is \$879,539 per year.

NEW STATE DEPARTMENTS. The Legislature provided five new State Departments as follows: Rural Credits; Market Commissioner; Industrial Commissioner; State Sheriff; Highway Commission. Each of which is now in operation.

RURAL CREDITS. Pursuant to the Constitutional Amendment adopted in 1916, the Rural Credit Board was created. Its constitutionality was affirmed by the Supreme Court in an advisory opinion to the Governor (162 N. W. 536) and further confirmed by the unanimous decision of the Court in *Schaaf v. Rural Credit Board*, reported in 164 N. W. The Governor appointed Claude M. Henry, J. E. Ziebach and Alfred W. Zoske, members of the Board, and Adolph W.

Ewert, Treasurer. It was September 1st before the legality of the Board was affirmed.

MARKET COMMISSIONER. This Department is fully authorized to supervise the markets of the State and protect the public from abuse and at the same time to concern itself with finding the most desirable markets for State products. Don Livingston of Watertown, is first commissioner.

INDUSTRIAL COMMISSIONER. This Department attends to the administration of the Workmen's Compensation Act. Stephen A. Travis is the first commissioner.

HIGHWAY COMMISSION. This Commission consists of the Governor, the State Engineer and an appointed Engineer of Highways. F. D. Peck, of Deadwood, was appointed. The Commission has general supervision of highways in the State and of the administration of State and Federal Highway Funds.

STATE SHERIFF. For the first time the Governor of South Dakota is in fact an executive officer with power to enforce law. The Legislature also placed at his command a State Sheriff and the entire Constabulary of the State. The fundamental idea in creating the office was to secure the enforcement of the Bone-Dry Prohibition Act, and to protect the public against mob violence. J. C. Shanks, of Parker, was appointed State Sheriff.

PROHIBITION. The Act of the Legislature pursuant to the Constitutional Amendment of 1916, is drastic and has effectually suppressed the traffic in intoxicants within the State.

ASSESSED VALUATION. The assessed valuation for 1917 is as follows:

Aurora	.....\$	21,583,612
Beadle	.....	44,815,198
Bennett	.....	1,676,533
Bon Homme	.....	34,958,464
Brookings	.....	38,255,945
Brown	.....	67,749,477
Brule	.....	19,001,007
Buffalo	.....	3,279,783
Butte	.....	9,307,878
Campbell	.....	10,120,717
Charles Mix	.....	28,356,979
Clark	.....	29,057,833
Clay	.....	26,907,547
Codington	.....	32,949,428
Corson	.....	8,443,414
Custer	.....	6,225,677
Custer, Unorg.	.....	399,838
Davison	.....	27,970,581

Day	32,403,025
Deuel	22,505,835
Dewey	4,800,453
Douglas	15,045,843
Edmunds	19,288,182
Fall River	11,883,646
Fall River, Unorg.	535,470
Faulk	17,831,220
Grant	27,556,951
Gregory	22,002,991
Haakon	11,327,102
Hamlin	19,620,837
Hand	26,996,962
Hanson	20,245,953
Harding	7,325,530
Hughes	13,089,816
Hutchinson	43,284,428
Hyde	11,665,061
Jackson	6,671,018
Jackson, Unorg.	1,466,764
Jerauld	13,619,312
Jones	8,117,476
Kingsbury	35,191,074
Lake	31,028,190
Lawrence	35,075,855
Lincoln	38,769,615
Lyman	13,092,119
Lyman, Unorg.	1,854,897
McCook	28,574,131
McPherson	14,648,096
Marshall	20,569,405
Meade	15,024,708
Mellette	3,280,404
Miner	24,549,717
Minnehaha	78,333,795
Moody	28,342,494
Pennington	21,322,923
Perkins	13,592,025
Potter	10,973,466
Roberts	30,872,432
Sanborn	20,564,386
Spink	49,002,570
Stanley	8,322,922
Stanley, Unorg.	452,745
Sully	11,678,380
Tripp	16,573,182
Turner	39,668,064
Union	30,488,632
Walworth	13,157,611
Yankton	34,860,162
Ziebach	3,022,114

	\$1,441,229,898
Private Car Companies	\$ 245,357

Total, 1917	\$1,441,475,255
Total, 1916	\$1,303,500,049

Increase	\$ 137,975,206
----------	----------------

TAX LEVIES. The following table shows the amount of tax levied in the fiscal year ending June 30, 1917, for State, County, School, Township and Municipal purposes. Except State taxes which are uniform throughout the State, the rate varies in each taxing district. Township and Municipal taxes are not anywhere levied upon the same property:

State tax	\$ 1,303,815.71
County tax	4,496,760.10
School tax	5,098,287.95
Township tax	1,489,446.74
City and town tax	1,958,861.27
Total levy	<u>\$14,347,171.77</u>

STATE DEBT. The State debt consists of Revenue and Registered Warrants. There is no bonded indebtedness. The debt on November 20th, 1917, was as follows:

Revenue warrants outstanding	\$300,000.00
Registered general fund warrants	226,132.19
Total gross debt	<u>\$526,132.19</u>
Less cash in fund and in transit	321,775.23

Net debt \$204,356.96

The State debt for this period for several years past has been as follows:

1909	\$1,081,000.00
1910	1,073,000.00
1911	873,864.00
1912	575,771.00
1913	483,482.40
1914	472,766.15
1915	493,900.87
1916	429,762.06
1917	<u>204,356.96</u>

The above, of course, does not include the Rural Credits Bonds for which the State's credit is pledged, but which are actually debentures issued against ample farm mortgage securities owned by the state.

RURAL CREDIT BUSINESS. The Report covers the period only for October and November. During these first two months of operations the Board conducted the following operations:

Bonds negotiated at 4¾ per cent interest	\$1,000,000
Loans approved	450,000
Applications pending	<u>300,000</u>

THE SCHOOL FUND. The following shows the condition of the State School Fund at the beginning of the present fiscal year:

Fund invested July 1, 1916	\$13,180,447.30
Increase during year	<u>753,855.71</u>

Total permanent school fund, July 1, 1917 \$13,934,303.01

Interest and income for last fiscal year	336,695.01
Children of school age, census of 1916.....	176,370.00
Sum apportioned to each pupil	1.30
Acres of school land unsold, July 1st, 1917	2,938,715.65

Balance in interest and income fund, July 1, 1917..\$ 848,362.73

RAILWAY MILEAGE. The total railway mileage in South Dakota upon November 1, 1917, is shown herewith:

Miles of railroad	4,146
Miles of second track	112
Miles of yard tracks, etc.....	598

Total4,856

INSURANCE. Statistics of Fire and Life Insurance in South Dakota for year ending June 30, 1917:

Total fire risks at close of year	\$227,595,282.18
Total fire losses paid during year	1,994,211.01
Total premiums paid for fire insurance	3,578,755.21
Total number of fires	541
Average loss per fire	2,166.08
Total life risks at close of year	\$ 35,221,527.55
Total losses paid in year	1,240,889.31
Total premium paid for life insurance	4,317,267.75

VITAL STATISTICS. For Calendar year ending December 31, 1916:

Total births	13,761
Total deaths	4,737
Total marriages	5,581
Total divorces	540

CITIZENSHIP—

Declaration of intention	1,256
Final certificates	528

BANK DEPOSITS. The unusual prosperity of the year is reflected in the bank deposits as shown by the following comparative statement of the deposits shown by the calls of September 12, 1916 and September 11, 1917:

1917	Bank Deposits	Ind. Deposits	Total
State Banks	\$7,770,795.65	\$103,142,001.72	\$110,912,797.37
National Banks ..	13,408,000.00	55,502,000.00	68,910,000.00
Total, 1917 ...	\$21,178,795.65	\$158,644,001.72	\$179,822,797.37
Total, 1916 ...	16,047,607.52	111,405,128.92	127,452,736.52
Increase	\$5,131,188.13	\$47,238,872.80	\$52,370,060.85

The total combined deposits of the banks of the State for the September call in each year since 1898 have been.

1898	.....\$	10,104,185.43
1899	.....	12,649,800.54
1900	.....	14,732,983.71
1901	.....	19,194,491.30
1902	.....	29,422,224.96
1903	.....	28,607,319.62
1904	.....	30,611,115.32
1905	.....	34,759,699.68
1906	.....	45,046,204.73
1907	.....	57,569,881.02
1908	.....	68,832,999.41
1909	.....	78,830,100.99
1910	.....	87,783,967.78
1911	.....	79,305,984.14
1912	.....	84,505,674.01
1913	.....	93,341,935.18
1914	.....	97,070,631.98
1915	.....	99,239,149.01
1916	.....	127,452,736.52
1917	.....	179,822,797.37

SECRETARY OF STATE. Some statistics for last fiscal year:

Domestic corporations chartered	.....940
Capital stock of new corporations	.....\$538,112,850.00
Corporate fees received	.....20,157.70
New banks chartered	.....19
Capital stock of new banks	.....385,000.00

AUTOMOBILE LICENSES. The following table shows the growth of the automobile in South Dakota since the establishing of the department:

	Licenses	No. Motor	No. Dealers
1913	14,457	1,212	300
1914	20,929	1,349	490
1915	28,725	1,862	608
1916	44,257	1,817	856
1917 (to Dec. 1.)	67,048	1,548	1,015

LIVE STOCK SANITARY BOARD. Stallions licenses, 2,118.

STATE GAME WARDEN. The following items indicate something of the business of the Game Warden's office for the last fiscal year:

Receipts from game and fishing licenses	.....\$44,836.86
Stock fish planted; adults	.....337,566
Fry	.....1,147,000

STATE PRINTING COMMISSIONER. Total cost of all printing for the State including stationery for all departments and institutions for fiscal year, \$75,047.23.

CAPITOL COMMISSIONER. Items for last fiscal year.

Cost maintenance of capitol including janitor service light and heat	\$32,000.00
Total requisitions for furniture, typewriters, adding machines, etc., for year	20,197.34

FREE LIBRARY COMMISSION. Activities for fiscal year:

Traveling libraries in service.....	218
Reference borrowers supplied	539
No. of books in service	13,640
Circulation	27,560

WAR TIME ACTIVITIES. The war has imposed many burdens upon the public which have been responded to in a gratifying way. Some of them that can be expressed in figures are the following:

Contributed for Belgian relief	\$ 28,760.58
Contributed to Red Cross to Dec. 1.....	300,344.64
Contributed to War Library fund to Dec. 1.....	8,643.00
Contributed to Army Y. M. C. A. to Dec. 1.....	221,000.00

Liberty Bonds

First loan, June, 1917	\$ 3,925,400.00
Second loan, Oct., 1917	12,917,250.00
Number purchasers, second loan	86,121

THE WEATHER. A winter of deep snows and unusual severity was followed by a cold, late spring with plenty of rain until the beginning of June, when a drought quite general in extent set in and continued until the end of July, during which there was much intensely hot weather. Vegetation made a good recovery from the effects of the drought and crops, as indicated by the table of productions to follow, were excellent.

The rainfall for the five growing months, at representative points was as follows:

	April	May	June	July	Aug.	Total	Same 1916
Aberdeen	3.44	0.82	3.45	1.98	0.77	10.46	24.78
Brookings	3.19	3.08	3.49	2.03	1.20	12.99	13.35
Deadwood	3.65	3.95	2.05	0.55	1.65	11.82	18.00
Eureka	2.18	1.30	1.61	1.04	0.93	7.06	16.95
Higmore	2.79	2.04	2.04	1.91	0.68	9.46	15.68
Huron	3.01	1.99	2.40	3.65	0.79	11.84	15.76
Milbank	1.81	1.16	3.06	2.09	1.70	9.82	18.43
Mitchell	3.21	4.70	2.00	1.64	1.35	12.90	14.77
Pierre	2.39	2.72	0.84	2.68	1.93	10.56	16.35
Rapid City	3.95	4.65	2.13	0.50	1.36	12.59	12.07
Sioux Falls	2.94	2.64	3.11	1.41	1.16	11.26	16.05
Watertown	3.32	0.46	2.94	2.21	1.21	10.14	20.01
Yankton	2.89	3.90	5.05	1.96	2.98	16.78	15.30

PRODUCTIONS. The following table showing the productions of the soil for the year, 1917, is for cereals and potatoes, the figures

supplied by the Department of Agriculture, at Washington. For the other items the approximations made by the Department of History:

Corn, 92,500,000 bushels	\$141,525,000
Wheat, 48,230,000 bushels	91,000,000
Oats, 65,416,000 bushels	38,416,000
Barley, 24,057,000 bushels	25,259,000
Rye, 4,992,000 bushels	7,987,000
Flax Seed, 1,360,000 bushels	3,835,000
Potatoes, 6,930,000 bushels	7,120,000
Hay, 3,692,000 tons	30,274,000
Vegetables and fruits	7,500,000
Dairy products	11,000,000
Poultry and products	12,500,000
Live stock (sold)	77,934,000
Minerals	8,000,000
Pelts, wool and furs	3,000,000

Total productions, 1917\$465,350,000

Total productions, 1916 267,222,000

Increase\$198,128,000

The annual productions since 1908 have been approximated by this Department as follows:

1908	\$185,434,000
1909	202,362,000
1910	181,188,000
1911	139,281,000
1912	192,237,000
1913	190,991,000
1914	212,423,000
1915	244,163,000
1916	267,222,000
1917	465,350,000

The item for furs will be noted as not before appearing. Game Warden H. S. Hedrick, has during the past year made an exhaustive examination of the fur business in South Dakota and has arrived at the conclusion that the animal output of wild fur exceeds two million dollars.

MARKETING. The marketings of South Dakota products in markets outside of the State as reported by the several railroads for the fiscal year ending June 30, 1917, were as follows:

Corn, 10,387,000 bushels	\$ 10,189,000
Wheat, 24,783,000 bushels	42,626,000
Oats, 22,534,000 bushels	11,267,000
Barley, 13,038,000 bushels	12,004,000
Rye, 1,852,000 bushels	2,592,000
Flax Seed, 983,000 bushels	2,523,000
Cattle, 370,859,000 pounds	27,814,000
Hogs, 345,512,000 pounds	44,816,000
Horses, 35,050,000 pounds	3,550,000
Sheep, 23,362,000 pounds	1,754,000
All other products	27,500,000

Total\$185,635,000

The annual marketings for a number of years past has been:

1909	.....	\$123,706,000.00
1910	.....	118,402,000.00
1911	.....	124,167,000.00
1912	.....	80,385,000.00
1913	.....	129,934,000.00
1914	.....	141,286,000.00
1915	.....	118,016,000.00
1916	.....	183,494,000.00
1917	.....	185,635,000.00

OIL EXCITEMENT. There has been and continues much interest in oil prospects in the State. The principal field appears to be in the southern and eastern portions of Fall River County. Two wells near the eastern part of that county are down more than 2,500 feet and two others near Rumford, in the southern part of Fall River, are down more than 600 feet. Drilling is about to be commenced near Edgemont and Interior. A well has been bored to a considerable depth near South Shore, Codington County.

NECROLOGY. There has been an unusual fatality among the pioneers of Dakota during the year. Among the deaths of persons of state-wide acquaintance are the following:

Alseth, John L., pioneer of Volga and legislator, October 30, aged 61.

Barron, Charles H., pioneer and legislator of Ipswich, November 12, aged 57.

Belding, John P., pioneer of Deadwood and long in Federal Service, February 17, aged 81.

Benedict, Willis E., pioneer of Canton, Hot Springs and Belle Fourche, August 17, aged 59.

Bigelow, George M., at Sioux Falls, January 19, aged 61.

Bower, J. C., pioneer of Vermillion, at Rapid City, September 14, aged 78.

Burt, Albert W., former Attorney General and Regent of Education, at Kalispell, Montana, January 6, 1917, aged 84.

Campbell, Louis C., former Insurance Commissioner, at Sioux Falls, August 18, aged 59.

Cressy, Erastus T., pioneer newspaper man of Huron, at Sioux Falls, February 2, aged 79.

Crippen, David R., pioneer of Fort Pierre, June 1, aged 89.

Cummings, Rev. E. B., pioneer and legislator of Kingsbury county, at Indianapolis, January 15, aged 77.

Davis Park, notable lawyer of Sioux Falls, died August 19, aged 80.

Ede, Ernest D., lawyer and legislator, Huron, November 26, aged 41.

Evans, Mrs. Fred, Hot Springs, pioneer and wife of notable freighter of Black Hills trail, March 12, aged 72.

Fletcher, James H., First Lieutenant Governor, at Portland, Oregon, April 13, aged 82.

Glass, Wilbur S., notable lawyer and legislator of Watertown, July 16, aged 65.

Grigsby, Col. Melvin, pioneer of Sioux Falls, lawyer and Colonel of Grigsby' Cowboys in Spanish War, aged 72.

Goddard, Thomas M., pioneer and legislator of Sully County, former commandant Soldiers' Home, February 3, aged 71.

Gunderson, Harvey, pioneer of Clay County, former Commissioner of the Soldiers' Home at Vermillion, July 15, aged 76.

Hanson, Major Joseph R., first settler of Yankton and holder of many public positions, at Yankton, February 6, aged 80.

Hanger, Sigrud O., banker of Yankton, January 20, aged 48.

Hogoboom, Milo C., pioneer of Minnehaha and Lincoln Counties, at San Diego, California, March 24, aged 75.

Jewett, Madam Sarah, mother of the notable Jewett Brothers at Sioux Falls, August 23, aged 92.

Keller, Dr. A. H., physician, Sioux Falls, November 11, aged 64.

Kennard, George N., pioneer of Brookings County and member of present legislature, died September 3, aged 64.

Kennedy, Charles B., long a banker of Madison, died at Los Angeles, August 21, aged 67.

Kennedy, Cornelius B., pioneer and lawyer of Canton, died September 28, aged 68.

Kingsbury, Rev. Lucien, pioneer, Congregational minister at Sioux Falls, June 8, aged 89.

Kingsbury, Mrs. Lucien, at Sioux Falls, June 18, aged 84.

Kingsbury, Walter R., pioneer of Sioux Falls, brother of Rev. Lucien, at Sioux Falls, May 23, aged 85.

Miner, William, pioneer wholesale merchant of Yankton, at St. Cloud, Minnesota, January 4, aged 77.

Montgomery, Henry, pioneer and legislator of Hanson County, March 10.

Nyberg, Peter J., pioneer merchant of Yankton, April 17, aged 66.

Olney, Dr. Steven, pioneer physician of Sioux Falls, January 5, aged 71.

Palmer, Ed. D., pioneer surveyor of Yankton, September 13, aged 81.

Perry, George H., capitalist and employer of labor, Sioux Falls, June 10, aged 67.

Ryan, F. W., legislator of Jefferson, July 21, aged 55.

Ryan, Timothy, pioneer publisher of Bridgewater, February 6, aged 67.

Sampson, Dr. I. J., physician of Mellette, March 31, 1917, aged 45.

Scott, Samuel, pioneer surveyor of Black Hills, at Hot Springs, March 23.

Silby, George A., veteran of the Civil War, former Adjutant General and National Bank Examiner, at Mitchell, October 13, aged 70.

Southmayd, O. H., engineer, Whitewood, September 17.

Star, Sol, pioneer of Black Hills, at Deadwood, October 12, aged 77.

Steel, Prof. H. J., at Rapid City, March 12, aged 42.

Stillwell, Victor K., pioneer banker and legislator, of Alexandria, July 29, aged 60.

Stutenroth, Dr. Charles W., pioneer of Watertown, at Los Angeles, March 2, aged 75.

Sweeney, Thos., pioneer merchant, Rapid City, October 25, aged 61.

Tenge, Edward, pioneer merchant of Yankton, June 17, aged 69.

Van Benthuyssen, Prof. S. D., of Dakota Wesleyan University, July 15, aged 47.

Watson, Jesse B., veteran of the First Dakota Cavalry, 1862-65, died October 30, at Sioux Falls, aged 77.

Wheeler, S. A., former Labor Commissioner, at Santa Monica, California, April 15, aged 76.

Whitehead, Bower T., Prof. in State College, at Brookings, April 1.

Williamson, Rev. John P., Doctor of Divinity, pioneer missionary to the Sioux Indians, on October 4, aged 82.

Woods, Richard J., (Dick Woods) of Sioux Falls, best known man in State, February 7, aged 54.

Ziebach, Mrs. F. M., pioneer of Yankton, died at Winner, August 8.

DOANE ROBINSON, Sec'y. & Supt.

December 1, 1917.

GENEALOGY

This Department has made an effort to satisfy the rapidly growing demand of the people of the state for the means to study family history. As the pioneers, long separated from their family connection have become settled and prosperous they have generally set about to determine from what stock they sprung. Pride of ancestry is unquestionably a strong incentive to good citizenship and it is altogether fitting that the state should supply a reasonable amount of material whence family lines may be traced.

Most American families of this latitude came through New England and the New England states generally have done excellent work in maintaining vital records, while the states of the west have been woefully negligent in this particular. The most serious obstacle in tracing western genealogies is found, not in eastern origins but during the last century and a quarter west of the Alleghanies. Families who came into Ohio, Indiana, Michigan or Wisconsin a century or more ago almost invariably have difficulty in establishing connection with the lines of their origin in New England.

The Library of the department has most of the state historical publications of all of the states and in addition the following which are more specifically useful in genealogical research:

COLONIAL GENEALOGICAL MATERIAL IN THE DEPARTMENT OF HISTORY

General Works.

"The Original Lists of persons of quality, emigrants, religious exiles, political rebels, serving men sold for a term of years, apprentices, children stolen, maidens impressed and others who went from Great Britain to the American plantations, 1600-1670," by John Camden Hotten, 580 pp. New York 1880.

"American Ancestry, giving the name and descent in the male line of Americans whose ancestors settled in the United States previous to the Declaration of Independence, A. D. 1776," by Thomas P. Hughes, 12 volumes, Albany, 1887 to 1899.

This set contains several hundred lineages of American families.

"Colonial Families of the United States of America, in which is given the history, genealogy and armorial bearings of Colonial

families who settled in the American Colonies from the time of the settlement at Jamestown, 13th May 1607 to the Battle of Lexington, 19th April 1775." By George Norbury McKentzie, Baltimore 1907-1917.

"Fairbairn's Crests of the leading families of Great Britain and Ireland and their Kindred in other lands," by James Fairbairn, 613 pp. Ills. New York, 1911.

"A genealogical history of Irish families, with their crests and armorial bearings," by James Rooney, 535 pp. Ills. New York 1915.

"Les Combattants Francais de la Guerre Americaine, 1778-1783" (French Soldiers who served in the War of the Revolution, chiefly LaFayette's army) 453 pp. Washington, 1905.

"Historical Register of officers of the Continental Army during the War of the Revolution," by Francis B. Heitman, 685 pp. Washington, 1914.

Index of the Rolls of Honor (Lineage Books,) of the National Society of the Daughters of the American Revolution, vols. 1 to 40."

"Official Bulletin of the National Society of the Sons of the American Revolution," complete from foundation October 15, 1906 to March 1918.

"The Colonial," Vols. 1 and 2, all published.

Indexes.

"American and English Genealogies in the Library of Congress," 805 pp. Washington, 1910.

"Index to American Genealogies and to genealogical material contained in all works." 352 pp. Albany, 1900.

"Supplement, to Index of Genealogies, 1900 to 1908," 107 pp. Albany 1908.

"List of titles of genealogical articles in American periodicals and kindred works giving the name, residence and earliest date of each settler of each family," Albany, 1899.

"The American Genealogist, being a catalogue of Family Histories," 406 pp. Albany, 1900.

"List of Genealogical works in the Illinois State Library," 163 pp. 1914.

New England Generally.

"Result of some researches among the British Archives for information relative to the Founders of New England," by Samuel G. Drake, 130 pp. Boston 1860.

Chiefly the lists of ship passengers to America, 1600-1671.

"A Genealogical Dictionary of the First Settlers of New England, showing three generations of those who came before May 1692, on the basis of Farmers Register," by James Savage, 4 vols. 516, 599, 664 and 714 pp. respectively; Boston 1860.

Savage is the most comprehensive authority extant. Very few New England settlers escaped him.

"New England Families; genealogical and memorial; A record of the achievements of her people," by William Richard Cutter, 4 vols. 2149 pp. Ills. New York, 1913.

"Register of the Society of Mayflower Descendants, in the State of California. Vol. 1. 249 pp. San Francisco, 1917.

"Handbook of New England, 1917." 895 pp. Boston.

"New England Historical Genealogical Register," Volumes 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 9, 21, 27, 28, 30, 31, 32, 33, 34, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 42, 46, 47, 49, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72." Beginning January 1847 to date. 28 volumes missing.

Maine

Vital Records. We have the births, deaths and marriages of the following towns down to 1892:

Farmingham
Gardner
Pittston

Randolph
West Gardiner

"York Deeds," Vols. 12 to 18 inclusive being from 1726 to 1737.

New Hampshire

"Heads of Families at the First Census of the United States taken in the year 1790, New Hampshire" 146 pp. Washington 1907.

"Rolls of the (New Hampshire) Soldiers in the Revolutionary War" Vols. 14, 15, 16, 17 New Hampshire State Papers, Concord 1885.

"Gravestone Records from ancient cemeteries in the town of Claremont, New Hampshire, with historical and biographical notes," by Charles B. Spofford, 86 pp. Claremont, 1896.

Vermont.

"Heads of Families at the First Census of the United States taken in the year 1790, Vermont," 95 pp. Washington 1908.

"Rolls of the Soldiers of the Revolutionary Army, (from Vermont,) 1775-1783," by John E. Goodrich, 925 pp. Rutland, 1904.

"Records of the Council of Safety and Governor and Council of the State of Vermont, to which are prefixed the records of the general conventions," Volumes 1 to 8 inclusive 1775-1830, Montpelier, 1873.

"The History of Rutland County, Civil, Ecclesiastical, Biographical and Military. 1245 pp. White River 1882.

"Vermont; History of Waterbury, 1793-1915" by Theodore Graham Lewis, 286 pp. Waterbury 1915.

"Brattleboro, Windham county, Early history with Biographical sketches" by Henry Burnham, 191 pp. Brattleboro, 1880.

Massachusetts.

"Heads of families at the first Census of the United States taken in the year 1790; Massachusetts." 363 pp. Washington, 1908.

"Massachusetts Soldiers and Sailors in the Revolutionary War," 17 large Volumes containing complete military record of each soldier and sailor alphabetically arranged. Boston, 1896.

"The Berkshire Jubilee, celebrated at Pittsfield, August 22 and 23, 1844." 244 pp. Much personal information. Pittsfield, 1845.

"A documentary history of Chelsea, including Boston precincts of Winnisimmet, Rumney, Marsh and Pullen Point, 1624-1824," by Mellen Chamberlain, 2 Vols. Boston, 1908.

"Historic Homes and Places and Genealogical and Personal memoirs relating to families of Middlesex county," by William Richard Cutter. 4 vols. 2026 pp. Ills. New York 1908.

"The History of Massachusetts," by John Stetson Barry, 3 Vols. Boston 1855.

"The Acts and Resolves, public and private, of the Province of the Massachusetts Bay," 1664 to 1764. 17 large Volumes. Boston 1869. These acts and resolves contain vast funds of personal and family history, pertaining to grants, estates, and intimate personal affairs carried to the general court for adjustment.

"Vital Records to 1850." The plan contemplates a volume or more for each of the 317 towns in the state showing all deaths, births, and marriages, for which a record can be found, from the foundation of the town down to 1850. These records are secured

from town records, church records, family records and gravestone inscriptions. Additional towns are added at about the rate of 6 per year. We have all published to date as follows:

Abington, 2 vols.	Heath
Alford	Hinsdale
Andover, 2 vols.	Holliston
Amesbury	Hopkinton
Arlington	Holden
Ashburnham	Hubbardstown
Athol	Hull
Barre	Ipswich, 2 vols.
Becket	Kingston
Bedford	Lee
Beverly, 2 vols.	Leicester
Boxford	Leominster
Boxborough	Lexington
Billerica	Lincoln
Bolton	Lynn, 2 vols.
Bellingham	Lynfield
Bradford	Malden
Bridgewater, 2 vols.	Manchester
Brockton	Marblehead, 3 vols.
Burlington	Marlborough
Brookfield	Medfield
Cambridge, 2 vols.	Medford
Carver	Medway
Charlmont	Methuen
Charlton	Middleton
Chelmsford	Milford
Chelsea	Middleford
Chester	Milbury
Chilmark	Montgomery
Cohasset	Natick
Danvers, 2 vols.	New Ashford
Dalton	Newbury, 2 vols.
Douglas	Newburyport, 2 vols.
Dover	New Braintree
Dracut	Newton
Dudley	Northbridge
Dunstable	Norton
Duxbury	Oakham
East Bridgewater	Oxford
Edgartown	Palmer
Essex	Pelham
Foxborough	Pembroke
Framingham	Peru
Gloucester, Vol. 1.	Petersham
Groton	Philipstown
Gardner	Princeton
Gill	Reading
Granville	Richmond
Great Barrington	Rochester, 2 vols.
Greenfield	Royalston
Hamilton	Rutland
Hardwick	Salem, 2 vols.
Hanson	Salisbury
Harvard	Sharon
Haverhill, 2 vols.	Sherburn

Saugus	Walpole
Scituate, 2 vols.	Waltham
Southborough	Warren
Spencer	Washington
Stoneham	Wayland
Stow	Wenham
Sturbridge	Westborough
Sudbury	West Boylston
Sutton	West Bridgewater
Templeton	Westford
Tewksbury	Westminster
Tisbury	West Stockbridge
Topsfield	Weymouth, 2 vols.
Tyngsborough	Winchenden
Tyringham	Windsor
Upton	Williamstown
Uxbridge	Worthington
Wakefield	Wrenthen, 2 vols.

Rhode Island

"Heads of Families at First Census of the United States taken in the year 1790; Rhode Island." 17 pp. Washington, 1908.

"Civil and Military Lists of Rhode Island 1649-1800," by Joseph Jencks Smith, 2 vols. Providence, 1900.

All Colonial and Revolutionary officers given but not the general rolls of soldiers.

"The Genealogical Dictionary of Rhode Island comprising three generations of settlers who came before 1690, with many families carried to the Fourth generation," by John Osborne Austin, 437 pp. Albany 1877.

"Ancestry of Thirty Three Rhode Islanders, also 27 charts of Roger Williams' descendents to the fifth generation, also Latham charts and list of portraits," by John Osborne Austin, 137 folio pages, Albany 1889.

"Vital Records of Rhode Island 1636-1850. Births, Marriages and Deaths, A family Register of the People," by James N. Arnold, Providence, 1891.

Connecticut.

"Heads of families at the First Census of the United States taken in the Year 1790. Connecticut." 227 pp. Washington 1908.

"Rolls of Connecticut Men in the French and Indian War, 1755-1762," 2 vols. (Vols. 9 and 10 Connecticut Historical Society Collections) Hartford, 1903.

"Record of Connecticut Men in I. War of the Revolution, II. War of 1812, III. Mexican War," 959 pp. Hartford, 1889.

"Rolls and Lists of Connecticut Men in the Revolution" (Vol. 8, Conn. Historical Society Collections) Hartford 1901.

This volume is a supplement of "Record of Connecticut men in the Revolution, being new rolls brought to light since 1889."

"Lists and returns of Connecticut men in the Revolution," (Vol. 12, Connecticut Historical Society Collections), Hartford, 1909.

This volume supplements the two preceding and contains a few additional names and identifies many by the town whence he came.

"Papers of the Connecticut State Society of the Cincinnati 1783-1804" Photostat copies. Hartford, 1916.

"Records of the Connecticut State Society of the Cincinnati 1783-1804" Photostat copies. Hartford, 1916.

"Genealogy and Family History of the State of Connecticut," by William Richard Cutter, 4 vols., 2208 pp. New York 1911.

"The Public Records of the Colony of Connecticut 1706 to 1776," by Charles J. Hoadly, 11 vols. Hartford, 1870.

"The Public Records of the State of Connecticut 1776-1780," by Charles J. Hoadly, 2 vols. Hartford, 1894.

"Original Distribution of the Land in Hartford among the Settlers, 1639" (Vol. 14, Connecticut Historical Society Collections) 716 pp. Hartford 1912.

This volume contains, p. 575 et seq., early vital records of Hartford.

"New Haven Town records 1649-1662," by Franklin Bowditch Dexter, 548 pp. New Haven 1917.

"Early Connecticut Marriages as found in Ancient Church Records prior to 1800," by Frederick W. Bailey, 7 books. New Haven, 1896.

These seven books purport to give all marriages in the Congregational Churches of Connecticut prior to 1800, the record of which is in existence. Also gives a list of churches whose records have been lost.

"Vital Records of Connecticut Series." Connecticut has begun the publication of Vital Records by towns. We have all published to date as follows.

Bolton, to 1854.

New Haven, Vol. 1 to 1850.

Norwich, 2 vols. to 1848.

Vernon to 1852 (bound in with Bolton.)

Woodstock to 1852.

New York

"Heads of families at the First Census of the United States taken in the year 1790; New York." 308 pp. Washington 1908.

"New York in the Revolution as Colony and State," by James A. Roberts, 534 pp. Albany, 1898.

"New York in the Revolution as Colony and State, Supplement," by Frederick G. Mather, 330 pp. Albany 1901.

This supplement adds some names to the New York Revolutionary rolls not contained in Mr. Roberts' work, but it is chiefly a documentary history of the war.

"Muster and pay rolls of the War of the Revolution" (Collections New York Historical Society) 2 vols. 1914 and 1915.

Contain lists of some troops from Canada, Connecticut, Continental Infantry, Maryland, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, North Carolina, Pennsylvania, Rhode Island, South Carolina and Virginia.

"Colonial Muster Rolls, Complete the publication of all rolls deposited in the capitol up to the outbreak of the Revolution." Published as appendix "M" of the report of the State Historian for 1897.

"Muster Rolls and Military Commissions issued by the Colony of New York between the years 1664 and 1760." Published as appendix "H" of the report of the State Historian for 1896.

"Muster Rolls of the New York Provincial Troops, 1755-1764." (New York Historical Society Collections, 1891.)

"Minutes of the Commissioners for Detecting and Defeating Conspiracies in the State of New York, 1778-1781," by Victor Hugo Pal-sits; 3 vols. Albany 1909.

These volumes contain much personal information of residents of New York, both patriots and Tories.

"Public Papers of George Clinton, Governor of New York, 1777-1795 and 1801-1804," by Hugh Hastings, 3 vols. Albany, 1899.

Contain much personal information.

"New York Genealogical and Biographical Record," a quarterly magazine, from foundation in 1870 to date complete, 49 volumes and index.

"Colonial Records of the State of New York covering a decade of one of the most interesting historical epochs in the Province" being for 1664 to 1674. Published as appendix "G" to the report of the State Historian, 1896.

"New York's Colonial Archives; Transcription of the Records between the years 1673 and 1675." Printed as appendix "L" of the report of the State Historian for 1897.

"Collections of the New York Historical Society." Annual volumes from 1868 to 1916 inclusive containing muster rolls, abstracts of wills, lists of freemen, tax rolls, and a vast amount of family history. 51 volumes in all.

"Names of persons for whom marriage licenses were issued by the secretary of the Province of New York prior to 1784," by Gideon J. Tucker, 480 pp. Albany, 1860.

"Supplementary list of marriage licenses," by Melvil Dewey, 48 pp. Adds many names to Tucker's list.

"Inscriptions on Tombstones in Cemetery of Dutch Reformed Church, Gravesend, Long Island and private cemeteries adjacent." 16 pp. New York, 1882.

"Inscriptions on Tombstones in Old Bushwich Graveyard, and Brooklyn Baptismal record from 1660." 16 pp. New York, 1888.

"Abstracts of Wills on file in the Surrogate's office of the City of New York, 1665-1800." 17 volumes of the Collections of the New York Historical Society, 1892 to 1908 inclusive. Comprises chiefly, New York City and Long Island Wills.

"Ulster County wills. Probate records of Ulster County," by Gustave Anjou, 2 vols. Ills. New York 1906.

"Original Book of New York (city) deeds." 1672-1675. (Collections New York Historical Society, 1913.)

"The Burghers of New Amsterdam and the Freemen of New York, 1675-1666. (Collections New York Historical Society, 1885.)

"Court records, General Court of Assizes, New York City, 1680-1682," (Collections New York Historical Society, 1912.)

"Tax Lists, City of New York, 1695-1699." 2 vols. (Collections New York Historical Society, 1910 and 1911.)

"Indentures of Apprentices 1718 to 1727. Records of Chamberlain's Office, City of New York." (Collections of New York Historical Society, 1909.)

"Records of the Town of Brookhaven, Suffolk County, Long Island, up to 1800." 219 pp. Patchogue, 1880.

An incomplete transcript from 1655 to 1800 .

New Jersey.

(The lists of the heads of families for New Jersey taken in the first Census of the United States in 1790 were destroyed by the British in 1814.)

"Official Register of the Officers and Men of New Jersey in the Revolutionary War," by William S. Stryker, 878 pp. Trenton 1872.

"Index of Wills, inventories etc. in the office of the Secretary of State, prior to 1901." 3 vols. arranged by counties.

"Calendar of New Jersey wills, 1670-1730." (Vol. 23 First Series New Jersey Archives. This is volume I of Wills, all yet published.)

"Marriage Records 1665-1800." (Vol. 22 First Series New Jersey Archives). Gives presumably complete list of marriages consummated pursuant to licenses. But only a small portion of marriages

were licensed. Also contains Hackensack Reformed Church records; Bergen Church Records; Schraalenburgh Church records; Lyons Farms Church records; Second River Church Records, New Brunswick, (Middlesex county) records; Piscataway Seventh Day Baptist Church records, Scotch Plains Baptist Church records; Chesterfield, (Burlington County) Friends Record.

"Calendar of Records in the office of the Secretary of State 1664-1703." (Volume 21, First Series, New Jersey Archives and is Volume I of Records Calendar, all yet published.)

Contains brief mention of transfers of real estate for period mentioned.

"New Jersey, Church Members, Marriages and Baptisms at Hanover, Morris County, 1746-1796," 32 pp.

"History of the First Presbyterian Church, Morristown, from 1742 to 1882," 328 pp. Contains extensive vital records.

"New Jersey Archives." The first series not yet completed covers the Colonial down to 1775. Second Series begins with 1775 and covers revolutionary period. We have 29 volumes First Series and 3 vols. Second Series.

"Documents relating to the Colonial History of the State of New Jersey," by William Whitehead. (Ten Volumes and Index, beginning New Jersey Archives.)

"Journal of the Governor and Council 1682-1775," 6 volumes numbered consecutively, being Volumes 13-18 of the New Jersey Archives.

"Extracts from American Newspapers relating to New Jersey 1704-1775." First series New Jersey Archives, volumes 11, 12, 19, 20, 24, 25, 26, 27, 28, 29.

"Extracts from American Newspapers," Second series for Revolutionary period, Volumes 1-2-5 Second Series New Jersey Archives.

Pennsylvania.

"Heads of families at the First Census of the United States taken in the year 1790. Pennsylvania." 426 pp. Washington 1908.

"Pennsylvania Archives." (This series of the official Publications of the State of Pennsylvania consists of seven series of 12, 17, 31, 12, 8, 15 and 5 volumes respectively. We have the Fifth, Sixth and Seventh series only as follows:

"Fifth Series 8 Volumes contains list of Pennsylvania Men in the Revolution."

"Sixth Series, 15 Volumes, contains military lists, marriage licenses, etc., subsequent to the Revolution. Volume 15 of this series in two volumes is the index to the Fifth Series.

"Seventh Series." Complete index to the Sixth Series.

"Colonial and Revolutionary Families of Pennsylvania; Genealogical and Personal Memoirs," by John A. Jordan, 3 Vols. 1706 pp. New York, 1911.

"Marriage Licenses 1784-1786," p. 285 et seq. of Vol. 6, Sixth series Pennsylvania Archives. Only a few marriages are calendared.

"Baptismal and Marriage records of Rev. John Waldschmidt, 1752-1786 Lancaster County. p. 147 et seq. 6 Volume Sixth Series Pennsylvania Archives.

"Baptismal and Marriage records of Egypt Reformed Church in Lehigh county, 1734-1834." Part of Volume 6 Sixth Series Pennsylvania Archives.

Delaware.

(Heads of Families at First Census of the United States, 1790 was destroyed by the British in 1814.)

"Military Lists. Soldiers of the French and Indian Wars, Revolution, and War of 1812." In Delaware Archives Volumes 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, Wilmington, 1911.

Maryland.

"Heads of families at the First Census of the United States taken in the Year 1790. Maryland." 189 pp. Washington 1908.

"History of Maryland from the earliest period to the period to the present day," by J. Thomas Scharf. 3 vols. Ills. Baltimore, 1879.

"The Maryland Calendar of Wills," by Jane Baldwin. Covers 1635-1702, 2 vols. Baltimore, 1904.

Virginia.

(Heads of Families for Virginia at First Census of the United States 1790 destroyed by British in 1814.)

"List of Revolutionary Soldiers of Virginia," by H. J. Eckenrode, 488 pp. Richmond 1912.

"List of the Colonial Soldiers of Virginia," by H. J. Eckenrode, 91 pp. Richmond, 1917.

"Virginia Militia in the Revolutionary War," by J. T. McAlister, 337 pp. Hot Springs, 1913.

"Catalogue of Military Land Warrants granted by the Commonwealth of Virginia to Soldiers and Sailors of the Revolution." (Year-book of the Society of the Sons of the American Revolution in Kentucky.) Lexington 1913.

"Journals of the House of Burgesses," 1619 to 1776, 13 vols.

"The Records of the Virginia Company of London," by Susan Myra Kingsbury, 1619-1624. Two Folio Volumes, 2 vols. Washington 1906.

Georgia.

"The Colonial Records of the State Georgia," by Allen D. Candler, 24 Volumes; covers period from 1732 to 1775.

"Revolutionary Records of the State of Georgia," by Allen D. Candler, 3 Vols. Atlanta, 1908.

Family Books.

Ballou: "History and Genealogy of the Ballous in America," by Adin Ballou. 1323 pp. Ills.

Barney, Comodore Joshua: "Many interesting facts * * also a compilation of genealogical material etc.," by William Frederick Adams, 228 pp. Springfield, Mass., 1912.

"Branch of Abingdon, Being a partial account of the ancestry of Christopher Branch of 'Arrowhattocks' and 'Kingsland' in Henrico County, and the founder of the Branch Family of Virginia," by James Branch Cabell, 126 pp. Ills. Richmond, 1911.

Bayless: (see Newkirk).

Carney: "Genealogy of the Carney Family, descendents of Mark Carney and Suzanne Goux of Pownalboro, Maine, 1751-1903," by Sydney Howard Carney, Jr. M. D. 221 pp. New York 1904.

Corwin (Curwen, Curwin, Corwine): "The Corwin Genealogy in the United States," by Edward Tanfore Corwin, Millstone, N. J. 284 pp. New York, 1872.

Cox: (see Williams).

Cummings, (Cummins): "Isaac Cummings, 1601-1677 of Ipswich and some of his descendents," by Albert Oren Cummins; 643 pp. Ills. Montpelier 1904.

Cunningham: (see Williams).

Dyar: "A preliminary Genealogy of the Dyar Family," by Harrison Gray Dyar; 32 pp. Washington, 1903.

Fonda: (see Williams).

Frederick: "The Frederick line of Helmershausen," by Adele Helmershausen, Chicago, 1914.

Gregor: "Year books of the Clan Gregor in America," 1914, 1915, 1916.

Hamilton: (see Newkirk).

Hayes: "Descendants of Richard Hayes of Lyme, Connecticut, through his son Titus Hayes," by Harriet Morse Weeks, of Evanston, Illinois. 192 pp. Pittsfield, 1904.

Huntoon (Hunton): "Philip Hunton and descendants," by Daniel T. V. Huntoon, 113 pp. Canton (Mass.), 1881.

Johnson: "Jacob Johnson of Harpswell, Maine, and his descendants, east and west," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett, 132 pp. Ills. Concord, 1907.

Justice: (see Williams).

King: (see Williams).

Lanning: (see Williams).

Longacre: (see Williams).

Lundy: "The Lundy Family and their descendants of Whatsoever Surname, With a biographical sketch of Benjamin Lundy," by William Clinton Armstrong M. A. 485 pp. Ills. New Brunswick, N. J., 1902.

McKitrick: (see Williams).

McMillan: "A record of the descendants of John McMillan and Mary Arnott, his wife, etc.," by W. F. McMillan and Frank McMillan; 353 pp. Ills. Minneapolis.

Merryman: "Walter Merryman of Harpswell, Maine, and his descendants," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett; 117 pp. Concord 1905.

Moffat (Maffet): "Moffatana Bulletin." Organ of the Clan Moffet of America. Nos. 1 to 5, 1907-1915, by George West Maffet of Kansas City.

Morse: (see Williams).

Morse: "Descendants of Samuel Morse of Worthington, Massachusetts," Harriet Morse Weeks, of Evanston, Illinois. 76 pp. Pittsfield, 1907.

Newkirk: "Genealogy and History of the Newkirk, Hamilton and Bayless families," by Thomas J. Newkirk, of Evanston, Illinois. 88 pp. Evanston 1916.

Pathmore: "Genealogy of the Pathmore Family," by E. W. S. Pathmore, 1744-1885. 242 pp. Harrisburg, 1885.

Pawling: "Pawling Genealogy," by Albert Schoch Pawling, 84 pp. Lewisburg (Pa.) 1905.

Perry: "Our Perry Family, in Maine; Its Ancestors and Descendants," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett, of Carthage, South Dakota, 127 pp. Lewiston 1911.

Pinkham: "Richard Pinkham and his descendants east and west," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett, 308 pp. Concord 1908.

Pratt: "Phineas Pratt and some of his descendants," by Eleazer Franklin Pratt, 164 pp. Ills. Boston 1897.

Rawlins: "Records of families of the name of Rawlins, or Rollins in the United States," by John R. Rollins, Lawrence, 1874.

Robinson: "The Robinsons and their Kinfolk." Exponent of the Robinson Family Genealogical and Historical Association," in seven parts; 1902, 1904, 1906, 1908, 1910, 1912. Ills.

Robinson: "Colonial and Revolutionary Ancestry; Some account of the New England descent of Hamline Eligah Robinson, 28 pp. Ills. Maryville (Mo.) 1903.

Robinson: "Ancestry and Posterity of George McCook Robinson," by Doane Robinson; a chart; Pierre, 1915.

Ryerson: "The Ryerson Genealogy—Genealogy and History of the Knickerboker Families of Ryerson, Ryerse, Ryerss, also Adriense and Martense families; all descendants of Adriaen Reyersz (Reyerszen) of Amsterdam, Holland," by Albert Winslow Ryerson, 433 pp. Chicago, 1916.

Searight: "A record of the Searight Family, (also written Seawright), established in America," by William Seawright, 244 pp. Ills. Uniontown, Pa., 1893.

Shinkle: "The Shinkle Genealogy, comprising the descendants of Philipp Carl Schenckel, 1717-1897," by Louisa J. Abbott and Charles L. Abbott. 348 pp. Ills. Cincinnati, 1897.

Sinnett: "Sinnett Genealogy—Michael Sinnett, Harpswell, Maine, His ancestry and descendants; also records of Sinnetts, Sinnotts ,etc. in Ireland and America," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett, 138 pp. Ills. Concord 1910.

Sublette: "Genealogy of the Sublette Family of St. Louis, Prominent in Dakota Fur Trade."

Stoddard: "Lineage of William H. Stoddard of Turner County, Mss."

Swanson: (see Williams).

Tarbell: "Thomas Tarbell and some of his descendants," by Charles Henry Wright; 18 pp. Boston, 1907.

Thompson: "Our Thompson Family in Maine, New Hampshire and the West," by Rev. Charles Nelson Sinnett, 293 pp. Concord 1897.

Trumbull: "A genealogical Chart of some of the descendants of John Trumbull of New Castle on Tyne, Northumberland, England and Rowley in the Colony of Massachusetts Bay."

Van Allen: (see Williams).

Turner: "Lineage of John L. Turner, of Springfield, South Dakota. Ms.

Wakeman: "Wakeman Genealogy, 1630-1899, being a history of the descendants of John Wakeman, treasurer of New Haven, etc.," by Robert P. Wakeman, 433 pp. Ills. Meridan 1900.

Wilbur: "Genealogical Record of Wilbur Family," by Asa Wilbur of Boston, 89 pp. Boston 1871.

Williams: "Early American Families,—The Williams, Moore, McKitrick, Van Alen, King, Justice, Cunningham, Longacre, Swanson and Cox Families," by Rev. W. A. Williams, D. D. 66 pp. Ills. Philadelphia, 1916.

THE SLIM BUTTES BATTLEFIELD

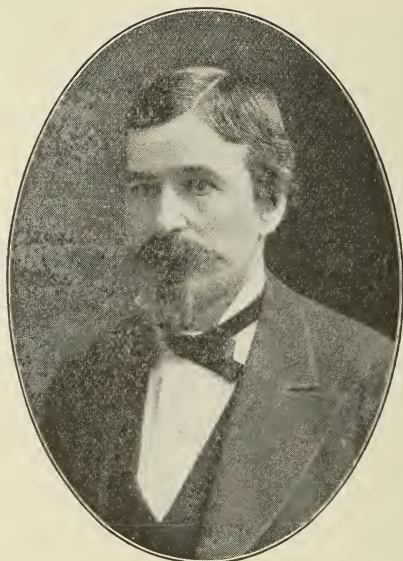
In Volume VI of the Collections of this Department (1912) was published under the title "The Affair at Slim Buttes" the military reports of that affair, together with several popular accounts of it and two illustrative maps, the whole being accompanied by editorial notes by Doane Robinson, calculated to elucidate the text.

Brigadier General Charles King, then residing in Milwaukee, and who had been topographer of the Crook expedition of 1876 and acted in that capacity at Slim Buttes in that year was requested to locate the battlefield upon a sectional map of the state which this department furnished him. He kindly did so to the best of his ability, frankly stating that "it is necessarily approximate." General King's map was traced in the office of the state engineer and was engraved and printed at page 492 of said Volume VI.

When this map came to the attention of General Anson Mills, who was immediately in command at Slim Buttes he had some doubts of the accuracy of the location indicated upon General King's map and he resolved to visit the scene of this most important incident of his career and although then 80 years of age he arranged to visit the Buttes and satisfy himself of the accuracy of the location approximated by General King.

Consequently upon July 15, 1914, accompanied by General Charles Morton, U. S. A., retired, Mr. W. M. Camp, of Chicago, a gentleman who has devoted many years to the history of the Sioux from source material and personal investigation, and Harry A. Robinson, representing this department, General Mills visited Slim Buttes by way of Belle Fourche but was unable to arrive at a definite conclusion as to the true location, though General Morton signified his belief that the location suggested by General King was the place.

In June 1917 Mr. Camp, who is indefatigable in pursuit of the truth of history, returned to the search and succeeded by indisputable evidences in locating the scene of the battle at a point about ten miles north of the place indicated by



GEN. ANSON MILLS 1876

General King, being upon Section 10, Town 18, Range 8, Black Hills Meridian.

Mr. Camp is entitled to much credit for the persistence and effort he has given to the determination of this important location. It is characteristic of the method he has applied to all his research and the public, not only of South Dakota, but throughout the west, and students of history everywhere, owe him a heavy debt of gratitude.

In this connection it should be noted that some criticism has been published of Mr. Elias Jacobson, topographer of the office of Commissioner of School and Public Lands, because of his description of the location indicated by General King's map. This criticism is most unjust. Mr. Jacobson did no more than to accurately describe the point indicated by General King, at the request of this department, and he

found that in general the topography there complied with the descriptions given of the locality where the battle was fought. A comparison of the map published in Volume VI with the map of the locality Mr. Camp now identifies indicates that a verbal description of one practically describes the topography of the other. Both maps are printed herewith and in view of the importance of the battle in South Dakota history and the discussion which has arisen over the location of the battlefield the more important correspondence surrounding the subject is herewith reproduced:

After several preliminary letters, the following was sent to General King by Secretary Robinson, on August 9, 1912:

"I am enclosing a map of western South Dakota, upon which I shall be pleased to have you draw the line of your march down from the North Fork of Grand River to Deadwood, as nearly as you can approximate it, and also fix the location of the affair at Slim Buttes as closely as may be. I have not visited the Buttes, but Dr. J. E. Todd, former state geologist tells me that he has made a careful reconnoissance of the entire section and nothing remained ten years ago from which the place of the battle could be identified by one who did not participate in it. Therefore I shall be glad to have the most minute description of the locality you can give. I intend to go there within the year and hope to secure the information that will locate the exact spot."

To this General King replied upon August 15, 1912:

"I have your letter, also the map of western South Dakota. The tracing of our route, which I made in red ink, is necessarily approximate. All other trace of it is doubtless long since washed away—as Mr. Todd has found in his explorations about Slim Buttes. Another source of trouble will be in the matter of vocabulary. We had to take the names of streams as given by "scouts" who rode with us (we had no Indian guides and the Indian prisoners taken at Slim Buttes were not, to my knowledge, consulted.) Therefore what we were told was the Owl Creek was doubtless a fork of the Moreau—which I vaguely remember bore the Sioux name of Heecha Wakpa in our day ('76) and that is more

like Owl than Moreau. Again we were told that the little stream on the north bank of which our column dropped exhausted, with Belle Fourche barely six miles away—was Crow Creek. It is the stream I vainly tried to bridge with willow boughs and mud the following morning. In reading "Campaigning with Crook" and comparing it with the modern map one would become confused because both Owl and Crow Creeks are tiny tributaries to the Belle Fourche, both emptying into it to the west of where, weak from hunger we and our starving horses managed to ford it that September morning that heralded our return to semi-civilization and something to eat.

"I wish it were possible for me to revisit Slim Buttes. The picture of the battle and the buttes is very vivid in my mind's eye—and I could locate the scene of the fight on terra firma far more confidently than I can on the map which does not accurately give the contour of the heights though the meandering of the streams is doubtless correct. I much desire, also to see again that wonderful "jumping off place" into the Bad Lands we found in the fog a day or so after Slim Buttes (we were at the scene of the battle from about 10:30 a. m., Sept. 9th to 8 a. m. on the 10th, then bivouacked on a branch of the Moreau—then known to us as the Owl) and which I strove to picture in my story of the march.

"The Warren map of Montana and the Dakotas made by the Engineer Corps of the Army from the field notes of Lieut. (afterwards General) Warren's expedition, was the only thing, besides the scouts and the Indians, we had to serve as source of our information. It does not always accord with the modern map as to the names of streams though it seems to conform in many other respects.

"My diary of the march contains so much more about Montana and Wyoming than it does about South Dakota that I shall probably leave it, with the old Arizona notes and a lot of Cavalry relics to the Wisconsin Historical Society of which I have long been a member."

Having previously acknowledged receipt of this letter and the map, Mr. Robinson took the matter up with Mr. Elias Jacobson, topographer of the State Land Commissioner's

office and after consultation again wrote General King under date of September 3.

"In the map you so kindly made me of the route of Crook's army in the vicinity of Slim Buttes you show that you passed directly south from the battlefield across the "L" of the Butte, camping that night on the north fork of the Moreau (Owl). I have been in consulting the topographer of our state land department who thinks that route would not have been feasible for the passage of an army because of the abrupt bluffs. He thinks you must have been forced to go farther east to get around the bluffs which would have made your march that day (Sunday, September 10) a pretty long one to reach the north fork. Again your map shows that you passed west of Deers Ears, and if that is correct, it would seem that you must have crossed the range at the point you indicate. I would like to have your recollection upon the subject, in view of what Mr. Jacobson has told me of the impassable condition of the butte."

To which General King replied on September 11, as follows:

"Duties resulting from the sudden death of General MacArthur have prevented earlier reply to your very interesting letter of September 4, and to the very reasonable and natural criticism of the State topographer.

"It might not have been feasible for an Army with wheeled vehicles of any kind to make a way through the "L" of Slim Buttes and up or down those precipitious cliffs but it is just what we did, and just about 36 years ago. See the description of the march through the mist the day after the battle—and our coming to what must have been the "L", following a trail that "seemed to lead to the moon"—up and up—and then coming to "a veritable jumping off place" and twisting and winding in Indian file down the face of a cliff, etc, etc. I am delighted with your associate's comment for it confirms my description of a scene that reads like a pipe dream. The main longing I have had thru all these years to ride over that southward march and see if there really were such cliffs as were unfolded before our eyes in that "transformation scene."

"Let the topographer read that and I think he will agree that we must have followed some old Indian trail—or game trail, directly through the "L" and down the southward face of the cliffs. It was about the steepest I ever tackled outside of Arizona. Most of our men dismounted and led down. Our wounded, on travois, had to be lifted along and my recollection is that one or two horses fell—as much from weakness as anything else. The pack mules by that time had next to nothing to carry on the aparejos and they were so weak from lack of grass or fodder that the ammunition carried by some of them (weighing 100 lbs to the box and two boxes constituting the load) had to be abandoned during that heart-breaking day of the 26 mile mud march from the Moreau (Heecha Wakpa in the Sioux vernacular, and Heecha is screech owl, if I am not mistaken.) It was to recover this ammunition cached in the sands of some fork of the Owl, that Lieut. Keyes was sent back from Whitewood ("Crook City") after we had fed and feasted and recovered strength.

"I was with the rear guard, rounding up exhausted stragglers, that gruesome day and took no topo notes between 10 a. m. and 10 p. m. at which latter hour I reached our bivouac fires after turning over my charges, but at some halt during the day I recall Dr. McGillicuddy's pointing out the twin peaks south of us and saying "Those are Deers Ears." We were marching S. W. by compass until sunset so we should have left them to the east of us.

"If you can spare me another map such as the one sent me, I should be glad to have it to compare with the old "Warren" (U. S. Engineer) map we used in '76.

"How I wish it were possible to go over the trail again!"

The next day, September 12, General King supplemented the above letter with a postal card note:

"Since writing have found my copy of "Crook" and there you have it. Read pp 133-135 et seq. and your topographer will see that we must have climbed to and then slid down the very cliffs he refers to—the "L" of Slim Buttes."

Thereupon being satisfied that General King had indicated the proper location of the battlefield, a description of the ground was secured from Mr. Jacobson and a tracing of the

land office map showing the topography of the section was made and published.

When this map came to the attention of General Anson Mills he wrote upon March 3, 1914:

"I have read with interest the accounts of the battle of Slim Buttes and found much more than I had hitherto read. After looking the maps over carefully I doubt if the location of the battle thereon is correct. I am quite sure if I went there I could locate the correct position without much trouble for we threw up entrenchments after the fight was over expecting the return of Sitting Bull, which could plainly (be) seen there still."

General Mills then set about arrangements to visit the Buttes in the summer of 1914 and he invited Mr. Robinson to join his party which he appointed to leave Newell at 2 p. m. on July 15. Being at the last moment detained by business Mr. Robinson wired to Harry A. Robinson, then at Hisega, to join Gen. Mills' party as the representative of the Department of History, and to provide the necessary transportation at the expense of this department, which he did. His report of the trip is as follows:

"Pierre, August 1, 1914. Department of History, Pierre, S. D. Pursuant to your telegraphic instructions of July 15th, I went from Hisega to Belle Fourche that day and joined the party consisting of Gen. Anson Mills, Gen. Charles Morton and Mr. W. M. Camp, of Chicago, and securing an automobile we drove to Slim Buttes and made as careful an examination as under the circumstances we could of the region in the attempt to find the point where the battle of Slim Buttes was fought on September 9th, 1876. We first examined the point indicated upon the map made by General King and printed at page 492 of the Collections of your Department for 1912. The generals were not satisfied that this was the correct site. We called at the Jones ranch on Section 21 and were there informed of the local understanding that the battlefield was farther north. We spent the night at another ranch owned by the Jones Brothers and in the morning made a further examination of the site above mentioned. We heard that morning of another point near Mitchell's, ten miles farther

north, where it was thought the battle might have been fought and we went to Mitchell's that night and spent the night, and the following morning made search in that neighborhood, being accompanied by Mr. Mitchell and his sons but found no convincing evidences of the location of the battlefield. We then returned to the location on Section 27, near the Jones ranch and concluded that to be the real location for the following reasons:

1. A creek bottom of considerable extent, under a high cut bank to the east, as was known to be at the battlefield.
2. Apparent rifle pits or entrenchments on the bank.
3. A cut or gully in the bank to the west of the creek in which American Horse and party took refuge.
4. A high rough ridge of red sandstone to the immediate north on which General Charles Morton stated that he seated himself and viewed the bringing out of American Horse from the gully.
5. The presence a mile and half to the southeast of Slim Butte.

"It was Saturday, and General Mills, because of advanced age, was becoming very weary and we concluded it was best to get back to Belle Fourche that evening which we accomplished.

"While the evidences were not conclusive General Mills was quite satisfied that the battle was really fought at the point indicated by General King. The expense of the transportation for the trip was \$62.91, for which I have had vouchers made."

At page 173 of his book, "My Story", Washington, 1917, General Mills publishes a brief report of the trip, in which he states that General Charles King informed him "that he had never furnished Mr. Robinson with a map sufficient to make the location."

Mr. W. M. Camp, being determined not to give up the hunt until the location of the battlefield was determined beyond any question of doubt, returned to the Buttes in the summer of 1917 and the result of his investigation is embodied in the following report which he has kindly prepared for this volume:

DISCOVERY OF THE LOST SITE OF THE SLIM BUTTES BATTLE*

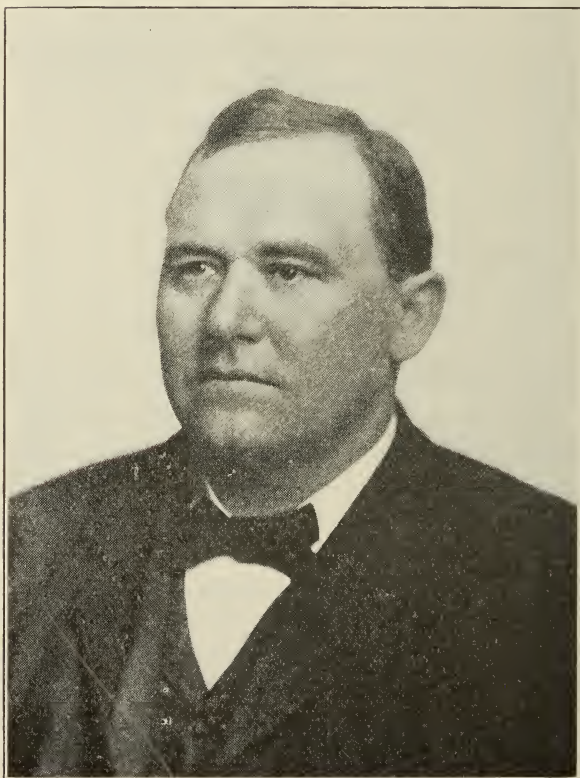
By W. M. Camp

For many years the writer has devoted recreation time to a study of the Indian campaigns of the West, and a most interesting part of this research has been an effort to locate or identify the sites of some of the battlefields that have been lost. I use the term "lost" in the historical sense of course, for while it is presumable that knowledge of all of these historic points exists in the minds of white or Indian survivors, in the way of recollection of landscape features, yet the fact remains that many important military engagements took place on ground that is now unknown either to the general public or to settlers of the locality; and it has often happened that surviving eye witnesses of an event, who have returned in after years to visit the ground upon which it occurred, have found difficulty in identifying the place.

A good illustration of such an experience may be cited in the case of the Beecher Island fight, on the Arickaree river, in Colorado, where Lieutenant George A. Forsythe and fifty scouts, in September, 1868, held out in that famous siege of nine days against a superior force of Indians who had surrounded them. For thirty years no survivor of that battle visited that part of the country and the site became lost to public knowledge, when finally a party of three of

*Part of this account is a repetition of an interview which the author gave to the editor of the *Belle Fourche Bee*, and which was published in the issue of that journal for July 5, 1917.—W. M. C.

1. In 1906 Dr. J. E. Todd, state geologist conducted a party across Northwestern South Dakota chiefly having a reconnaissance of the lignite deposits in view. Being compelled to decline an invitation to accompany it I asked Dr. Todd to especially endeavor to locate the Slim Buttes battlefield. Upon his return he stated that he had after careful search and inquiry been unable to find it. I was informed by the Adjutant General that the official reports of the battle had not been published and was experiencing some difficulty in getting them when I ran upon them in the last pages of the report of the Commissioner of Indian affairs for 1876. They had been received too late to be printed at the proper place and so had been tacked in the last pages, after the index and not indexed. I determined to print them, and learning that Gen. Charles King had been the topographer of the enterprise, wrote him for a map. He made the one published at page 491 of Volume VI which he said was necessarily approximate. This map located the battlefield upon section 27, town 17, range 8 and subsequent correspondence with General King confirmed the belief that this was the true location, the topography there being essentially as described in the official reports. Mr. Elias Jacobson, topographer of the State Land office visited the region and wrote a description of the point indicated by Gen. King, which appears in note 5 on pp. 495-6 of Volume 6. The correspondence with General King upon the subject is published in the preceding pages. Doane Robinson.



W. M. CAMP

the survivors did try to make the discovery, in 1898, and spent several days in a vain effort, passing over the site without recognizing it. By mere chance they were directed to an early settler who ten years earlier had found some debris, which, however, he had not thought to have been connected with a battle. Under his guidance they were led to the spot, where, after some meditation and exchange of recollections, the associations of their conceptions of the place returned to them.

I could refer to other instances of similar searches that are equally striking as to the difficulty, or failure, of the discovery of historic ground. Many of the battles of these Indian campaigns were fought long in advance of the settlement of the country, before maps had come into existence; and weather and time have obscured evidences that would bear significance to the thing sought.

In the case of the Battle of Slim Buttes, fought September 9, 1876, it seems to have been even more than thirty years before any one made much of an effort to discover the site of it.

Slim Buttes, a long range of clay hills in Harding county, South Dakota, is still far removed from railroads. The eastern slope is well covered with grass and not a little timber. Much of the territory is now in the forest reserve. Cattle men began to range their stock in these buttes as early as 1886 and the homesteader came about 1905 or later, yet none of the people first in the country pretended to have been able to locate the site of the battle that was known to have been fought somewhere on the east side of the Buttes.

In 1907 the writer interviewed Sioux Indians of the Standing Rock Reservation regarding the battle, and the next year started for the Slim Buttes country to look for the site. I proceeded as far as Bixby, by stage, but there was unable to secure further transportation of any kind, public or private, and was therefore obliged to abandon the trip.

A supposed location of the site, as published in Vol. 6, State Historical Collections, was a spot tight in the northwest corner of Section 27, Township 17 north, Range 8 east. This point lay in the garden of Mr. E. W. Laisy, in front of his

stone residence, which is the post office at Gill (This residence, however, is just over the line in section 28). This garden patch, or supposed site of the battle, lies on a small wet-weather stream known as Jones Creek, a tributary of Beaver Creek, which in turn is a tributary of Rabbit creek. All three streams are within compass of half a mile, flowing east, and Jones Creek is the northernmost.

The Captain, Anson Mills, of 1876, who commanded the troops in the attack on the village (Battle of Slim Buttes) is now Brigadier General, U. S. Army, retired, and is 83 years of age. About five years ago he heard of the supposed discovery of the site of the battle and became desirous of visiting the place to see if the point selected corresponded with his recollections of the topography. Accordingly, in July, 1914, in company with General Charles Morton, a survivor of the battle; a representative of the State Historical Society in the person of Mr. Harry A. Robinson, a son of Doane Robinson, secretary of the Society, and myself, Gen. Mills went to Slim Buttes, by automobile from Belle Fourche, and visited the ground referred to (Sec. 27-17-8). Much to his disappointment, he found that the site selected was not the one where the battle was fought. Both he and General Morton declared that the true site had not been identified, and they began to search in other localities, when, through a misunderstanding about the length of time for which the automobile had been hired, the trip was suddenly abandoned and the party returned to Belle Fourche, a distance, as the road goes, of about 130 miles.

It was then the intention to continue the search the next year, but this was not done. Gen. Charles King, another survivor of the battle, in 1915, learning that a detailed map showing the supposed location of the site had been published, declared that the location at Laisy's was wrong, and suggested that a careful search be made about $11\frac{1}{2}$ miles to the southeast of said Section 27. His idea as to this proposed substitution was gained from a study of the hills shown in the Jacobson maps.

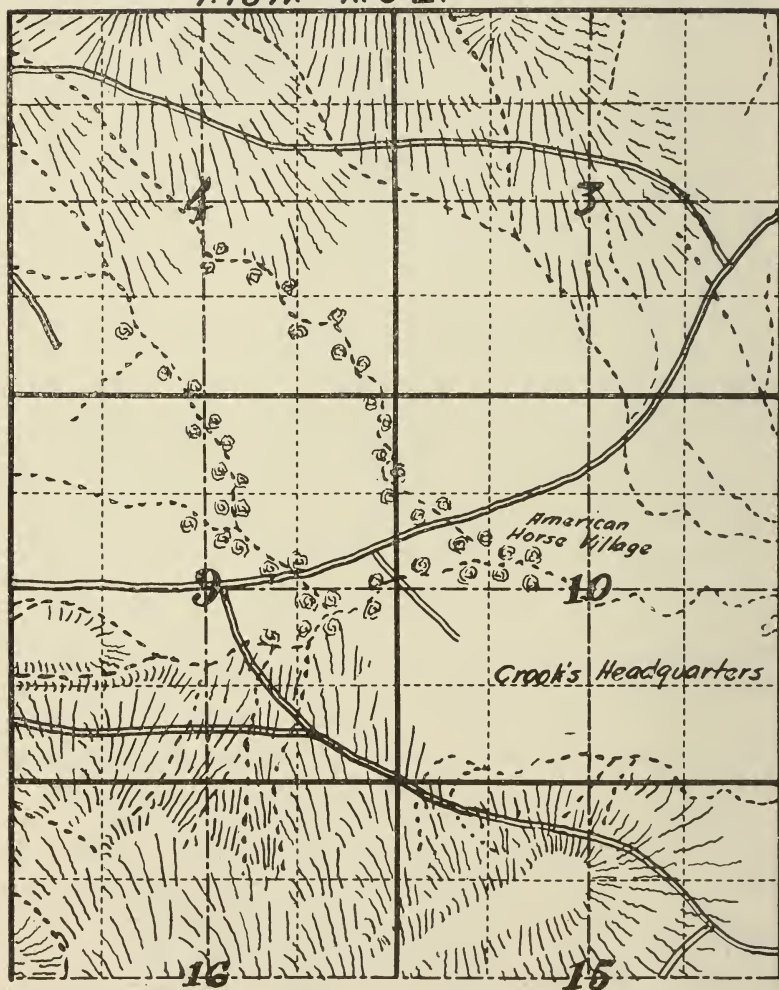
In 1915 I planned to visit the Buttes that year, with a Sioux Indian survivor of the battle, but, by reason of govern-

mental red tape about granting permission to take the Indian off the reservation, had to abandon the trip. In the meantime, I continued my study of the location of the battle. In addition to data and sketches furnished by Generals Mills and Morton (the latter of whom died in 1915), I had notes from interviews with Gen. Geo. F. Chase, Gen. John W. Bubb and Gen. Charles King, besides more Sioux Indians and several enlisted men, all survivors of the battle. Gen. King sketched for me a map showing the topography of the site of the village and contiguous territory, in considerable detail. Being the engineering officer of the expedition at the time of the battle it is not necessary to comment on his qualification for this.

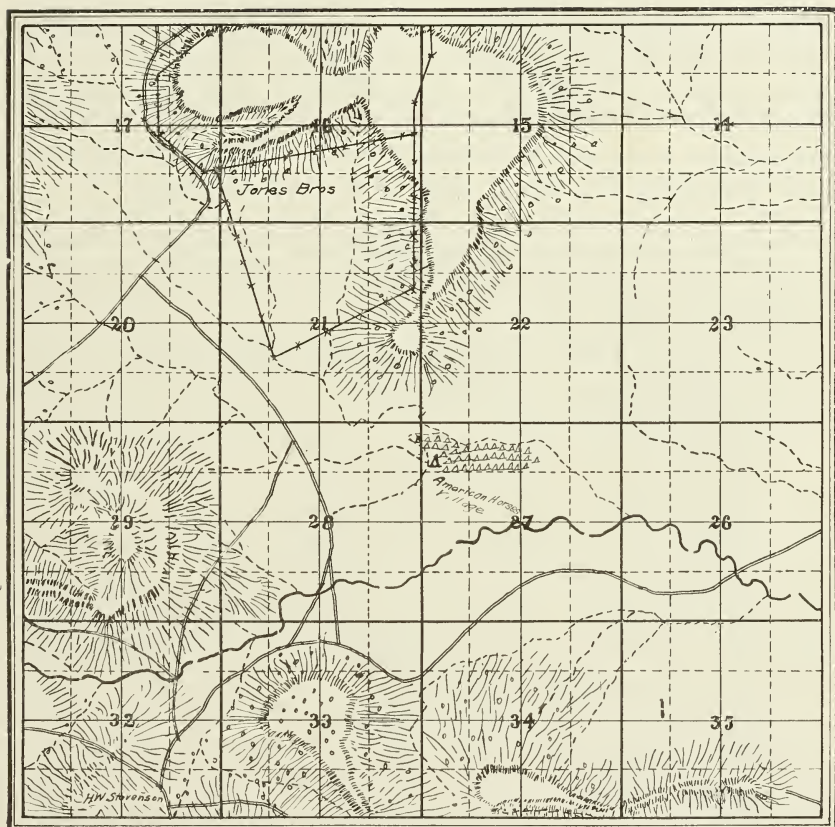
With these data and maps I again proceeded to the Slim Buttes country, arriving at Gill on June 16, 1917. I spent two days in that vicinity, in a careful search of the courses of Rabbit, Beaver and Jones creeks. In these investigations I had the able assistance of Mr. Laisy, above mentioned, and Mr. Louis Jones, both old residents and quite familiar with all that part of the country. Particular study was made of the landscape $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles to the southeast of Gill, and round about, as directed by Gen. King; and in the opposite direction we rode to the very sources of Beaver creek and of the main Rabbit creek; but the most painstaking search failed to disclose any evidence of fighting ground. Gen. Mills had insisted that the site, wherever found, should yield broken utensils of an Indian village, empty cartridge shells and the entrenchments which he had dug for anticipated defense.

Giving up the idea that the battle could have been fought anywhere on the creeks above named, I next explored, in succession, the creeks to the north, and finally arrived at Reva Gap, where Mr. W. W. Mitchell told me of having found numerous cartridge shells on three buttes. I at once visited this ground and was able to confirm this information by finding empty shells lying promiscuously about, myself.

It being recorded that the hottest firing had occurred in driving the Indians from a butte about $\frac{3}{4}$ mile to the southwest of the village, I assumed one of these to have been

T. 18 N. R. 8 E.

THE TRUE SITE



THE SUPPOSED SITE

that butte, and started in there and followed a northeast course to the creek botton. Coming upon fragments of an iron tea kettle, I was gratified to discover that all of the surrounding landmarks conformed splendidly to Gen. King's map, so a minute search in the grass was begun right there.

In the party with me (on June 19) were Mr. W. W. Mitchell; his son, Earl Mitchell; Mr. Ephriam Gray and Mr. Edward P. Coffield. A search of two and a half hours brought forth unmistakable evidence of a destroyed village, as no less than twenty-one kinds of implements or articles used by these people in their camps were picked up. In most cases the articles were nearly covered with dirt or overgrown with sod. Following is a list of some of the things found:

79 empty government cartridge shells, calibre .45-70.

Numerous pieces of partially burned tepee poles.

3 broken iron tea kettles.

Several coffee pots.

3 smashed and hacked galvanized water buckets.

Tin pans, basins, cups and cans.

Broken butcher knife.

Iron parts of a riding saddle tree.

Wooden hook of a pack saddle cinch.

Stone pestle.

An Indian stone hammer or war club.

Arrow points.

Bullets washed from a side coulee corresponding to the one where the Indians were besieged.

Broken earthenware dishes.

Broken and melted glass bottles.

Top of a canteen.

Clothes buttons.

Numerous iron hooks and handles of 5-gallon water kegs.

The tinware in all cases was crumpled up, as though done under foot, and then punctured with knives or gashed with axes, as the soldiers made a clean job of destroying the village and rendering unserviceable to the Indians every utensil in it. These broken-up articles were found scattered over a plat about 60 rods long, between extremities, where stood the thirty-seven tepees of the village, and on ground delineat-

ed precisely by the maps in hand. The star fork of the stream, the gully where the Indians took refuge, and the rifle pits, all of which Gen. Mills had eagerly sought in 1914, were readily located.

At the time of the battle Gen. Mills was unaware of his location until told by captured squaws that they were on Rabbit Lip (Mashtincha Putin*) creek, on the east of Slim Buttes. Gap creek, where the discovery has been made, is one of three main branches of the "Rabbit Lip" creek of the Indians, the other two being the streams now known as Antelope and Rabbit creeks by the settlers.

With Indians it is customary to call all main branches of a stream by the same name, and then, for purposes of identity, to use a qualifying word to indicate a particular tributary referred to, such as the north branch, south branch, etc. In this case, Gap creek is the north branch of Rabbit creek. The stream now called Rabbit creek is the central branch, and rises high up in the buttes. It flows eastward about $\frac{1}{2}$ mile south of Gill postoffice, the distance from there to the site of the battle, on Gap creek, almost due north, being $8\frac{1}{2}$ miles.

The place now known as the site of the battle to a certainty is on land owned by Mr. Earl Mitchell, in Section 10, Township 18 north, Range 8 east, in Harding county. Part of the relics found were sent to Gen. Mills, who lives in Washington, D. C. The larger portion, however, were deposited with Mr. W. W. Mitchell, as custodian, and a museum of the battle was started within a mile of the place where it was fought. As cartridge shells and debris of the destroyed village lie scattered through the grass, or lightly covered by the soil, in plenty, there is every opportunity of adding to the collection of relics already started. None of the ground occupied by the village or fought over by Crook's soldiers on the day in question has yet been plowed, although the larger portion of it is susceptible to cultivation.

One thing which has rendered this site elusive to dis-

*Putin, translated strictly, means hair on the upper lip, or mustache. The idea in this case, as I understand, is a hairy upper lip, like that of a rabbit.

covery is the fact that it lies out in the open country, quite three miles from the main range of buttes, which run around it in a sort of semi circle. The ground in the neighborhood of the site of the battle is ordinary rolling prairie, with no distinctive landmarks close by. Gen. Morton had told me,



SLIM BUTTES
Looking South from Reva Gap

when I first met him, in 1913, that one would never suspect, from the surroundings, that he was in the vicinity of the place until he would "run right onto it," and this observation proved to be correct.

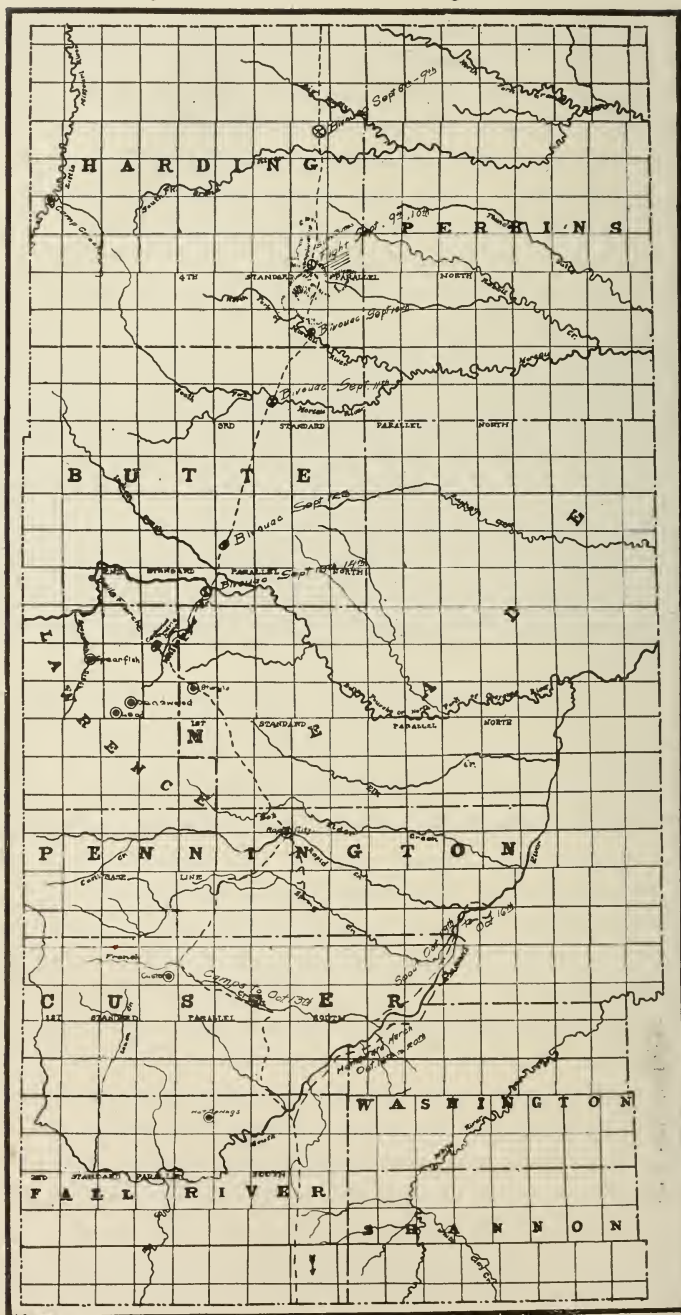
To the south and southwest of the site of the village, a little more than $\frac{1}{2}$ mile distant, are three small buttes, perhaps 50 or 75 feet high above the plain, and farther on in the same direction are more buttes in succession; and the country becomes more broken as the main range of the buttes is approached.

It is singular enough that in 1914 Gen. Mills and his party, under the guidance of the same W. W. Mitchell above referred to, drove over a part of this battlefield without recognizing the place. As a matter of fact we then passed between the "butte to the southwest" and the site of the village, less than $\frac{1}{2}$ mile from the latter. At that time the presence of empty government cartridge shells lying all

about the ground we were on seems to have been unknown to Mr. Mitchell, who had then been living in the country about 16 years. The only thing suggesting a fight that he called to our attention was an earthwork ring, about a rod in diameter such as buffalo hunters sometimes threw up around an over-night camp. This was examined by the General and dismissed as without significance to our investigation. Owing to the chauffeur's haste to start back to Belle Fourche (the particular attraction, as we afterward learned, being a base ball game at Deadwood) no further search was carefully made. We had spent the night before at Mr. Mitchell's house, only $\frac{5}{8}$ mile southeast of the site of the village, and the two survivors of the battle present (Generals Mills and Morton) had talked over with our host the incidents of the battle and the landmarks, in a good deal of detail. About the most surprised man of all, therefore, when the discovery was made three years later, was Mr. Mitchell, who declared that he had ridden the range over all this ground, perhaps a hundred times, without having discovered any of the destroyed Indian property.

As soon as the village site had been identified Mr. Mitchell recalled that the remains of a human skeleton had been found on top of a little knoll, on the south side of the creek, opposite the village, and only about $\frac{1}{4}$ mile distant from it. This he had discovered about 18 years previously and the matter had passed out of his recollection. Lying under the skeleton, at that time, was a burned and bent carbine barrel, which he took possession of and in later years had cut in two pieces and used as pins to fasten the gates of a stock corral.

He at once invited me to visit the spot, and there, on a little eminence just above the creek, still lay all the remains except for the skull, and not much scattered. A light sod had grown up through the pile of bones, and under them we found three empty government cartridge shells. On a companion knoll, near the creek, and only 25 or 30 rods to the west of these remains, I soon afterward ran upon the remains of another skeleton, in much the same condition as the one just referred to. As the gun barrel and the empty shells



found with the first seemed to me to suggest "medicine," I proposed that we look for evidence of opened graves, and this we soon found near the west edge of the village site on a low bench from the creek bottom, under a clump of buck brush that had grown up on the two mounds of earth that had been thrown out with the excavations. These two holes in the ground were three feet apart, and digging down, we found solid botton at a depth of $3\frac{1}{2}$ feet. Evidently the excavations had been made to that depth at some time. The dirt thrown out had been weather-beaten down into flattened heaps, and enough of it had been washed back into the two trench-like openings to fill them within two feet of the general ground surface.

From subsequent inquiries of survivors of the battle I have learned that the location of these excavations is about at the place where were buried the bodies of the two soldiers (John Wenzel and Edward Kennedy) and of the scout (Charles White) killed in the fight; and although the precaution was taken to march the whole cavalry command over the graves the morning that Crook left the place, in order to trample out any appearance of freshly dug earth, I am, from all the evidence, led to inquire whether the Indians, who returned to the village to look for their own dead, might not have dug up these bodies, dragged them up to the two little hills, and had dances around them. It is not supposable that these could be the remains of Indians killed in battle. Can it be, therefore, that the bones of the killed on the victorious side have been bleaching in the sunlight all these years?

General Crook camped on the battlefield the night after the fight, and the next day proceeded on toward the southwest. After proceeding about 12 miles he went into camp, at 2 p. m., on September 10, on ground now occupied by the residence of Louis Jones. This is on a little stream flowing north, in a park-like vale or pass through the Buttes. About a mile south of the Jones residence and less than $\frac{1}{2}$ mile west was an old Indian trail leading down the west side of the Buttes from the end of the pass, and this is the route on which the command passed through the Buttes.

The origin of the name "Slim Buttes" is a question of some interest to settlers of the locality, and many seem inclined to the opinion that it was derived from the pinnacle-like formation of many of the clay peaks to be found in the range. In and around Reva Gap, in plain view from the battlefield, the formation is striking and the scenery most picturesque. Finerty described it as resembling "a series of mammoth Norman castles, or a semicircular range of gigantic exposition buildings." Here is really one of the most beautiful parks in the West, and it deserves to be better known.

A few miles southeast of Gill postoffice, on the eastward slope of the Buttes, stands a high, slender shaft of weathering clay or soft rock, which the settlers have named "Slim Butte", and some have supposed that this may have given the name to the whole range. From the Sioux, however, I have learned that this noted landmark was called by them "Stump Butte," as it does bear a close resemblance, in proportions and general appearance, to the stump of a tree.

The name Slim Buttes is of Indian origin. The Sioux call the range "Paha Zizipela", which means thin butte, thin (or slim) in the horizontal sense, like a snake, rather than vertically, as many of the peaks and spires really are. In other words, the thought in the mind of the Indian dwelt upon the fact that the range is very long in proportion to its width—some 45 or 50 miles in length and in most places less than three or four miles in width. The Indian name refers to the whole range as one long, slender butte, which looks slim when properly drawn on a map.

**FORT TECUMSEH AND FORT PIERRE JOURNAL AND
LETTER BOOKS**

Abstracted by Charles Edmund DeLand

Notes by Doane Robinson

NOTE BY THE EDITOR

The following abstract of the journal kept at Fort Tecumseh and Fort Pierre for portions of the years 1830, 1831, 1832 and 1833 and of the letter books for intervals reaching down to 1848 were secured by Hon. Charles E. DeLand, of Pierre, while upon a visit to St. Louis in the autumn of 1916, and this department is under deep obligations to Mr. DeLand and to the Missouri Historical Society in whose custody the originals are. In his prefatory article Mr. DeLand more fully sets out the character of the originals and the conditions under which they were secured.

The fur traders and employes upon the Missouri came to the region from three general sources: 1. By way of New Orleans. Only a few came this way and they were generally men of prominence in the business as the Choteaus, Lisa, Fontenelle, Cabanne, Menard and other partners and leaders in the business. 2. From the older settlements in Indiana and Illinois, as Vincennes, Kankakee, Kaskaskia, Cahokia but these were not French immigrants but of families long resident in Canada. 3. Canadians who came through the northern fur companies operating in western Canada, especially former clerks and employes of the Northwest Fur Company which in 1821-22 disposed of its business to the Hudson Bay company, thus throwing a great many men out of employment. These men organized the Columbia Fur Company and extended its business to all of the upper Missouri above the Sioux river, and in 1827 consolidated with the American Fur Company, all of its clerks and employes remaining in the latter employ. While it has been impossible to identify many of the men mentioned in the journal and accompanying correspondence, a surprisingly large number are found to be of good families who have made honorable records in Canada, Illinois, St. Louis and elsewhere. For the identity of these men I have relied chiefly upon the Historical Collections of Michigan, Minnesota, Nebraska, North Dakota, South Dakota, Wisconsin and Montana and the following standard works:

The Original Journals of Lewis and Clark, edited by Reuben Gold Thwaites, New York, Dodd, Mead & Co. 1905.

The Lewis and Clark Expedition, edited by Elliot Coues, New York, Harper, 1893.

New Light on Early History of the Greater Northwest, edited by Elliot Coues, New York, Harper, 1897. This is quoted as "New Light."

History of the American Fur Trade of the Far West, by Hiram M. Chittenden, New York, Harper, 1902. Quoted as "Fur Trade."

Forty Years a Fur Trader upon the Upper Missouri, Larpentuer, edited by Elliot Coues, New York, Harper, 1898. Quoted as "Larpentuer."

Early Steamboat Navigation of the Upper Missouri, edited by Chittenden, New York, Harper, 1903. Quoted as "Steamboat."

Father DeSmet's Life and Travels among the American Indians, edited by Chittenden and Richardson, New York, Harper, 1905.

Audubon and His Journals, New York, Scribners, 1897.

Early Western Travels, edited by Reuben Gold Thwaites, Cleveland, Clark, 1907.

Historie des Canadiens—Francais 1608-1880, Origine, Historie Guerres, Discovertes, Colonization, Coutumes, Vie Domestique, Sociale, et Politique, Developpement, Avinir, par Benjamin Sulte; Montreal, Wilson & Cie. 1882.

Spanish Regime in Missouri, by Louis Houck, Chicago. Donnelly, 1909.

A History of Missouri from the Earliest Explorations and Settlements until the Admission of the State into the Union, by Louis Houck, Chicago, Donnelly, 1908.

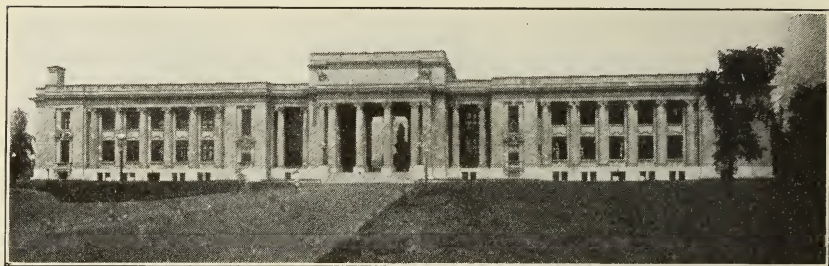
Many other works were consulted and I wish to make especial acknowledgement to the continued use of the Kaskaskia Papers of the Illinois Historical Society, edited by Dr. C. W. Alvord.

DOANE ROBINSON,

Pierre, 1917, the One Hundredth Anniversary of the beginning of the Permanent Settlement at Fort Pierre.

THE RECORDS OF OLD FORT PIERRE CHOUTEAU

The broken series of journals of which some brief account will be attempted in this informal preface, supplemented by so-called Letter-books covering a certain period farther along in the vista of time marking the general era in question, together with a certain related correspondence, entirely outside of the Fort Pierre fur-trade records proper, found by the present writer among the other annals mentioned and



JEFFERSON MEMORIAL

constituting part of the mass of evidences in the grand repository of historical records now and for several years past assembled by the Missouri Historical Society in the Jefferson Memorial at St. Louis—these records constitute by far the most important groundwork of history of that region of the Upper Missouri country between the mouth of the Platte and the neighborhood of Bismarck, extant.

For many years the more active officers of the South Dakota Historical Society residing in Pierre, had yearningly hoped—it may be said for a time expected—that when our young Commonwealth should have erected at the seat of her government a safe and fire-proof abiding place for her historical records, in the form of a new Statehouse, these precious annals of the local and daily doings of the American Fur Company, first at Fort Tecumseh, later at its near-by successor, Fort Pierre Chouteau, might be made immediately available to our Society and our people through being deposited for a time at least, in the Society's rooms in that Statehouse.

For, the late Hon. Pierre Chouteau of St. Louis, grand-

son of that Pierre Chouteau, Junior, who was the head and great inspiring promoter of the American Fur Company and its immense trade and influence in the West and Northwest, had nearly twenty years ago held out to our Society the tempting promise of at least a loan of the Fort Pierre journals and other related records in the possession of his family, by way of a deposit of them in the then-to-be new Statehouse, when such fire-proof structure should become an accomplished fact.*

After the present Statehouse was completed the former efforts to obtain possession of those records under some mutually agreeable arrangement, were renewed, but without avail. In the meanwhile Mr. Chouteau passed from the theatre of earthly existence.

In the year preceding the advent of the Louisiana Purchase Exposition, and again while visiting that great monument commemorative of the most momentous and fateful of all our national acquisitions of territory, the writer had the pleasure and satisfaction of making the personal acquaintance of Hon. Pierre Chouteau—a gentleman who was in the very fore-front of those remarkable activities which brought into being that Exposition, which in turn outdid any similar effort the wide world had known.

At that time, while he gave the writer as a representative of our Society no definite assurance that those records would actually be sent, or permitted to be transported to Pierre, he freely acknowledged the former correspondence with Mr. Robinson, secretary of our Society, and with the writer, first above mentioned; and in spirit and by what was regarded as a fair implication, manifested a lively and solicitous interest in the work and the future of our Society, wherein the use of the records in question was in issue.

In this connection it may be stated, that more than once,

*"I may be able to make your society custodian of many documents and articles of interest, I will write you upon this subject. However I can now loan you the first and only bell that was used at Fort Pierre. As soon as you have a fire proof building in which to properly preserve them I can send the last journal used at Fort Tecumseh and the first one used at Fort Pierre." Letter of Pierre Chouteau to Doane Robinson, dated January 22, 1901. For some reason Mr. Chouteau did not send the bell as suggested, and it was not until July 1, 1910, that this Department was safely housed in a fireproof structure. About that time Mr. Chouteau died and his legal representatives felt that the Missouri Historical Society was the proper custodian of his papers.

by letter or by verbal communication, Mr. Chouteau expressed a fervent desire to visit Pierre and Fort Pierre to satisfy a longing which he professed had grown up in his heart as he had fondly contemplated the traditions that ran with memories of his family's long and dominant connection with the American Fur Company at the great Upper Missouri trading post at Old Fort Pierre. And well might this have been; for were not both of these towns named in honor of his grandfather? And was not that trading post the greatest landmark of his ancestors' genius—for his father, too, Hon. Charles P. Chouteau, had continued the work of his father in the general premises.

During the years following the initial efforts of our Secretary, Mr. Robinson, to secure some tenure of possession of the records in question, it had not become clearly known that the so-called daily journals of Old Fort Pierre, then remaining in the St. Louis archives, were not substantially continuous from about 1830 down to practically the close of the operations of the American Fur Company at this trading post and its successor—the new Fort Pierre, erected after the former had been sold to the federal Government during the Indian outbreak of 1856. This state of belief may or may not have been owing to failure to make specific inquiry into the actual facts known to or believed in by the Chouteau family, concerning the real state of things in this respect.

However, the fact remained that wide gaps exist in the continuity of those daily journals which had been preserved in St. Louis; the first, between April 6, 1831, and January 27, 1832; while another and vastly greater hiatus followed between June 1, 1833, and the final closing of the series of daily journal records at this post—at a date unknown, it seems.

In other words, it seems not to be now known as to when the practice of keeping such a journal there ended.

This discovery was made—so far as the representatives of our Society were concerned—by the present writer when, in October, 1916, he went to St. Louis to investigate and make excerpts from those records on behalf of the Society.

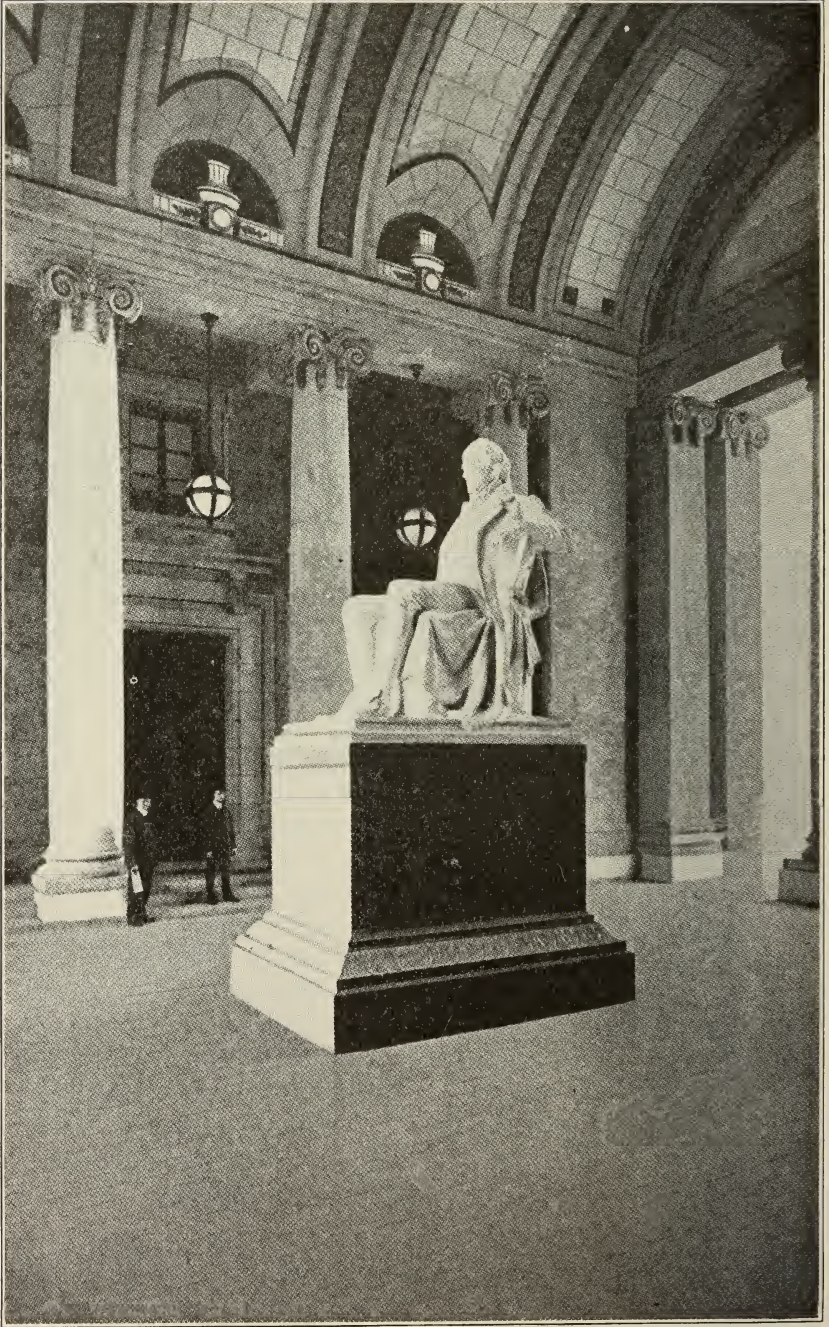
In fact, the inference that the periods over which the

still existing records do not extend were originally represented by substantially daily journals, seems to still persist—at least down to the time of said Indian outbreak; and that those missing records were either lost or destroyed, or perhaps, through some unaccountable process, became transported from St. Louis to some other locality. If the latter supposition be true, time may yet reveal the existence of some of those absent records.

Two main facts may account for the destruction, loss or misplacement of these now unaccounted-for annals of Old Fort Pierre: Two destructive fires in St. Louis are known to have destroyed much of the correspondence relating to the American Fur Company's business, together with many manuscripts prepared by savants in various fields of original exploitation, investigation and research who from year to year came up the Missouri river on the Company's steamboats, and who, in deference to the courtesies and manifold aids extended to them by representatives and employees of the Company, left their writings embodying the results of these trips of observation, study and research in the hands of the Company's agents in St. Louis. It is not at all improbable that some at least of these supposed missing records were destroyed in those conflagrations; and this seems to have been an inference in the minds of those in St. Louis who have had to do with arranging and preserving the fur-trading records and literature in question.

Secondly, the distracting and destructive processes of the Civil War may have resulted in the dispersion of some portion of these records—as is known or believed to have been the case with some other historical data once reposing in various archives and other repositories in St. Louis and pertaining to early Western and Northwestern history and activities. To the extent that this latter theory may be correct, there is of course some hope that the future may reveal some portions of Old Fort Pierre's absent journals, and, mayhap, fragments of correspondence germane to the subject in hand.

In the winter of 1915-16, and during the following summer the subject of solicitation by our Society of the loan of

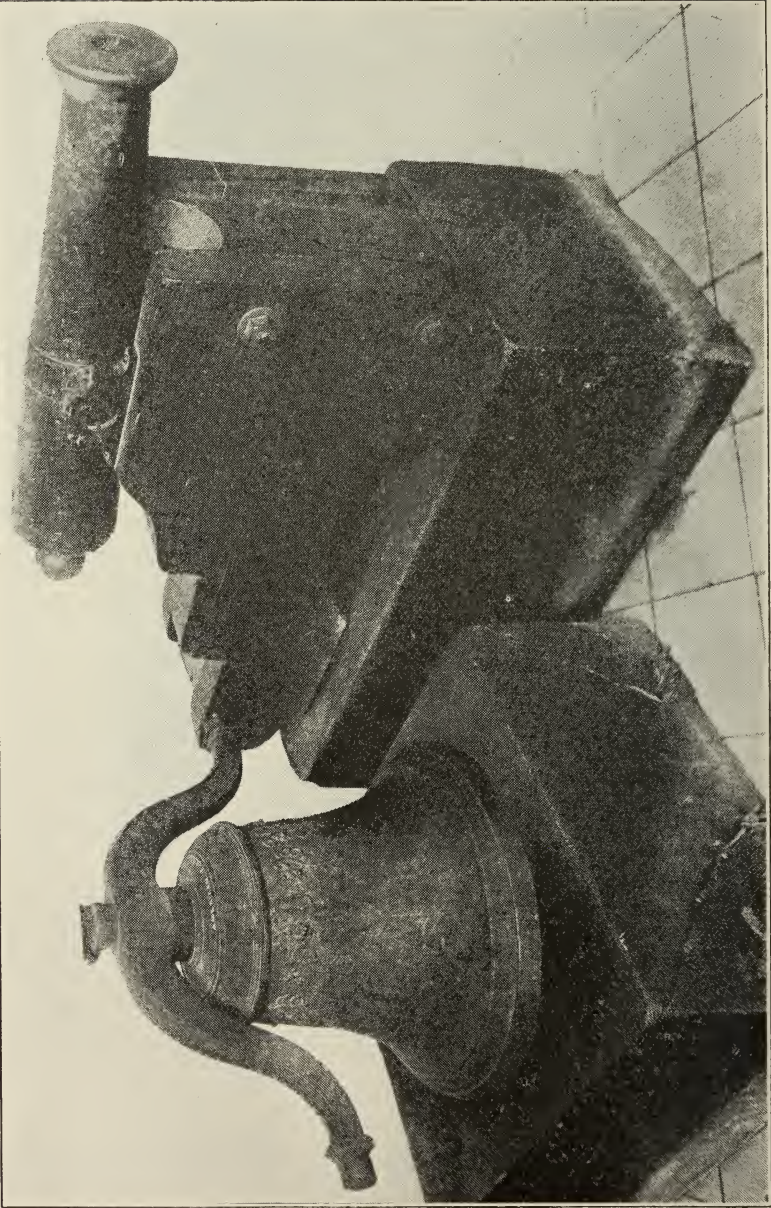


JEFFERSON STATUE

the records and papers in question was revived; through correspondence by Mr. Robinson and the writer hereof with the Missouri Historical Society, and, indirectly, with certain individuals in St. Louis supposed to be in touch with representatives of the estate of Pierre Chouteau, then deceased; the result of which efforts developed two facts:—that these records, etc., were now in the custody and preservation of that Society; and that obvious reluctance to permitting any part thereof to be removed, even temporarily, from these archives, existed. Perhaps a more fair and just way of putting it would be to state that the trusteeship involved in the functions of that Society constrained its officers and custodians to refrain from allowing these records to be taken from the actual custody of the organization. At the same time we were assured, in the most cordial and solicitous spirit, by those connected with the Missouri Historical Society, that in the event of our Society's sending thence a representative to examine and make copies of any desired portions of those records, etc., every aid would be extended by them toward facilitating the process—assurances which the event most amply and satisfactorily vindicated.

Realizing that our Society and the Commonwealth for which it stood could not afford to be longer without the invaluable aid of this most important and indispensable background of the natal period of South Dakota history, and that the one practicable means of acquiring it would be to critically examine and make substantial excerpts from the Fort Pierre journals, and copies of the supplemental records and related correspondence, the present writer resolved to undertake the task in question on behalf of the Society. Accordingly, it was arranged with Mr. Robinson, its talented and devoted secretary, and other directors of the association, for him to go to St. Louis for that purpose.

The present seat of the Missouri Historical Society, as hereinbefore indicated, is in the stately and beautiful stone structure located in the foreground of Forest Park in the southwestern suburbs of St. Louis, and known as the Jefferson Memorial. This building was completed some six years ago; at which time the historical records, library, paintings,



FORT PIERRE BELL AND CANNON

etc., and the extensive and precious museum of Indian and other curios—gathered in fact from the four corners of the earth—were removed thence from the former quarters of that Society on Olive street.

Forest Park, the site of the Louisiana Purchase Exposition of 1903-4, is one of the most natural and beautiful parks in the world. And Jefferson Memorial is the peculiarly fitting grand entrance thereto. The Jefferson Memorial stands on the site of the main entrance to the Louisiana Purchase exposition. It is the north central entrance to the park, the main entrance of which is at Lindell and Kingshighway. Within its spacious and stately portal stands a colossal statute of the great statesman and protagonist of democracy under whose presidency and pursuant to whose moral and political courage—transcending, he all but believed, constitutional limits—the proffer of Napoleon of the transfer of Louisiana Territory to the United States was accepted.

The temptation to here make mention of two monuments closely identified with the fur trade at Old Fort Pierre, and conspicuously confronting the visitor in the entrance-room of Jefferson Memorial, is irresistible. One, the old bell that used to swing and ring in the belfry of that trading post—perhaps in the front bastion at the south-east corner of its enclosing stockade. This bell is about 19 inches in length, its diameter at the bottom some 13 inches. The other, the diminutive piece of ordnance anciently fixed upon the deck of the steamer "Yellowstone"—the pioneer steam craft whose first arrival at this trading post occurred May 31, 1832—and her successors; and whose discharge warned the occupants of successive trade settlements of the steamer's approach. This gun is about two feet in length; some five inches in diameter at the breach and about 4½ inches at the muzzle. Its bore is about one and a half inches.

What morning summonses to the day's activities; what grateful invitations to partake of daily fares; what heralds to revelry; what formal announcements of the hour of conference, of solemn councils, of sometime religious services; what precipitate alarms of peril from the aborigines in some unguarded hour of day or in the vigils of night; what re-

sponses to faraway gunfire to assure the misguided denizen of the wilderness of his bearings; what thousand memories of events, small yet sweet or harrowing to individual lives, large and pregnant of fate to community and nation—could this bell relate to rapt ears, if only its mouth could be inspired to the unfolding of its past!

And that tiny cannon! Its campaigns, if revived in imagined panoramic display of percussion sound and blunt reminder; of awakening echoes amid bluffs, wild woodland, ravines and towering rock-walls all the way from St. Louis to the footstool of the Stony Mountains at the head of navigation at Fort Benton; of startling intonation to the astounded ear and the amazed gaze of the red man who discovers the monster apparition belching fire and cloud while barking its dread advance—would furnish a weird, fascinating and martial revelation to the beholding auditorium unmatched in uniqueness and unparalleled in romance of the reign of the fur-trader, the trapper, the hunter and the explorer of the vast West!

When the writer entered this new emporium of history—he had twice before visited the former seat thereof on Olive Street—and became absorbed in the immensity of its treasures and what they meant to the entire West, he for the first time began to realize why the Chouteaus and the guiding spirits of the Missouri Historical Society had hesitated and refrained from giving the word which would have released for some more or less definite period of time the Old Fort Pierre fur-trading records for deposit, even within the safe walls of our new and splendidly appointed State-house. He began to feel as no doubt they had felt—that to detach any department of that marvelous whole from the manifold other component parts thereof would be unjust to the great public it daily served—the comers and goers from every part of the land and foreign countries, who here expected to find original sources pertaining to all that time had developed in the vast territory it represented; the thousands who from all points of the compass resorted by mail to the keepers of those archives for information, to furnish which meant the retention there of those originals.

And then he began to declare to himself that, were he in their place, no page of those precious freighted annals would he permit to be removed elsewhere! And he was content in contemplation of the high privilege of extracting some of the essence of the honey enclosed in that rare hive of the bees of commerce, community and state building, history and romance.

The daily journals of Fort Tecumseh and of Old Fort Pierre Chouteau were for many years—how many is perhaps uncertain in the absence from the archives in question of the records of this general period—written by Jacob Halsey; who is well known to have been clerk at the former post from soon after its acquisition by the American Fur Company, and of the latter for many years after its establishment; William Laidlaw being in general charge.

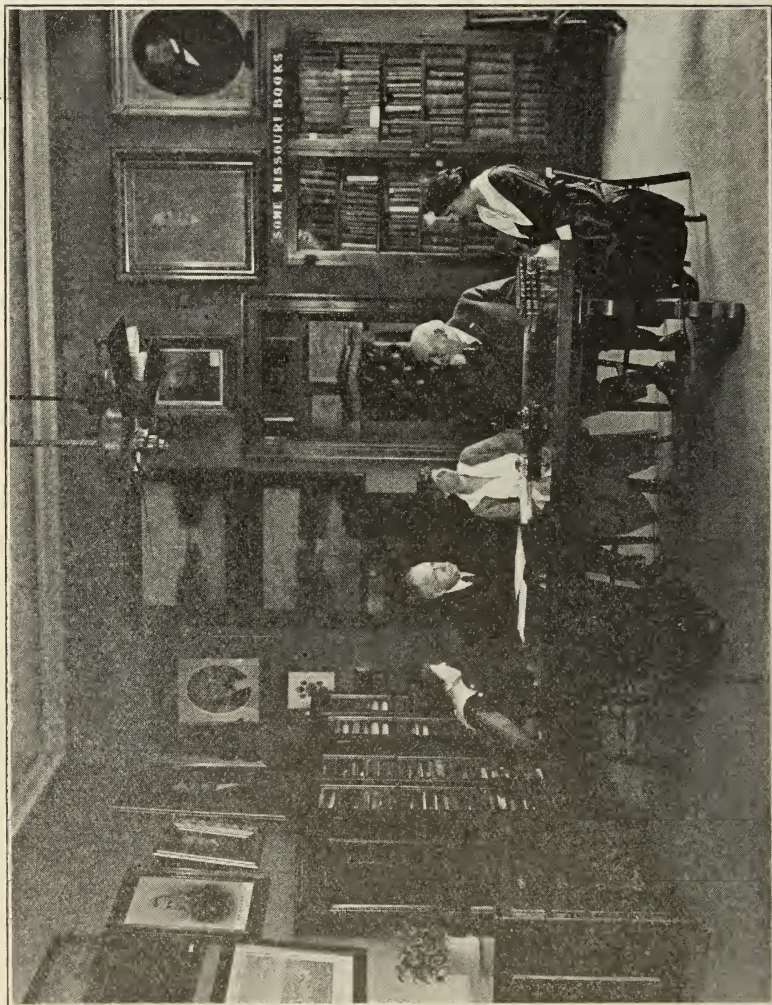
These journals are in the form of hand-writing in blank-books of about the size of the modern blotters in business establishments; of about half an inch in thickness, and bound in brown-paper-covered pasteboard, save the first two volumes, which are bound in newspaper, or rather they are covered with newspaper.

Substantially speaking, the same is true of the so-called and so-labelled letter-books of this trading post. But as to who copied the originals into these books the writer is not informed.

The so-called Fort Pierre Journals in chronological order, cover the following periods: Volume one, from January 31, 1830, to June 13, 1830, inclusive. Volume two, from June 14, 1830, to April 6, 1831. (Here follows a hiatus from the latter date to January 27, 1832.) Both of these volumes were kept at Fort Tecumseh. Volume three, from January 27, 1832, to June 1, 1833. This volume closed the record at Fort Tecumseh and began that at Fort Pierre.

The letter-books in order, embraced: The first, June 25, 1845, to June 16, 1846. The second, June 25, 1845, to May 9, 1848; these two books embracing, in part, letters covering the same period. The third, December 1, 1847, to May 9, 1848.

In order to preserve as far as possible the local atmosphere of these trading posts in the earlier period covered by



OFFICERS MISSOURI HISTORICAL SOCIETY

Mrs. Nettie H. Beauregard, Archivist

Walter D. Douglas, 2nd Vice President

Mrs. E. Boyd Wan, Asst. Librarian

Stella Drumm, Librarian

W. L. Bixby, 1st Vice President

these annals, the writer copied in full the entries embracing several weeks at the beginning of the daily journals of Fort Tecumseh; thereafter certain more or less common and relatively unimportant entries over subsequent periods were omitted; and finally and still farther on, only such entries as bore directly and importantly upon the activities at the trading post were copied—for, to have transcribed literally the whole record throughout the entire series of periods covered thereby would have been the work of many weeks; while what was omitted was believed to be non-essential to the ends in view. It is believed that but little of the real substance of these records, as pertained to the two trading posts in question, was in fact omitted in this process. This as regards the journals proper. As to the letter-books, they were as a rule, copied complete; although some portions of certain letters were omitted as irrelevant, while certain other letters were disregarded as being either irrelevant or as bearing but remotely upon the subject in hand. While as regards the unrecorded correspondence, documents, etc., of miscellaneous character, found on file at the Memorial, including that dealing with the liquor traffic, all that was deemed pertinent and important in the immediate connection was copied.

Portions of the correspondence of Doane Robinson and the writer hereof with Mr. Chouteau, concerning these records, are appended thereto in connection with this publication.

To Miss Estella M. Drumm, Librarian; Mrs. Nettie H. Beauregard, Archivist; and to Judge Walter D. Douglas, Vice-president of the Missouri Historical Society, our Society and the present writer desire to extend profound thanks and expression of gratitude for the many and valuable aids accorded us in the process of investigation and copying of the records in question. The remarkable familiarity of those officers with the very many names and personalities involved, rendered their services in this connection invaluable. The writer recalls with especial pleasure and satisfaction the promptness, cordiality and efficacy with which Miss Drumm responded to his numerous inquiries for information concerning the identity of proper names and the like, and other kin-

dred matters arising in connection with his researches; the equally courteous and competent responses of Mrs. Beauregard to his inquiries relative to various records and correspondence written in the French language; and the valuable discussions with Judge Douglas—who came not infrequently to those archives in quest of records relating to his own current researches on behalf of the Missouri Historical Society.

With further pleasure and gratitude, the writer recalls his brief sojourn at the delightful home of Mrs. Fannie Page Haines on North Goodfellow Avenue; to whose home as a boarding place while in town he had been directed by the courtesy of Judge William H. Allen of the St. Louis Court of Appeals. The walk of less than two miles thence southwesterly to Jefferson Memorial, and the return from the latter at the end of the day's labor, proved a series of excursions at once refreshing and inspiring; while the noonday visits to a neighboring tea-room some four blocks from the Memorial, for lunch, where stood in the window the trade-symbol of the old spinning-wheel from which the place took its name, will long dwell in delightful memory.

While in St. Louis on the occasion in question, the writer took an afternoon off for a trip by boat to Alton, Ill., for the purpose of viewing the mouth of the great Missouri; on which occasion he was accompanied by Dr. and Mrs. H. M. Whelpley of St. Louis; it having been previously arranged through the courtesy of Miss Drumm and Judge Douglas that Dr. Whelpley would very considerably devote the afternoon in that connection.

The writer freely confesses his disappointment when passing up that part of the Mississippi into which the Missouri debouches, and upon viewing the various outlets of the Missouri at that point—for, it being in October and the water in the Missouri very low, the islands and sandbars between which those waters emptied into the confluent stream seemed to occupy by far the larger areas between the banks of the Missouri's estuary.

At least during October and the succeeding months preceding the spring breakup and the later "June rise" of the Missouri, it is clear that the latter is the tributary waterway.

However, by all accounts, when the Missouri is at her normal spring levels and during the season of the melting of the snows in her far distant, widely separated and various mountain sources, extending usually into mid-summer, the two great interior waterways of the North American continent are substantially on a par in respect of size of each above their confluence. The mouth of the Missouri then presents a very different aspect—the inrush of her surging waters into the more placid channel of the Mississippi being, it is said, and has been said from earliest times, an impressive sight not soon to be forgotten.

And the boat loads of furs that have glided down the “Big Muddy” in process of the forging of the links of commerce that bound Old Fort Pierre to St. Louis! The hardy men of the backwoods, who with oars and cordelle have impelled the keelboats and mackinaws of the far posts up-stream in the general quest of fortune, adventure, fame—how many! If the “Navy Yard” at the mouth of Chantier Creek above Oahe, where were built so many craft for this trade in connection with Fort Pierre, could tell its tale of those times, this feature would take on a local color few of us would dream of.

The far-seeing, ardent, undaunted, free-lance spirits that have directed this mighty stream of activities through the eras of discovery, trading-posts, Indian intercourse, gold-thirst and state-forging—what treasures of genius and of achievement! That jewel has not been wholly unmixed with dross, that fruition has known disheartening disappointment, is human—the inevitable lot of stern endeavor in all times and climes. The polished stone of worth could not be such without the grim persistent rub of opposing pebbles and the finishing wash of stubborn adverse sand-freighted currents.

Of all these and more, these annals tell.

And in the large; the range of the sower’s far-flung arm from that devoted center half-way up from St. Louis to the Mountains, outward to beyond the Cheyenne, the Moreau, the Grand, even to the neighborhood of Bismarck, to the north; to the Cheyenne Forks of the Black Hills and on and on to Laramie and The Chimneys in the mountains, west; to the Teton, Yellow Medicine, the White, the Platte, to southwest;

to Medicine Knoll, and to three centers on the "Jim" to eastward; to sundry traffic-centers at and below the Big Bend, even to the Niobrara, south; and to Vermillion, Big Sioux, and stretching incredibly to below Council Bluffs—in a word, to the mouth of the Platte, to south-southeast,—did this all-potent fur-trading spirit stir the stubborn but fertile soil of provincial commerce, and dominate this whole region from the water-shed of the Mississippi westward to the Rocky Mountains!

And woven into this vari-hued fabric of endeavor sullied here and there with stain of outlawry and overreaching cupidity, are the quaint figures of eccentricity; the embellishments of art in realms so wide that Indian ideality vies with spirituality in kingdom of the birds; the enrichments of science so far separated as that geology is contrasted to quest of naturalist; the ravishments of color that revel in romance of discovery, travel, rivalry in prestige with the aborigines, gun-play of bravado baffled by bravery, dark caverns of assassin's wiles, over against marvels of sympathy, of charity, of incredible rescue; the dullness of blanching misfortune, of hopelessness of broken hearts;—nay, the fabric itself is varied by the striking contrast imparted by the pursuit of the free trapper, whose careless wanderings, beginning at this Old Fort Pierre, stretched bold and bonnie into wilderness of the Yellowstone—even amid the astounding feats of geyser and of paint-pot—into that "Crown of the Continent" where rise all the great streams that course both sides of the Rockies from near the Canadian border to the confines of the Arkansas—the Three Forks of the Missouri, the far Upper Missouri itself, Lewis Fork, the Snake, the Musselshell, the Little Missouri, the Powder, the Rosebud, the Big Horn, the Popo Agie, the Sweetwater, the Laramie Fork of the Platte, Black's Fork, Bridger's Fork, Green River, the Colorado, the Arkansas—and back to the Upper Platte at that sentinel of the mountains at Fort John Laramie, whence the tired and homesick denizen turned back to the initial base over the Laramie Trail whose eastern terminus found them home again!

For were not these records replete with mention—among

scores of others—of Pierre Chouteau, Jr., and his early rival, Manuel Lisa; of Catlin and of Maximilian, Prince of Weid; of “Prince of Wartenberg”; of Fremont and of Nicollet; of Audubon and of Bradbury; of McKenzie, Crooks, Ashly, Fontenelle; of Jim Bridger, Vazquez and Clement (“Claymore”); and of Harvey, Richards and other outlaws?

And did not Dame Fashion, centered in great London, strike the heart of the beaver trade on the Upper Missouri so appallingly as that John Jacob Astor, seeing in the rise of the silk hat on the ruins of the beaver, signal of the downfall of his prestige, retired discomfited from the theatre of his sometime thriving fur trade, and succumbed to the adroitness and diplomacy of Chouteau, who became his virtual successor in that field of the general traffic?

Of all these, and far more, did those original entries speak, or whisper, or by spiritual implication suggest. But frankness of pen of history bewails loss or displacement of so much of their content that admission is forced to the end of declaring that, while countless collateral evidences prove all and more than is here indicated of the presence and performance of these celebrities, the following pages will fail to reveal many names which, we feel very certain, were entered in the columns of such of those journals—mayhap also, letter books—as have become lost, destroyed, or dissipated to parts unknown.

The richness and fullness of what remains, however, warrants the observation that the literary landscape embracing the history or autobiography of no spirit of the far western frontier, from the summit of Kit Carson to the level of Jim Beckwourth, can be scanned without meeting names familiar to these annals; localities into which its redoubtables or some of them have at some time traveled as the objective, or been cast by exigency of fortune or misfortune; and events which or incidental to which those or some of them, mentioned in those records, were participants or became elements of activity. The atmosphere of these annals smacks of the very essence of Irving’s “Astoria.” They are part and parcel of Chittendon’s masterful work on the “American Fur Trade of the Far West.” As material for past and future

lore of primitive activity in the western half of the American continent, they form an enduring bulwark as primary background or as concomitant material of primeval character. As time develops new chapters in South Dakota history, they will be of increasing and wider utility in lending direct aid concerning and in imparting added significance to events collateral to the fur-trade era.

And Time's long vista in the premises!

When the first trading-post at the mouth of the Teton (Fort La Fromboise) was established one hundred years ago this fall, Napoleon's earthly career was drawing to a close at St. Helena. Fort Tecumseh saw the light but a year after he died in 1821, and a year before the Monroe Doctrine set the world agog in 1823; and we are at once reminded of the revolution of 1830 in France, and of the slow rate of transit of news at that time, by an entry in the Tecumseh journal of date February 8, 1831, in which it is recorded of certain men who were out hunting for lost horses, that: "They * * * fell in with Gordon in the neighborhood of Bijou Hills. He delivered a package of letters and papers from St. Louis by which we have tidings of the late revolution in France, in which many thousands were killed and wounded, Charles X driven off the throne and the Duke of Orleans proclaimed king"—an event which occurred about six months prior to that date!

When Fort Pierre Chouteau was opened to business in June, 1832, and Catlin was sojourning there on his famed up-river visits to the Indians, the memorable opposition to the American tariff laws was about to become the agitating issue before Congress and the country. South Carolina's famous nullification ordinance was the event of a few months hence, and Jackson's broadsides proclamation against its attempted enforcement was to swiftly follow. Webster and Hayne, less than two years before, had enacted the immortal debates in the Senate over the Foote Resolution. Only two years before Fremont came to this post in 1839, Van Buren had launched his challenge to the banking systems, federal and state, as unnecessary and unconstitutional incidents of national finance, and his "Independent Treasury" was the

subject of the hour; the illustrious Victorian reign had run but a year's course. When in 1843 Audubon, the great naturalist, visited the post, and the strife between the then less vigorous federal arm and the whiskey pirates of the far Northwest was on, the culmination of the long-drawn negotiations over the "Oregon Question" was nearing in the final settlement of our Northwestern boundary; the treaty with Texas was being evolved and the Mexican War was yet two years away. And when time's requiem was being sung over the demise of the American fur trade at large, and at the new Fort Pierre of the sixties, in 1864, the Emancipation Proclamation had but a few months before been reared as one of the few great monuments of the ages among the guaranties of human freedom.

Yet within little more than two miles of the site of Old Fort Pierre there had rested in the sleep of oblivion during all those years, and for nearly a century before that structure was erected, the most important inland monument of discovery ever deposited in the name of any colonizing government that had essayed to exploit the Central-western portion of the North American continent; and there it continued to rest until its discovery by Hattie Foster upon the gumbo knob within the "Mile Square" of Fort Pierre city in February, 1913—the Verendrye Tablet, planted there on March 30, 1743, as commemorative of the Verendrye Expedition from near the Mandan Villages on the Missouri to the Mountains in quest of the "Western Sea."

And almost equi-distant in the opposite direction (northward) is that most famous of all landmarks of the Aricaras—doubtless the selfsame "fort" that Verendrye records as the river seat of the Little Cherry band with whom he fell in when he neared the Missouri on his return from that quest.

So resplendently hedged about by unrivaled symbols of antiquity and of conquest was Old Fort Pierre Chouteau!

The writer hereof has in his possession a copy of "Cornell's Companion Atlas," published by Appleton in 1861, and used by an elder member of his father's family at a local seminary in central New York. Upon its map of the United States is found, as the only indication of a habitation any-

where between "Omaha City" and "Fort Mandan" far to the north on the Missouri, the legend "Ft. Pierre Chouteau." The only western tributaries of the Missouri between the Platte and the Little Missouri indicated thereon are the "Running Water River" (Niobrara) and the "Mankizitah or White Earth River" (White river)—the former represented as taking a precipitate bee line due east from the southern Black Hills to the Missouri. The Black Hills there strangely projects in a continuous narrow range from South Pass east-northeast, thence northeast along the western side of the Little Missouri to substantially its mouth. Even at so modern a date as the beginning of the Civil War, such streams as the Grand, the Moreau, the Cheyenne and the Teton (now Bad river), although by-words in the American fur trade for a generation prior thereto, were unknown to enterprising geographers of that day. The "Great American Desert" is shown stretching from the Texas Panhandle northward through eastern New Mexico, western Kansas and far into Nebraska Territory. Another map in that atlas shows states constituting what is designated "Western Division of the United States," embracing Ohio and Kentucky on the east and ending with Missouri and Iowa on the west! The only railroad lines crossing Missouri at that time were the old "Hannibal & St. Joe," and another connecting St. Louis with Kansas City. Only the eastern part of Iowa could then boast of railroads—some half-dozen "stubs" from the Mississippi.

To many readers these journals and letter-book entries are not unlikely to become somewhat dull reading, especially when the sharp edge of novelty and anticipation has worn off after perusal of the initial or some subsequent section of the record has occurred. We venture the assertion however, that if read in the spirit of grasping the remarkable whole through glimpses or reflections from its parts, details will insensibly take on the form and substance of beguiling and added interest in that vast net-work of activities which rendered the fur-trade centered at Old Fort Pierre little less than stupendous, when the sum total of a year's transactions, remoteness from its directing and inspiring base at St. Louis,

and the incredible risks, privations and handicaps of circumstance are considered.

For its domain was an empire. We have but to substitute prairie for the high seas; rivers for sea-lane and continental thoroughfares; mountains for oceanic continents and colonial possessions, to find in that post, regarded as a principal center, a dream of London in the empire of Britain;—or if not that, then a Mexico City in the colonial system of Spain, directing the hand of empire from its new-world station in the wilderness; for surely this trading-post was in symbol, to St. Louis, much like what that Mexican center was to Madrid; and the wide-flung yet local domain which embraced West Indian, South American and Philippine administration was re-enacted in a sense of relations, when we truly contemplate the environments, the reaches of responsibility, and the far stretch between home base and tributary, realized in the case of this outpost and her career.

In what has preceded concerning Fort Pierre Chouteau, no disparagement is intended toward her sister post at the mouth of the Yellowstone—Fort Union. In its size and appointments, the latter post outrivalled Fort Pierre. Moreover, its proximity to the Mountains rendered it somewhat unique in its importance and influence as related to certain Indian tribes whose habitat was in or on the border of the Rockies; while its relations to the British fur-trade in Canada was somewhat closer than were those of Fort Pierre. On the other hand—as will be seen from some of the correspondence connected with Fort Pierre—one of the most prominent phases of competition between the American Fur Company at Fort Pierre and the British trade, as well as of irritating rivalry in which whiskey played a part, occurred in the instance of the “opposition post” some 23 miles farther down the river—Fort George.

But, in addition to being the center of more numerous sub-posts and the scene of more varied experience of up-river travel, discovery and adventure, Fort Pierre, being so much nearer St. Louis than was Fort Union, was not infrequently the agency through which the latter was reinforced with provisions and facilities for prosecuting its business; as refer-

ence to the hereinafter published records will show. In this sense the management of Fort Pierre held, at times and under specific instructions from St. Louis, a sort of superintendent oversight of certain phases of the Fort Union outfitting. And in its total of consequence throughout its career, we feel bound to observe of Fort Pierre, that her prestige on the Upper Missouri was clearly such as to out-rival that of Fort Union.

We would, however, fall short of performing a plain duty were we to refrain from remarking in conclusion: That, while to the writer it is uncertain whether a series of daily journals was kept at Fort Union, and if so, whether any part thereof is extant; it is extremely doubtful whether there remains any such records covering any part of the period of that post's career. It is fervently hoped, however, that should it prove that there is ground for eventual unearthing of some now slumbering annals of the daily life of Fort Union, the not distant future may most happily discover and realize their publication through the Historical Society of Montana or that of North Dakota.

Pierre, South Dakota, August 30, 1917.

CHARLES EDMUND DeLAND

RECORDS OF FORT TECUMSEH¹Upper Missouri near the mouth of Teton River²

Fort Tecumseh, January 31, 1830

Sunday—Throughout the day strong gales from the northwest and moderate weather. Put up merchandise for the trade of the Cheyenne.³ At dusk the wind fell and it commenced snowing.

Monday, Feb. 1st—Begins with a light fall of snow—at 10 a. m., and appears clearing off. J. Jouett⁴ with one man, and three Cheyenne Indians left here with six horses and mules laden with merchandise for the trade of the Cheyennes. Mr. Laidlaw⁵ and myself visited Messrs. Papin⁶ and Noble.⁷

Tuesday, 2nd—Fair pleasant weather. Mr. Papin dined

¹Fort Tecumseh, was built by the Columbia Fur Company in 1822. It was located on the west bank of the Missouri, about two miles above the mouth of Bad River, very close to the river. It was the second and perhaps the third post built in this vicinity, the first having been the trading house built by Joseph La Frambois in the fall of 1817. It is quite possible that Joseph LeConte (LeCompt) also built and conducted a trading house at the mouth of the Teton river from 1817. See the 4th Annual Report, Bureau of American Ethnology, page 136. For a fuller account of Fort Tecumseh, see Vol. 1, page 29.

²Teton River. This is the name given to the Bad river (Wakpa Seecha of the Sioux), by Lewis and Clark because they first met the Teton Sioux there.

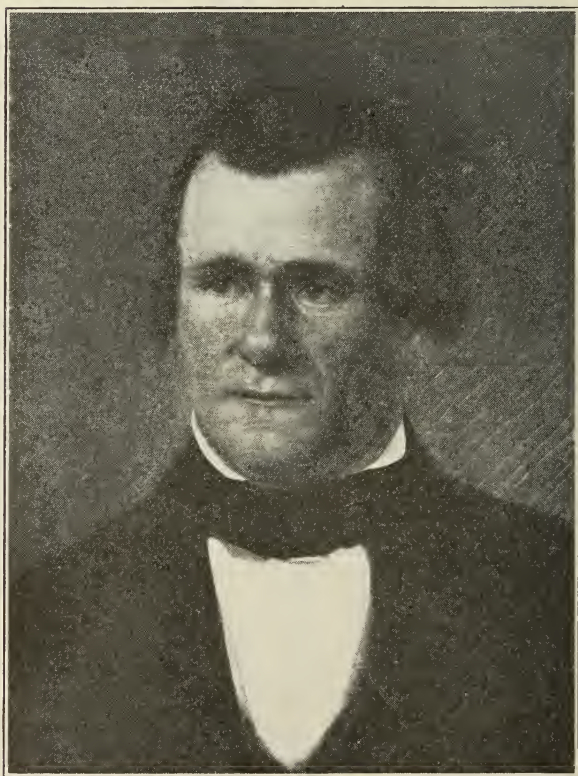
³Trade of the Cheyenne. At least two winter posts were maintained by the American Fur Company upon the Cheyenne river. One, at the mouth of Cherry Creek, where the sub-agency now is, and the second at the Forks. It is probable that there was another still higher up on the south fork. The post at Little Bend, near the mouth of the Cheyenne, was also sometimes spoken of as a Cheyenne post. The valley of the Cheyenne contributed a vast deal of fur to the Tecumseh outfit annually.

⁴Joseph Jouett. This very useful man was long in the service of the American Fur Company, serving as clerk and manager of winter posts at many different points, but chiefly along the Moreau. In his old age he settled in Sioux City, where he died not many years ago. See Mr. C. R. Marks' article in Vol. IV at page 260.

⁵William Laidlaw, was at this time bourgeois, or manager at Fort Tecumseh. For a sketch see Vol. 1, page 342. To the information there, given by Mr. DeLand, Thwaites adds, Vol. 22, *Early Western Travels*, "he was an able trader, but of quick, irascible temper, and unpopular with his subordinates."

⁶Papin. The name is also spelled Papan, and Pappan, the first appearing to be the correct form. This man was Pierre D. Papin, of St. Louis, where the family had been prominent in fur trading circles since 1780, when the founder, Joseph, came out from Canada with a monopoly of the trade with the Pawnees.

⁷Noble. I get no hint of this name in the fur annals. He was possibly a partner in the firm of Papin & Company, but his name is not in the list given by Pierre Chouteau to John Jacob Astor.



PIERRE D. PAPIN

with us. J. Letaud⁸ and F. Montaigne⁹ arrived from the Navy Yard¹⁰ in quest of provisions, nails, etc. Through the night strong northern winds.

Wednesday, 3rd—Throughout the day cloudy and moderate weather.

Thursday, 4th—Strong northwest wind, and very cold weather.

Friday, 5th—Clear and very cold weather.

Saturday, 6th—More gales from the southeast and moderate weather.

Sunday, 7th—Clear and cold. Mr. Laidlaw and myself rode down to Mr. Papin's house,¹¹ a family of Yanktons arrived and camped on the other side of the Missouri. Sent off an Indian to White River¹² with dispatches.

Monday, 8th—Clear and fine. Alexis Tibaut¹³ and four men arrived from White River with thirty horses and 589 buffalo robes.

Tuesday, 9th—Pleasant and clear. At night strong gales from the north with snow. Two men arrived from the Little Cheyenne¹⁴ with one horse loaded with ammunition.

Wednesday, 10th—Moderate winds and pleasant. Alexis Tibaut with four men and 13 horses left here for White River

⁸J. Letaud. This was I think, Jean Baptiste Letendre, of a Canadian-St. Louis family of that time. He was a trusted foreman or camp manager. See Coues New Light, p. 610.

⁹F. Montaigne. Doubtless Francois Montaigne of St. Louis who is mentioned by Chittenden. See also Houck's Missouri, II, p. 56.

¹⁰The navy yard. This was a camp located at the mouth of Chantier creek in Stanley county, about five miles above Oahe. Here was maintained the establishment where the boats needed in the business were built from timber cut in the vicinity. Dr. Edward Ashley thinks the Toneha Caxab (Tone Kaksapi) of note 175, refers to the cut over lands at Chantier creek.

¹¹Mr. Papin's house refers to the post that was located a few rods south of Bad River upon the site of the present city of Fort Pierre. It was known variously as Fort Teton, the French post, and Papin's House, and in this journal for July 11th and August 22nd, it is called Cerre's establishment. There has been some dispute about whether it was located north or south of Bad River, but this journal for August 23rd, 1830, settles the point that it was south of the Bad. It was built in 1828. See Mr. DeLand's note, Vol. I, p. 374.

¹²The White River country was a rich field for fur operations, and the Brule Sioux lived there then, as now. The chief posts were at the Blackpipe, at the mouth of the Little White, and at the Wounded Knee.

¹³Alexis Tibaut. I am wondering if this is not Tibeau, the Canadian hunter that Lewis and Clark found living with the Rees in 1804, and for whom a town in Missouri is named. Thwaites says Western Travels, 14-165, he finds the name erroneously spelled Tebo. See Houck's Missouri, II, p. 68 and 245 III p 125-157.

¹⁴Little Cheyenne post was a wintering place for the trade of the Yanktons, located on the east side of the Missouri, two miles above the present village of Forest City.

for the purpose of bringing in peltries. Crossed the remainder of our horses at a point of woods nearly opposite the fort.

Thursday, 11th—A continuation of fine pleasant weather. Mr. Papin dined with us.

Friday, 12th—Clear and pleasant. At dark Mr. Holiday¹⁵ with one man and a mule loaded with merchandise arrived from the Little Cheyenne River.

Saturday, 13th—Roy¹⁶ and Paquette¹⁷ with two dog trains arrived from Apple River.¹⁸ They brought ammunition, scarlet,¹⁹ etc. The weather still continues remarkably pleasant. Mr. Laidlaw and myself rode out to the Papin house.

Sunday, 14th—Still continues fine pleasant weather. Overhauled our meat and found about 25 pounds mouldy. Prepared dispatches for St. Louis. Joseph Bary²⁰ and an Indian left here for the forks of the Cheyenne River with a mule loaded with merchandise.

Monday, 15th—Dispatches to Council Bluffs with letters for St. Louis. Also a man to the Poncas with porcelaine. Mr.

¹⁵Mr. Holiday. Two men of this name are mentioned. Mr. J. Holiday and Mr. R. T. Holiday. The use of the term "Mr." indicates that they were persons of some consequence. R. T. Holliday appears in the list of licensed traders authorized to trade in company with Benjamin Gibson to "Mandans, Minatimy and Sioux on Missouri and Chippeways and Sioux on Mississippi and St. Peters" in 1823. See State Papers, 18th Cong. 1st Sess. Vol. 1, No. 7. The man referred to here was evidently Mr. J. Holiday. Hauck says, History of Missouri, Vol. 3 page 157, that Joseph Holiday of Kentucky settled in Pike county before 1808.

¹⁶Francais LeRoy, a Canadian hunter, formerly employed by the Northwest Fur Company. See New Light, p. 187. As we proceed it will be discovered that a very large number of the former employees of the Northwest Fur Company of Canada after the consolidation of that company with the Hudson's Bay Company, joined the Columbia Fur Company and came to the Missouri river, and after the consolidation of the Columbia with the American, continued in the employ of the latter. For many years Farm Island was known as Roy's Island in honor of this man.

¹⁷A member of a well known courier des bois family from Québec. There are a number of Paquettes remaining among the mixed bloods of South Dakota. This man was perhaps from New Madrid where Francois Paquette lived as early as 1804. Pierre Paquette was licensed to trade on the Lower Mississippi in 1822.

¹⁸Apple creek near Bismarck, on the east side, where a post was maintained for the trade of the upper Yanktonais. This hardly seems to be a port from which merchandise would be expected to come.

¹⁹"Scarlet" refers to a sort of cloth, much in demand by the Indians. Assuming that Apple creek North Dakota is meant as the source from which it came, I only suggest that it must have been secured from Hudson's Bay traders.

²⁰Joseph Bary. I cannot identify. The name of Jaan Barry appears in the census of New Madrid, Mo., for 1797. John Barry, probably same man was there 1796.

J. Holiday left here for the Little Cheyenne. Mr. Laidlaw and myself paid a visit to Mr. Papin. At night we had a light fall of rain.

Tuesday, 16th—Moderate weather and cloudy. Francis Quenel²¹ and Louison, an Indian arrived from the forks of the Cheyenne with 9 horses.

Wednesday, 17th—Westerly winds and cloudy. Drowned one of our horses in attempting to cross the Missouri with a load of hay.

Thursday, 18th—Moderate and cloudy weather throughout the day. Letand and Montaigne came down from the Navy Yard. Three men arrived from Hollowood²² with 18 horses and mules loaded with robes.

Friday, 19th—A little snowfall last night * * (Here I will make extracts merely.—C. E. D.)

Saturday, 20—* * * Mr. Noble and Mr. L. Cerre²³ dined with us.

²¹Francois Quenel. Two years later March 9, 1832, he was shot and killed by Frederick Laboue, at the winter camp at Cherry Creek. See Note 138 for fuller information.

²²Hollowood. Joseph Wandell (Vandell) the ancient fur man still living at Fort Pierre, when interviewed on May 28, 1917, said this was simply a camping place on Medicine Creek, almost directly south of Fort Pierre. Paul Prairie Chicken interviewed at the same time, thought it was much farther away, but could give no definite information.

²³Memorandum on Cerre Family. The family of Cerre was established in Canada at an early date. Jean Gabriel Cerre, son of Joseph Cerre and Marie Madeleine Picard, was born at Montreal, 12 August 1734. In 1753, at the age of nineteen years, he joined an expedition from Canada to the Ohio river under the command of M. de Belestre. At the expiration of his term of service he became a trader with the Indians and made his home in the town of Kaskaskia. He continued in the Indian trade for the remainder of his life and accumulated a large fortune. He married at Kaskaskia 24 January 1764, Mlle. Catherine Giard, whose father was one of the earliest settlers in the Illinois country. There were four children of this marriage, three daughters and one son. The eldest daughter married Judge Pierre Louis Panet of Quebec; the second daughter married Auguste Chouteau of St. Louis, and the youngest daughter married Antoine Soulard of St. Louis. The family removed from Kaskaskia to St. Louis in 1779; Madame Cerre died there in 1800 and Mr. Cerre on 3 April 1805. The son mentioned above was born at Montreal 11 April 1773, and named Pascal Leon. He became an officer of militia at St. Louis, and occupied himself in spending the large fortune which he inherited from his father. He married at St. Louis 13 February 1797, Louise Therese Lami. He died in St. Louis, 9 May 1849. There were three children, Gabriel Pascal Cerre born at St. Louis 22 June 1800. He was in his youth an officer in the Bank of Missouri; later, it is said because of an unfortunate love affair, he went up the Missouri river and engaged in the fur trade, living generally in South Dakota. He is mentioned by many of the travelers in that country. Just when he returned to St. Louis is not now known, but he died there, unmarried, 4 March 1855. Michael Sylvester Cerre (usually called Lami Cerre) was born at St. Louis 17 April 1803. In his early youth he joined an expedition to Santa Fe and the southwest. Later he entered upon the fur trade in the Upper Missouri country, part of the time with an independent company composed of his brother, his brother-in-law, Pierre D. Papin, and himself, and a part of the time with the American Fur

Sunday, 21—* * * Three men left here for the forks of the Cheyenne River. * * *

Monday, 22—* * * Four men arrived from Apple River with dispatches from Mr. Lamont.²⁴

Tuesday, 23—* * * Crossed the Missouri for the purpose of bringing over some hay, succeeded in crossing two cart loads. Ice still dangerous.

Wednesday, 24—* * * Six men left here for Hollowood with 18 horses for the purpose of bringing in packs belonging to White River Outfit. Crossed two loads of hay today. A Yankton Indian arrived with two robes.

Thursday, 25—* * * Mr. Pascal Cerre²⁵ dined with us. Crossed all horses on this side the Missouri. At 4 p. m. Bary and Toin²⁶ with two men and 21 horses and mules arrived from the forks of Cheyenne River.

* * * * *

* * * * *

Sunday, 28—* * * A man arrived from the forks of Cheyenne with two horses, and four men with 12 horses from White River with robes.

March, 1830.

Monday, 1—* * * Sent off 13 horses to Hollowood

Company. He was associated with Bonneville and was one of his captains, the other being Joseph Reddeford Walker. After he left the fur trade he was a member of the Missouri legislature, clerk of the Circuit Court and sheriff of St. Louis county. He married at St. Louis, 10 April 1839, Helene LeBeau, and had five children. Many of his descendants are now living in Missouri and Kansas. He died at St. Louis 5 January 1860. Catherine Louise Cerre born at St. Louis 14 Sept. 1806, married there 26 September 1826, Pierre Didier Papin, who was active in the fur trade in the upper Missouri and at Fort Laramie. He died at Scott's Bluff on the Platte in May 1853; she died at St. Louis 20 April 1884. A number of their descendants are living in St. Louis.
St. Louis, 25 May 1918. —Walter B. Douglas.

²⁴Daniel Lamont. A very prominent fur trader of the period came of a notable Scotch family, one branch of which came to America and settled in New York, and has produced several men of note, among them Daniel S. Lamont, Secretary of War under Cleveland. A member of the New York clan went to Canada, and was the progenitor of this fur trader. Daniel Lamont was the prime mover in the Columbia Fur Company, and upon its absorption by the American Fur Company, became one of the three partners in the upper Missouri outfit. See Chittenden's History of the Fur Trade, p. 390.

²⁵Pascal Cerre, see Note 23. In 1843 Audubon, the naturalist, found Pascal in charge of Fort Vermillion, and says of him in the Missouri River Journal for Tuesday, May 16th, "then we came to the establishment called that of Vermillion river, and met Mr. Cerre, usually called Pascal, the agent of the company at this post, a handsome French gentleman of good manners. He dined with us."

²⁶Toin. I do not find the name elsewhere. There was a large family named Foin at Pembina in 1850. This may be the correct name. First N. D. Collections 393.

for a load of robes belonging to the White River Outfit. At the same time Baptiste Dourian²⁷ left here for the forks of the Cheyenne River.

* * * * *

Wednesday, 3—Several Indians passed the fort from above and encamped at Papin's house.

* * * * *

Friday, 5—Mr. Holliday and 9 men and 35 horses arrived from White River Outfit with furs, peltries, meat, merchandise, etc.

Saturday, 6—* * * Cut our keel boat free from the ice. The Missouri has rose a foot the last 48 hours.

Sunday, 7—* * * A man arrived from St. Louis. He said he left the Prince of Wattenburg²⁸ with 7 men and 10 horses at Cedar Island²⁹ destitute of provisions. Mr. Laidlaw, Mr. R. Holliday, myself and an Indian took horses and provisions and started to meet the party. We went five miles below Cabri Creek³⁰ but saw no signs of travelers. Mr. Laidlaw returned to the fort, and Holliday, myself and an Indian camped at Cabri Creek. The night was cold and our bed was light.

Monday, 8—In the morning I returned to the fort. Mr. Holliday and the Indian proceeded on in search of the Prince.

²⁷Baptiste Duroin (Dorian) was the son of Pierre Dorian Jr., guide to the Astorians, and grandson of that Pierre Dorian who was the guide to Lewis and Clark from St. Louis to Yankton and who was probably the first white man to establish himself in South Dakota. See Vol. IV, p. 223.

²⁸Prince of Wartenburg. This was Prince Paul Charles Henry Augustus, brother to William I, king of the paltry kingdom of Wartenburg in East Prussia. His boasted relationship to King George IV was remote, if not fanciful. This was Paul's second visit to America, he having hunted in the west in 1823. He was 33 years of age at the time of his present visit, and he received scant contemporary mention. He seems to have written an account of his travels which is mentioned by Maximilian, but which does not appear to have survived. In September 1851, Father DeSmet met him at Ash Hollow on the Platte, on his way to enjoy a buffalo hunt in the Wind river region. See Chittenden and Richardson's DeSmet, Vol. II, p. 685. The Prince died April 16, 1852, at the age of 67 years, his death occurring only six or seven months after DeSmet met him.

²⁹Cedar Island may have been any one of several islands of that name between the mouth of Chapelle creek and Big Bend. American Island at Chamberlain has sometimes been mistaken for it. From the distance traveled by this rescue party, it could scarcely have been farther away than the upper of the Three Sisters Islands of Lewis and Clark near the mouth of Cedar Creek. It may have been the island now incorporated with the east mainland at the DeGrey bend.

³⁰Cabri Creek, is the present Antelope Creek which enters the Missouri from Stanley county near the lower end of Farm Island. Lewis and Clark called it Antelope, and Cabri is the French form of the same word.

At 4 p. m. Holliday returned without finding the Prince and delivered over the provisions to the Indian and told him to continue the search down the River Missouri * * *

Tuesday, 9—The Indian arrived without signs. At 9 a. m. a man arrived who announced the safe arrival of his majesty at Mr. Papin's house. Arranged the houses for his reception. At 3 p. m. the Prince and part of his men arrived at the fort with Mr. G. P. Cerre³¹ who introduced us to his majesty. On his arrival we hoisted our flag. The day was fair and moderate with a north wind.

Wednesday, 10—* * * The remainder of the Prince's party arrived. The Prince was a fine looking man. He is about 6 feet high and somewhat corpulent. He styles himself Paul Prince of Warttenberg nephew to the present King of England. In the evening Louis Gayvin and an Indian arrived from Dickson's³² establishment (la Riviere a Jacque) in quest of merchandise.

Saturday, 13—The Prince packed up his things with the intention of starting for the Mandans tomorrow.

Sunday, 14—The Prince left here in the morning. One of his men deserted last night. We were obliged to furnish him with another to go with him as far as the Little Cheyenne River. At dark Michel Debreuil³³ and Francais Faye³⁴ arrived with two horses from the head of D'L'eau que course

³¹This is Pascal Cerre. His name was Gabriel Pascal.

³²William Dickson was the mixed blood son of Col. Robert Dickson the British Agent in the west during the War of 1812. William's mother was the sister of The Beaver, also known by his Indian name, Shoppa, the most notable chief of the Cuthead band of Yanktonais. William, at the time of this writing, was conducting a winter camp at Armadale, Spink county. He had assisted his father in the English service during the War of 1812 and in 1817 was still upon the British pay roll. In 1821 he was trading on Lake Traverse and from there wrote a letter in French, showing he was thoroughly educated. He went to Washington in 1824 as interpreter for a delegation of Sioux, and soon after entered the employ of the American Fur Company at various posts along the James river, first being at the old post on the Elm river near Frederick, which was abandoned before 1828, then at Armadale, and finally on the Nebraska shore of the Missouri opposite the mouth of James river, where he was in 1838, and where he committed suicide a few months later. Upon the James river posts and Dickson's connection with them, I was very fully informed by Joseph LaFrambois and Solomon Two Stars, Sissetons, who visited me in Sioux Falls in 1901. See Vol. 24, Western Travels, p. 96. Many of William Dickson's descendants and relatives are still in South Dakota, some of them being persons of high character and business and social prominence.

³³Debreuil. A Canadian trapper from St. Louis. His elder brother Jean Baptiste Debreuil accompanied the Astorians to Oregon, and at one time saved the life of Ramsey Crooks.

³⁴Francois Faye, is not mentioned by any of the early writers or editors of contemporaneous works.

river³⁵ where they left Frederick Laboue trading with Sioux and Poncas. They brought in 8 horses loaded with robes as far as Cos house on White River, from thence they came here with two horses light. They had been five days without eating a mouthful.

Monday, 15—* * * The snow and ice melting fast. Mr. Noble dined with us today. Mr. Laidlaw, Holliday and myself were weighed today. I weighed only 130 pounds.

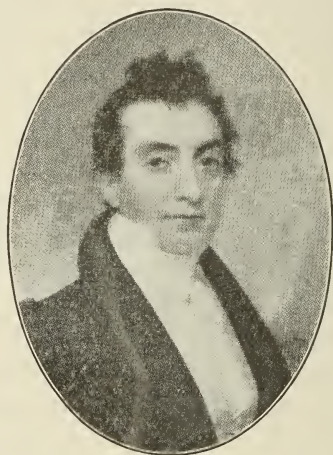
Tuesday, 16—* * * Jos. Jeutt and family arrived from forks of Cheyenne River. He says the snow is very deep in that neighborhood. I have now been nearly four years absent from home.³⁷ I left there the 16th of June 1826. Proceeded on to St. Louis in company with Mr. Crooks.³⁶ On my arrival there I engaged myself to the American Fur Co. in the capacity of clerk in the business of the Indian trade. In August I left St. Louis on the stage for Franklin (a small town in Missouri state) when I overtook the company boats, and embarked aboard and proceeded up the Missouri River. I continued in good health until we reached Kansas River, where I was taken ill with the fever and ague and continued very sick until the middle of December. During my sickness I was very much exposed to weather, being in an open boat and having no place to shelter me from the inclemency of the season. I arrived at the Arriccarras village in November. Remained there until the middle of December, when my health was so far recovered that I started for the Mandan villages,

³⁵D'Leau que course river; this is the Quicurre, or Niobrara River. The chief station in this region was at the forks a few miles southwest of the present Valentine, Nebraska, and that was the farthest field of operations of the upper Missouri outfit in that direction. It was reached by a well defined trail from Fort Pierre, to the mouth of the Little White and thence up that stream.

³⁶Ramsey Crooks was born in Greenock, Scotland, January 2, 1787, and came to America when 16 years of age, and spent the remainder of his life in the fur trade and became only second to John J. Astor in the business. He died in New York, June 6, 1859; for a very full sketch see Chittenden's History of the Fur Trade, p. 381.

³⁷Chittenden identifies the writer of this Journal as Jacob Halsey. See History of the Fur Trade, p. 393. "Jacob Halsey, clerk and partner of the U. M. O. served mainly at Forts Pierre and Union. He kept the journal at Pierre, and on one occasion varied its monotony by introducing an interesting dissertation upon Mandan and Arickara Indians. He was a valuable man, but given to hard drink which eventually ruined his constitution. In 1837 he had small pox at Fort Union. Late in the summer of 1842, while on a visit at Laidlaw's home, near Liberty, Missouri, he became intoxicated, and while in this condition, rode rapidly along a road, through some trees. His head struck one of the trees, and he was instantly killed." He was probably a native of New Jersey.

where I arrived safe after traveling five days. I remained there till spring of 1827, when Mr. P. D. Papin and myself left with five skin canoes and one bateau laden with the fruits of our trade (300 packs of robes, 5 of beaver and 5 musk robes) C. F. Cy³⁸ had two bateaus and two skin canoes



RAMSEY CROOKS

laden with furs and peltries. We arrived safe at St. Louis the beginning of June. The reason for descending this year was sickness. I applied to Dr. Lane of St. Louis for medical aid and in one month was restored to excellent health and have continued to enjoy that great blessing (with little intermission) ever since. In August following I again left St. Louis for the Upper Missouri. We arrived at Ft. Look-out in November. The boat I was on board of was stopped here by the ice. I was ordered to prepare to start afoot for Vermillion River (a distance of about 300 miles). Accordingly on the 25th noon myself, two men and an Indian family, with two horses to carry our baggage started on the voyage which we were 19 days in performing. We had very

³⁸C. F. Cy. This reference is I think unquestionably to the Columbia Fur Company which at this time was nearing the end of its existence. It sold its property to the American Fur Company that summer, closed up its affairs and was dissolved October 14, 1830.

bad weather, the snow was so deep that we were frequently obliged to make roads for our horses. We often passed a day without eating. I never knew what it was to suffer before. I remained at Vermillion River till March 1828, when I went to the Poncas. Made a spring trade with those Indians, and returned to the Vermillion the latter end of May, I remained there living in an Indian hut, till July, when one of the company's boats arrived from St. Louis. I embarked on board and proceeded on to this place, where I remained till fall. I thence embarked in a little boat with Mr. Laidlaw and proceeded up the river as far as the mouth of Hart River, where Mr. Laidlaw wintered with the Yanctonnas, and I proceeded on to the Mandans by land and wintered there. In the spring of 1829 I left the Mandans and descended as far as this place, where I have been ever since.

March, Wednesday, 17—The Mandan Indian live in wigwams.³⁹ They are from 30 to 60 feet in diameter, made in the form of a boat turned upside down. The frame is made of wood. Over the top some branches are thickly laid and over this about six inches of dirt. In the center there is a hole dug in the ground, which serves as a fire place, immediately above this is another made for smoke to pass through. On the side of the wigwam (or as it is called by the French, dirt Lodge) their berths are placed, and all the furniture is kept. The other side is appropriated for the horses. They are obliged to stable their horses because they have always more or less enemies to contend with. They have at present the Assiniboines in the north, the Cheyennes south, the Sioux and Arriaccarras east and the Blackfeet Indian west of them. All of these nations they are now at war with. The Mandans are of a lighter complexion than the Indians south and east of them. The men are in general tall and well proportioned, neat in their appearance and kind and affable in the home, but when met on the plains in a war excursion they are not to be trusted. Some of these Indians have blue eyes, and I have seen children of about 12 or 13 years of age with gray hair. The women are generally stout,

³⁹For fuller accounts of the Mandans, see Mr. DeLand's History of the Mandans in Vol. IV of these Collections.

well made and rather neat than otherwise in appearance. They are however much addicted to fornication. In fact they are so much depraved, that there are few among them who are free from venereal disease. The men do not scruple to lend their wives to the whites without solicitation. The great superstitions of these Indians constrains them in many instances to rigorous suffering. A young man before going to war will have two holes cut in his back near the shoulders. Through these holes a cord is passed, to the two ends of which a Buffalo Bull's head is attached. Thus arranged he will proceed at a little distance before midnight, without anything to defend him from the coldness of the sharp winters night and walk around the village, training the bull's head after him till the weight of it tears his flesh away, alternately crying and imploring the Great Spirit or Master of Life, to grant him success in war, and not to let him return to his village without bringing trophies of his having been victorious. They have many other modes of torture equally severe, all of which they sustain with extraordinary calmness. It was formerly a custom among these people to cut off a joint of one of their fingers at the death of a relation, beginning with the little finger of the right hand, but, I believe it has of late years been nearly, or quite abolished. However, be this as it may, you seldom see one of the men who does not bear evident signs of his having been burnt, cut, or mangled in some part of his body, for without such proof he would not be considered under the appellation of Man. The women at the death of a relation cut off their hair, and scarify their head and legs in a shocking manner.

They do not bury their dead, but, after dressing the corpse in its best clothes, wrap it in skins and place on a scaffold outside the village. They state that their tradition says they were once a powerful nation occupying 13 large villages, but were reduced to their present number (which is 2 villages, one of thirty and the other of about sixty wigwams) by the small pox which raged among them about 30 years ago. Since that time they say their number has neither increased or diminished. Superstition induces them to say that their ancestors formerly lived under ground, that at a

certain time a grape vine was discovered to have grown up to the surface of the earth. A young man more daring than the rest, attempted to climb the vine and succeeded in reaching the top without accident. He then to his infinite gratification and delight discovered that the face of the earth was covered with buffalo, and immediately made known the joyful tidings to his nation upon which most of them succeeded in reaching the surface of the earth in safety. The last who attempted to ascend the vine was a fat old woman with a child on her back, but her weight was too great, for the vine broke then and she was precipitated with her charge to her former abode. After death they suppose their souls are wafted back to this, the Indian abode of their forefathers, and then live anew. A gentleman of my acquaintance who recently passed the summer with the Mandans informed me that while walking one day in the village he observed an old man sitting beside the wigwam, wrapt in a white buffalo skin, and who appeared to be speaking with a good deal of vehemence. He also noted the Indians presenting him different things. Upon which he asked them the meaning of it. They replied that a great while ago their country was destroyed by a flood, and some of the people perished, since which time those who escaped, sacrificed yearly, a part of their property, believing that by so doing, the Great Spirit would look on them in pity, and not punish them again by inundation, as long as they continued the ceremony.

The Mandans are extremely fond of bathing at all seasons of the year. Both men and women are good swimmers. In the spring of the year, when the ice on the river breaks up, there is always more or less buffalo drowned by attempting to cross the river when the ice is weak. At this period the young men keep a good lookout, and if they discover the dead carcas of a buffalo drifting upon the river they immediately strip, take a cord and pole, jump onto the drifting ice, and leap from cake to cake, until they come within reach of the object of their pursuit, which they secure with a cord, and then return to the shore, in the same manner they frequently fall in the water, but as they are expert swimmers, they contrive to catch the ends of the pole on two cakes of

ice, which supports them until they have an opportunity of getting out. They generally land about one half mile below the place from whence they started. The flesh of the buffalo that has been drowned about a week is considered a delicious morsel by these Indians. In war the Mandans are brave and expert. Some years ago 44 Assiniboines proceeded against them. They hid themselves in holes about two miles from the south village, and killed one or two women before they were discovered. When the Mandans attacked they killed 37 in their holes, and six they slew in the river with their knives, so that only one escaped to carry the tidings to his nation. The Mandans lost four men in this battle.

First time I visited the Mandans I saw their chief in his most stylish habiliments. He wore around his neck as a token of his bravery, a complete set of human fingers, which he had taken from the body of one of his enemies, after killing him in battle. I also saw a drum at the Mandans, which the Indian told me, was made out of the skin of an Arriccarras Indian.

The Minniterees (or as they are called by the French, Groventres) live but a short distance above the Mandans (which is situated in latitude 47 degrees and some minutes north. They have three villages and are rather more numerous than their neighbors the Mandans. I suppose both nations can raise 600 fighting men. They are always at peace with each other, and have the same enemies. In their appearance, manners and customs they differ but little from the Mandans, but there is a great difference in the language. That of the Mandans is very difficult to learn. Lots of the Mandans speak the Minnitterree language, but I never saw one Minnitterree that could speak the Mandan tongue; although they have lived near each other a long time and seen each other daily. The Minnitterrees are great thieves and are much more troublesome to the traders than the Mandans.

Both nations raise corn, beans and pumpkins in great abundance.

Wednesday, March 17, 1830—* * * I forgot to men-

tion that Louis Gagnim⁴⁰ and an Indian started yesterday for Dickson's establishment, riviere a Jacque.

Thursday, 18—* * * J. Juette with four men and ten horses left here for D' leau qui course river. They have gone there for the purpose of bringing furs and peltries. * * *

Friday, 19—* * * Jacque Letand arrived from the Navy Yard. He says John Gamlin⁴¹ (one of our men at work there) is very ill. His complaint a severe pain in the left side. Messrs. Laidlaw, Holliday and myself played at cross ball with the squaws. They bet moccassins against beads. We came off victorious. Two men and four horses arrived on the other side and camped there. The Missouri ice is too weak for them to cross at present.

The Arricarras Indians lived in dirt wigwams on the banks of the Missouri River, about sixty leagues below the Mandans villages. They have two villages and can muster about 550 warriors. They differ very little in their manners and customs from the Mandans and Minniterrees, but in their character they differ much. They are deceitful and treacherous in the extreme, cowardly in wars, and faithless in peace. They are at present surrounded with enemies, for which reason they are afraid to go far from their villages. Therefore they frequently starve, when buffalo are near at hand. Their language is soft and harmonious to the ear, and is easily acquired. They have heretofore killed many white men. At present a white man would be safe in their villages but if caught alone on the plains they would be sure to rob or kill him. Seldom a year passes without their killing one or more of our men. In the winter of 1828 they killed one at the Mandans. About 8 months ago a boatman in the employ was stabbed to death with a knife about a half mile

⁴⁰Louis Gagnim. I believe this should be Gagnon, the name of a family well known in Canada and in the western fur trade. Pierre Gagnon lived in Cahokia in 1789 (Houck). Pierre and Joseph Gagnon appear in the roster of the employees of the Rocky Mountain House, October 26, 1806. See Coues New Light, p. 566. Ernest Gagnon of the same family has published a life of Jolliet, which is deemed the first real authority upon the service of that notable explorer. There was a family named De Gagnier at Kaskaskia; our Louis may have been a Gagnier.

⁴¹John Gamlin. This name is Gamelin, though frequently written as in the text. He was of a notable French family of Detroit, and was a relative of that Jeremais, nephew of Verendrye, who about a century earlier, died at the site of Winnipeg; see Croghan's Journal, p. 109.

above their village. The assassin was a Sioux Indian, but he was (according to his own words) instigated to the act by an Arriccarras, to assuage the wretchedness of an old chief who had formerly lost a favorite chief in battle. While I was at the Mandans in the winter of 1828-9 the two nations were at war with each other. Sometime in the middle of the winter an Arriccarree arrived at the village. He had several strong relations among the Mandans, consequently he did not apprehend much danger of being slain. He was not molested, on the contrary he was treated with a great deal of kindness. He told the Mandans he was sent by his nation to entreat for peace. They assured him they were ready to comply with his proposal or entreaty. He then pledged himself on the part of his nation that the Mandans and the Grosventres (or Minniterrees) should be no more molested by the Arriccarrees. He was afterwards loaded with presents and sent back to his village. Before he had proceeded far on his journey he fell in with a Mandan boy, who he treacherously murdered and scalped, and then made the best of his way home.

Saturday, March 20, 1830—* * * Jacque Letand left here for the Navy Yard. Sent up a blister plaster and other medicine for Gamlin. The ice on the Missouri commenced breaking today.

Sunday, 21—* * * Ice on Missouri stopped running last night.

Monday, 22—* * * At noon the rest of the Missouri ice in the vicinity of this place broke up, and continued drifting at dark.

* * * * *

Wednesday, 24—* * * One of our men arrived from the Navy Yard, one from Little Cheyenne River, and two of P. D. Papin & Co.'s men. The two latter were the same who arrived on the other side with four horses on the 19th ultimo. They were from the Sanchannas (or Sauchannas).⁴² They say that Mr. Lamont came near being killed by one of

⁴²Sanchannas. This is clearly a corruption of Yanktonnas, a form of Yanktonais, much in use at the earlier period. See Ramsey's report to the Indian Commissioner, 1850. That this is intended for the Yanktonais is indicated by the fact that Lamont's establishment was on Apple Creek, recognized Yanktonais territory. See this Journal for March 22.

the Indians at his place. He was fired at in his own house, but the intended blow warded off by his negro boy, and the ball passed above his (Mr. Lamont) head. They also state, that they left an Indian on the other side the Missouri with dispatches from above. Our man (Francaís Montaigne) from the Navy Yard announces the melancholy tidings of the death of John B. Gamlin. He departed this life without a struggle about 12 o'clock last night.

Thursday, 25—* * * Montaigne and Lataille⁴³ returned to the Navy Yard. At dark two of the men who left here on the 18th ulto returned from White River with nine horses loaded with robes.

Friday, 26—* * * An Indian called Mauvais Bouef and two squaws arrived from White River. This Indian is a man of considerable consequence among the Brules. He had the misfortune to have the end of his nose bit off in a drunken frolic last fall at Messrs P. D. Papin & Co.'s house on the Teton River. He who committed the act was an Yanc-ton, he was shot dead by the relation of the Mauvais Bouef about an hour after he bit him. The circumstance excited a good deal of enmity on the part of the Yanc-ton at the time, but I believe they are now quite pacific. * * *

Saturday, 27—* * * Messrs. Noble and Cerre dined with us.

Monday, March 29, 1830—* * * At night saw some persons arrive and camp on the other side the Missouri.

Tuesday, 30—* * * Large bodies drifting at 12 a. m.

Thursday, April 1, 1830—* * * Caught a good deal of drift wood today. Hands employed pressing packs. 8 or 10 Indians arrived on the other side the Missouri. Pressed 46 packs robes today.

Friday, 2—* * * Nine Indians from the other side the Missouri. They brought with them a quantity of robes

⁴³Lataille. I do not find this name in any of the records. Montaigne and Letand (Letendre) were running mates. See this Journal for February 2 and 18, and it is likely they were together at this time and the use of Lataille is due to a mistake in deciphering careless penmanship. Francois Detaille, a half breed hunter, accompanied Audubon on his return from Fort Union in 1843. Denau Detaille, Indian interpreter died in St. Louis 1771.

which we traded. At 3 p. m. Pierre Dauphin⁴⁴ arrived from Little Cheyenne river. He was sent by our trader there for a boat to bring down his fur, peltries, etc. At 5 p. m. crossed three of the Indians who came in to trade this morning. Louis Lagrave⁴⁵ arrived from Vermillion. He (saw?) a party with Francis Roy five days ago (which supposing they were taking the best road) since which time he has tasted no food. We prepared 28 packs of robes today.

Saturday, 3—* * * Pressed 16 packs of robes today.
* * *

Sunday, 4—* * * Francais Roy arrived from Council Bluffs. Caught a drowned buffalo which we presented to our starving (contested) friends.

Monday, 5—* * * Pressed 19 packs of robes. * * *

Tuesday, 6—* * * Dispatched Alexis Tibaut and three men for the Little Cheyenne river for the purpose of bringing down what packs the company may have there. Two Indian left here with them. * * * Pressed 27 packs of robes.

Tuesday, 6, at 8 p. m.—Joseph Juett arrived from La Riveire L'eau course. He left Mr. LeBoue with furs, and peltries, etc about two days march from here on his way in from trading.

Thursday, 8—* * * Frederick Leboue and three men arrived from L'eau qui course river with 12 horses laden with furs, peltries, etc.

Friday, 9—* * * F. A. Chardon⁴⁶ arrived from forks of Cheyenne with seven skin canoes laden with 4,360 buffalo robes and a quantity of furs merchandise etc. Mr. P. D. Papin of the firm of P. D. Papin & Co arrived at the same

⁴⁴Antoine Dauphin was an engage. Dauphin Rapids in the Upper Missouri is named for this man because he fell into the stream while passing the rapids. He died with the small pox at Fort Union in 1837. Maximillion mentions him at page 67.

⁴⁵Lagrave was a Canadian voyager who came to the Missouri by way of the Red River. See New Light, p. 302.

⁴⁶F. A. Chardon had lived many years with the Osages before entering the employ of the American Fur Company in 1828. He seems to have opened the post and maintained the trade at the Forks of the Cheyenne, but, before 1837, was entrusted with more responsible work, and placed in command of Fort McKenzie, near the head of the Missouri. He died at Fort Berthold in 1848. Chittenden says "he was an able, but unscrupulous trader, and somewhat desperate when his evil nature was aroused." History of the Fur Trade, 373; Maximilian 184.

time with two canoes. He camped here for the night. Mr. Chardon unfortunately lost a canoe with 400 robes in descending the Cheyenne river. Pressed 22 packs of robes today. Three or four Indians arrived from the other side the Missouri with fresh meat, they state that buffalo are in great abundance in the neighborhood of Medicine Hill.

Sunday, 11—* * * Messrs. Papin, Cerre and Noble dined with us.⁴⁷ In the after part of the day sent six horses across the Missouri. A party of gentlemen contemplate going to hunt buffalo tomorrow. * * *

Tuesday, 13—Made and pressed 69 packs of robes today.

Wednesday, 14—* * * Messrs. Laidlaw, Papin, Cerre, Chardon and Laboue with six men and 10 or 12 horses left here for Medicine Hill on a hunting excursion. At one pm an Indian arrived from Medicine Hill.⁴⁸ Made and pressed 86 packs of robes today. Set three men at work making a fence for the garden. * * *

Thursday, 15—* * * Sent a skiff across the river in the morning and brought over the men who arrived last night, Joseph Juett and Francais Montaigne, the latter came in quest of men to help turn the bateaux at the Navy Yard. Made and pressed 94 packs of robes today. I understand that one of Messrs P. D. Papin & Co's men (Derocher)⁴⁹ died last night at their establishment on Teton river.

Friday, April 16, 1830—* * * At 12 am Messrs. Laidlaw, Chardon and Laboue arrived from hunting. At 2 pm the rest of the party arrived on the other side the Missouri. * * * They state that they found buffalo in great plenty about twenty miles from here. They succeeded in killing six. Made and pressed 73 packs of robes today. In

⁴⁷The growing social intimacy between the managers of the two posts will be noted. In fact they were already negotiating a consolidation of the two businesses. It was the policy of the American to buy out all opposition as soon as it became formidable, and more than one "opposition" was like Hodge's razors "made to sell."

⁴⁸Medicine Hill. The high butte, near Blunt, Hughes county. See Vol. VI, p. 209.

⁴⁹Derocher. Do not find the name elsewhere in the Fur Trade. There were many of the name of Laroque, or Laroche, at least two of whom were in South Dakota and left half blood families here. Laurent de Rocher, aged 34, was a member of the St. Louis militia in 1780. Spanish Regime, p. 184.

the early part of the day F. Montaigne and 8 men left here for the Navy Yard.

Saturday, April 17—* * * 11 Ree Indians and 1 squaw arrived from the village. They descended the river in canoes and say they are bound for the Pawnee lodges. Made and pressed 80 packs of robes today.

Monday, April 19—* * * Made and pressed 83 packs of robes today. At dusk Pineau le Yancton⁵⁰ (Who left here on the 15th inst to hunt) returned with the flesh of two buffalo. He says cattle are in great plenty not more than ten miles from here on the other side of the Missouri.

Tuesday, April 20—* * * Joseph Juett and one man left here for Medicine Hill with a small equipment of goods to trade meat and robes. At 1 pm Messrs. Laidlaw, Chardon, Holliday, Laboue⁵¹ and myself rode down to Mr. Papin's house. We returned in the evening accompanied by Messrs. Papin, Cerre, and Noble. Messrs. Premeau⁵² and J. Holliday arrived from the Little Cheyenne with a bateaux laden with peltries, merchandise etc. Joseph Lorngeau⁵³ arrived from the Navy Yard in quest of pitch, cordage, thread etc for bateaux.

Wednesday, April 21—* * * Messrs. Papin, Curre and Noble returned home.

Thursday, April 22—* * * Unloaded the bateau that arrived on the 20th ultimo. Three men left here in

⁵⁰Pineau, the Yankton. This name is sometimes written Primeau, the Yankton, but I am inclined to think Pineau is correct. I find no record of the Primeaus being on the Missouri until about this time, 1828-30, and this Indian was a man already holding a responsible position. Pineau is a French name for a certain sort of grape vine and its fruit, and it is believable that this man was called by his Indian friends Chanwiyape, which the French translated into their own language.

⁵¹This is Frederick LaBoue (LaBoo) the murderer of Quenel and is not to be confused with LaBeau. His name has appeared before in this journal and further note will appear at the proper place. LaBoue died January 1848 at the Oglala post on White River, where he was trading in company with Basil Clement (Claymore).

⁵²This is where the original Primeau comes upon the scene. For thirty-five years thereafter Charles Primeau was a notable leader upon the Missouri. He was the son of Jean Baptiste Primeau, and was born in St. Louis in 1811, and died at Fort Yates, North Dakota in 1897. The family was of early Canadian stock; his ancestor Antoine Primot, according to Sulte, took land at Three Rivers in 1648. Charles Primeau had an Indian family, one son becoming the well known Louis Primeau, for many years interpreter at Standing Rock. Another son Antoine was murdered by Jerry Potts in 1863 at Fort Galpin. Charles Primeau was in charge of Fort Pierre in 1862, during the exciting times of the War of the Outbreak, and assisted in the rescue of some of the white captives. See Vol. I, North Dakota Collections, p. 377; also Larpenteur, page 227.

⁵³Lorngeau. I get no hint of this man.

search of Mr. Thomas Sarpy⁵⁴ who we presume is descending the Cheyenne in skin canoes and in want of assistance, as it is now a long time since we supposed he must have left his wintering grounds. Two men also left here for the Navy Yard with two jackasses loaded with pitch, cordage, etc. for the bateaux. * * * 3 pm. sent the bateaux across the Missouri after meat. It returned in the evening with a load.

Saturday, 24—* * * Saw the new moon today. Commenced taking inventory of stock.

Sunday, April 25—* * * Joseph Juett arrived from Yanctons camp at Medicine Hill, with robes and meat. He also brought with him a living young buffalo calf.

Monday, April 26—* * * Laidlow, Chardon, Laboue and three men crossed the Missouri for the purpose of hunting buffalo. Messrs. Papin and Noble dined with us. Made and pressed 75 packs of robes today.

Tuesday, April 27—Messrs Picotte⁵⁵ and Chenie⁵⁶ passed here with four skin canoes loaded with robes. * * * Our boat builders arrived from the Navy Yard with four bateaux. The gentlemen who went out hunting yesterday returned with a quantity of fresh buffalo meat and five living calves.

⁵⁴Thomas L. Sarpy, was one of the best known of the Missouri River traders. He was a son of Gregoire Berald Sarpy, who with his brothers John Baptiste and Sylvester, came directly from France to New Orleans about 1750, and engaged in mercantile business there. They removed to St. Louis in 1763, at the foundation of the latter place. Thomas was born at St. Louis about 1800 and grew up in the fur trade. He was killed by an explosion of powder at the Oglala post at the junction of Wounded Knee and White River, January 30, 1832. See this journal of that date. They had had a busy day at the post, and he was putting away the robes taken in trade. An assistant was passing these robes over a counter upon which a candle was standing, and it is supposed was blown by the gusts caused in handling the robes into a keg of fifty pounds of powder which sat open behind the counter. In the explosion that followed the post was completely demolished and Sarpy was instantly killed, his body being mutilated beyond recognition. James Parker, Pineau the Yankton and Louison the Brule were in the room and not seriously hurt.

⁵⁵Enter Honore Picotte, for a very satisfactory account of whom read Dr. DeLorme W. Robinson's sketch of the family at page 113, of Vol. I, of these Collections; also Chittenden's *Fur Trade*, 389.

⁵⁶Chenie. As the Journal suggests Mr. Chenie was a partner in the French company. The previous July Pierre Choteau, writing to Kenneth McKenzie, says: "It now remains for me to tell you of the new company which is lately formed here, consisting of eight partners who are Messrs. Papin, Chenie fils, the two Cerres, Delaurier, Picotte, Denis Guion, and Louis Bonfort, with an equipment of \$16,000 of which each partner contributes an equal share." I am not able to learn the given name of this man. In 1795 Antoine Chenie of Kaskaskia settled in St. Louis. He was perhaps Chenie, pere. .

They say cattle are still in great plenty about 20 miles from here. Made and pressed 35 packs of robes today.

Wednesday, April 28—* * * Messrs. Papin, Picotte, Chenie, Noble and seven other gentlemen, all our opponents in trade dined with us. They all return home in the evening except Mr. Noble who passed the night with us.

Thursday, April 29—* * * Messrs. Picotte, Chenie, Winter,⁵⁷ Baird⁵⁸ and five interpreters and Indians rode up and passed the night with us.

Friday, April 30—* * * Messrs. Laidlaw, Chardon, Primeau, J. M. Holliday and seven or more attended by Mr. Picotte's party left here with horses for a hunting excursion on the other side of the Missouri. Mr. Noble returned home. One of the buffalo calves died today and we have another which I think will not live long.

Sunday, May 2, 1830—* * * Messrs. Picotte, Laidlow and Chardon arrived from hunting—they left the rest of the party behind. Some of them arrived late on the other side the Missouri and have camped there for the night. They killed 23 cows and 9 calves and are bringing in six living calves. Cattle continue in great abundance not more than 25 miles from this.

Monday, May 3—* * * We are much concerned for the safety of the hunters who left here on the 30th of last month. They have however all returned in safety. Some of them passed the night under the snow. The severe weather killed two of their horses. At 12 am Mr. Picotte and his party returned home with the fruit of their hunt. Our men brought in four living calves, they had more, but were obliged to abandon them on the prairie.

Tuesday, May 4—* * * Some men employed overhauling robes and making a new baggage outside the fort. Sent two men across the river in the morning to look after party left behind by the hunters in the storm. In the evening they returned without finding anything.

⁵⁷Winter. There was a Captain Winter in the employ of the American Fur Company at Mackinaw. Captain Winter is mentioned by Bradbury, in 1811. I only suggest this may be the same man. Jim Beckwourth tells of a runner named Winters who brought a message from McKenzie to him at Crow Camp, p. 177. He is mentioned at page 351 of the Fur Trade.

⁵⁸Biard. I cannot identify.

Wednesday, 5 May, 1830—* * * Dispatched three men across the river in the morning, on the same errand as those we sent yesterday. They found the party and returned in the evening. At 9 am Mr. Emillian Primeau⁵⁹ left here alone in a canoe for St. Louis. Hands employed today overhauling robes, making packs, pressing them etc.

Thursday, 6 May—* * * Finished making and pressing packs. At 4 pm the man whom we sent in quest of Mr. Sarpy on the 22 of last month, returned without any intelligence of him. They followed the river Cheyenne, as far as Mr. Chardon wintering ground, when they found themselves destitute of provisions and nearly barefooted, and consequently returned. We now think that both himself and those who were with him have been killed by some war party. At 5 pm * * * Messrs. Lamont, Pilcher,⁶⁰ Sanford,⁶¹ Dickson, and Campbell⁶² arrived. They left two keel boats and one bateaux loaded with robes etc opposite the island about three miles above this.

Friday, May 7—* * * At 7 am the keel boats arrived. Unloaded one of them. At 12 am we were visited by Messrs. Picotte, Papin and Winter. After dining with us they returned home. * * *

Saturday, May 8—* * * Louis Piton⁶³ arrived from the Cheyenne River where he left Mr. T. L. Sarpy with his peltries. He has unfortunately lost a skin canoe loaded with robes. It is now about two months since he left his wintering ground, during which time the weather has been so unfavorable that he has not made more than 60 miles in two months. His canoes were rotten, and he has sent in Piton for a supply of horses to bring his returns. In the evening

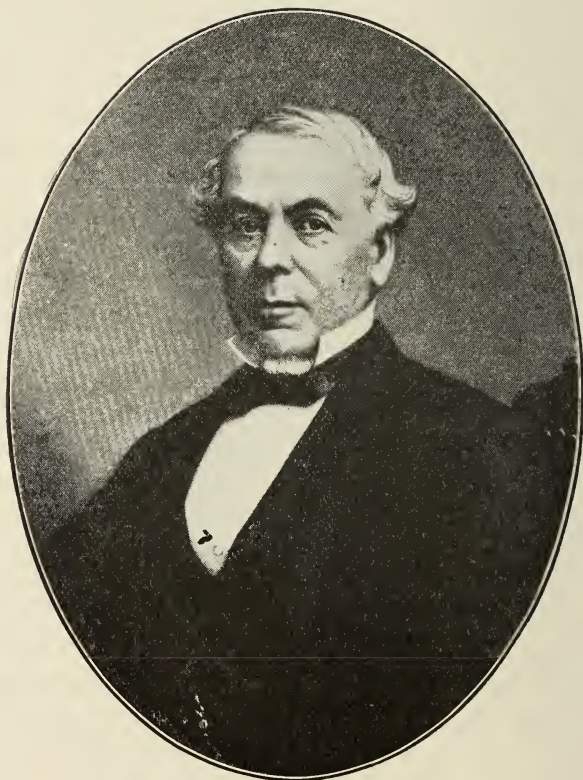
⁵⁹Emillian Primeau, was a brother of Charles Primeau. See note 52. Emillian was killed by an Indian at Apple Creek (Bismarck) in 1836. See N. D. Coll. Vol. I, p. 377.

⁶⁰Joshua Pilcher. For sketch of this distinguished man, see Vol. I, p. 251.

⁶¹Major John F. A. Sanford, a native of Winchester, Virginia, came west as Indian sub-agent in 1827, and was sent to the Mandans. He married Emilie Choteau, daughter of Pierre Choteau; by the way, Emilie's name is preserved in South Dakota through Emilie Island at Little Bend. Choteau later sent Sanford east to represent the company in New York.

⁶²Colin Campbell. Several men of this name appear in Northwestern history. There may have been as many as five as follows:

1. Colin Campbell, partner of J. B. Faribault on the Minnesota



ROBERT CAMPBELL

Messrs. Pilcher, and Sanford and servant left here for St. Louis in a skiff.

Sunday, May 9—Finished loading three keel boats with furs and peltries. * * * At noon Piton, Dickson, Degrey⁶⁴ and Lachapele⁶⁵ with one man left here with 52 horses, mules and jackasses to bring in the remainder of Sarpy's packs.

Monday, May 10—Last evening Mr. William Dickson and family arrived. We crossed them this morning. Dick-

River, in 1804. He was shot and killed by one Crawford at Mackinaw in 1806. Minnesota Collections Vol. 3, p. 172.

2. Colin Campbell, interpreter to Lawrence Taliferro, agent to the Indians near Fort Snelling, 1820. Taliferro gives him a high character. Minnesota Collections, Vol. 1, p. 425, Vol. 6, p. 212. According to Wisconsin Collections, Volume 9, p. 464 this Colin Campbell was the son of Archibald Campbell and was a mixed blood.

3. Colin Campbell, associated with Cuthbert Grant, on the lower Red River of the north about 1816. Wisconsin Historical Collections Vol. X, p. 503, Colin 2 and Colin 3 may have been the same man but it is scarcely probable.

4. Colin Campbell, who was interpreter to Joshua Pilcher in the campaign of 1823 against the Arickara. Col. Leavenworth gives him a bad character. 1st South Dakota Collections, p. 223. He was undoubtedly the Colin Campbell mentioned in the text, and if so was a brother of Robert Campbell's of Saint Louis.

5. Colin Campbell, enumerated at Yankton Agency in the United States census of 1860 as 50 years of age born in Canada, an interpreter by profession and married to an Indian woman. This Colin certainly was not old enough to have been anyone of those above mentioned.

⁶³Louis Piton. I am unable to identify this man by this nickname which simply means "coppernose" or "bottlenose." He may have been any one of the many Louis's we have discussed under their proper name. However there was a family in the western trade named Pilon, one of whom starved at the forks of the Mackenzie; it is possible that this name is Pilon instead of Piton. Again, there were among the Creoles of Louisiana a numerous family of Pitou, in manuscript it would be easy to mistake Pitou for Piton. Alexis Pillon was killed by the Blackfeet on October 14, 1832 on the Stinkingwater. See Fur Trade 669.

⁶⁴Charles DeGrey was the mixed blood son of Philip DeGrey, a French Canadian who was in the employ of the Northwest Company; his mother was a half breed Chippewa woman. Charles DeGrey was born near Omaha, Nebraska, 1823, and spent his life on the Missouri River. He married a daughter of Henri Picotte, at Fort Pierre, and they made a home on the Chapelle creek, at the present DeGrey postoffice. One of his daughters was the first wife of Henry L. Jones, who still resides at DeGrey. Charles DeGrey at one time went down on to Platte Creek in Charles Mix county and took land there, but afterwards returned to DeGrey. He guided John B. Pearson from the Missouri river to the Black Hills in 1875, but returned before Pearson made his famous discovery of the Deadwood placer. He died at DeGrey, June 17, 1877.

⁶⁵David LaChapelle. The Chapelle's were natives of Montreal; the real name was Janot, but the nickname has been in use for a long time and as early as 1750 the real name was rarely used. Bazile Janot, LaChapelle, was the grandfather of David. He was born at Montreal in 1741, and there married Marie Elizabeth Choquet in 1767. Three years later they removed to Kaskaskia where Bazile was an important citizen for thirty years. His sons were Antoine, Jean Baptiste, Joseph, Louis and perhaps Charles. Which of these was the father of David I am unable to learn. David came to the Dakota region as early as 1828 and married a Sioux woman of the Two Kettle band, and they maintained a sort of home at the mouth of Chapelle creek which was named for David. In 1829 a son was born to this union, who became the notable Swift Bird of the Cheyenne River reservation. Chapelle continued to make his home at Chapelle creek until his death which occurred sometime in the seventies.

son brought with him 27 packs of robes and a few other furs. Loaded 5 bateaux today.

Tuesday, May 11—* * * Three keel boats and 5 bateaux left here for St. Louis. They have on board upwards of 2,000 packs of furs and peltries. Passengers, Messrs Laidlow, Lamont, R. T. Holiday⁶⁶, Bourk,⁶⁷ Hay,⁶⁸ and Laboue, * * * One of the buffalo calves died today.

Wednesday, May 12, 1830—* * * In the morning rode down to Mr. Papin's house. In the evening returned in company of Messrs. Papin, Picotte, Winter, L. Cerre and Mr. Alvaripe⁶⁹ who passed the night with us. Our visitors returned home in the morning.

Friday, May 14—* * * Baptiste Durion and Pineau le Yancton killed each an antelope today.

Saturday, May 15—* * * 10 Yanctonais arrived on the other side the Missouri. Sent over boat and crossed them. They were encamped about two days march from here. Say they have plenty of buffalo in their neighborhood, and come in quest of a trader.

Sunday, May 16—* * * We were visited by Messrs. Papin, Picotte, Winter and Alvaripe. Six more Indians arrived from the other side the Missouri about two days march from here. They also come in quest of traders. Put up two equipments of merchandise, one for each camp.

Monday, 17—In the morning J. M. Holiday and Baptiste Durion left here with goods to trade with the Yanctannas and Saons. Pineau le Yancton crossed over the river with them and returned this evening with fresh buffalo meat. I forgot to say that the Indian will leave here with Durion and Holiday. The most distinguished man among them was a young chief called "He that speaks the truth."

Tuesday, 18 May—* * * Chardon and myself rode down to Papin's house where we dined. In the evening we returned to the fort * * * Hands are employed today planting potatoes.

⁶⁶R. T. Holiday. See note 15.

⁶⁷Bourk. Something suggests to me that this man was Irish, but aside from that I find no word that will make his name immortal.

⁶⁸Hay. The name does not appear in any index. In 1806 Lewis and Clark found a Mr. John Hay, fur trader at Cahokia. It is suggestive.

⁶⁹Alvaripe. Haven't a suggestion.

Wednesday 19—* * * At 4 pm Hugh Glass⁷⁰ and Francois Vione⁷¹ with 9 men arrived from Ft. Union. They came in a skiff and wooden canoe and were sent in quest of horses, etc.

Thursday, 20—* * * Holiday and Durion returned with about 10 packs of robes. Five Indians came in with them. Saw a large band of buffalo on the opposite side the Missouri today. Killed four of them.

Friday, 21—* * * At 10 am Mr. T. L. Sarpy and party arrived with 50 odd horses loaded with 108 pack of buffalo, robes, a little beaver, merchandise, tallow etc. In the evening 11 Indians arrived from the other side the Missouri.

Saturday, May 22, 1830—Engaged packing horses to sent to Ft. Union.

Sunday, May 23—In the morning Messrs. Glass, Vione, Winter, Halliday, Degray and Lachapelle left here with 12 men and 58 horses and mules for Ft. Union, Yellowstone river. * * * All the Indians left here today.

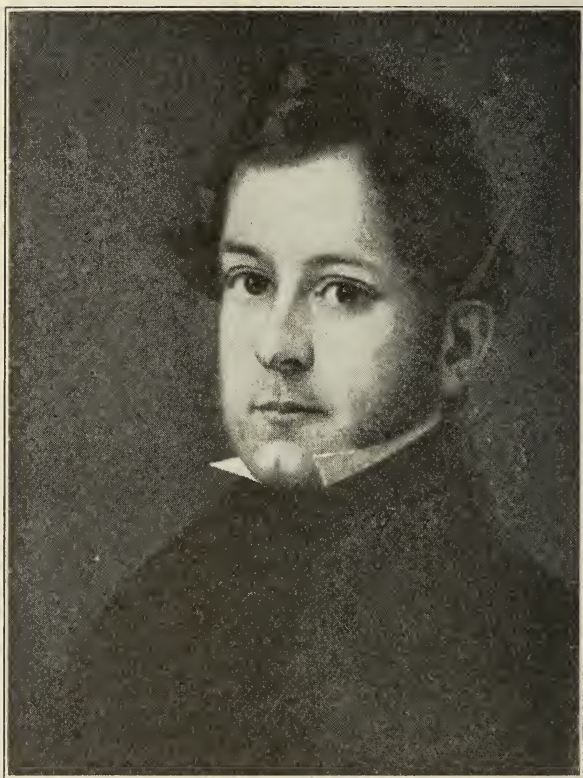
Monday, May 24—* * * I forgot to mention that our old bull died yesterday morning. He was cut about 15 days ago, from which time he has been dwindling away till the time of his death. We are afraid some of our horses have been stolen. 13 have been missing for some time past, those belonging to the company, 3 to W. Dickson, 3 to his uncle and one to Baptiste Durion. One of our men discovered an encampment on the little river opposite the Navy Yard, where Indians had been but a short time previous. Last evening Joseph Villander⁷² (or Villaudre) one of the Yellowstone party returned to exchange the kettle which had been fired through by Larent Lerretti.⁷³ It appears from Villan-

⁷⁰Hugh Glass. A native of Pennsylvania and the hero of the Leavenworth expedition of 1823. See Vol. I, p. 247. John G. Neihardt, has immortalized the exploits of Glass, in his poem "Hugh Glass," New York, Macmillan & Co.

⁷¹Francois Vione. The name is not found in the fur trade or among the Canadian French. Sylvester Pattie found a Captain Vione the navigator of a vessel sailing the Gulf of Mexico, at New Orleans on August 1st, 1830, the very year of this journal. I have not seen the name elsewhere. See Pattie's Personal Narrative, (Western Travels) Vol. VIII, p. 320.

⁷²Can learn nothing further of Joseph Villander.

⁷³This seems to be Mr. Lerretti's only claim to fame.



JEAN BAPTISTE SARPY

der's statement that the party encamped below and were all taking a frolic when the kettle was broke.

Tuesday, May 25—* * * L. Cerre and two of his clerks dined with us. Five more horses missing today. Have no doubt they were stolen. Yesterday we commenced bringing in the fort at night.

Wednesday, May 26, 1830—* * * Henrie Ange⁷⁴ and Pineau le Yancton and J. Juett went on the other side the Missouri to hunt Buffalo. They were quite close we saw two bands this morning. About three pm the hunters returned, having killed 6. 13 Yanctonais arrived at the same time from the camp on the opposite side the Missouri with robes. Hands employed repairing the roof of the high store.

Thursday, May 27—* * * Hands employed variously.

Friday, 28—* * * Hands employed making a part of the roofs. In the morning crossed all the Yanctonais on this side the river. * * *

Sunday, 30—* * * W. P. May⁷⁵ and William Miller⁷⁶ (two furriers) arrived in a canoe from the Mandans. At 12 am Thomas Dumond⁷⁷ and Oliver Ledair⁷⁸ with a squaw came in from hunting beaver. They have had all their horses stolen except one which they brought in with them.

Monday, May 31, 1830—* * * Hands employed repairing houses. At 4 pm about fifty Indians (Yanctonais and

⁷⁴Henri Ange. This name is pronounced with a broad A, and consequently is frequently found written Onge. The family seems to have come west from Canada via Detroit and Vincennes, finally landing in Kaskaskia. In all of the earlier records it is St. Ange. Joseph LaBarge had a favorite steamboat called the St. Ange. Henri Ange married a sister of William Dickson's. For sketch see Mr. C. R. Marks' story in Vol. IV, p. 58.

⁷⁵William P. May was on the Missouri for a long time and seems to have been an independent trader, buying furs on his own account and for manufacture in his own factory. Maximilian met him May 21, 1833, while the Yellowstone was stuck on a sandbar opposite Bijou Hills. May was coming down the river in an open boat, and came aboard the steamboat and gave news of up-river conditions. In 1843 May was coming down the river with a load of choice, selected furs, and when he reached Little Bend he was fired upon by Kelsey's desperadoes and made to land his cargo, which was confiscated. See Maximilian, Vol. 22, p. 300. Chittenden's Fur Trade, p. 370. Also see letter of Bouis to Drips, April 18, 1843, p. of this volume.

⁷⁶I have nothing further pertaining to William Miller.

⁷⁷I wonder if this is not Thomas Durand instead of Dumond. Durand was a clerk whom Maximilian found at work for Sublette & Campbell three years later. See Vol. 24, page 35. Maximilian.

⁷⁸Oliver Ledair. But for this Oliver would have been to fortune and to fame unknown.

Saons⁷⁹) arrived from the other side the Missouri with robes. They say that the buffalo have all disappeared from their neighborhood. Throughout the night engaged in trading with the Indians. Traded 23 packs of robes. Joseph Vasseur⁸⁰ sick and off duty. This man has done nothing since the 20th inst.

Tuesday, June 1, 1830—* * * In the morning traded a few more packs of robes. At 12 am all the Indians left us on their return home. They all behaved well while with us with the exception of the scoundrel (who) killed the Handsome Feather (Saon) who tried to frighten us with his threats, but I believe he left us with his martial feelings pretty well abated, for we handled him somewhat roughly.

Wednesday, June 2—* * * 8 or 10 Indians arrived from the camp on the other side the Missouri. They brought us three of the horses stolen on the 25th of last month and 22 robes which we traded. At 1 pm saw two men on the hill behind the fort. As we supposed them to be horse thieves we each took a horse and went out in pursuit of them, but were unable to discover their hiding place. At 4 pm we crossed a part the Indians who arrived this morning, and the skiff and canoe returned with 6 more red skins with robes. * * *

Wednesday, June 2, 1830—At 9 pm Mr. May left here in a canoe for the settlement below Council Bluffs.

Thursday, June 3—Four more Indians arrived from the other side the Missouri with robes. They say there is plenty buffalo close to the place.

Friday, June 4—* * * *In the morning the Indians left here. Ange, Miller, and Pineau crossed over on the other side the Missouri to hunt. Baptiste Durion on this side and killed a bull. He says he saw a band of about 12. * * *

Saturday, 5—Our bateaux broke loose from her moor-

⁷⁹Saone, Saon, Sawon. This is a generic designation for the Sans Arc. Two Kettles and Blackfeet. Sometimes the Huncpapas are included. The designation is applied to these bands in the same way that Santee covers the Minnesota Sioux, though I do not think the Saones had a distinctive dialect.

⁸⁰Joseph Vasseur, a mixed blood son of Jean Baptiste Vasseur of the Northwest Company, who was deeply involved in the fight which resulted in the death of Governor Semple of the Selkirk colony.

ings last night, and nothing is to be seen of her this morning. Sent Lagrave down the river in search of her. At noon he returned, having found her opposite the second island below this. At 4 pm sent off five men in a skiff to bring her up. Two lodges of Indians arrived on the other side the Missouri and camped there. * * *

Sunday, 6—* * * At 12 am our men returned with the batiaux. At the same time Ange and the others came in having killed three buffalo cows and two calves.

Monday, June 7, 1830—10 or 12 Indians arrived here from the other side the Missouri. They brought in three more of the stolen horses. (Dickson's property). They have not as yet returned any of the Co.'s horses. Besides the horses brought some robes and fresh buffalo meat. * * * Messrs. Cerre, Bouchet,⁸¹ and Rencontre⁸² called on us.

Tuesday, June 8—* * * At 10 am Pierre Garrow⁸³ and Amable Lacomb⁸⁴ arrived from the Rees, the latter brought with him a small pack of beaver. After selling Lacomb and Leclair⁸⁵ (or Leclair) two or three bottles of liquor they became noisy, and wished for more, but Mr. Chardon refused to let them have it, upon which a quarrel arose and Chardon gave Lacomb a flogging, and they have both left us with their beaver for Messrs. P. D. Papin & Co establishment. At 4 pm 10 or 12 Indians arrived from

⁸¹Bouchet. This was, I believe, Joseph Bouchette, a son of Joseph Bouchette, the Canadian geographer, and the daughter of C. J. Chaboillez, the trader whom Lewis and Clark found at the Mandan. The Bouchettes were of a good family, and Joseph Sr. was one of Canada's most distinguished men; among other services he surveyed the National boundary on the Maine, New Hampshire and Vermont frontiers.

⁸²Zephine, (usually called Zephyr) Rencontre was one of the daring frontiersmen who lived and died in Dakota. He married a Lower Brule woman and left a family, of whom the late Alexander Rencontre of Lower Brule was the most notable. When the settlers came Zephyr was running an American Fur post at Bon Homme Island. There is a fable to the effect that he is the "Good man" for whom the Island was named. Bon Homme Island, however, had that name long before Zephyr was born.

⁸³Pierre Garreau, the mixed blood son of Joseph Garreau, the first white man to settle permanently in Dakota, and a Ree woman. Pierre lived at Fort Berthold until about ten years ago. See Vol. VI, p. 403.

⁸⁴The LaCombes (variant of LeCompt, the true name) came to the Missouri with the Columbia Fur Company. I cannot identify Amable especially.

⁸⁵LeClair. Coues said this is a corruption of LeClerk which was the original name. The LeClairs came from Canada and were numerous.

the other side the Missouri with robes. At 6 pm 5 or 6 more arrived from the same camp with robes.

Wednesday, 9—In the morning finished trading and re-crossed the Indians. At 4 pm saw a band of buffalos on the hills back of the fort. Killed one in the act of crossing the Missouri.

Thursday, June 10—* * * Saw several bands of buffalo crossing the river from the other side.

Friday, 11—* * * Saw several large bands of buffalo crossing from the other side the Missouri. We all equipped ourselves and proceeded out against them and killed 24 buffalo, caught several calves and a young antelope. At 5 pm strong squalls from the east and more showers of rain attended with thunder and lightning. The Missouri still continues rising. The bank on which this fort stands has been daily caving in since the Missouri began to rise. If it continues to fall in much more we will be obliged to move a part of the fort.

Saturday, June 12—Saw several bands of buffalo on the other side the Missouri. A band of about 150 crossed within 100 yards of us but were prevented from running but some of our men frightened them, they returned again to the other side of the river, however, succeeded in catching five calves and in killing five cows. The Missouri still rising. It has raised about 2½ feet since yesterday morning. * * *

Sunday, 13—* * * Saw several bands of buffalo crossing the Missouri, the river continues rising.

(End of Vol. I of Journal of Fort Tecumseh, Jan. 31, 1830, to June 13, 1830.)

Fort Tecumseh, Near Teton River, Upper Missouri.

Monday, June 14, 1830—* * *

Tuesday, June 15—In the morning Pierre Garrow left here for the Rees. And Baptiste Durion left here to search for horses below Teton river. * * * At 5 pm Mr. Char-don, Ange, and myself rode down to Mr. Cerre's house. On our return we found that five or six more Indians had ar-

rived from the other side the river with robes. The Missouri still continues rising.

Wednesday, 16—* * * Through the night strong gales from the east, with rain and thunder and lightning.

Thursday, 17—Throughout the day strong easterly winds and cloudy weather. The bank opposite the fort gate fell in so much that we will be obliged to pull down the blacksmith's shop and move back the picots of the fort. Our bateaux was found sunk this morning, and our skiff has gone adrift or sunk. This was owing to the falling in of a bank last night. The Missouri six feet above low water mark. Baptiste Durion arrived this evening but brought no news of our horses.

Friday, 18—Cold and cloudy. Rain at intervals. Employees pulling down the blacksmith's shop and moving back the east side of the fort. Missouri five feet above low water mark.

Saturday, June 19, 1830—Finished arranging the fort. Missouri six feet above low water mark. Madam Dickson very sick.

Sunday, 20—Messrs. L Cerre and Bouchet dined with us. At meridian five Poncas Indians arrived with one of the horses stolen last month. They say they have nine more of our horses in their possession, which makes up the number missing. According to their story they were stolen by the Paunees from whom they say they took them after a slight skirmish in which one of their people was killed. But we are inclined to believe that they were stolen by the Poncas. The Poncas say they are encamped on L'eau qui course and have a considerable quantity of beaver skins. Accordingly we put a small equipment and dispatched Baptiste Durion with them and a cart and one man to their camp for the purpose of trading with them and bringing back our horses if possible. Henri Ange accompanied them, as he found the horses and the property with W. Dickson as employee. Dickson's uncle, a Sonte Indian also was one of the party. Two or three of the horses are his property. Missouri 5½ feet above low water mark.

Monday, 21—* * * Above 40 Rees and Paunee Indians arrived here on their way to the Ree village. They camped on the point above this. At 8 pm Ange, the Sontee Indian and two poncas Indians returned to the fort. The Poncas started after the Rees and Paunees this morning



HORSE RACING NEAR FORT PIERRE

From Harper's Weekly 1863

for the purpose of stealing horses. They have two. The Paunees deny having stole our horses. Missouri $5\frac{1}{2}$ feet above low water mark.

Tuesday, June 22—* * * * Madam Durion was delivered of a fine boy at 6 am this morning.

Wednesday, June 23—* * *

Thursday, June 24—* * * Messrs. Sarpy, Juett, Pineau, Miller and Dumond left here with all our horses for Medicine river, where we intend keeping them a month or two. * * * Some of our people say they saw four men on a hill back of the fort this evening. Missouri $4\frac{1}{2}$ feet above low water mark. Hands employed putting up the blacksmith's shop.

Friday, June 25—* * * Began making packs. Pressed fifteen. * * *

Saturday, June 26—Hands employed working at the blacksmith shop and making and pressing packs. Pressed 53 packs. * * *

Sunday, June 27—* * * Chardon and Ange went out in pursuit of them (Buffalo on hill back of fort) and killed five. At 11 am James Parker and Pierre Detaillier⁸⁸ (two trappers) called on us. It appears that these two men in company with Carrier,⁸⁹ another trapper, arrived at Cerre's house last evening with about two packs of beaver. * * *

Monday, June 28—* * * Men employed working at blacksmiths shop and pressing packs. Pressed fifteen. At 1 pm Paul Durian⁹⁰ and his squaw arrived from the Mandan in a skin canoe.

Tuesday, July 29—* * * Finished the blacksmiths shop * * *

Wednesday, 30—* * * Baptiste Daurion arrived with all our horses. 11 packs of robes and 2 lbs of beaver from the Poncas. The Hoe (a Poncas chief) and 8 of his young men came in with Baptiste. The Hoe acknowledged that it was his own people who stole the horses. Baptiste says that the Poncas have still about 20 packs of robes and that they are now on their way to White River with their lodges. Finished pressing our packs today. Find we have 166 of robes and one of beaver skins. * * *

Thursday, July 1—* * * J. Juett and Thomas Du-
mond arrived from the Medicine river where our horses
are. * * *

Friday, July 2—Baptiste Durion and the Poncas left here. Durion has an equipment of goods to trade what the Poncas may have. Five men arrived in a canoe from the Mandans. They say that two of their men were turned out

⁸⁸Detaillier and Parker. I know them not. Detaillier may be that Francois Detaille, who accompanied Audubon from Fort Union.

⁸⁹Carrier. There was a Carrier in Hunt's Astorian party. Andre, Joseph and Michael Carriere, voyageurs in the employ of the Northwest company came over to the Columbia Fur Company and at a hazard I should say this was one of these men.

⁹⁰Paul Dorian. Among the many descendants of old Pierre, I am unable to identify this one.

of the fort at the Mandans, by Mr. McKnight,⁹¹ and after remaining six days with the Indians, they succeeded in getting a canoe and departed with the intention of descending to St. Louis. We endeavored to persuade them by fair means until Mr. McKenzie⁹² arrives from above, but in this we failed. Consequently Mr. Chardon and myself armed ourselves. Took two of our men, had the canoe unloaded and hauled in at the fort. The Mandan men made no resistance.

Sunday, July 4—The anniversary of the Declaration of Independence of the United States was ushered in upon us with fine pleasant weather. At 10 am manned our canoe and Mr. Chardon and myself proceed down to Mr. Cerre's house where we were received with a salute of three guns. We passed an hour there and returned home, where we were again saluted. At 1 pm Thomas Dumond arrived from Medicine river where the horses are. They intend leaving the Medicine river with the horses and to encamp somewhere in the Grand Detour⁹³ for fear the Poncas will find out their present situation. * * *

Monday, 5—* * * In the morning sent Letand and four men up to the Navy Yard to make a boat to cross horses in. * * * The blacksmith repairing beaver traps, etc, etc. * * *

Tuesday, 6—T. L. Sarpy and Henri Ange came in from the Big Bend with four horses loaded with fresh meat. Plenty of cattle where our people are encamped. Sent Alexis Dusman⁹⁴ (or Deesman) up to the Navy Yard this morning to bring down our canoe. * * * In the evening Dusman returned with the canoe.

Wednesday, 7—T. L. Sarpy and J. Vasseur left here for the Big Bend. Men employed cutting wood to make charcoal * * *

⁹¹McKnight. This was John McKnight of St. Louis. He was of a Cahokia family, well known in the fur trade. His brother Robert tried to establish trade in Mexico early in the nineteenth century and was imprisoned for nine years. John went to Mexico and secured the release of his brother who afterwards made good in the Mexican field.

⁹²Kenneth McKenzie. See Mr. DeLand's note Vol. I, p. 342.

⁹³Grand Detour, relates to the Big Bend in Buffalo, Hughes and Lyman counties.

⁹⁴Alexis Dusman. No information.

Thursday, 8—* * * In the evening Mr. Miller arrived from the Big Bend.

Friday, 9—* * * M. Antoine Chesnie⁹⁵ and Alexander Matthews⁹⁶ arrived from Fort Union in a canoe. They gave us a letter from McKnight at the Mandans and then proceeded on to Mr. Cerre's establishment.

Saturday, July 10—* * * Baptiste and party arrived from the Poncas camp with peltries etc. A Poncas chief called La Bauchanne (or Bauchame) and another Indian came with him. We hear by Durion that the Brules are not more than 30 miles from here with their lodges. Send off a man to the Big Bend to tell our people to come in with all our horses. * * *

Sunday, 11—* * * The Poncas left here.

Monday, 12—* * * Our men arrived from the Navy Yard with the bateau.

Tuesday, July 13—* * * T. L. Sarpy and L. Lagrave left here for the Brule's camp with a small equipment to trade what he may find. In the evening two Indians arrived from the Brules.

Thursday, 15—* * * At nine am Kenneth McKenzie, esqr. arrived from Fort Union with a keel boat laden with furs, peltries, etc. He was accompanied by Messrs. Leclair, Fallon, Garves (or Garver) Lachapelle and Degray.

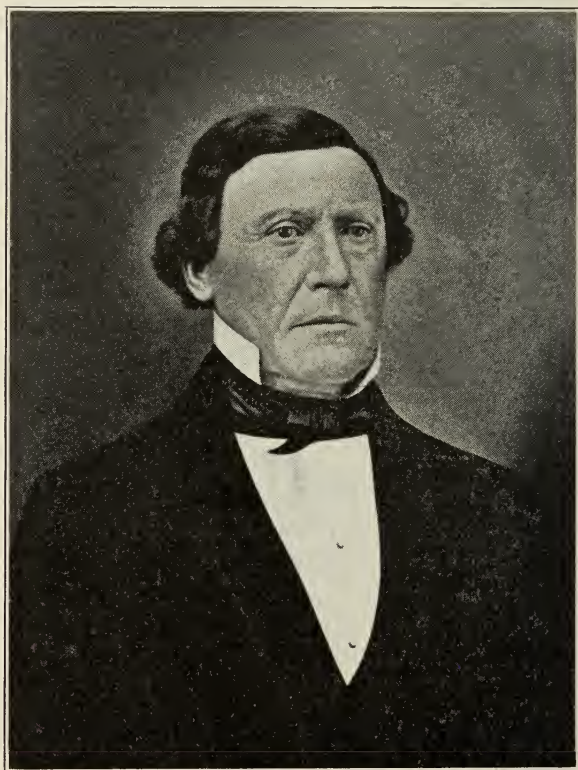
Friday, 16—Left here with Mr. McKenzie in Keel boat Oller (Otter) bound for St. Louis.

Sunday, 25—On the 21 ult. we arrived at Vermillion river where we found two of the company traders (Colin Campbell and Joseph La compt).⁹⁷ On the 22 met a keel boat belonging to the Cos. loaded with merchandsie and

⁹⁵M. Antoine Chesnie. I do not find the name elsewhere. It is possible this refers to Antoine Chenier of Kaskaskia.

⁹⁶Alexander Matthew. Alexander seems to have been born to blush unseen.

⁹⁷Joseph LaCompt. The original name seems to have been LeCompt. The family was numerous in Canada and in the west. Benjamin Sulte the Canadian authority upon the Canadian-French names says that LaCompt, LaComb, LaConte are variants of LeCompt. Those of the west probably were from Cahokia. In 1787 Pierre LeCompte was upon the Cahokia census. On Saturday, September 20, 1806, Lewis and Clark on their return trip found at Charette, Missouri, "two other boats the property of Mr. LaComb * * * bound to the Osage and Ottoes." In 1887 Louis Thoen of Spearfish, South Dakota, found a flat rock inscribed with the names of a party presumed to have been in the Black Hills in



KENNETH McKENZIE

bound for Fort Union. At meridian on the 24 we arrived at Council Bluffs or rather at Cabanies establishment seven miles below the bluffs. Here we expected to hear of some Indians of a boat from St. Louis which was to have left that place eight days after the first, but nothing has been heard of her. Keel boat Otter proceeded on her voyage this morning, and if I hear nothing of the other boat tomorrow wish to prepare myself to return alone by land.

Wednesday, July 28—* * * This morning I sent off Mongrain a half Indian to Fort Tecumseh with a letter to Mr. Chardon. I should have gone above with him but sickness prevents me. I am sure in my present situation I think I never would be able to reach Ft Tecumseh a-horseback. Therefore I cannot reproach myself for not going above at present.

Thursday, 29—* * *

Friday, 30—* * *

Saturday, 31—* * * This is the most disagreeable hole I ever was at in my life. The mosquitos are not only very thick, but the fleas are still in greater abundance. My health continues bad I have a fever at night and a violent headache throughout the day.

Wednesday, Aug. 4—* * * A man arrived from Belview, Pilcher's old establishment. He says a party of Iowas arrived there a few days ago who report that a keel boat was lost in ascending the Missouri about 50 miles above cantonment Leavensworth. If this news be true it is no doubt the Cos boat loaded with merchandise from St. Louis, which we have been for some time expecting here.

Thursday, 5—* * * I forgot to mention yesterday that a canoe passed here from above with four men in it. They made no stop here, I think they are deserters.

Friday, Aug. 6, 1830—* * * A man arrived from St. Louis with dispatches from Mr. Cabanies. He says he left Mr. Picotte with five mules loaded with merchandise at

1833-34. Among them was De LaCompt. This party presumably from Ohio and Pennsylvania, may have employed LaCompt for a guide. A mixed blood family presumably the offspring of our Joseph, is a member of the Cheyenne River Sioux, participating in tribal benefits at the Agency at Forest City.

riviere Platte. He also brought the news of the loss of one of Cos boats a short distance above cantonment Leavenworth.

Saturday, 7—* * * Mr. Picotte of the firm of P. D. Papin & Co. arrived with five mules and one horse laden with merchandise for the trade of the upper Missouri. He will leave here tomorrow for Teton River, as my health is now better I shall accompany him.

Sunday, 8—* * * Left this establishment in company with Mr. Picotte, two of his clerks, one man and a Sioux Indian called Mauvais Bouef, who is returning from a visit to his father, "Grayhead" (Gen. Clark).

Thursday, 12—* * * At one pm sent W. Rogers⁹⁸ and the Sioux Indian who met us at the Mahas village. We however do not expect to find Indians there, but are in hopes of finding a saddle or two which we are much in want of. At dusk we were disagreeably disappointed by meeting with two Indians (Mahas). They informed us that the most of the Mahas were at the village. Rogers has sent them to us to recommend us to camp, and not attempt to go to the village tonight, consequently we camped two miles from the village.

Friday, 13—At sunrise arrived at the village, where we found the Mauvais Boeuf was in danger of having his scalp taken by the Mahas, his nation having but a short time previous killed two Mahas. Through the influence of the braves of the tribe his life was spared. About 20 of the principal men accompanied us four or five miles from the village. To accomplish this object, at 8 pm we encamped after hiding ourselves a few miles out of the road.

Sunday, 22—At 8pm arrived at Mr. Cerre's house on Teton river ⁹⁹ where I passed the night.

Monday, 23—At daylight crossed Teton river and arrived at Fort Tecumseh at sunrise, where I found Messrs. Gordon,¹⁰⁰ Chardon, Holiday, Campbell and several other

⁹⁸W. Rogers. Cannot identify.

⁹⁹This statement leaves no doubt that the French post was south of Bad River. See Mr. DeLand's discussion, Vol. I, p. 374.

¹⁰⁰Gordon. This is William Gordon, known in his time as Pegleg Gordon. He was long on the river and seems to have been a man of intelligence, and education. A well written letter from Gordon to Pilcher will be found at page 190 of Vol. I of these Collections. Gordon accom-

clerks of the company. Throughout the whole of the trip from the Bluffs to this establishment we had pleasant weather and no rain. I however enjoyed it but little as I was several times attacked by the intermittent fever.

Tuesday, 24—* * * I have just heard that three white men have been recently killed by the Rees, viz. Pierre Bouchet,¹⁰¹ Jos. Paffiche¹⁰² (or Passiche) and another man whose name I do not know. They were killed between the Rees Village and the Mandans by a war party of Rees. They had merchandise and horses to the amount of \$1,000.

Wednesday, 25 August—* * * Lachapelle and Pineau arrived. It appears that Lachapelle and Pineau were sent up to join the keel boat "Twin Males" which left here on the 19th ulto bound for Ft. Union, and to make every effort to affect her passage by the Rees village in case those Indians should prove unwilling to let her pass. He says he made strict search for the boat for one day and a half but without finding her, or even discovering any trace of her. Mr. Picotte came up and dined with us today. Indians are pouring in from every quarter.

Thursday, 26—* * * Dispatched Lachapelle again for the Rees village on the same errand he was sent before. Mr. Picotte accompanied him. He goes to see if any of the property which the Rees must have plundered the white man they recently murdered.

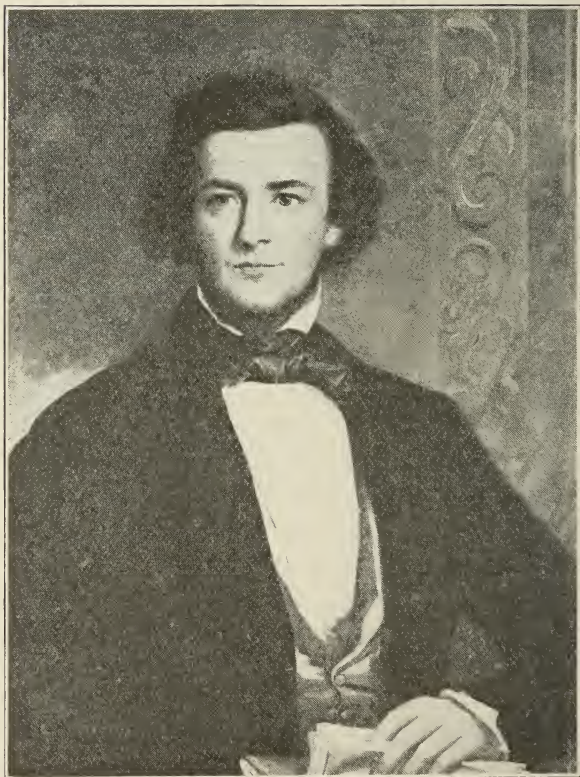
Saturday, 28—* * * The Indians have played great havoc in our garden, stolen corn, potatoes, pumpkins, &c, &c. Spoke to the soldiers about it but it seems to be of little use.

Sunday, August 29—* * * Several lodges of Yanc-tons arrived. Men employed in bringing in hay and stacking it.

panied Major Joshua Pilcher's party in the expedition of Col. Leavenworth to punish the Rees in 1823, and he it was who set the Ree villages on fire after Leavenworth had started back down the river. Vol. I p. 199. Joseph Gordon a mixed blood grandson of William is a respected citizen of Burke, South Dakota.

¹⁰¹Pierre Bouchet. See Note 81.

¹⁰²Joseph Paffiche or Passiche. No name even remotely resembling this is found among the French families of America. It is almost certainly a nickname, which by a stretch of fancy may be construed to be Joseph the Boozer, or Drunkard.



COL. D. D. MITCHELL

Tuesday, August 31—* * * Five Blackfeet Indians arrived here yesterday with several lodges of Brules. The Indians have stole about half our potatoes.

Wednesday, Sept. 1—The Indians stole nearly all our potatoes last night. At 10 am Lachapelle arrived from the Rees. The boat passed that place the eighth day after they left here. Picotte returned with Lachapelle.

Thursday, Sept. 2—* * * At 11 am Messrs Laidlaw, J. L. Bean¹⁰³ (U. S. Sub. Indian Agent) Mitchel,¹⁰⁴ Primeau, Laboue, T. and W. Dickson, and Hamilton¹⁰⁵ with four men arrived from St. Louis. Mr. Hamilton is an English gentleman traveling for curiosity.

Friday, Sept. 3—* * * Men employed packing bateaux. The Indians continue stealing potatoes as usual. They are much more troublesome this year than I ever knew them to be. * * * Sent Lachapelle and Brule with an Indian and three horses, to the Sawons camp to trade meat.

Saturday, 4—J. L. Bean U. S. S. Indian Agent held a grand council with the Yanctons and Brules. He presented each nation with a barrel of tobacco. He contemplates leaving here in 7 or 8 days for St. Louis with 8 or 10 Yanctons, and says he expects to return to this place with the Yanc-tons sometime in November next, when he will make his presents to the different bands.

Sunday, 5—* * * Men employed packing bateaux. The Indians still continue above our post.

¹⁰³J. L. Bean. This is Major Jonathan L. Bean of the Regular Army. He was a native of Rhode Island, but entered the army from Pennsylvania, graduating from West Point in 1818. At this time he was a First Lieutenant, but called Major by courtesy, as all Indian Agents were. He resigned from the Army in 1837. He established an agency for the Indians of Dakota country at Fort Lookout.

¹⁰⁴Col. David D. Mitchell was born in Virginia in 1806 and early entered the fur trade. He built a Fort among the Blackfeet. He had the reputation of being a genuine gentleman. In 1841 he was appointed United States Indian Agent for the western department. He served in the Mexican war, and died in St. Louis in 1861.

¹⁰⁵This Hamilton was an Englishman, named Archibald Palmer, who had experienced some trouble which led him to change his name. He met Kenneth McKenzie who gave him employment, soon placing him in charge of Fort Union. Later, he reassumed his own name, and went to St. Louis where he was made the cashier of the American Fur Company. This is the first mention made of him in any record we have seen. The Missouri Historical Society supplies the following taken from the files of the St. Louis Republican for April 20, 1839: "To all persons concerned. It is hereby notified that J. A. Hamilton is legally authorized to adopt and will hereafter use the name of J. A. Hamilton Palmer. American Fur Company Office, April 9th."

Monday, 6—* * * I forgot to mention that Messrs. T. Dickson and F. Laboue left here yesterday for the Brule's camp to trade what they may find.

Wednesday, 8—* * * Maj. J. L. Bean left here for St. Louis in a bateaux with 21 Indians (All Yanctons except one, the "Broken leg" (Brule). Mr. W. Gordon also accompanied him. Mr. Michlin Primeau started in a bateau with merchandise and four men for the Rees, to trade corn, at the same time sent Baptiste Durion and Louison Brule to hunt horses which were lost by Mr. Laidlaw's party.

Thursday, 9—* * * Mr. T. Dickson and party arrived from the Brule's camp with four horses loaded with meat.

Sunday, 12—* * * Went out to gather plums—found a few fit to eat. * * *

Tuesday, 14—* * * Cardinal Grant¹⁰⁶ arrived from hunting with a few beaver skins.

Wednesday, 15—* * * J. B. Derain¹⁰⁷ (a beaver hunter) arrived.

Thursday, 16—* * * Put (up) an equipment of goods for the Saons and Cheyennes.

Friday, 17—* * * Chardon, Durion and Gonpieras¹⁰⁸ left here for the Sawons camp with six horses loaded with merchandise. J. B. Deroin (or Devoin) left us in the morning early.

Sunday, 19—* * * Mr. Laidlaw visited with Mr. Cerre. We are at present very anxious for party who left here on the 8th ulto. for the Sawons camp; one of Mr. Cerre's men arrived day before yesterday and he says La-chapelle left the camp on the return three days before him, he had a good guide with him, therefore we do not think he could have got lost. The present presumption is that he has been killed by some war party.

¹⁰⁶There were many Grants in the employ of the Northwest Fur Company of Canada, as Charles, Cuthbert, David, James, Peter and Robert. It is likely he is of the Canadian family. Seth Grant is mentioned in connection with the Ashley expedition of 1823. See Ashley-Smith explorations, page 86.

¹⁰⁷Derain. Mr. DeLand places a question mark after this name. I do not find it among the French families in America. A Joseph Derome came from the Northwest Company to the Columbia; this may be the man. Francois DeLain lived at Leech Lake, Minnesota in 1850.

¹⁰⁸This is all for Mr. Gonpieras. It is doubtless a nickname.

Wednesday, 22—* * * Millen Primeau and party arrived from the Rees with about 100 bushels of corn and a quantity of fresh meat. Primeau met Lachapelle and party at the mouth of the Cheyenne River, descending in a skin canoe with 300 pounds of dry meat.

Friday, 24—* * * Lachapelle and Vasseau arrived from the Sioux camp on Cheyenne river in a skin canoe laden with dry meat. * * * Sent out Pineau le Yancton and one or two men to hunt.

Monday, 27—* * * Mr. P. N. Leclare¹⁰⁹ and Bapt. Desond¹¹⁰ arrived from St. Louis with seven horses. On their arrival at the Poncas they fell in with two Yanctons who expressed their wish to accompany them to this place. Mr. Laclare without hesitation consented, they accordingly set out together. Mr. Leclare taking with him a boatman of the name of Pierre Golvin¹¹¹ (or Golsin) to assist him on the journey. On the 25 ulto about 4 pm as they were riding along Poncas river they were suddenly attacked by the two Yancton Indians, Pierre Goslin the first attacked was dangerously wounded by an arrow shot. The next attacked was Defond, he was slightly wounded in two places. They also fired at Leclare, but owing to the fleetness of his horse he escaped injury, after they had 5 or 6 shots at Leclare and his party, he (Leclare) succeeded in stopping his horse, dismounted and was preparing to fire on the Indians where he perceived them retreating with all possible speed. As the place where they were attacked was thickly wooded and the Indians had concealed themselves in the bushes, Mr. Leclare and his two mounted companions thought it best to proceed on their journey with all possible dispatch, after trav-

¹⁰⁹See note 86.

¹¹⁰Baptiste DeSond. Spelled later as DeFond. I know nothing of this man. Joseph DeFond was on the rolls of the Northwest Company in 1804, which suggests that Baptiste might have come in with the Columbia. In all these names it must be understood that they were deciphered from difficult manuscript; too, very many of the French lived under a sobriquet.

¹¹¹Pierre Golvin, or Golsin, ditto. There was a Kaskaskia family named Godin, some members of which were up the Missouri. In 1832 Antoine Godin, whose father had been murdered by the Blackfeet, bribed a Flathead to kill the chief of the Blackfeet and two years later Antoine himself was killed by the Blackfeet in revenge for the killing of their chief. This record may be of another Godin tragedy. On October 4th Halsey spells the name Gauslin which does not help to identify.

eling about two hours Goslin became worse, declared his utter inability to proceed further. As none of the party had an ax, and as Leclare was situated without any help whatever and Golvin unable to ride he was forced to the heartrending necessity of leaving the poor fellow on the prairie after having placed him on the banks of the Poncas river and given him a sufficient quantity of biscuit to keep him alive 5 or 6 days—the Yanctons, who have always been very friendly with the whites and have never before attempted the life of a white man, have at length commenced.

Tuesday, Sept. 28—* * * A man came up from Cerre's house with news that the two Yanctons who attacked Leclare's party had arrived there. What hardihood, what an insult—a party of us armed ourselves and proceeded out in pursuit of them, but they discovered us and fled to the plains. We consequently gave up the chase and returned home at 7 pm. Our only object was to frighten the scoundrels.

Thursday, Sept. 30—* * * Employed overhauling the bateaux, find a good many of them rotten.

Saturday, Oct. 2—* * * F. Roy arrived from our keel boats which he says he left in the Grand River detour, on Thursday last.

Sunday, 3—* * * Messrs. Picotte and Cerre dined with us. At dark saw a fire on the river some distance below—the mouth of the Teton river—we supposed it to be on board our boats, from St. Louis.

Monday, Oct. 4—Keel boats Beaver and Musk Rat arrived from St. Louis. Musk Rat at 10 and the Beaver at 12 am. Unloaded both boats. J. Halliday and the Indians sent in search of Pierre Gauslin returned without success.

Tuesday, 5—Put up an equipment of goods for the Brules on White River.

Wednesday, 6—Emillien Primeau started with 7 horses and a mules laden with goods for the Brules on White River. Put up two equipments of goods, one for Sawons and Cheyennes and one for Ogallallas.

Thursday, 7—Put up two equipments of goods, one for Ree and one for Oncpapas.

Friday, 8—Put up an equipment of goods for the trade with the Yanctonnas. Loaded keel boat "Muskrat" with three equipment of goods one for the Rees, one for the Oncpapas, and one for the Yanctonnas. At 2.30 pm the Musk Rat left here with D. D. Mitchell for the Yanctonnas, R. T. Holliday for the Rees, and F. Laboue for the Oncpapas, and 25 men for the three different posts.

Saturday, Oct. 9—* * * Sent off goods for the Ogalallas, Sawons, Cheyennes Outfits. At sunset Messrs. McKenzie, Lamont, Fallon,¹¹² May and five or six men arrived from St. Louis.

Sunday, 10—* * * F. A. Chardon left here with three horses laden with merchandise for the Sawon and Cheyenne Outfits.

Monday, 11—* * * Sent off a cart for Sawon and Cheyenne Outfit with Mr. Laidlaw's property. I forgot to mention that Messrs. P. D. Papin & Co. arrived here on the 9 ulto. On the 10 Mr. Hays left here in a skiff with six men. He is ordered to proceed down the Missouri till he falls in with keel boat "L. Valle", and is then to use all his influence to expedite her arrival here.

Wednesday, 13—* * * Messrs Beemer, Papin, Picotte, Cheslin¹¹³ and the two Cerres called on us.

Thursday, Oct. 13—* * * Bought out P. D. Papin & Co, engaged Papin, Cerre and Picotte. The other two are to return to St. Louis.

Friday, 15—Mr. Laidlaw started early this morning for Forks of Cheyenne river. At 12 am Messrs. Papin & Co delivered us their keel boat laden with merchandise &c, and at the same time we sent down one of our own boats to bring up what they may have remaining.

Saturday, Oct. 16—At 10 am. Messrs Papin & Co. delivered us the balance of their property. Commenced unloading boats and weighing the cargoes.

¹¹²Fallon. I have no doubt this is intended for Major Benjamin O'Fallon, a nephew of Captain Clark's of Lewis and Clark fame. O'Fallon was at this time an agent for some of the Missouri River Indians.

¹¹³Chesin. I strongly suspect this man of being the same who has figured herein as Chene, Chenier, and Cheynie. See note 56.

Sunday, 17—Engaged taking the count of Papin & Co property. * * *

Monday, 18—* * * Finish taking account of Papin & Co property.

Tuesday, 19—* * * Employed bailing and packing up goods. Several free hunters arrived with beaver, viz Lacomb, Gagnier, Dumond, Leclair.

Wednesday, Oct. 20—* * * Sent a boat down to Papin & Co. old establishment to bring up one two buildings. The boat returned at 12 am and we immediately set the men to work raising two houses.

Thursday, 21—* * * Pierre Garrow left here for the Rees with dispatches for Messrs. Holliday and Mitchell.

(From this point on I shall touch upon only such facts as present prominent incidents of men and Indians.—C. E. D.)

Saturday, Oct. 23—* * * Loaded keel boat "Fox" * * * left here bound for F. Clark, 21 men and Messrs. Picotte, P. Cerre, I Brasseau,¹¹⁴ clerks on board * * *.

Sunday, 24—* * * Several lodges of Yanctons arrived and camped near the fort. They have with them one of the Indians who attacked Leclerc and party some time ago. They wish to surrender him to Mr. McKenzie but I told them to keep him till their father came up and deliver him to him.

Tuesday, 26—* * * Dithonette (or Dishouette) and the Yancton (Campbell's comrade) arrived from the Brules with two of our horses lately stolen. * * *

Wednesday, 27—* * * Engaged preparing papers for St. Louis. At night, Campbell's comrade wounded the murderer of Gaslin. Some little excitement was shown by the Indians at the moment consequently we all prepared for an attack. But all was quiet at midnight. The Indian I believe is slightly wounded.

¹¹⁴J. Brasseau. This is John E. Brazeau, who belonged to a prominent Creole family of St. Louis, who formerly lived in Kaskaskia but settled in St. Louis before 1772. Brazeau in 1823 had a post just below Big Bend where General Ashley awaited the coming of Leavenworth upon the Ree expedition of that year. He spelled the possessive of the name "Brasseux." Brazeau left the American Fur Company service about 1840 and went into the employment of the Hudson's Bay Company.

Thursday, 28—* * * The murderer of Gauslin not dead yet but it is not thought he will live long. Mr. McKenzie dressed the Indian who risked his life so much for us. He was presented with everything to ornament himself with. Among the different articles was a sword. He left here late in the evening for White River.

Friday, 29—* * * Mr. Laidlaw arrived from the Sawons. Several Yanctonais arrived yesterday from the Cheyenne river. * * *

Saturday, Oct. 30—* * * I forgot to mention that the murderer of Pierre Gauslin died yesterday morning.

Saturday, 6—

Sunday, 7—Mr. Laidlaw left here for his establishment on the Cheyenne. * * *

Tuesday, 9—* * * Keel boat "Louis Valle" arrived from St. Louis.

Saturday, November 13—* * * Leclerc, Lasieur,¹¹⁵ May and seven men and 22 horses and mules left here for the upper river.

Sunday, 14—* * * Mr. McKenzie and Thomas Dickson left us for Ft. Union. An Indian left here for the Riviere Bois Blanc for dispatches to William Dickson. * * *

Monday, 15—* * * An Indian arrived from the Sawon camp on Cheyenne river. Hands employed variously. Carpenter making a desk and cooper making kegs.

Tuesday, 16—* * * Men employed cutting wood, plastering the houses, &c.

Wednesday, 17—* * * Sent Alexis Tibiaut with one of the boats after a load of fire wood.

Thursday, 18—* * * Ice drifting on Missouri. Sent off keel boat "Louis Valle" with 13 men for the Cheyenne river to cut timber for the Fort.

Saturday, 20—* * * An Indian and squaw who arrived here on the 15th from the Sawons left us (as they say) for the Brules camp on White river.

¹¹⁵Lesieur, probably Le Sueur, a member of that family of Le Sueur's who settled at Three Rivers and of whom Charles Pierre LeSueur, the Minnesota merchant and explorer, was a notable example. A branch of the family settled at Kaskaskia, whence this man perhaps came.

Monday, 22—* * * D. Lachapelle and Louis Obachon¹¹⁶ arrived from the Rees * * * with dispatches from Mr. R. S. Holliday in charge of the Cos establishment at this place.

Thursday, 25—* * * Men employed cutting firewood, making bales and melting grease &c. Julien Chouquette sick, off duty.

Friday, 26—* * * Cart from White river with 48 ps dry meat which (including that received yesterday makes in all 171 pieces * * * Put up some lances and powder for White River Outfit.

Saturday, 27—* * * Jacob Mayotte¹¹⁷ and Vachard¹¹⁸ to the Navy Yard with 54 pieces of dry meat.

Tuesday, 30—* * * One lodge of Yanc tons left here for White river.

Wednesday, Dec. 1, 1830—* * * Giroux¹¹⁹ arrived from Mr. Papin's establishment at Straw Cabin¹²⁰ creek * * * Mr. Hay and Bapt. Boyer¹²¹ arrived from White River. * * *

¹¹⁶Louis Obachon. This is one of the many variants of Aubuchon, of which I have seen others as D'Aubuchon, Oberchon, and Obershaw. The family are French Canadians, the immigrant Jacques settling at Three Rivers in 1645, where two years later he married Marthurine Poisson. Jacques, who was also called Loyal, and sometimes called Desselier, was a native of St. Demi of Dieppe, in Normandy and his wife came from Perche. A descendant, Gabriel, settled in Kaskaskia, and died before 1786. His estate was administered by Joseph Dupris (Dupree) a relative of Frederick Dupree of South Dakota. Gabriel left at least two sons, Gabriel Jr., who married the widow of J. B. Crely, of Kaskaskia. She soon became insane and died, and Gabriel about 1790 went to St. Louis and engaged in the fur trade. This Louis Obachon was the son of Gabriel Jr., by a second marriage. Louis had a son Louis who is still living in Montana. Mr. H. C. Obershaw, a prominent citizen and merchant of Pierre, is of the Aubuchon family. This name, with its variants and nicknames, furnishes a fair example of the difficulty one encounters in attempting to follow the family history of a French trader of the Missouri.

¹¹⁷Jacob Mayotte. This was not the first Mayotte, or Miotte to show up at Fort Pierre. One of the Frenchmen who accompanied the Verendrye Brothers in 1743 and whose name appears upon the lead plate buried by them was A. Miotte. Benjamin Sulte says the name originally was Amyotte. Halsey was mistaken in the name of this man who was Jacques Amiotte, of Cahokia, Illinois. For militia services rendered by him in his youth 100 acres of land was confirmed to Jacques, at Cahokia in 1818. Edward Amiotte, of Morris, South Dakota, and Oscar Amiotte of Lacreek, are descendants of this Jacques.

¹¹⁸Vichard. No record.

¹¹⁹Giroux. This was probably one of the Girolts of Kaskaskia. The ancestor, Jean B. was a Huguenot and was very useful to Captain Clark.

¹²⁰Straw Cabin Creek. I am unable to locate this stream. Joseph Vandall has no recollection of such a locality. He says it must have been a great distance from Fort Pierre.

¹²¹Baptiste Boyer, was of a well known family of Cahokia. Probably a son of Antoine Boyer. Boyer's creek in Missouri is named for him.

Tuesday, 7—* * * Messrs. Lamont and Hamilton went out walking and returned with a wolf. * * *

Thursday, 9—* * * Pierre Ditalier and Albert Paquette arrived from the Yancton trading house on White River.

Friday, 10—Zephine (Rencontre) and two Indians went out hunting. Campbell's comrade killed a deer * * *

Saturday, 11—* * * Last night was the coldest we have had this winter. Thermometer at 13 degrees above zero. The Missouri closed.

Tuesday, 14—An Indian arrived. He says he is from the Oncpapas from the camp on the head of Moreau's river and have plenty of buffalo.

Wednesday, Dec. 15, 1830—Jacques Mayotte arrived from the Navy Yard for iron bolts for traces &c.

Saturday, 18—* * * Louison Raboin¹²² arrived from LaBoue's establishment on the Moreau's river with a letter from him, and one from Mr. Holliday at the Rees. Mr. H. states in his letter that Mr. McKensie's party was pillaged by a party of Rees the second day after their departure from the villages. It appears from what Mr. H. has been able to learn that the party was stopped in open day and their saddles, blankets, tomahawks &c were forcibly taken from them. One of the party's mules returned to the Ree village with an arrow sticking in his head. God send that this may be the worst of the story.

Sunday, 19—* * * James Parker, beaver trapper arrived. * * * He was sent in by Michel Carrice (or Cassier)¹²³ for the purpose of conducting Lachapelle to his encampment something less than two days march from here. It is said they have 90 beaver skins.

Monday, 20—* * * Joseph Lemay¹²⁴ arrived from the Navy Yard.

¹²²Louison Rayboin. This is not found among the French family names in Canada or Illinois. I think it is a nickname applied to the man otherwise known as Louison the Brule. Observe that on the 22nd Halsey calls him Robain.

¹²³Michael Carrice, or Cassier. I wonder if this is not our old friend Michael Carrier, see Note 89.

¹²⁴Joseph Lemay. Came to the Missouri with the Columbia Fur Company. Several of the name served the Northwest Fur Company.

Tuesday, 21—* * * Chenier (or Chenise) Zephine and Campbells comrade went out to hunt.

Wednesday, 22—* * * Saw a band of antelope on the opposite of the river. We sent off three Indians in pursuit of them. They returned about an hour afterwards with them. It is supposed there was at least 200 in the band. Started Louison Robain with two other men for Robain's establishment on Moreau's river with letter to him and R. F. Holliday, at the Rees.

Friday, Dec. 24—Chenise commenced work today.

Tuesday, Dec. 28—* * * Two men arrived from the Rees with letters from Mr. McKenzie and other at the Mandans. The Rees pillaged Mr. McKenzie and party of everything they had except their horses, and they took one of them. He has brought news of Mr. Vanderburgh's party.¹²⁵ They have had a battle with the Blackfeet Indians. They were victorious, it is supposed they killed between 30 and 40 Indians and they lost but one man. * * *

Wednesday, 29—* * * Noel Richards¹²⁶ left here for the Navy Yard * * *

Thursday, 30—* * * Letand and another man arrived from the Navy Yard. Engaged in preparing dispatches for St. Louis.

Friday, 31—* * * Zephine Rencontre and Cyprian Denoyer¹²⁷ left here with a pack train with dispatches for St. Louis.

Saturday, Jan. 1, 1831—* * * Giroux Indron arrived from the Yancton post with * * * meat and horses. At the same time the Big Soldier (Yancton) arrived from St. Louis. He is one of the Indians who left here with Bean

¹²⁵Henry Vanderburgh, of St. Louis, one of the daring leaders of the Rocky Mountain Fur Company. His relations with the Blackfeet is one of the epics of Northwest history. Though he beat them in 1830 he paid for his victory with his life in 1832. Vanderburgh was with Ashley in 1823 and helped in chastising the Ree. He was in command of one of the batteries which threw shells into the Ree village. See Vol. I, p. 200-253. Killed by the Blackfeet Oct. 14, 1832—See Fur Trade 669.

¹²⁶Noel Richard. I suspect him of being identical with Mr. Vichard at Note 118. Noel was of Kaskaskia, where his family was prominent. He married a Brule woman, and his progeny is numerous in this part of the state. The name is pronounced Reecar, and is frequently spelled phonetically in South Dakota records.

¹²⁷Cyprian Denoyer (Desnoyer) was a Columbia Fur Company man; the family had been identified with the Canadian fur trade for generations.

last September. 2 or 3 of the deputation have arrived at the Yanctons camp, the balance are conducted by W. Gordon, may be expected here tomorrow or next day * * * Two men arrived from the Yanctonnas Apple River. According to accounts from that neighborhood the snow is so deep to render communication between them and Mandan post infrequent.

Monday, 3—Giroux and S'endron (or, an Indian) left us for Yancton post with flour and lances. The Little Soutise, another of the St. Louis deputation arrived. He says Gordon will be here in a day or two with the rest of the Indians.

Wednesday, 5—* * * Lamont and Hamilton went down the river on the ice on a sleigh with the expectation of meeting Gordon and the rest of the Indians from St. Louis.

Friday, 7—* * * Philibert¹²⁸ and two men arrived from the Navy Yard with three broken axes and we have none to replace them, neither have we any coal to repair them. One of the Indian hunters returned today and brought with him the tongues of four buffalo which he killed in the neighborhood of the village de tens (terns or ture). He says buffalo are plenty in that neighborhood. * * * Chenise rode a horse today. Lamont and Hamilton arrived. * * * they saw no signs of Gordon.

Saturday, 8—* * * Lemay, Vachard, and Hibert¹²⁹ returned from hunting, the horses lost by McKenzie and party enroute from St. Louis to this place. They saw no signs of them but fell in with Gordon in the neighborhood of Bijou Hills. He delivered to them a package of letters and papers from St. Louis by which we have tidings of the late revolution in France in which many thousands were killed and wounded, Charles X driven off the throne and the Duke of Orleans proclaimed king.

Monday, 10—* * * Mr. Hay arrived from Mr. Laid-

¹²⁸Philibert. No information. There was a notable trader at St. Louis named Philebert, operating on the Arkansas in 1810, to 1817.

¹²⁹Hibert. He is likely the same as Philebert of the last note. Joseph Hubert, of Kaskaskia settled in St. Louis before 1771. Michel Hebert is mentioned in this journal for Wednesday, December 15, following.

law's establishment with 230 pieces of dry meat and 13 horses and mules.

Thursday, 13—* * * Hand employed taking care of the horses, making a coal kiln, &c.

Tuesday, 18—* * * Mr. Gordon and lady arrived from St. Louis. Sent off Dauphin (or Dauphine) with two men and 8 horses loaded with merchandise for Sawon and Cheyenne Outfit.

Thursday, 20—Gagnier and Paul Durion came in from hunting with four horses laden with fresh buffalo meat.

Monday, 24—* * * Giroux arrived from the Yancton post.

Thursday, 27—* * * Joe Jouett with 2 men and 5 horses and mules arrived from Mr. Laidlaw's establishment with 250 buffalo tongues.

Friday, 28—* * * Mayotte arrived from the Navy Yard with four broken axes.

Sunday, 30—* * * Lacharite¹³⁰ arrived from Papin's establishment on White river in search of provisions. He has been six days without eating.

Monday, 31—Lacharite left here.

Tuesday, Feb. 1—Lacharite with a lodge of Yanctons is encamped at the mouth of Teton river. He will remain there till good weather comes on and will then proceed out in search of buffalo. He has three horses, and if he makes a successful hunt will return with them loaded with meat to Papin's establishment on White river.

Wednesday, 2—* * * Sent two men down to the island in the neighborhood of Old Cedar Fort for the horses belonging to the Co. left there in charge of a Yancton by Mr. Gordon.

Saturday, 5—* * * Vichard and Hebert arrived from the Rees and Yanctonnas with beaver traps.

Thursday, 10—* * * Mr. and Mrs. Gordon left here for Mr. Laidlaw's establishment on the Grand Cheyenne river.

¹³⁰Lacharite, Lachante, and Lachanti. The name in the record is obscure. He is doubtless Francis LaCharite, the American Fur Company trader to the Yankton Indians. See Note 272.

Friday, 11—* * * A Yancton Indian arrived. He says his lodge is camped at village de ture (or, de terne)

Sunday, 13—* * * Two men who were sent down to the neighborhood of Old Ft. Cedar fort for the horses * * * returned accompanied by a Yancton Indian * * * They report cattle to be numerous between this and Ft. Lookout.

Tuesday, 15—James Parkins, a moletta arrived * * * He left Canies (or Carries) and Matthews on Teton river where they making a supply of dry meat.

Wednesday, 16—* * * Alexis Thibeau the patroon and Nowl Richard the carpenter arrived from the Navy Yard with broken axes.

Thursday, 17—* * * Dispatched Tibian (or Tibeau) and Richard with repaired axes for the Navy Yard.

Friday, Feb. 18—* * * A lodge arrived from the Ogallallas. The chief man of the family is a Brule called the Magic Soul.

Saturday, Feb. 19—* * * One of our hogs died yesterday with the hydrophobia. It was bit by a mad bull a few days ago, and our bull appears to be mad also. It is probable, he was bitten by the same animal.

Sunday, 20—* * * Found bull so much worse this morning that we were sure he would not recover, and therefore shot him.

Monday, 21—* * * Provost¹³¹ arrived from Ft Union with dispatches from Mr. McKenzie. Campbell arrived at the same time from the Yanctons.

Tuesday, 22—* * * Sent a man up to the Navy Yard for the purpose of bringing down all the horses which are in good order and could be spared. Provost requires 40 or 50 to take on towards the Rocky Mountain where Mr. Vanderberg is wintering with a party of trappers. In night Bary arrived from the Navy Yard.

¹³¹Provost. This is the entry of Etienne Provost, one of the most notable fur men of the period. He was most ubiquitous and his operations were continental. He was the discoverer of the South Pass of the Rocky Mountains. He was the son of Jean Baptiste Provost, a Canadian voyageur who accompanied the Astorian party to the west coast and was accidentally drowned in the Snake River, December 10, 1811. Etienne was reckless and efficient and the most difficult tasks were imposed upon him.

Wednesday, 23—* * * Hands employed pulling down our two story store for the purpose of putting it up again on the hill, back of the post. From the latest account from above we have every reason to apprehend being inundated here after the breaking up of the ice in spring in consequence of which we intend moving all the property of a perishable nature to a spot about 200 yards back of the post which stands about 5 feet higher than our present situation.

Thursday, 24—* * * Mr. Provost with 10 men and 9 horses laden with merchandise left us for Powder River where he expects to meet Mr. Vanderberg with a party of trappers * * * Hands employed freeing the boat from the ice by sawing it around her, others removing the timber of the high store to the hill back of the fort where they will again put it up tomorrow.

Saturday, 26—* * * Employed erecting the high store on the prairie back of the fort. * * *

Monday, Feb. 28—* * * Hands employed making a canal to carry off the water back of the fort. Sent off four men to the Rees with dispatches to Mr. McKenzie, McKnight, Mitchell and others to be forwarded from post to post.

Tuesday, March 1—Gordon's father-in-law (Yancton) arrived with a few robes. * * * We also heard by him that the ice is broken up in Teton river and that the water has already begun to raise. * * * Prudhomme arrived from the Navy Yard with a saw to be repaired.

Wednesday, March 2—* * * Emillien Primeau and three men arrived from White River with 13 horses laden with merchandise belonging to the Brule's Outfit.

Thursday, 3—* * * Mr. Laidlaw arrived from fork of Cheyenne river with his family. Mr. Hay and Batiste Durion with 5 men accompanied him. They brought with them 48 horses and mules and jackasses the property of the Co. * * *

Friday, 4—* * * Primeau and his men left here on his return to his post on White River. It is expected he will descend to the Poncas with his returns and then wait the arrival of the boats from this quarter. * * * Two

men arrived from the Poncas with a letter from Mr. G. Sevelle. No News of Zephine. He left the Poncas for Council Bluff on the 11th January and up to the 15th February he had not returned.

Tuesday, 8—Zephine Rencontre and Denoyer arrived from C. Bluffs with letters from St. Louis. Zephine says he was robbed of his bedding, ammunition and provisions by the Mahaws on his return from the Bluffs.

Sunday, 13—* * * Another our goats was delivered of a young one.

Tuesday, 15—* * * Zephine Rencontre left here for the Yancton's camp on the Little Missouri with a small adventure to trade lodges and meat * * * Men employed removing Indian Department goods to the store back of the fort.

Friday, 19—* * * Baptiste Defond arrived from the Mandans. Joseph Lemay from the Navy Yard and Zephine Rencontre from the Yancton camp. Zephine made no trade whatever.

Thursday, 24—* * * An Indian arrived from ash wood point with two robes which he traded. * * *

Friday, 25—* * * Mr. Laidlaw arrived from forks of Cheyenne river. He left Gordon and other men behind with horses and mules.

Saturday, 26—* * * Mr. Gordon arrived and in the evening the remainder of the party with 2 or 3 horses and mules.

Sunday, 27—* * * Ice in Missouri broke up and continued drifting thick.

Wednesday, 30—* * * Sent two men down to Cimmerians Island to bring up a canoe in that neighborhood.

Thursday, 31—* * * Madame Rencontre delivered of a fine heir last evening.

Friday, April 1—* * * Three men left here with 19 horses for mountain expedition in charge of E. Provost. We expect they will overtake Provost on Cherry river.

Saturday, 2—* * * Gordon left us to join the men who left here yesterday with horses. He conducts them to

Cherry river, where it is expected they will fall in with Provost. * * *

Monday, 4—* * * Baptiste Defond (or Dessond) arrived here for Ottos establishment with dispatches for St. Louis and the intermediate places.

Tuesday, 5—* * * Messrs. Laidlaw, Hamilton, Hay, Halsey and Rencontre with four men and 9 horses and mules left here for a buffalo hunt.

Wednesday, Apr. 6, 1831—* * * Joseph Vassure arrived from the forks of Cheyenne river. * * * He states that Mr. Chardon left there on the 1st inst. with 11 skin canoes containing 44 packs of robes. In the evening Philibert and four men arrived from the Navy Yard with keel boat "Louis Valle".

(There is here a hiatus in the record—nothing covering dates down to January 27, 1832.—C. E. D.)

Friday, 27, 1832—* * * James Parker, Pineau le Yancton and Louison Brule arrived from Ogallallahs post with the melancholy news of the death of Mr. Thomas L. Sarpy, the Cos trader at that station. (Particulars of blowing up of the pieces of powder &c.) * * * Mr. S. was one of the Cos most useful clerks, his loss will be felt and much regretted by his employers. The other men are much injured, but they are now considered out of danger.

Sunday, 29—* * * Men arrived from Ft Lookout with the news of the arrival of Leclerc at the Sioux Agency * * * Breseau Du Chouquette,¹³² Bapt. Durian left for Honcapapas and Yanktonnas camp with goods &c.

Tuesday, 31—Hands employed at the new fort, putting down piccotts for this fort, and hauling them to the new one for building logs * * * Sent off Louis Renville¹³³ to Council Bluffs with dispatches for St. Louis.

Friday, Feb. 3—* * * Cyprian Belcom (or Belcour)

¹³²Breseau Du Chouquette (Du Chouquet) of a Kaskaskia family. He was probably the grandson of Francois Lefevre Du Choquet and Therese Barrios. Julien and John are also mentioned in the list of employees following.

¹³³Louis Renville, third son of Joseph Renville, the founder of the Columbia Fur Company. See Vol. II, p. 199.

started for Yancton's post * * * Sent Quenel to hunt buffalo.

Sunday, 5—Two of our men arrived from Cedar Is. with two trains loaded with 140 plank.

Monday, 6—Hundreds of buffalo to be seen from the fort today. Hands employed raising the building 36 by 20 feet.

Wednesday, 8—* * * Sent two teams down to Cedar Island for plank * * *

Thursday, 9—* * * Baptiste Defond and Baptiste Gallieau arrived from the Sawon post * * *.

Friday, 10—* * * Louis Brule and Gabriel Fefer (or Fife)¹³⁴ arrived from Brule Post.

Saturday, 11—* * * Sent Fiksi and Philip Yancton * * * for Brule post. Men employed as usual. Finished raising a building of 36 feet by 20 feet intended for Indians and interpreters.

Sunday, 12—* * * Our men arrived from Cedar Island with two trains loaded with 120 planks.

Tuesday, 14—* * * One of our men arrived from Roy's Island. He says that four of Leclerc's men are coming up the river with two sleighs loaded with goods. They are bound to the Sawon's post on Cherry river. In the evening Mr. Laidlaw and an Indian arrived from the Sawon post.

Wednesday, 15—* * * Leclerc's men with two sleighs loaded past here. Employed making up dispatches for Ft. Union and the intermediate posts. Hands employed at the fort.

Thursday, 16—* * * Saw more than 10,000 buffalo.

Friday, 17—* * * Sent off two men to Apple River post with dispatches for Ft. Clark and Ft. Union. * * *

Saturday, 18—* * * Thousands of buffalo to be seen from the fort gate * * *.

Monday, 20—* * * Commenced duplicate ledger. Sent off three teams to Cedar Island for planks.

Tuesday, 21—* * * Brasseau Duchonquette and

¹³⁴Gabriel Fifer, Fife, Fiksi, and on the 4th of March Gabriel V. Fifie. Cannot identify but take it this is a nickname fife, the fifer, Gabriel who plays the fife. Chittenden calls him Fife, which helps us not at all.

three men arrived from the Ogallallahs post with 35 horses and mules and 130 pieces of dry meat.

Wednesday, 22—* * * I forgot to mention that J. Deshonnette¹³⁵ and an Indian arrived from White River last evening * * *.

Thursday, 23—* * * Mr. Picotte with 8 men left here for Crook's Point to cut pickets for the new fort. Deshonnette and two Indians left here for the Brules home. * * *

Friday, 24—* * * Two teams arrived here from Cedar Island with plank.

Sunday, 26—* * * Sent two trains to Cedar Island for plank.

Tuesday, 28—* * * Mr. Laidlaw's son very low, not expected to live long.

Wednesday, 29—* * * At 10 am Robert son of William Laidlow departed this life in the 5th year of his age. * * * At 4 pm his remains were interred.

Friday, 2—* * * 15 Gens de paches¹³⁶ came in with robes to trade.

Sunday, 4—* * * Gabriel V. Fifie (or Fissi) and 5 Indians arrived from White river post * * *

Monday, March 5—* * * Some Indians arrived from above. They say that all the "Gens de pache" are encamped about ten miles above here. They are coming here in a few days.

Tuesday, 6—* * * 10 Indians of the Blackfoot nation arrived to beg, &c.

Wednesday, 7—* * * Several Indians of the "Gens de pache" band arrived on a begging visit. The Blackfoot Indians who arrived yesterday left us today. One of them stole a kettle. We fortunately missed it before the fellow had proceeded far. * * * The "Gens de pache" who arrived today, say that Baptiste Durian has been lately killed

¹³⁵Deschonette. No information.

¹³⁶Gens de Paches. Evidently a band of Sioux, but I am unable to get any suggestion of whom they were. On the 14th he calls them Gens de Peches, that is, Fish People. But that does not help much, if any. The Sissetons were called the people of the Fish Villages, but this band does not appear to have come from the Sisseton region but from the north. Captain Chittenden who transcribed this portion of the journal spells the word Poche, who would perhaps mean people of the Pocket.

by a Sawon Indian, but we have reason to believe the story to be fictitious.

Thursday, 8—* * * Also several men of the Gens de pache“ came in to trade.

Friday, 9—* * * Two men arrived from Cedar Island. They were obliged to leave their plank and train on the way, the ice being so bad that they could not travel on it.

Saturday, 10—The weather is still warm and pleasant and if it continues a day or two longer the ice on the Missouri will probably break up. At Meridian four men with three horses arrived on the other side the Missouri, we suppose them to be our sawyers from Cedar Island. In the evening Mr. Picotte and two Indians arrived from the other side the Missouri. They made a skin canoe and crossed.

Tuesday, 13—* * * The Indians are crossing on the ice in great numbers with robes to trade—“Gens despaches.”

Wednesday, 14—* * * “Gens de peches” are still crossing with robes to trade * * *

Thursday, 15—* * * Still continue trading with Gens de perches.

Saturday, 17—* * * Still continue trading pretty brisk “Gens puches”

Sunday, 18—* * * Two Indians arrived from White River with a letter from Mr. Papin the commandant.

Monday, 19—* * * Finished duplicate ledger.

Friday, March 23—* * * Most of the lodges left us today. They have gone up the Little Missouri. The Missouri broke up at this place.

Monday, 26—* * * Commenced moving the goods to the new fort. * * *

Friday, 30—Fine weather. Ice commenced drifting thick at 9 a. m. and the water rose about 4 feet from sunrise to sunset. In the morning Baptiste Defond departed down the stream to meet the steam boat Yellow Stone.

Saturday, 31—Cloudy with rain at intervals. No ice drifting. The Missouri still rising. At 6 p. m. it was 7½ feet above low water mark.

Sunday, 1 April—Strong gales from the north and clear

weather. The Missouri still rising. At 5 p. m. it was nearly 8 feet above low water mark.

Monday, 2—Moderate and pleasant. The Missouri about 8 feet above low water mark.

Tuesday, 3—Moderate and pleasant. The Missouri still rising. It is now 8½ feet above low water mark. Last evening J. Jouett arrived from Ogallallahs post. * * *

Wednesday, 4—A continuation of fine pleasant weather.

Thursday, 5—Same weather as yesterday. Messrs. Laidlaw and Halsey moved up with the baggage to the new fort.

Friday, 6—* * * Two men arrived from the Yanctons post with three horses. They report the arrival of Mr. P. D. Papin at the mouth of White river with two skin canoes laden with buffalo robes.

Saturday, 7—* * * Mr. Wm. Dickson arrived from Riviere au Jacques with twelve packs of furs.

Sunday, 8—Two men arrived from the Navy Yard with the news that the Indians have stolen all the Cos horses at that place.

Monday, 9—* * * Missouri falling fast. On the 6th instant the water was so high that the old fort was nearly surrounded with water. Employed variously, hauling property from the old fort, &c, &c. Five skin canoes loaded with buffalo robes in charge of Colin Campbell arrived from the Ogallallahs post on Cheyenne river. They bring news of the murder of Francois Quenel¹³⁷ by Frederick Laboue the company's trader at Cherry river. Laboue arrived in a canoe.

¹³⁷Francois Quend; according to the version of Mr. DeLand, while Captain Chittenden in deciphering the same manuscript made it Querrel. The American Bureau of Ethnology tells the story of this murder Vol. IV, page 115, in connection with the illustration of it found in the winter counts of the Sioux, and there it is called Kennel or Kermel. Personally I believe the name to be Francois Quenel of Cahokia, where the family had long been prominent. Pierre Quenel, presumably the father of this man, was president of the Cahokia Court in 1784; Illinois Collections II, page 147 et seq. I have changed the name to Quenel wherever it appears in the manuscript. Louis LaPlant told the editor that the story was still fresh in the memory of the Indians when he first came to Fort Pierre and that he had heard it told by eye witnesses many times. LeBoue and Quenel got into a quarrel and Quenel struck LeBoue with his fist, whereupon LeBoue caught up a stick of stove wood and struck Quenel, killing him instantly, and then, being in a perfect frenzy of anger, set the body up against a tree and securing his rifle, sent seven bullets into it. When Colin Campbell returned to Fort Pierre with his report of what he had seen and learned, LeBoue was put in irons and at the first opportunity sent to St. Louis for trial. But when the court convened no one appeared against him, and he ultimately came back and resumed his position in the employ of the company. LeBoue died in 1848. See note 51.

Wednesday, 11—* * * Sent a skiff with two men to Roy's Island for cedar plank. * * * Sawons arriving.

Friday, 13—* * * Mr. Dickson left for Riviere au Jacques.

Wednesday, 18—* * * DeGrey, Juett, Lainvian and Belcom arrived from the Brule post. * * *

Saturday, 21—* * * Sent Campbell and 22 men to Cherry river to bring down peltries at that place.

Friday, 27—* * * Messrs. McKenzie, Kipp¹³⁸ and Bird¹³⁹ with 9 Blackfeet Indians arrived in a bateau from Ft. Union. McKenzie brought down 111 packs of beaver skins.

Tuesday, 1 May—* * * Mr. Bird and the Blackfoot Indians left here in the morning on a visit to the Sioux camp.

Wednesday, 2—* * * Mr. Cerre arrived yesterday from Yanctons with ninety odd packs of robes.

Friday, 4—* * * Mr. Bird and the Indians returned from the Sawon camp.

Monday, 7—* * * Colin Campbell * * * arrived from Cherry river. Mr. Campbell while at Cherry river disinterred the body of the deceased F. Quenel and as 7 wounds were found on the body Frederic Laboue was put in irons immediately on the arrival of the canoes.

Friday, 11—* * * Pierre Octubise¹⁴⁰ and two men left in a skiff in search of the steamboat.

Monday, 14—* * * Crossed 64 horses to the other side the Missouri. * * *

Tuesday, 15—* * * 3 or 400 lodges Sawons arrived and camped here.

Saturday, 19—* * * Halsey's child born.

¹³⁸Kipp. In 1823 James Kipp, working for the Columbia Fur Company built a trading post, Tilton's Fort, on the south side of the Missouri above where Ft. Clark was later built. The Rees, forced north after the Leavenworth Expedition made considerable trouble and caused the post to be moved to the Mandan village where the business was carried on until 1827. Kipp was commissioned by McKenzie in October 1828 to build Fort Floyd, which after 1830 was known as Fort Union. In 1831 he built Ft. Piegan on the Marias river. See *Fur Trade*.

¹³⁹Bird. This man was at the time interpreter for the company to the Blackfeet. He was a morose, dishonest, treacherous and dangerous fellow. Maximilian, Father DeSmet and other travelers trusted him to their peril. See *Western Travels* Vol. 23, p. 145, and Chittenden's and Richardson's *DeSmet*, p. 528.

¹⁴⁰Pierre Octubise. Chittenden has it Ortubise. He was a skillful interpreter of the Sioux language, and a useful fellow when not in drink. He went up the river with Maximilian in 1833 and 1834 and is mentioned many times by the Prince in his journal, who gives us the further information that he was a half breed, married to a Yanktonais woman.

Monday, 21—* * * Sent off 20 men to the Navy Yard to cut timber and bring it down on rafts.

Tuesday, 22—* * * Mr. Fontennelle¹⁴¹ with 20 men and a number of horses arrived here from St. Louis. They bring news of the s. b. Yellowstone. She is now between this place and the Poncas.

Wednesday, 23—* * * 18 men arrived from s. b. Yellowstone.* She has stopped for want of water about 60 miles below White River. * * * Wm. Dickson arrived. * *

Friday, 25—Clear and fine weather. B. Defond arrived from the s. b. at Big Bend. Messrs. McKenzie, Fontennelle and others left here in a keel boat to meet her.

Thursday, 31—S. b. Yellowstone arrived at 5 p. m.

Friday, June 1—* * * Sent off men to cut wood for the steam boat.

Sunday, 4—* * * The Sawons lifted their lodges and went off.

Tuesday, 5—Fine and pleasant. Sb Yellowstone left here for Ft. Union.

Wednesday, 6—* * * Mr. Fontennelle left here with 40 and odd men for Ft. Union with 110 or 15 horses.

Saturday, 9—* * * Richard and Gagnon arrived from the Navy Yard with oakum.

Sunday, 10—* * * Keel boat Flora arrived from Council Bluffs with a cargo of merchandise.

Monday, 11—* * * Flora left here for Ft. Union and boat "Maletwins" left here for the Navy Yard to bring down timber.

Friday, 15—* * * Keel boat Maletwins arrived from Navy Yard. Also 4 batteaux loaded with pickets for the fort.

Saturday, 16—* * * Loaded "Maletwins" and 4 batteaux with cargoes buffalo robes for St. Louis.

¹⁴¹Mr. Fontennelle. This was Lucien Fontennelle, a man of good family born in New Orleans in 1807. At 15 he ran away from home, and was not again known to his relatives for twenty years. He was a valuable leader of the fur brigades. He married an Omaha woman and his descendants still live near Sioux City. He committed suicide at Fort Laramie in 1836. This was the second voyage of the Yellowstone. In the summer of 1831 during the period for which no Journal appears to have been kept at Fort Pierre, Captain Choteau brought the Yellowstone as far as this place, being the first navigation of the waters of the upper Missouri by any steamboat.

Sunday, 17—Keel boat "Twin Male" and 4 bateaux left for St. Louis loaded with 1410 packs buffalo robes.

Monday, 18—* * * Hands employed hauling out timber from the river bank &c.

Saturday, 23—Sb Yellowstone arrived from Ft. Union. Sent down 600 packs robes on board.

Monday, 25—Sb Yellowstone left us for St. Louis, a cargo of 1300 packs of robes and beaver. Mr. Laidlaw went on board. He is to go down as far as Sioux Agency and return by land. Ortubise has got a keg of whiskey and is continually drunk himself and he tries to make as many of the men drunk as will drink with him.

Wednesday, 27—Laidlaw returned.

Friday, 29—* * * Six men arrived from Navy Yard with three rafts of fort timber.

Saturday, 30—* * * Men employed hauling up timber.

Sunday, July 1—Messrs. Laidlaw and Dickson left us for lac traverse in quest of some pig eaters¹⁴² expected here this summer. Castonei¹⁴³ sick and off duty.

Monday, 2—* * * Commenced hauling pickets from the river bank.

Wednesday, 4—* * * Men employed hauling pickets, putting lodges in the stores.

Thursday, 5—* * * Sent a man down the second time to try to bring up the boat from Roy's Island¹⁴⁴ * * * Returned with the boat. Set three of them at hauling pickets, and the other three at putting lodges in the stores.

Friday, 6—* * * Finished hauling the pickets.

Saturday, 7—* * * Men employed carrying 200 packs from the Baggage into the store.

Sunday, 8—* * * Messrs. Brown, Durand and 2 Americans (all beaver traps) arrived. * * *

Monday, 9—* * * Henry Hart arrived from Ft. Union with 3 bateaux. * * *

¹⁴²Canadian pork eaters, Chittenden has it. The French called them Manguers de lard because while on the way from Canada to the west, they were fed principally upon fat salt pork.

¹⁴³Castonei, according to Mr. DeLand, but Chittenden makes Castorigi of it. Cannot identify it, but it is most likely a nickname, in somewise signifying beaver.

¹⁴⁴Roy's Island. This is Farm Island, below Pierre, where the gardens belonging to Fort Pierre were cultivated.

Tuesday, 10—* * * 4 bateaux ready to start for St. Louis.

Wednesday, 11—Bateaux left for St. Louis.

Monday, 16—* * * Sent down to Roy's Island Ortibise and Deman (or Demony) to see what is going on there, also to bring up the balance of our chickens.

Tuesday, 17—* * * Men nauling up robes.

Friday, 20—* * * Vasseur and 2 men belonging to LeClerc's Co.¹⁴⁵ arrived at the mouth of Teton River for the purpose of building, and establishing a trading house there. Leclaire and 3 men arrived here from Ft. Lookout.

¹⁴⁵Narcisse LeClerc came to the Missouri with the Columbia Fur Company and when the transfer was made entered the employ of the U. M. O. and served it until 1831. He was a shrewd and crafty trader, most frugal withal and had laid by a nice little nest egg and he left the employ of the Company and went to St. Louis where he induced Henry Shaw to outfit him, under the name of the Northwest Fur Company, being the same as the Canadian Company with which Narcisse was associated in his youth. LeClerc took a considerable amount of goods up the river that fall, established a post near Fort Lookout and traded extensively throughout the region. Note that on January 15, 1832 two sleighloads of Leclerc's goods were driven past Fort Pierre, enroute to Cherry Creek. This year (1832) he had made plans to greatly extend his trade, and to this end sent men to build a post at the mouth of Bad River as related in the story. Vasseur did proceed to build a comfortable, though rather small house, picketed in, which stood in the heavy timber on the south side of Bad river very close to where Joseph Wandall's cabin now is. It was never occupied for trade. On July 9, 1832, the act of Congress prohibiting taking liquor into the Indian country, or the sale of liquor to Indians passed and thereby hangs a tale. Knowledge of the passage of the act had reached the west but General Clark, (Captain William Clark of Lewis and Clark) Superintendent of Indian Affairs at Saint Louis, had not been officially notified of the law. LeClerc was outfitting for his winter's campaign, and Clark gave him permission to take 250 gallons of spirits up the river. At the same time he issued a permit to the American Company to take up a thousand gallons. The Company had a post near Omaha in charge of J. B. Cabanne; Pierre Choteau, returning from the famous voyage of the Yellowstone, to Fort Union, and having, while up river, learned of LeClerc's purposes, told Cabanne that by hook or by crook he was to stop LeClerc from getting up with his goods. He was to buy them if he could but he was to stop him at all events. When Choteau reached St. Louis he learned of the circumstance of the passage of the prohibition bill and he shrewdly figured that if he waited until spring he would never get the liquor up river so he turned the Yellowstone about, loaded on the spirits, and started for Pierre. LeClerc had already started up river with keel boats. At Leavenworth the Yellowstone was overhauled by government authorities and the liquor confiscated, but LeClerc had got by. Cabanne was on the outlook for him and met him twenty miles down the river and accompanied him back to his trading post. He discovered that LeClerc had contraband liquor aboard and resolved to use that as a pretext for stopping him, although he was not a public officer nor in any way authorized to enforce the new law. He let Leclerc pass his post but a short distance above he had planted a cannon where it would command the stream and when the keelboats approached he demanded that he surrender upon penalty of being blown out of the water. Leclerc's shrewd mind at once saw the way to better profits than he could make in the wilderness and he surrendered with alacrity and hastening back to St. Louis secured the criminal prosecution of Cabanne and likewise began action against the American Fur Company for damages. The matter was ultimately settled upon the payment to Leclerc of \$9,200. Thus the goods did not arrive to stock the store at Fort Pierre, but the profits were not lacking, nevertheless. See Chittenden's Fur Trade, p. 346.

Saturday, 21—The men arrived from the Navy Yard with the balance of the pickets. We have in all now 900 and it will require about 400 more. * * *

Thursday, 26—* * * We have two men cutting hay on the other side the river and one on this side.

Sunday, 29—* * * Mr. Laidlaw arrived here from the other side from the east with 36 Pork Eaters; he lost two on the road * * * Cardinal Grant arrived from the Yankton post.

Monday, 30—* * * Mr. Brown¹⁴⁶ left us with 26 Pork Eaters to cut fort timber about 12 miles above this.

Sunday, Aug 5—* * * Banal Suoux¹⁴⁷ arrived from the Navy Yard in quest of sundry articles wanted there.

Monday, 6—* * * Baptiste Durion, Chs. Peman¹⁴⁸ and Hipolite Neissd¹⁴⁹ (or Neipd) left here this morning * * * with merchandise to trade meat * * * Sent out Ortubise to the Navy Yard (or Shanty) to hunt four men at work there.

Tuesday, Aug 7—* * * Louis Demaray¹⁵⁰ laid up with ———C. V. Cerre left us for the Brule camp.

Saturday, 11—11 Sioux Indians arrived from the other side the river. (They belong to the band called the Black-feet).

Tuesday, 14—* * * Messrs Catlin¹⁵¹ and Bogart¹⁵² arrived from Ft. Union on their way to St. Louis.

Wednesday, 15—* * * Bapt. Durion and G. P. Cerre arrived from the Brule camps.

¹⁴⁶Of this Mr. William L. Brown I am unable to learn anything.

¹⁴⁷Banal Suoux. Can make nothing of it.

¹⁴⁸Chas. Peman. Chittenden makes this, correctly as I think, Charles Primeau.

¹⁴⁹Hipolite Neised or Neipd. Chittenden makes it Hipolite Neissel, but whatever his name may be, I can get no information of him.

¹⁵⁰Louis Demaray. This is Louis Desmarais who came with the Columbia Fur Company from the Red River of the North, where the family had furnished many voyageurs and guides during fifty previous years. See New Light, p. 51 and p. 443.

¹⁵¹George Catlin, the famous Indian painter. He arrived at Fort Pierre, on Wednesday, the 23rd of May with the party which walked from the stranded Yellowstone and went on to Fort Union when the vessel came up river on June 5th. See Vol. II, p. 167.

¹⁵²Bogart. Catlin has much to say of this man, and also another companion on the voyage whom he calls Baptiste, a free trapper not mentioned in this journal. Both were still with him when he reached Fort Leavenworth. I get no hint of the identity of these men. Basil and William Bergard, dit Bogard, of Vincennes took the oath of allegiance to Spain, at New Madrid, Missouri, July 21, 1795.

Thursday, 16—* * * Mr. Catlin left us for St. Louis accompanied by Mr. Bogart in a skiff.

Friday, 17—* * * Durion (while hunting) fell in with an Indian riding off with one of the Cos horses. After a little scuffle he killed the Indian and we got back the horse. We suppose he was a Ree. Durion did not fire at the Indian till he had fired two arrows at him.

Saturday, 18—Finished hay making. And have five mud chimneys on their way * * *

Tuesday, 21—* * * Louis Tarcot¹⁵³ and James Durrant¹⁵⁴ having stolen a canoe and departed last evening (Navy Yard)

Thursday, 23—* * * Brown arrived with the two deserters. He caught in the middle of the Big Bend.

Friday, 24—* * * Commenced planting pickets for the fort.

Sunday, 26—Also ten or twelve lodges of the Brules, Ogallallahs and Bad Arrow point arrived from Teton river.

Friday, 31—* * * Two Indians arrived from Sawon from Bear (or Beau) river in search of a trade.

Monday, Sept. 3—* * * Cerri¹⁵⁵ and Luett¹⁵⁶ (or Leutt) with two men from the Sawons and Ogallallah camps on Bear river.

Saturday, 8—* * * Mr. Laidlaw went down to Roy's Island in a bateau to bring up a load of corn.

Tuesday, 11—* * * Mr. Brown left us for the Navy Yard, otherwise called the lumber yard. In the evening Charles DeGrey and Colin Campbell arrived, DeGray from St. Louis and Campbell from Yancton camp.

Wednesday, 12—Charboneaux,¹⁵⁷ Bellehumeur¹⁵⁸ and Du-

¹⁵³Tarcot. Do not find the name elsewhere.

¹⁵⁴Perhaps Durand. See note 77.

¹⁵⁵Carri. Probably Cerre.

¹⁵⁶Leutt. Probably Joseph Juett.

¹⁵⁷Toussaint Charbonneau. Guide and interpreter to Lewis and Clark and husband of Sacajawea, the bird woman. See original journals of Lewis and Clark, Vol. I, p. 217 et seq.

¹⁵⁸This was Simon Bellehumeur who next year was Maximilian's interpreter to the Mandans. He came from the Red River of the North where his family had been in the employ of the Northwest Fur Company. See Maximilian (Western Travels) 24, p. 11. His son Pierre Chenie Bellehumeur was guide to Sully in the campaign of 1864.

rand with two Arriccaras squaws arrived from the Mandan village.

Friday, 14—Charboneaux et al left us for the Mandans.

Sunday, 23—* * * J. Fillion¹⁵⁹ and J. Landry¹⁶⁰ arrived in a canoe from Ft. Union.

Monday, 24—Laidlaw, Halsey, Campbell and Demaray and an Indian left for Sioux Agency near Ft. Lookout and on Sunday the 30th they returned accompanied by the Dr. M. Martin¹⁶¹ who visits this place for the purpose of vaccinating the Indians. Messrs McKenzie, Fontennelle with several others arrived from Ft. Union * * *

Tuesday, Oct 2—Dr. Martin left us on his return to the Sioux agency.

Saturday, 13—* * * Messrs. Papin, Bijaoux¹⁶² and Duchonquette arrived from St. Louis.

Monday, 15—McKenzie, Fontennelle and party left for St. Louis. Keel boat Argo arrived from St. Louis.

Thursday, 18—Lamont with 8 men left for Ft. Clark.

Friday, 19—Cardinal Grant and another man arrived from Ft. Lookout with horses and merchandise belong to J. P. Cabanne. Emillien Primeau arrived from Riviere au Jacques. He left Louis Demaray on the road * * * so much indisposed that he could not travel.

Saturday, 20—* * * Employed putting up goods for J. L. Bean U. S. I. agent * * *

Thursday, 25—Louis Demaray arrived very sick.

Thursday, Nov. 1—Two men arrived * * * from Ft. Lookout or Sioux Agency. They announce Mr. Picotte's

¹⁵⁹Fillion. No information.

¹⁶⁰J. Landry came from a well known Canadian family. The name was originally spelled Landrie, but the accepted spelling of later years was as Halsey has it. One of the family, Francois by name, was an Astorian who was massacred while returning from the West. This man, Joseph Landry of the journal, left a family in South Dakota, and the station on the Chicago, Milwaukee and St. Paul R. R., in the southwest corner of Dewey county perpetuates his name.

¹⁶¹So far as I know, Dr. Martin was the first physician to practice in South Dakota. He was in the employ of the government and it is notable that at this early date a benevolent government had undertaken to eradicate small pox from these remote savages.

¹⁶²Bijaoux. This was no doubt Joseph Bijou, for whom Bijou Hills are named. He was a well known character of the frontier and was with the Long expedition of 1820, and Major Long speaks highly of him. He had a trading house for a time on the Missouri at the foot of Bijou Hills. His real name was Bessonnet. He was finally killed by the Indians, if Catlin may be believed. See *Western Travels*, 16, p. 58, and many references in Thwaites' Index.

arrival there with keel boat Atlas. Mr. Picotte requests assistance of us in bringing up the Atlas to this place. The men of his crew having engaged to bring the boat no higher than Sioux Agency and to return thence to Council Bluffs. * * * A Harvey¹⁶³ and Beckwourth¹⁶⁴ arrived from Ft. Lookout on their way to the Mandans (both Freeman).

Thursday, 8—* * * Unloaded keel boat "Argo" of plank from Roy's Island.

Monday, 12—Hauling hay from banks of the river, topping the houses, making fort gates, &c.

13—Atlas arrived.

Friday, 23—* * * Sawyers arrived from Roy Island.

Friday, 30—Lachapelle arrived from the Mandans. He was stopped by the ice with a boat load of corn &c, near Beaver creek between the Ree and Mandan village. He "cached" the cargo of the boat and came on with two men by land.

Wednesday, Dec. 15.—* * * Michel Hebert, Louis Demaray, Louis Monique,¹⁶⁵ James Boyle,¹⁶⁶ and Samuel Belpre¹⁶⁷ sick and off duty.

Friday, 28—* * * H. Angi * * * left here for Riviere le C Jacques.

Saturday, 29—Campbell arrived from Ft. Clark with dispatches from Ft. Union and Ft. Clark for St. Louis.

Monday, 31—* * * Express left us for St. Louis. The bearers Vincent,¹⁶⁸ Guitard* and Antain Raboie (or Raboin). Mr. Brown also left us for the Island (Roy Is.) with eight or ten men to clear a plot for a garden.

¹⁶³Alexander Harvey, a bold and desperate character of whose atrocious conduct Larpenteur tells many tales. See Forty Years, p. 137 et seq. Harvey was still living at Fort Yates as late as 1896. At one time he was associated in business with Charles Primeau.

¹⁶⁴This was James Beckwith, (Beckworth, Beckwourth) born at Fredericksburg, Virginia, 1798. He spent most of his life among the Crows on the Yellowstone. His account of this trip to St. Louis and return to the upper country will be found in Chap. 27 of his book, "Autobiography of James P. Beckwourth" a conglomeration of fact and fancy, in which the fancy largely predominates.

¹⁶⁵Louis Monique. Louis lived to die unsung.

¹⁶⁶James Boyle. No information.

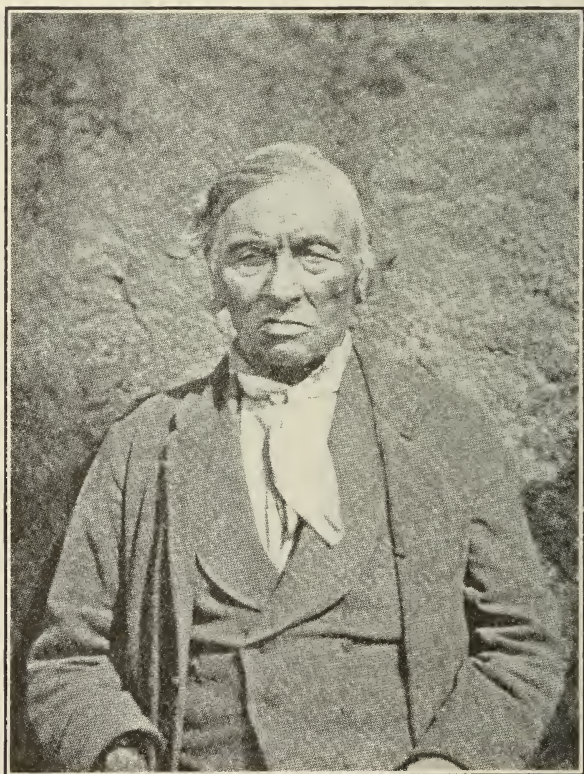
¹⁶⁷Samuel Belpre, a Canadian hunter.

¹⁶⁸Vincent. No information.

*Guitard. No information.



JAMES BECKWOURTH



PIERRE GARREAU

Thursday, 3—* * * Mr. Crawford left us for Ft. Clark.

Wednesday, Jan. 9, 1833—Two men arrived from E. Primeau's establishment. They bring letters from F. Clark and Ft. Union from which we learn that Mr. W. H. Vanderberg and A. Pillon (or Pilton) were killed by the Blackfoot Indians on the 14 October last.

Friday, 11—* * * Sent Louis Lagrave and Antoine Delude¹⁶⁹ to Council Bluffs with letters to St. Louis to communicate the death of Mr. Vanderberg * * *

Sunday, 13—* * * I. Lacompt arrived from the Yancton post near the Sioux Agency * * *

Tuesday, 15—* * * More prospects the Indians to west of us are starving &c.

Saturday, 16—Champeau¹⁷⁰ and The Dog¹⁷¹ (Copeau de buche) arrived from Cheyenne establishment.

Saturday, 9—* * * Indians arrived from Serpant River¹⁷² with about 15 pieces of dry meat.

Sunday, 10—* * * Mr. Brown left us in the afternoon on his return to Bloomfield farm,¹⁷³ to which place however the unfortunate gentleman never reached alive. The ice was so weak that he broke through and was drowned not more than 20 paces from the shore of the Island. He had men with him but they were too far from him to render him any assistance.

November 11—* * * The Indian from Serpant river left us.

Thursday, 12—Mr. Braseau Duchonquette left here for

¹⁶⁹DeLude. No information.

¹⁷⁰I am guessing this to be Champenois a Canadian voyageur.

¹⁷¹The Dog. The previous spring when Catlin was at the post from May 23rd, to June 5, he reports that an altercation arose between two Sioux, The Dog, a surly and disagreeable fellow, and Little Bear, a very popular man, over a portrait of the latter which Catlin was painting, and that The Dog shot and killed The Little Bear. The tragedy created much feeling among the Sioux and a general hunt was made for The Dog by the friends of the Little Bear, seeking revenge, but he seemed to have escaped them. The French idiom in the journal which may be translated "chip of the block" suggests that the visitor of January 16th was a son of the bad man of the previous June and that he possessed the father's characteristics.

¹⁷²Serpent River. This refers to Snake creek which enters James River near Redfield.

¹⁷³Bloomfield Farm. According to Joseph Wandell, this was the garden on Farm Island.

Bloomfield farm to fill the vacancy occasioned by the death of Mr. William L. Brown.

Wednesday, 20—* * * The Little Soldier (Yancton) son-in-law left here with one of his daughters quite sick.

Wednesday, 27—Antyon (illegible) Roland, Prudent Bondien, Francais Ducharme, Louis Turcot and James Durant¹⁷⁴ stole a skiff last night and deserted.

Tuesday, April 2—E. Primeau arrived from Toneha Caxab¹⁷⁵ with two skin canoes laden with merchandise.
* * *

Thursday, 4—Auguste Bourboust* and Peter Hill not relishing the corn diet left here this morning for Ft. Clark (Mandans) in quest of better fodder.

Friday, 5—* * * Completed our Robe Baggage. It contained 830 packs.

Sunday, 14—Lamont, Picotte, May and Movise (or Mocrauin) arrived from Ft. Clark. They left a keel boat "Louis Valle" about 40 miles above here.

Saturday, 20—* * * A party went down to Teton river with seine and succeeded in taking 240 fish.

Sunday, 21—* * * Bigon¹⁷⁶ and Duschonquette arrived from Bloomfield farm with a loaded boat of plank &c.

Tuesday, 23—L. Fournier¹⁷⁷ left here with a keel boat for Cedar Island to cut wood for the purpose of making shingles.

¹⁷⁴Antoine Ruland, a voyageur from Canada. This party of deserters were doubtless a part of the band of Pork Eaters recruited the previous summer.

¹⁷⁵Toneha Caxab. The translation of this name has been submitted to several persons conversant with the Sioux language, among them Dr. Edward Ashley, Dr. Thomas L. Riggs, Elias Jacobsen and Kenneth Sellers. All of them agree that the second word is a phonetically written Kaksap (Ka-ksa-pi) meaning cut with an axe. No rational meaning can be found for the first word to-ne-ha, but it is the consensus of opinion that some place, not far up the river, where the timber lands had been cut over was meant. Dr. Ashley is of the opinion that the wood yard or navy yard as it was commonly called, at Chantier creek, about twenty miles above Fort Pierre is intended. This point meets all of the conditions of the text. It was up the river, on the way to Fort Union, as we learn January 9 when "two men arrived from Primeau's establishment from Fort Union."

*Bourboust and Hill. No information. Perhaps more of the Pork Eaters.

¹⁷⁶Bigon. No information.

¹⁷⁷L. Fournier, was of a family of Canadians, several members of which were employed by the Northwest Fur Company. He probably came to the Missouri with the Columbia Fur Company. In 1835 Louis Fournier was on the Willamette in Oregon. He may have been our man. See New Light, p. 288.

Tuesday, 30—* * * Keel Boat arrived from Cedar Island with timber for shingles.

Saturday, May 4—D. D. Mitchell arrived from Ft. Union with a bateau loaded with skins &c

Tuesday, 7—The strangers who arrived last night confessed themselves to be traders.* They say their employers Messrs. Sublett (a), Campbell (b) and Leclerc have two keel boats now on their way up the river laden with merchandise. Pierre Garrow and one of them left here for the Mandans this morning. The others took the road down the river * * *

Friday, 17—Mr. Wm. P. May and two American strangers left us for St. Louis in a canoe.

Tuesday, 21—L. Fontennelle and man arrived from C. Bluffs. He says that two S Bs are now on their way up here some where between this and Poncas village.

22—Steamboats stopped for want of water.

Monday, 27—* * * Several freemen arrived from the upper country today. Mr. Adams¹⁷⁹ one of the party remained here on the other side to proceed on down the river. Lamont and Mitchell left here in a skiff to meet the S Bs.

Wednesday, 29—S B Yellowstone arrived from St. Louis.

Thursday, 30—S B Assiniboine arrived from St. Louis.

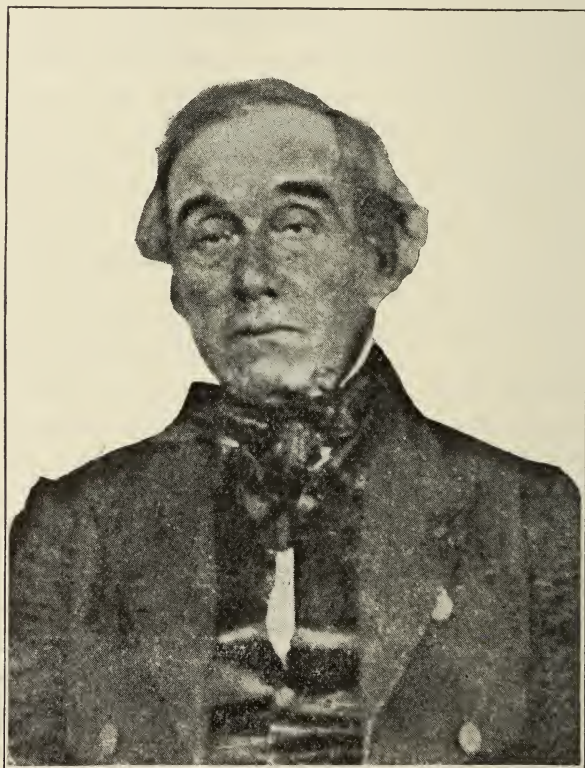
(End of Volume from January 27, 1832 to June 1, 1833.
—(C. E. D.)

*The audacity of men who would enter an American Fur post and confess they were opposition traders was scarcely understandable to Halsey. Had they confessed themselves murderers or horsethieves, it would have been less surprising.

a.—William Sublett. See Note 50, page 255, Vol. I.

b.—Robert Campbell, born in Tyrone County Ireland, in 1804, died in St. Louis, 1879. He came to the Missouri about 1824, and entered a partnership with William Sublett in opposition to the American Fur Company in the year of this journal, 1833. The Journal suggests that Narcisse Leclerc was in partnership with them, which I doubt. Apparently Leclerc was still in St. Louis at this time, not yet having realized upon his venture with the American Fur Company.

¹⁷⁹I do not know Mr. Adams. At about this date the firm of Sybille, Adams & Company is mentioned. See Thwaites Early Western Travels XXX, p. 61.



ANDREW DRIPS

THE WAR ON WHISKEY IN THE FUR TRADE.

To Jedediah S. Smith is given the credit for making the first protest against the use of liquors in promoting the fur trade among the Indians, and to Gen. William H. Ashley, member of Congress from Missouri, and himself one of the most notable of the fur traders, having accumulated a tremendous fortune in the business is given the credit of having made practically effective the results of Smith's agitation.

While in St. Louis in the Autumn of 1916 Mr. DeLand copied from the letter books kept by Maj. Drips as Indian Agent at Fort Pierre a great deal of important correspondence, much of which bears directly upon the efforts of the government to suppress the liquor traffic among the Indians. As a prelude to that correspondence I have here reproduced the material portion of the act of June 30th, 1830, as well as the instructions supplied by the Federal Authorities to Major Andrew Drips when he was appointed to the important task of enforcing the law.

Major Andrew Drips was born in Westmoreland county, Pennsylvania, in 1789 and died in Kansas City, Missouri, September 1, 1860. He had prior to his appointment as Indian agent been long employed by the American Fur Company and he was among their most valuable traders and was entirely familiar with the entire northwest and all of the conditions of the region and of trade. He was charged by opposition companies with gross favoritism to the American in his administration of the Indian agency, but whether or not the charge was just it is difficult at this distance to determine. He left a reputation for integrity and high character.

The following is the material section of the act of 1830, prohibiting sale of liquors to Indians.

"Sec. 20. And be it further enacted, That if any person shall sell, exchange or give, barter or dispose of, any spirituous liquor or wine to an Indian (in the Indian country,) such person shall forfeit and pay the sum of five hundred dollars; and if any person shall introduce, or attempt to introduce, any spirituous liquor or wine into the Indian country, except such supplies as shall be necessary for the officers

of the United States and troops of the service, under the directions of the War Department, such person shall forfeit and pay a sum not exceeding three hundred dollars; and if any superintendent of Indian affairs, Indian agent, sub-agent, or commanding officer of a military post, has reason to suspect, or is informed, that any white person or Indian is about to introduce, or has introduced, any spirituous liquor or wine into the Indian country in violation of the provisions of this section, it shall be lawful for such superintendent, Indian agent, or sub-agent, or military officer, agreeably to such regulations as may be established by the President of the United States, to cause the boats, stores, packages, and places of deposits of such person, to be searched, and if any spirituous liquor or wine is found, the goods, boats, packages, and peltries of such person shall be seized and delivered to the proper officer, and shall be proceeded against by libel, in the proper court, and forfeited, one half to the use of the informer, and the other half to the use of the United States; and if such person is a trader, his license shall be revoked, and his bond put in suit. And it shall moreover be lawful for any person in the service of the United States, or for any Indian, to take and destroy any ardent spirits or wine found in the Indian country, except military supplies, as mentioned in this section."

Major Drips' Commission.

WAR DEPARTMENT,

Office of Indian Affairs, September 8, 1842.

Sir: You have been appointed by the President, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate of the United States, Indian agent for the Indian tribes on the upper Missouri, and I herewith enclose your commission as such.

The principal object in making this appointment is to insure the most effectual means of preventing the introduction of ardent spirits into the Indian country, and to preserve peace among the Indian tribes in that region, as well among themselves as toward the whites. It is not intended that you shall be stationary at any one point, but your

duty will be to traverse the whole country within your limits, above, and north, and northwest, and northeast of Council Bluffs, as far as may be necessary to effect the object of your appointment, and to seek out and punish all offenders against the laws. There are but few whites residing in the district referred to, except at distant and widely separated trading posts, and over these traders it will be your duty to keep a watchful eye, as well as upon those who enter the country unlawfully. You are fully authorized by the law regulating trade and intercourse to eject all who go into the Indian country to trade without a license, or to sell whiskey, or to settle on the Indian lands contrary to the 10th section of the law of the 30th of June, 1834, as well as to revoke the licenses of those who violate the law. It is impossible to designate the particular points where your presence and action will be most necessary. In all this you will be governed by circumstances, and the best information you can procure.

It is all important that you should be as much as possible among the Indians, and endeavor by every argument to gain their confidence, at least of the better part of them. In doing so you will find sources of information that can be obtained in no other way, and when once convinced of the deadly effects of alcohol or other intoxicating drinks, they can not fail to estimate properly every effort on your part to avert such consequences. Through the instrumentality of the more discreet of the Indians, you may be furnished with information not only of the places where the liquor is to be found, but of the names of those introducing it; and, if any stimulus be necessary to their exertions, it may be applied by the promise of suitable presents for all such services as may result in the detection of offenders.

I can not too strongly impress upon you the importance of the duty imposed on you. The prevention of the use of strong drink has almost been considered the one thing needful to insure the prosperity of the Indian race and its advancement in civilization. The use of it has tended more to the demoralization of the Indians than all other causes combined, and if by your exertions the abominable traffic can be

prevented, even in a partial degree, you will deserve, as you will receive, the thanks of the Government and the blessings of the Indians.

With a view to your comfort instructions will be given to the superintendent at St. Louis to cause to be erected a suitable building as a residence for yourself and another for your interpreter; and as it is intended as a general rule that you should visit the Indians, and not they you, it will not be necessary to erect any buildings for their accommodation, but if perchance a few now and then call on you, you must manage to accommodate them as well as you can at the houses built for yourself and interpreter. Their location will be at the mouth of the Teton river, about the center of what is called the Sioux country, at which point it has been represented whiskey is to be found in the greatest plenty.

You will also be provided with a horse for yourself, and one for your interpreter, and with one, if found necessary, to pack your provisions and baggage when on your travel.

The selection of an interpreter will be left to yourself. He should be a man of respectability, and of sufficient energy of character to be equal to any emergency; and if, at any time, it should be necessary, you will be authorized to employ other interpreters, for a limited time, to interpret languages with which your regular interpreter is unacquainted. All these arrangements, however, will be made by the superintendent of Indian Affairs at St. Louis, who will advise with you at the proper time.

Your compensation will be at the rate of \$1,500 per annum, in full of services and expenses, except forage for horses when required, and that of your interpreter will be \$300 per annum.

I enclose copies of such laws and regulations as will be necessary to guide you in your duties, and also the form of a bond for the faithful discharge of your duties, in the penal sum of \$5,000; which you will be pleased to execute, with two or more sureties, whose sufficiency must be certified by a United States district judge or district attorney.

You will report to D. D. Mitchell, Esq., superintendent

of Indian Affairs at St. Louis, who will give you instructions from time to time, and through whom you will conduct all your correspondence.

It will be expected of you to report as often as possible, your progress in the accomplishment of the object in view; and it will be gratifying at any time to receive suggestions touching the subject.

In conclusion, I beg leave to impress upon you the necessity of a rigid enforcement of the law against all transgressors, and the exercise of entire impartiality in its application; so that, if complaints are made, that this one was favored, and that one dealt hardly by, an investigation will prove their utter groundlessness, and the administration of Indian affairs be free from just reproach.

Very respectfully, &c.,

T. HARTLEY CRAWFORD,

ANDREW DRIPS, ESQ.

Commissioner.

Drips' Instructions.

Office Superintendent Indian Affairs.

St. Louis, October 6, 1842.

Sir: You are already informed of your appointment as Indian Agent on the Upper Missouri, and instructed, in general terms, as to the nature of your peculiar duties, by a letter from the Commissioner of Indian Affairs.

It is so much to be regretted that the commission was not sooner secured; and, also, that no troops were furnished to enforce (if necessary) a strict observance of the intercourse law; but this only makes it the more necessary for prompt and energetic action on your part. You will therefore proceed as rapidly and as quietly as possible to Fort Pierre, near the mouth of Teton river; this is the principal depot for all goods intended for trade in the Sioux country. Here it will be necessary to make an immediate and thorough search for whiskey, taking care to avail yourself of all the information that can be obtained, both from free whites and well-disposed Indians. When nothing more remains to be done at this point, it will be well to push across the country to Laramie's fork of the River Platte,

taking the small trading houses that are generally established along the Black hills in your way. On the Platte you will, in all probability, find quantities of liquor brought in from Santa Fe; with these violators of all law, who have neither the privileges of a license nor citizenship, I would deal in a very summary and severe manner, and if physical force be necessary, I doubt not but that it will be cheerfully furnished by the American traders. When the whole of the Sioux country has been well scoured, your next move should be to Fort Clark at the Mandan villages. The trade in this region being confined to the Arrickera and Gros Ventre villages (all within a few miles of each other), a few days will suffice to find out and destroy liquor should there be any.

The routes which have been thus briefly sketched out, will consume the greater portion, perhaps the whole, of the winter season; but early in the spring, say in the month of March, I would proceed on to Fort Union at the mouth of the Yellow Stone river. You will arrive at the very period when the principal trade is being made, and thence a pleasant journey through a highly picturesque country will bring you to the Blackfoot post, near the mouth of Marie river; whiskey has been extensively introduced among the Blackfeet during the last few years; and if one destructive blow could be struck in this remote region, traders would be very cautious about running the risk, and incurring the great expense of renewing the supply. All this I think may be accomplished in time for you to descend the Missouri in a skiff or canoe at the opening of navigation. If so, you will be able to meet the trading boats somewhere between Council Bluffs and the mouth of Teton river, which you will regard as your headquarters; and where your reports, accounts, &c., will be made out and forwarded to this office. It is unnecessary to remind you of the importance of having the trading boats thoroughly overhauled on their way up.

* * * * *

I am, sir, your most obedient servant,

D. D. MITCHELL,

MAJOR A. DRIPS,

Superintendent Indian Affairs.

U. S. Indian Agent.

(Following are extracts from Maj. Drips' letters—
C. E. D.)

Abbott's Wintering Ground,*
Nov. 5, 1843.

Maj. Drips:

We have this day engaged Mr. John Pichard, Peter Richard, Edward Bertrand,¹⁸⁰ William Tucker,¹⁸¹ Henry Claymore¹⁸² and Antoine Johannes,¹⁸³ and wish you to grant them permission to be included in the licenses under which we are acting.

PRATT¹⁸⁴ & CABANNE.¹⁸⁵

Ft. Pierre, Nov. 1, 1843.

Messrs. Pratt & Cabanna,
Gentlemen:

You are hereby authorized to build trading houses at the following places to wit:

12 miles below mouth of Beaver river.¹⁸⁶

*Abbott's or Ebbett's Wintering Ground was at about the location of Binder post office at Little Bend. The true name is Ebbetts. I have been able to learn very little of Ebbetts, except that he had prior to 1841, been long enough in the employ of the American Fur Company to learn the tricks of the business and had in the year named, traded upon his own account with great success. He went the following winter to New York and induced Fox, Livingston and Company to back him and in 1842 came out in open opposition to the American. The result was the building of many opposition posts, especially Fort George, twenty miles below Pierre. The enterprise was disastrous to his partners. See Chittenden's Fur Trade, p. 369. Joseph Wandell says Ebbett had a big business at Little Bend.

¹⁸⁰Edward Bertrand. The Bertrands were Canadians. Jean Baptiste visited the Mandans as early as 1793. In 1804 he was in the employ of the Northwest Fur Company. This man was probably of the same stock.

¹⁸¹William Tucker. No information.

¹⁸²Henry Clement (Claymore). The Claymores were a St. Louis French family. It is likely this Henry was an elder brother of the well known Basil Claymore, who did not come to the upper river until June 5th, 1840.

¹⁸³Antoine Johannes. This was Antoine Jeunesse a Canadian. The name in the Canadian records is LaJeunesse. In the Missouri river records it will be found spelled all the way from its proper form to Johnson. This man grew in importance and became post manager of Frenchman's Point on the Yellowstone.

¹⁸⁴Pratte. Bernard Pratte of St. Louis whose wife was a Choteau.

¹⁸⁵John P. Cabanne, of St. Louis, the man who stopped Leclerc in 1832. See note 144.

¹⁸⁶Twelve miles below Beaver Creek is just above the state line, in southern North Dakota.

At a point on the Missouri river above the old Ree village* called **Waniti**.

On the Moreau river about 30 miles above its mouth.¹⁸⁷

And also at a point on the Missouri river called **Ebbetts**¹⁸⁸ wintering ground.

ANDR. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

You are also permitted to send out and trade meat but nothing else.

Mouth of Teton River Upper Missouri

November 1, 1843

Maj. Drips:

In conformity with the license under which I am acting I apply to you as Agent of the Upper Missouri Territory for permission to trade at the following points * * * On the Moreau 30 miles above its mouth on the Missouri. 12 miles below Beaver and at a point called The Old Ree Village. At Fort Pierre at a point below the mouth of the Cheyenne where Abbotts wintering ground was in 1842.

Fort Union,
November 4, 1843

Messrs. Pr. Chouteau Jr. & Co.,
Gentlemen:

You are hereby authorized to establish trading houses at all the point designated in the license of Messrs. Pratt & Cabenna and at such other points or posts that I may hereafter grant to said P. & C.

ANDR. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

*Waniti was presumably the camp of Waanatan (Waneta), the notable Cuthead Sisseton Chief and English Captain. He removed to the Missouri and set up a protectorate over the Rees, protecting them from the Sioux, in consideration of which he exacted tribute in corn and horses. See Vol. II, p. 101.

¹⁸⁷The trading post on the Moreau was at the mouth of the Little Moreau, thirty miles in a direct line from the Missouri, but much further by the very crooked course of the stream.

¹⁸⁸See note on Abbott's Winterground, foregoing.

Fort Pierre,
November 4, 1843.

Jos. V. Hamilton,¹⁸⁹

Fort John,¹⁹⁰ River Platte:

(Sale of alcohol among Indians—C. E. D.) * * *

I have every reason to believe that Richards has brought a good supply into this country with him, and I expect he is still out on the Cheyenne above the forks, but will keep a watchful eye on his movements. Mr. Sybell¹⁹¹ passed this place a few days ago and will establish himself on the Missouri below the mouth of the Cheyenne. I have given Messrs. Pr Chouteau Jr. & Co. permission to establish trading houses at all points designated in the license of Messrs. Pratt & Cabenna. You will keep the traders confined to their posts as much as possible * * *. Mr. Pecott (Picotte) arrived here last evening from St. Louis * * *. Mr. Bouis¹⁹² will forward to you several letters I have received from Mr. Cutting,¹⁹³ a few books for you from your lady, &c. There is a company of dragoons stationed at the

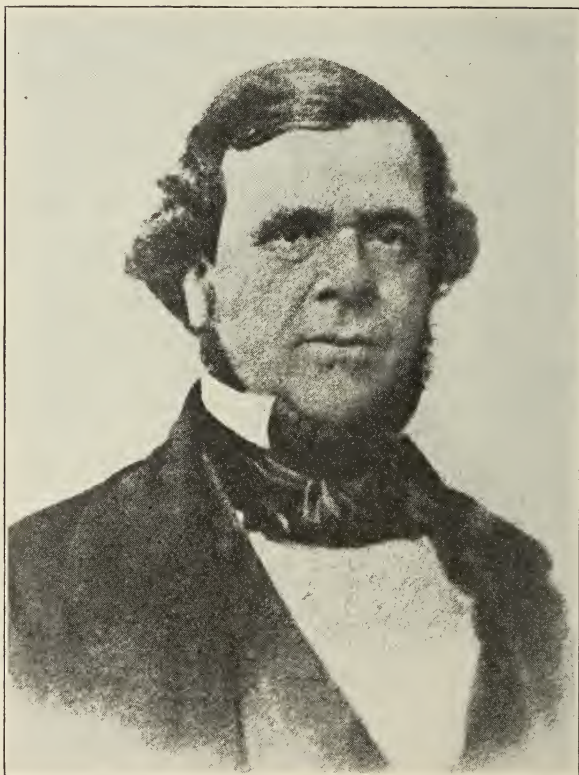
¹⁸⁹Major Joseph V. Hamilton, was at this time one of the many employees of the American Fur Company temporarily acting as Indian agent and especially as a supervisor of agencies. The pull of the American Fur Company was such that all of the agents of the region served the company first, and the Government and the Indians afterwards. Major Hamilton was a son of Major Thomas Hamilton of the United States army, and grandson of Col. John Whistler, also a regular Army officer. He was born at Fort Madison, Iowa, 1811, his two sons were Charles and Grant. He died at Fort Randall, August 23rd, 1867. In his later years Hamilton lived on Pratt Creek in Charles Mix County. The Indians called him "the man that fears nothing," but Louis De Letelier, at p. 244 of Vol. IV does not pay a very high tribute to his courage.

¹⁹⁰Fort John B. Sarpy was located upon the Laramie River in southeastern Wyoming. It was built by William Sublett in 1834. It came to be known as Fort John, as Fort Pierre Choteau has gone into history and geography as Fort Pierre.

¹⁹¹Mr. Sybell (Sybille) was the senior partner in the fur trading firm of Sybille, Adams and Company, whose chief operations seem to have been in the vicinity of Fort Laramie and the Upper Platte. I have no further information of his operations at Little Bend than is given in this letter.

¹⁹²Mr. A. R. Bouis, was an American Fur Company trader. The previous spring the company sent him with a stock of goods down to Fort George to trade in opposition to Cutting and Kelsey, but the desperadoes employed by the latter raided his stock and drove him away. Later he built a post at the mouth of Medicine Creek, just above Big Bend, and traded there for several years. His house was known as Fort Bouis, and was a considerable establishment. Father DeSmet was entertained there repeatedly and speaks in high terms of his entertainer. See Chittenden and Richardson's DeSmet, pp. 609-628, 636-649.

¹⁹³F. Cutting, the resident agent of Fox, Livingston and Company of New York. I can learn nothing of his personal history. He complained bitterly to the Indian department that Major Dripps was using his office as Indian Agent in favor of the American Fur Company and against opposition enterprises.



COL. CERAN DE HAULT DE IASGES DE ST. VRAIN

Messrs. Dent & Senevern (St. Vrain) Fort on the Arkansas. I have no doubt, for the purpose of stopping those whiskey peddlers from the Spanish country * * *

A. DRIPS.

Office Supt Ind Affairs U. S.

July 25, 1843

Maj. A. Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.:

* * * (Whiskey trade—C. E. D.)

The great object in reestablishing the Upper Missouri Agency (as you are well aware) was the suppression of the Whiskey Trade and wherever you could hear of its being traded, concealed or prospect of being in the neighborhood, there would be the place where your presence would be required. * * * At the same time I am free to confess that in **my opinion** still more could have been accomplished. You state positively that there was whiskey trade in the country, at several different points. Now it occurs to me that you might, and ought to have obtained **positive** proof of the fact; such as would have justified a revocation of the offender's license, and confiscation of his goods, together with his expulsion from the country. * * *

You will be allowed \$600, this would be expended in the purchase of tobacco, ammunition, knives &c and as presents to the Indians * * * During the present season the Sioux have committed many depredations of a serious character upon our frontier tribes, Omahas, Poncas &c, and we wish you to impress it upon them, that the Indians on the frontier are under the special care and protection of the United States Government, that their great father has by his word guaranteed to protect them against their enemies, and that a blow struck upon them is felt by their great father as much as if any of her children were struck. You will embrace every opportunity that may occur to keep this office informed of your movements, and of all matters of importance that may from time to time transpire in the country.

D. D. MITCHELL.



MARCELLIN ST. VRAIN

Fort Pierre
30th April, 1843

Maj. Andrew Drips,
U. S. Indian Agt.:

* * *

You have already been apprised of Richard having sold to the Indians a quantity of spirituous liquor near the forks of the Cheyenne, and the loss of life in consequence (Notwithstanding the assurance he gave that he had none of that article). I am creditably informed that a quantity of liquor has been stored in Ft George, and the daily report by both whites and Indians is, that it is to be sent out to the different encampments of Indians for the purpose of trade. Believing this to be true and dreading the consequences I take this method of acquainting you with the circumstances and would strongly recommend a thorough search for the article in question if at all consistent with your duty * * * I feel also in duty bound to inform you, that there are several foreigners (who have no license) that have been and I believe are now trading and carrying on a traffic with the Indians to the great annoyance and detriment of the regularly licensed traders. I also understand that there is a man of the name of Theophile Bruguier* in your employ (or at least said to be so) who has now in his possession nearly if not quite 200 robes. He being now employed for Government gives him a decided advantage over the regular traders. Whether he thus trades with your knowledge and consent I cannot pretend to say or whether he has a right to carry on the traffic with the Indians on his own account while in the employ of and receiving wages from the Government is a matter for you to determine, and if he is not, whether it is or not the duty of the Indian agent to seize such rations. These unlicensed traders are certainly calculated, and do do a great deal of mischief amongst the Indians. They are men who have nothing to lose, are generally reckless and vindictive and work more upon the feelings of the Indians than perhaps you are aware.

H. PICOTTE.

*Theophile Bruguier, for sketch see Vol. IV, p. 263.

Ft George
April 21, 1843

Maj. Drips,
U. S. Indian Agt.,
Fort Pierre:

I have received information of two men belonging to this company having robbed one of our traders while absent from his post a considerable.

As I wish to send the individual who has given me this information to St Louis by the first boats and in case any incident should prevent his giving his deposition in the States I intend to have a statement of the facts sworn to before yourself.

If you could exist without the "good living" at Ft George (Fort Pierre is certainly meant by the writer.—D. R.) for a few days, I need not say how glad I would be of your company in this "dry meat" region, but if you cannot (I sincerely hope you can) I will send a man to Ft Pierre as soon as possible. I do not wish these facts to be made public as there is consequences that the men should not be aware that their rascality has been discovered.

J. B. Illingworth.¹⁹⁴

(Certificate, without date, by Andrew Drips, Indian Agent.)

"I certify on honor that on the 16th day of May 1843 I delivered as presents to a Yancton chief LaForche two lb of lead in bars, 1 pound of powder, 2 of tobacco, 1 knife and that I had no person with me to witness the transaction"

Council Bluffs, Agy. Feb 5 1844

Andrew Drips *
U. S. Ind. Agent,
Upper Missouri:

* * * I thank you for the information relative to the expected invasion by the enemies of the Pawnees. As

¹⁹⁴J. B. Illingworth, a young Englishman at that time in command of Fort George. See Audubon's Journal for May 28, 1843, and Larpentour's Forty Years, p. 213.

to the Yanctons, Bruleys (Brules), and Santee Sioux, becoming entirely friendly with the Omahas and Pawnees we need not expect it until these are further advanced in civilization; and those commercially circumstanced, that it is to their interest to be at peace, and this is hardly to be expected in our day; yet, we may do much to prevent a frequent repetition of those offences.

I learn by the Omahas interpreter that the horses you speak of are with the Omahas, or three of them, as three have died. We will try to get them, and deliver them to Mr. P. A. Sarpy.¹⁹⁵

My Otto children have recently killed a Patawatamy Indian. The latter say they must have \$1,000 or the murderer.

I will do all I can to prevent the Omahas and Pawnees from violating any promises which they may make with the Sioux, and as the latter are the powerful and strong warring on the weak, I trust that you will use all your influence to have the Sioux remain in their own country, if they do not they may expect a combination of all the frontier tribes who will endeavor to make a formidable incursion into the Sioux country.

DANIEL MILLER,¹⁹⁶

Indian Agent.

Ft Pierre, Dec 22, 1843

To The Gentlemen in charge of Ft. Geo.:

On my return from the interior a few days ago, I was informed that you sent goods with an Indian to a camp of Esantes at Big Bend one at or near Ft Lookout and another at or near the forks of the White river. You are aware I suppose that such conduct is in violation of the law particularly when those Indians are accompanied by white men in

¹⁹⁵Peter A. Sarpy came up the Missouri from St. Louis as early as 1823 as a representative of the American Fur Company and settled at Bellevue, Nebraska. Sarpy county was named for him. See Nebraska Collections, Vol. 16.

¹⁹⁶Daniel Miller, a native of Maryland and a lawyer by profession. Was United States Indian Agent at Council Bluffs, having oversight of the Ottos, Pottawatomies, and Pawnees. He was a man of intelligence, his reports to the Indian Commissioner showing unusual insight into conditions and the character of his people.

your employ. The person in charge of this post fearing that something of the kind might take place requested me to give him a permit to follow you in whatever camp you **sent goods to**, which permit I immediately granted, and would, and am still willing to do the same with your company when regularly applied for. On one occasion you spoke of a trading post at **Wanite**. I refer you to my answer to Mr. Taylor,¹⁹⁷ in a communication of the 29th October on the subject, from whom which you will see that you have no excuse for your conduct. I am also informed that you have sent out some whiskey to the camp of Indians near Ft Lookout. I hope and trust that such is not the case. In a communication which I had with Mr Cutting on the subject lately he promised me that you would not trap or go out of his fort and I am well convinced that he will keep his word * * *

ANDW. DRIPS,
U. S. Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre
December 21, 1843

Maj. J. V. Hamilton:

Yours of the 4th instant I received last night on my return from a tour of visiting the trading posts on the Cheyenne river &c. I met with but few Indians on my trip and no buffalo. I will leave here about the first of January next to remain until the trade is finished next spring for the purpose of watching a whiskey merchant who is building at the Forks of the Cheyenne * * * I approve of your plan respecting the two traders. Screw them if you can catch them and advise me of the fact as soon thereafter as practicable. I am sorry to inform you that the books you say were left in a Bastion have been taken above by Mr. Husband¹⁹⁸ * * *

A. D.

¹⁹⁷Mr. Taylor, a partner clerk in Fox, Livingston's Missouri river enterprise.

¹⁹⁸Mr. Husband. In 1847 this man was employed by Alexander Harvey in opposition. He spent that winter 18 miles below Fort Union where Charles Larpenteur was sent to compete with him in trade.

Fort William,¹⁹⁹ Aug 1, 1835²⁰⁰

(Not addressed)

My dear Friend:

I wrote a few days ago a few lines by express and did not give you much information, expecting at the time to go out, but since, I have concluded that it would be better for our mutual interests for me to remain at this place until the returns from the mountains are in and then go down with them according to our agreement with Messrs. Fitzpatrick, Sublette & Bridger.²⁰¹ I regret however very much that I could not make it convenient to go up and see you not only on account of business but on account of friendship. It would be too tedious for me at the present to undertake to give you a full view of our business. Suffice to say that it stands fair. Mr. Fitzpatrick may be able to give you some information on the subject.

I wish you would have the goodness to settle all accounts (**separately**) which regards our old and new concern and * * * John Gray²⁰² and myself have not settled any of our affairs. It is left to you and me. As the outfit is to be paid off by him and the other half placed to the company * * * As regards his arrangement with Robidieux²⁰³

¹⁹⁹Fort William. Name for William Sublett. Was located on the site of the Fort Buford near the mouth of the Yellowstone.

²⁰⁰It will be observed that this letter is out of place, and has no relation to the time or the Indian agency. It was written a year before the suicide of Lucien Fontenelle, and it is possible that it was addressed to Andrew Drips, who perhaps carelessly allowed it to be inserted in the official letter book.

²⁰¹Fitzpatrick, Sublette and Bridger. It consisted of Thomas Fitzpatrick, a well known trader of that time, and later much employed by the government as a guide. Milton G. Sublette, a brother of the more famous William, and James Bridger, the most notable of all the great scouts and guides of the Northwest. Bridger was born in Richmond, Virginia, in 1804, and died at Kansas City, July 17, 1881. The firm was organized in 1834, and dissolved by the death of Milton Sublette in 1836.

²⁰²John Gray was a trader of St. Louis, and a hunter of exceptional marksmanship. In 1841 Gray was with a party of English hunters at Chimney Rock on the Yellowstone, where he killed five bears at one engagement. Father DeSmet met him with this party and tells of his prowess. See *Western Travels*, Vol. 27, p. 665-6. A few years ago a son of John Gray was still living in St. Louis.

²⁰³Robidoux. This refers to Joseph Robidoux, Jr., who was the first settler on the site of Kansas City, then known as Black Snake Hill. The Robidoux were a notable family; Joseph Sr. came from Canada to Kaskaskia, where he grew rich and removed to St. Louis where he was prominent in affairs under the old regime. He was one of the incorporators of "The Commercial Company for the Discoveries of Nations of the Upper Missouri" in 1794. This is the company that sent Jean Baptiste Trudeau to the Dakota country. See Vol. VI., p. 403. Joseph Senior, was one of the hostiles who was very slow to accept the new order when the United States purchased Louisiana. Joseph Jr., was born in St. Louis

I do not know anything about that, and leave it to you to fix. He talks about some beans, corn and pumpkins which you sent to my woman for yours * * * F. has charge of **old Gray** (your horse). He is now in fine order and has not been rode coming up this far. There are several men going out now who are hired only for the trip up and down. Mr. Cerre will tell you who they are, or, if he cannot, the men will tell you themselves * * * I have had a good deal of difficulty in getting up this outfit on account of the heavy expenses that we are under * * *

L. FONTENELLE.

N. B. You will also receive a bridle from Capt. Walker which I sent up to you. Bridgers has a fine coat, cap, pantaloons &c baled up for me among his goods * * * There are two gentlemen going up with the party who are down, and I wish that you would treat them as such; the doctor particularly, he has been of great service to us * * * Young Provost, Bernier,²⁰⁴ B. McAire and three or four others are hired as trappers. I wish that you would see that they get traps. Howell is to trap by the skins. You will have to furnish him with traps, horses etc

L. FONTENELLE.

Fort John,
December 4, 1843

Maj. A. Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.:

* * * I am informed that the traders on the south fork (Lipton and Wilson (or Nelson)²⁰⁵ are selling liquor to

in 1783 and early entered the Fur trade and his activities were very widely spread. He had a trading house in Colorado on the Gunnison, near the mouth of the Uncompahgre and had active business relations along the upper Missouri.

²⁰⁴Antoine Bercier, a Canadian who came over with the Columbia Company. He was much associated with Captain Joseph LaBarge. In April 1834 LaBarge, Bercier, and David LaChapelle were sent up to the Loup River in Nebraska to bring down the winter's trade, and while at the Pawnee camp, had an exciting experience, due to the stealing of sixty head of horses from the Pawnees by the Sioux. Bercier led a party of volunteers in pursuit of the thieves, found them, fifteen in number, camped on the Elkhorn river. Eleven of the thieves were killed, and the horses recovered. Thirty one years later Bercier accompanied Captain LaBarge to Fort Benton where he was killed by Blackfeet at the Teton river near the Fort.

²⁰⁵I can get no trace of Lipton and Wilson or Nelson. I am inclined to think Lipton is Lupton, of Lupton, Bent and St. Vrain, who had a post named for him on the South Platte.

the Indians and there are many peddlers from the Spanish country trading at that point. A. M. Medcalf²⁰⁶ came here some time since with the expectation of getting permission to trade with the Sioux, but I soon gave him his walking papers, and he has returned to the south fork and sold out to Wilson (or Nelson) and is selling liquor for them to the Cheyenne Indians * * *

JOS. V. HAMILTON.

Fort Pierre

November 16, 1843

Maj. A. Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.:

I hear from an Indian trader just arrived from Fort George that one or more Indians have set fire and burned down the houses of Messrs. Kansella²⁰⁷ & Leclair²⁰⁸ on Simonieu's Is.²⁰⁹ From the fact that Messrs K & L have never been molested until it was known that I had bargained for the houses in question with them, I am inclined to believe that the Indians who just fired the houses were influenced upon by some person or persons residing at Fort George, and in the employ of the Union Fur Co. If under these circumstances you consider your province to investigate the matter, I request your attention to the subject as early as practicable.

H. PICOTTE,

Agent P. Chouteau Jr. & Co.

²⁰⁶A. M. Medcalf. No information.

²⁰⁷Kansella. The list of employees for 1831 gives a Michel Cancellai, a voyageur at Whitewood river.

²⁰⁸This was, I think, Narcisse Leclerc, whose name was frequently written LeClair.

²⁰⁹Simoneau's, (not Simonieu) Island was located on the eastern side of the Missouri directly opposite Fort George. It is now incorporated with the mainland of the DeGrey bottom, in Hughes county. I do not know why it was so called. Charles Simoneau lived at St. Genevieve in 1774. Houck's Spanish Regime I, p. 96. There was a family of Simonan's at Kaskaskia, and it is likely some of them were in the trade on the Missouri. Robert Campbell, of Sublette & Campbell, had a favorite riding mule named Simon; his muleship may be immortalized in this Island. The remains of the old Fur Post on the Island are still plainly visible. The outlines of the stockade and the location of the trading house and its fireplace were located and marked by Mr. DeLand and myself in October, 1915.

Fort Pierre
September 7, 1843

Maj. D. D. Mitchell,
Supt. Indian Affairs,
St. Louis:

* * * During the spring last past a war party of the Sioux invaded the Pawnee country and after killing some thirty or upwards of them succeeded in taking five prisoners one woman and four children. Those prisoners are now in the neighborhood of this fort and I have no doubt may be had, and returned by the expenditure of a trifling sum. I have no means of doing so, and would be gratified to receive from you proper authority how to act. * * * The company of Pratt & Cabenna have succeeded in taking to their fort on the Platte about 300 gallons of alcohol. Mr. Sarpy and Mr. Loughborough,²¹⁰ two traders in the country, have given me written information of all the facts * * * I will remain at this place until the arrival of the boats of Messrs. Cutting & Seabile (or Seabill)²¹¹ * * *

A. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre, September 8, 1843

Maj. D. Miller,
Council Bluffs:

On my journey to this place I met with a village of Poncas and Omahas Indians and it appears from what I could learn from them that they are anxious to make peace with the Sioux. What few I have seen and spoke to on my arrival are willing to meet the Poncas and Omahas next spring on the Ponca creek and make peace. The Sioux tell me that it is their wish to be on friendly terms with both nations. You will have the goodness to make known to them that they will have nothing to fear in meeting the Sioux next spring, say by the first of June on the above named creek.

A. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

²¹⁰Loughborough was of a family living near Washington in the District of Columbia.

²¹¹Sybilie is the correct name. See Note 191.

Office Superintendent of Indian Affairs,
St. Louis, October 3, 1843.

To Drips,
U. S. Ind. Agt.,
Upper Missouri:

I forward to you by Mr. Picotte four medals, one of which you will give to the chief who surrendered his British ore; the other three you will exchange with the most influential of the chiefs in lieu of the British Ores said to be in their possession, you will by the first opportunity forward to the office those that shall be surrendered, in order that, agreeably to the instructions of the Department they may be sent to Washnigton.

D. D. MITCHELL,
Supt. Ind. Affairs.

Fort Pierre
May 12, 1840

C. Campbell:

In compliance with your request you are hereby permitted to spend the ensuing summer with the Sioux Indians.

AND. DRIPS,
U. S. Ind. Agt.

Platte River
March 25, 1843

A. Drips:

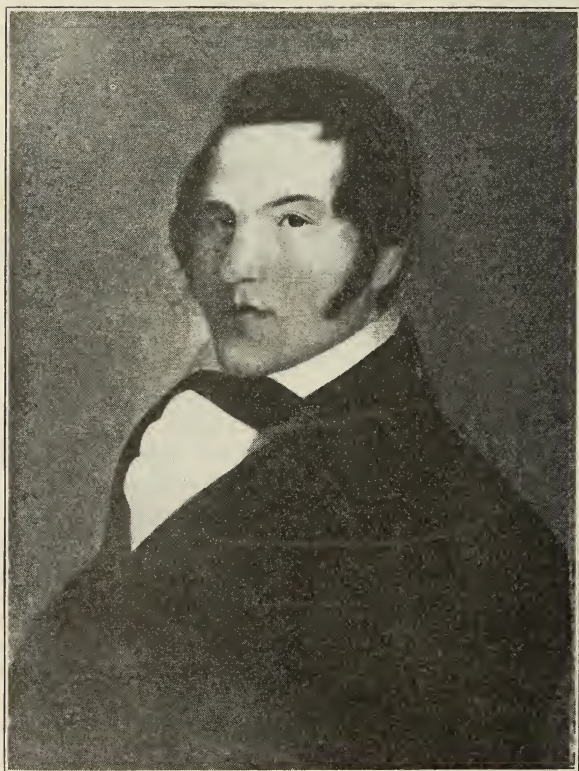
* * * Mr. Papin received an express from Bridger & Vasques²¹² in the winter. They had not done much. The body of traders equipped by H. B. Coy²¹³ was a strong opposition to them.

W. D. HODGKISS.²¹⁴

²¹²Louis Vasques, whose name is frequently written Bascus. He had formerly been associated with William Sublette.

²¹³H. B. Coy. Hudson Bay Company.

²¹⁴W. D. Hodgkiss, a native of New York, was long in the employ of the American Fur Company. He came on the river in 1832, as clerk to Captain Bonneville. In 1863 he was in charge of Fort Union and died there in 1864. He left a mixed blood family in South Dakota, some members of which have made creditable records.



LOUIS VASQUEZ

Fort Pierre
March 20, 1843

D. D. Mitchell,
Supt. Affrs., St. Louis:

In June last I met a band of Yanktonna Sioux which killed and robbed Premeau²¹⁵ in the winter of 1836, but was unable to make the demand which you had instructed me to make of them, for the want of an interpreter. The young man which was trading with those Indians refused to talk to them for me on the subject, being a relation of the deceased * * *.

ANDREW DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre
April 4, 1843

Maj. D. D. Mitchell,
Supt. Ind. Affrs., St. Louis:

I left this post on the 3rd of January for the Yellowstone and arrived at the Arikaras village, visiting the intermediate posts traders on the 18th instant * * * I deemed it advisable to return to this post. The third day after my departure from Fort Clark I met an express from Pecott whose letter you will find herewith enclosed together with those of Messrs. J. V. Hamilton, James Illingworth and Frank Beeman.²¹⁶ From the enclosed documents you will see the necessity of my immediate return to this place. Upon my arrival I repaired to Fort George. I had a conversation with Mr. Kelsey the principal partner of the Union Fur Co.,²¹⁷ at that post, which conversation amounted to nothing more than the corroboration of the enclosed statement. It appears that immediately after my departure for the upper country Mr. Ebbit another of the partners returned from

²¹⁵This was Emillian Primeau who was killed at the mouth of Apple Creek in 1836.

²¹⁶Frank Beeman of whom I know nothing.

²¹⁷Union Fur Company, was the name under which Cutting, Kelsey and Ebbetts, who represented Fox, Livingston and Company of New York, did business. They were the most desperate and reckless traders ever on the river. Indeed, we rarely hear of them except in connection with some scandalous operation. See Note 75, and also Mr. Bouis' letter to Drips of May 18th, 1843, following.

the interior of the country to Fort George and on his arrival commenced a general frolic at that place. Mr. Ebbit has on several instances interposed with me, by counseling the Indians contrary to the views and wishes of the Government, by stating to them that I was not an agent of Government and that he (Ebbit) had a right to give or sell to them as much liquor as he pleased, and on a recent visit of his to his trading posts in the interior the whites and Indians have been drinking and quarrelling. Now sir I would strongly recommend that steps be taken to prevent Mr. Ebbits remaining in the Indian country as his conduct for the last two years has been such as to justify me in recommending his immediate removal from the Indian country

* * * I would suggest a sub-agent for the upper part of the Missouri, as I believe it to be a determination of Government to put a stop to spirituous liquors being introduced to Indians. * * * I would recommend the appointment of a sub-agent for the upper part of the Missouri River to range from the Arikaras up as far as the Blackfoots trading posts, that would enable me to spend my time entirely with the Sioux and keep a strict eye on these traders.

ANDREW DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre
April 7, 1843

To Mitchell:

(Recommends J. V. Hamilton as sub-agent for the upper Missouri—C. E. D.)

A. DRIPS.

Fort Pierre
April 12, 1843

To Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.:

(Liquor trade—C. E. D.) * * * And from all accounts we were justified in believing that this kind of traffic is now carried on at Forks of the Cheyenne * * *

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
April 18, 1843

To Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.:

* * * Will give you information in my recollection respecting the treatment of Mr. Wm. P. May by the hired men of Mr. Ebbetts. On about the 15th of April Mr. May arrived at Long Point²¹⁸ (where I was stationed with Mr. Halsey one of the partners of the Upper Missouri Outfit in possession at (of?) Mr. Ebbetts who had his particular Indian establishment at this place, with a flat boat laden with buffalo meat and packs and some fur beaver skins. He had in his employ an American by the name of Oaks and a half breed from Lord Silvertons (?) settlement at Red River. He remained with me that night, and when about to depart next morning, the half breed told me that as Mr. Ebbetts had made him a good offer and would go no further with him. Mr. May answered that if he left him it would be impossible for him to proceed further with but one man, that he had engaged to go with him to St Louis with his boat but if he insisted upon leaving him that he would give him his discharge at Fort Pierre and settle with him if he would agree to go that far with him. The half breed refused; in this dilemma Mr. May requested me to allow one of my men to go with him to Fort Pierre. Seeing his situation, I let him have a man and he started, but he had hardly left the store when eight or ten of Ebbetts men arrived with guns and implements and pursued him and after firing several shots at him ordered him to land, or they would continue shooting until they shot him down. As the channel is very narrow at this place May was obliged to land; after landing they took forcibly from him 180 salted buffalo packs and 8 or 10 beaver skins. They then let him start. Mr. Ebbetts was at his establishment when this outrage was committed and would not interfere or stop his men. I believe that the greater part of them were intoxicated at the time.

²¹⁸Long Point, sometimes called McKenzie's Point, near the mouth of the Cheyenne, at Little Bend.

I will add that I was at Long Point six months and I do not recollect that a single week passed by without some drinking going on at Ebbetts establishment. In one of their frolics Michael De cuto²¹⁹ was very severely wounded by a man named Ray²²⁰. They often when drunk made threats to come and pull my houses down * * *. I was in daily expectation that they would put their threats into execution.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre

October 5, 1843

To Drips:

* * * I am informed that Reviere (or Rivier)²²¹ the man who arrived at Fort George from the Platte some time since, was one of the gang of villains who with some Cheyenne Indians robbed Bridger out of fifty head of horses and mules at his fort somewhere in the mountains. Is there any way of punishing such rascals?

A. R. BOUIS.

(Memorial of Yankton Indians to the President. Seems to be an original, or duplicate.—C. E. D.)

We the chiefs and headmen of the Yankton band of Sioux Indians in Missouri Territory beg leave to memorialize our great Father the President of the United States, and we have great confidence, that he will take our condition into favorable consideration.

By our treaty with the United States of October 1837, there is a provision of \$500 for the removing of our agency. There is also a balance due us of \$1440 for a blacksmith and striker and \$440 for iron and steel and \$800 for agricultural implements making in all \$3180.

²¹⁹Michael Decuto. I think this was Michael DesCoteaux, a mixed blood, whose father was in trade on the Minnesota, and who was killed by his squaw wife about 1806.

²²⁰Ray. I do not find the name in the trade. It might have been Roy, but I expect it was one of the toughs employed by Ebbetts. It will be observed that few of the French voyageurs were in the employ of the Union Fur Company; that concern employed chiefly the toughest American thugs obtainable.

²²¹Reviere or Rivier. I can learn nothing of this man. A Canadian named Riviere accompanied Verendrye on his expedition of 1738. Antoine Riviere dit Baccane came to St. Louis in 1764 and left a large family. This man may be a descendent.

Our condition is such that we do not want agricultural implements nor blacksmiths and we humbly beg of you that the above amount be disposed of by our Father in St. Louis in the purchase of the following articles 150 guns, 4 barrels flour, 1 barrel of sugar and 1 bag of coffee blue and scarlet sard list cloth blankets, powder and lead, kettles, knives, vermillion, awls, gunflints, gunworms, looking glasses and tobacco.

We are led to believe that an act of Congress will be necessary to this end, if so we have every confidence that the President will do what is necessary in the premises and his red children will ever pray for his happiness and prosperity.

Done at Fort Pierre Missouri Territory this 18th day of March 1844.

(Contract with Cerre as Indian Interpreter.—C. E. D.)

Articles of agreement made and entered into at Fort Pierre Upper Missouri, the 6th day of September * * * 1844 between Gabreil P. Cerre of the one part, and Andrew Drips U. S. Indian Agent of the Sioux of the other part, towit: The said Gabreil P. Cerre for the consideration hereinafter mentioned doth covenant and agree that he will act as Government Interpreter with the Sioux Indians whenever his services are required by any Government officer for one year from the date above mentioned. And said Andrew Drips, Agent as aforesaid, doth covenant and agree to pay the same Gabreil P Cerre the sum of \$300 for the faithful performance of his duty as interpreter for the term of one year as aforesaid, out of any money which may be appropriated by the United States for that purpose.

ANDREW DRIPS, (Seal)
Indian Agent.

G. P. CERRE. (Seal)

Signed duplicate
in presence of
A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre Upper Missouri
October 12, 1844

H. Picotte Esq.,
Agt. of Pr Chouteau Jr & Co.,
Upper Missouri.

Sir: An order from the Secretary of War dated 27 March 1844 directed to the Superintendent of Indian Affairs at St. Louis ordering him to notify all agents under his jurisdiction that the traffic of medals with the Indians is abolished, has been received.²²²

You are therefore notified that you are prohibited from giving, trading or delivering to Indians or Indian tribes any medals under the penalty of forfeiture of your license. You will please notify your traders of the above order and see that it is strictly complied with.

A. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre
October 16, 1843

Maj. D. D. Mitchell,
Supt. Ind. Affrs.:

(Selling whiskey, etc.—C. E. D.) * * * Mr. Cuttings S. B. passed on the 10th instant. The boat of Pratt & Cabanna has not yet arrived. So soon as it arrives I design to start, on a circuit over the trading posts.

A. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Maj. Drips,
U. S. Ind. Agt.

Fort John
October 7, 1843

Dear Sir:

I received your letter by Mr. Culbertson * * * My letter to you by Jewette explains why I did not succeed in finding the liquors reported to you as belonging to Pratt

²²²For a full discussion of the use of medals in the Indian trade read Chittenden Fur Trade, p. 342. A Pierre Choteau medal found near New Underwood, Pennington county, is in the State Museum.

& Cabania. Since then Mr. Cabania arrived with those wagons with goods from St. Louis, and having seen his license for trade, I herewith give you a list of the places stated in his license, where he is permitted to trade. Viz "Cheyenne River, the forks of the Cheyenne and Old Woman's Fork, Bute Range on the north fork of the Platte the Platte river, on Laramie Fork at the mouth of the Chug Water, at Yibeles Hole, on the head waters on the Chug on Horse creek, on Cannon Ball river, Hot River, Apple River and Beaver river, on the Arkansas river, on White river, and at such other points as the mutual interests of the Indians and traders Messrs. Pratt & Cabanie may render necessary which shall be designated the upper Missouri agent." So you see by this statement that Mr. Laidlaw's plan of **location** is not applicable to the firm of Messrs. Pratte & Co. I was so surprised when I read that that I went down the next day and made a close examination to see if there had not been places inserted or the dates of the old licenses altered, but found them correct. Dated Supt. Office St. Louis 27 July 1843. C. brought no liquor, but brought a very fine assortment of goods and has about 20 traders to scatter over the country and about 40 voyageurs and 70 head of horses and mules, oxen, wagons and they intend scattering in every direction.

* * *

JOS. V. HAMILTON.

Fort Pierre
October 29, 1843

Drips,

U. S. Ind. Agt.

Sir:

It being the wish of the Lower Yanctonais to have trading houses built at Waniti this season and you having approved of their wish, I granted permission to Mr. F. Cutting to build at that place, the present is to request of you that the same privilege be granted to this company.

HONORE PICOTTE,
Agent Upper Missouri Outfit.
per A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre,
October 31, 1843

H. Pecott,
Agt. of Upper Missouri Outfit.

Sir:

I received your note dated 29 instant in which it appears to be the wish of the Lower Yanktonais to have traders at a point near Waniti, you are hereby authorized to establish a trading house at or near the above named point.

ANDREW DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

Fort Pierre
November 1, 1843

Mr. Laidlaw:

* * * Mr. Cutting passed Fort Pierre on the 10th October for the mouth of the Yellowstone river * * * The points and posts for the trade of the Indians of the Upper Missouri designated in the license of Mr. Cutting is nearly the same as in ours, with the exception of the Crows. he will trade at his post near the mouth of the Little Horn. Enclosed you will find a permission to establish a trading post near him if you think proper * * * I will leave here for the Platte immediately after the arrival of Mr. Sybill's boat which I am looking for every day. Frederick Labeau (La Boue) arrived on the 28th October from St. Louis. Brought me no news, and I believe very little for any person. * * *

A. DRIPS.

Fort Pierre,
Oct 29, 1843

Sinclair Taylor,
Sir:

Your note of the 28th instant was received last night in answer to which I give you full permission to build a trading house at the point you mention **Wananti** * * *

A. DRIPS,
Ind. Agt.

(Receipt of presents by Indians. Duplicate—C. E. D.)

Brule Camp on White river 20 Novr 1844.

We the undersigned chiefs of the Brule band of Sioux Indians acknowledge to have receive from Andrew Drips Indian Agent 14 lbs tobacco, and 2 dozen butcher knives as a present from our great father the President of the United States.

Ta tanka genans Ki (the Grunting Buffalo) his X mark
Henki too Sapa (Black Leader) his X mark

In presence of

G. P. CERRE

Ins Prest

(Duplicate)

Ogallallah Camp on Horse Crk 15 December 1844

We the undersigned chiefs of the Ogallallah band of Sioux Indians acknowledge to have received from Andrew Drips, Indian Agt 23 lbs tobacco 10 lbs powder, 20 lbs leaden balls and 2 dozen butcher knives, as a present from our great father the President of the United States.

Wa mini mini dooza (The Whirling Snow) his X mark
Mini sha (Red Water) his X mark

Kansi ensca (White Plumstone) his X mark

In presence

G. P. CERRE

Ins Pre't

Ogallallah Camp on Platte river

23 December 1844

We the undersigned chiefs of the Ogallallah band of Sioux Indians acknowledge to have received from Andrew Drips Indian Agent 9 lbs. tobacco, 5 lbs powder and 4 lbs leaden balls as a present from our great father the President of the United States.

Ta chonca ko ki te (Afraid of the dog) his X mark

Wagi Ensca (White Cottonwood) his X mark

In the presence of

G. P. CERRE

Ins Pre't

(Similar receipt dated November 3, 1844 from Hoo tan Ka, chief of the Brule band. Another of same date from To Kee oni one of the chiefs of the Yancton band of Sioux. Another date April 30, 1845, from a chief of the Yancton bands of Sioux, Qui de enpe. (Who was in the midst) Another dated Vermillion Apr 30 1845 from chief of Esanti band of Sioux, Wamendi (The Brave).—C. E. D.)

(Document dated July 20 1845 between J. F. Vien and Andrew Drips. Vien²²³ sells to Drips for \$300 the house and all appurtenances in the town of Konsas.²²⁴ Test. Pr. Choteau.—C. E. D.)

Blacks Fork
August 2, 1843

\$65.00

Mr. A. Drips will please pay Mr. C. F. Chouteau the sum of \$65.00 and charge the account to our Outfit.

his
JAMES X BRIDGER
mark

Test

E. F. CHOUTEAU

(Presents from Drips U. S. Ind Agt, to various Sioux chiefs) from Sept 5, 1843 to Mch 19, 1844; Bands headed by Yancton, viz: Iowa, Lafourche, Eagle, Pratt's Soldier, "He who plays with iron."

Yanktonais, from Sept. 6, 1843 to 27 Feb 1844; bands headed by Bear, Blind Chief. To Brules, on Mch 10, 1844, to Big Leg, The Standing Bull.

Onkpapa and Blackfeet, Mch 10, 1844 to Little Bear and Arrow Breaker.

Two Kettle, Mch 25, 1844, to Two Soldiers and Four Bears.

²²³J. F. Vien. No information. There was a family of Veins on the Red River of the North, some of which were employed by the Northwest Fur Company, but I cannot learn that any of them came to the Missouri.

²²⁴Town of Konsas. This was probably the village and agency of the Konsa band of Sioux Indians, living on the Kansas river in what is now Wyandotte County, Kansas.

Esantis, Apr 8, 1844, to Eagle, and Red Thunder.

Minnieconanjous, Apr 18, 1844, to Old Scrán and Darduer.

Aricaras, January 25, 1844, to Wolf Chief and White Horse.

Mandan and Minitarees, Jan 28, 1844, to Four Bear and Star.

Assiniboines, Feb 14, 1844, to Broken Arm and Bear; May 1, 1844 given to Bone War Club for Pawnee prisoner.

Transient and to different bands of Indians while marching; given a medal to Tam cham Km descha or Spotted Body an Asanti Indian of the band of Fire Lodge as a mark of distinction for his good conduct towards the whites Dec 22, 1843.

A. DRIPS.

In presence of

his

JOSEPH X JEWETT

mark

A. R. BOUIS

Fort Pierre, May 1, 1844.

Fort Pierre
January 30, 1849

Dear Major (Drips (?))—C. E. D.)

* * * Pearson,²²⁵ Benoist's²²⁶ partner has just arrived at Medicine River. He started north with 19 horses, &c * *
* * Matlock²²⁷ is at the Vermillion awaiting Mr. Laidlaw
* * * Our traders when we last heard from them had done but little. Goelet²²⁸ is so far down the post (or boats) * * *
Louison²²⁹ has been starving for some time * * * Galpin²³⁰

²²⁵The only Pearson I have found in the fur business was James Pearson, a Scotchman employed in 1804, by the Northwest Company.

²²⁶Francais M. Benoist (Benway) was a fur trader of St. Louis who operated extensively along the river. He had a Sioux wife, and family of children among whom was the well known William Benway, long interpreter at the Cheyenne River Agency, and who met an accidental death at his home in Dewey county about 1906.

²²⁷Matlock, long an employee of the American Fur Company and soon after this date made sub agent to the Sioux of the Missouri. See Chittenden's Early Steamboating, p. 178.

²²⁸Goelet. No information.

²²⁹Louison, doubtless the Indian, Louison the Brule.

²³⁰Major Charles Galpin, who married a daughter of Honore Picotte, see Vol. I., p. 364.

is lost on the Moreau, the opposition having all withdrawn to the Cheyenne and most of the Indians are. Campbell has plenty of packs and his Indians plenty of buffalo * * * A few days ago we buried our old friend Ravine.²³¹ Give my best respects to Messrs. Bissonnette²³² and McLearn²³³ (McLean).

W. D. HODGKISS.

Fort Pierre
April 14, 1849

Maj. A Drips

Yours of 10th March per Beauvois²³⁴ reached me in due time and him with Harris²³⁵ and P. Cerre took their departure for St. Louis in a canoe from Campbells on the 1st instant * * * Regret it is not in my power to send you the assistance you require to bring your returns from White river. Mr. Laboue arrived here four days ago from the Cheyenne with 300 packs &c.

Mr. Laidlaw arrived from below on the 1st instant * * * As you requested I sent Mr. Robenson²³⁶ over. His engagement and account Mr. Hodgkiss has enclosed to Mr. Husband. * * *

J. H. KIPP.

²³¹Old Friend Ravine. I find nothing about this man whom I suspect was an Indian.

²³²There were several Bissonnettes in the trade. Antoine of Cahokia was one of the engages of Manual Lisa in the expedition of 1811. At the mouth of the Osage Bissonnette deserted and started back to Cahokia. George Druillard, of Lewis and Clark fame, was sent after him with orders to bring him back dead or alive. He brought him back dead. Druillard was taken to St. Louis and tried for murder and acquitted. Antoine was the father of the Bissonnette of this text, whose name was Louis Antoine. He spent most of his long life in South Dakota and died at Rosebud Agency, August 20, 1900, reputed to be almost 100 years of age.

²³³McLearn or McLean. No information. John McLean, represented the Hudson's Bay Company on the Missouri, before the coming of Lewis and Clark.

²³⁴Beauvois. The name was really Bauvais, but it is frequently spelled as in the letter. This man was a voyageur from Kaskaskia.

²³⁵Harris. No information.

²³⁶The only Robinson I have found upon the river was that Kentuckian, Edward Robinson, whom the Astorians in 1811 found coming down the river in the vicinity of Niobrara, and induced him to turn back and accompany the expedition. His companions Hoback and Risner were killed in 1813 on the Columbia and the inference is that Robinson was likewise slain. Washington Irving says: "Robinson was a veteran backwoodsman 66 years of age." The Robinson of the text may have been his offspring.

The Fort Pierre Letter Book

The following letters were copied by Mr. DeLand from letter books kept at Fort Pierre during periods embraced between June 25, 1845 and May 9, 1848. The former series were official correspondence of the U. S. Indian Agency, but these are the business letters of the Upper Missouri Outfit of the American Fur Company.

(Here begins the Fort Pierre letter book beginning June 25, 1845 to June 16, 1846. Some letters are in French, and were not translated but Mrs. Beauregard informed me, after reading them, that they contained nothing of special importance concerning Fort Pierre.—C. E. D.)

June 25, 1845.

J. Bourdan,
Fort John:

* * * I sent Jos. Picotte to take charge of Fort John
* * * A. CULBERTSON.

Fort Pierre
August 17, 1845

F. A. Chardon,
Fort Clark:

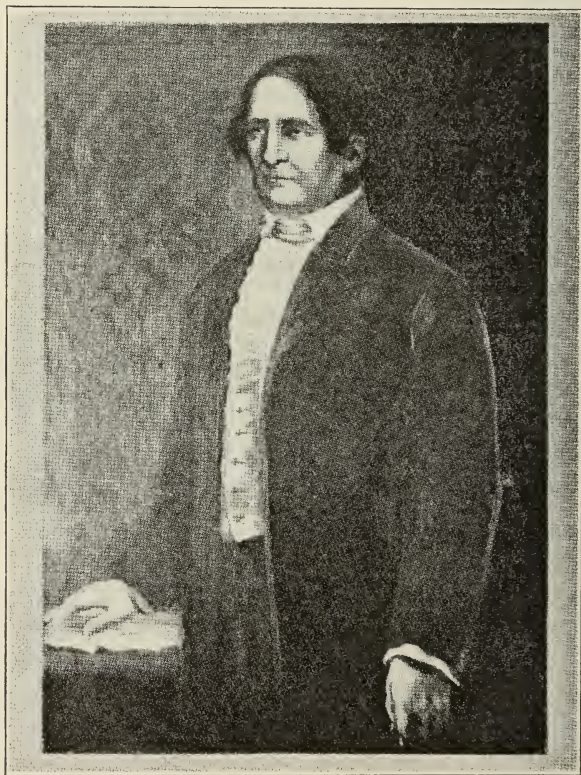
I take the opportunity of B. Lebrun²³⁷ who leaves for upper posts to write you a few lines:

I am sorry to inform you that our corn crop has suffered considerably from the drouth. We will not gather more than 150 bushels; a quantity altogether insufficient for this place: therefore I think it advisable for you to trade 3 or 400 bushels for this place and forward them as opportunities offer, otherwise the company will suffer a severe loss.

I expect the wagons from Fort John in ten days, the boats are ready and I will dispatch the robes immediately upon their arrival. Lebrun will give you all the news from St. Louis. Everything goes on well here—No desertion.

A. R. BOUIS.

²³⁷B. Lebrun. I do not find a B. Lebrun, but Antoine Lebrun was a well known character about Fort Union, and I am inclined to think this was the man.



PIERRE CHOUTEAU, JR.

Fort Pierre
August 19, 1845

P. Chouteau Jr & Co.
St Louis:

Messrs Lurty,²³⁸ Harper²³⁹ & Farwell²⁴⁰ arrived yesterday from Fort John. They left Mr. Kellogg²⁴¹ on White river with 13 wagons and carts laden with 387 Pack Robes. He is progressing but slowly; I will start 5 carts tomorrow to meet him, in order to lighten his loads. I expect him here by 1st September, and soon as possible after his arrival, I will start two mackinaw boats (the boats are ready) with 550 packs for St. Louis. I draw on you this day favor Robert T. Harper for \$97.62 and E. A. Farwell for \$25 which you will please to pay and charge to upper missouri outfit 1845, It is for balance due on mules which I purchased from them very cheap. No news from Fort John. I close for the present as I do not consider the present a safe opportunity. All goes on well at this place. I will write fully by the mackinaws.

Jos Picotte,
Fort John:

Fort Pierre,
August 30, 1845

* * * I am really sorry that it did not lay in my power to make Mr. Bourdeau's* outfit at this place. Mr. Montalant²⁴² will exp him * * * We have had to make three boats and repair several that came from above, our rosin is out and if you do not send us some tar, we will not be able to make boats next spring. I wanted to give Mr. Kellogg a whip saw but he said it was no good and left it behind.

A. R. BOUIS.

²³⁸Lurty. No information.

²³⁹Robert T. Harper was a well known trader of the Platte. During this period and until the sale in 1855 Fort Pierre was the general depot and headquarters for the upper Platte region.

²⁴⁰E. A. Farwell. This name is frequently found in connection with that of Harper, and always in reference to Platte river trade. He left Fort Pierre at once for the Columbia, and was at the Dalles on October 25. See Palmer's Journal 149. He is described as "a strong athletic Yankee from the state of Maine."

²⁴¹Kellogg. No information.

*Michael Bordeau, who came from the Columbia Fur Company, via Pembina.

²⁴²Mr. Montalent, sometimes Montalon. No information.

Fort Pierre

August 31, 1845

Honore Picotte

St Louis:

Mr. Kellogg arrived here on the 27th with 12 wagons and 2 carts loaded with 387 packs of robes. J. Picotte writes that he has made a baggage of the blce of the robes remaining at the Chimneys (520 packs) and has left three trusty men to take care of them. He has lost all hope of a rise in the Platte this season. The boats have been filled with water and received. He says they will answer very well for next spring. Mr. Cabanne has abandoned Fort Platte. Bissouet is stationed a few miles below that fort with a few articles of trade that remained on hand last spring. It is supposed that if Cabanne comes up next fall it will be with but a small outfit. The prospect of trade in that section of the country is very flattering, plenty of Buff and there will be more Indians there this season than ever. Part of the Minniconajous and 200 lodges of Cheyennes will winter in the neighborhood of the Fort. Joe thinks he will trade 12 to 1500 packs. The trade with the Oregon emigrants was confined chiefly to an exchange of horses, mules and cattle for skins and robes and about \$256 in cash and dfts, the latter J. P. disposed of for horses and mules. Vasquez writes from Black's fork that in consequence of Bridgers party not having been heard from, he will not come to Fort John this season. He had traded five packs of beaver 600 do Deer skins &c. He is very sanguine in his expectations and thinks Bridger will make a first rate man. Since Mr. Culbertson's departure from Fort John, Bourdeau has traded 100 packs. No news from F. Laboue. It is reported that Marcelin St. Vrain²⁴³ is coming with an outfit, the north forks of the Platte. The Indians in the district are not yet settled for the winter. The Yanctons are part at their cornfield, some have gone to the Punchas for corn, and the remainder on Riviere au Jacques.

²⁴³Marcelin St. Vrain, was one of five brothers, all born in St. Louis, and all notable in the fur trade. His eldest brother Ceran St. Vrain was a member of the firm of Bent & St. Vrain, second only in importance to Choteau and Company in the St. Louis fur business. A fur post on the Platte was named for the family.

I believe they will make a good many robes, there will be more Esantes on Riviere a Jaques and on the Missouri than usual. No news from the upper Yanctonais. The lower Yanctonais have been all summer at Red Stone quarry but are now coming to their winter hunting grounds. The Onc-papas are at Three Buttes with a small band of Blackfeet. Not many Buff; there, but a small band of Miniconojous are at Bute D'Ores, the balance of that band are gone to the Platte. Poor prospects at forks of Cheyenne this year. All the Sawons are on White river with a band of Brules, we have not heard from them lately. I have not heard from the Upper Posts since your departure. Frenier²⁴⁴ will leave in a few days for the Yanctonais, the other traders will be sent to their different destinations as you ordered. All the wood necessary for the blacksmith shop is ready and will be put up in a few days. The coal (500 bbls) is finished and in the coal house, the meat will be hauled in a few days. We have not lost a horse nor a cow since your departure. I am sorry to inform you that the potato is an entire failure, we will not save a single one. The corn crop will also yield but little, say 400 bushels, this is all owing to the extraordinary drought this season, I found it impossible to set fire to Fort George, there are now and have been since your departure 15 families of the Two Kettle band living in the fort, the remainder are on White river en mecana and have left their plunder in care of those that remained behind, however, so soon as I hear that the opposition coming up (if such should be the case) I will send down a trader with a few goods to take possession of the place. The bbl of apples intended for this place has not been received. We have traded 110 packs since your departure. Kellogg left this morning for Fort

²⁴⁴This was Louison Frenier, who guided Nicolet and Fremont in their explorations of the James Valley, starting from Fort Pierre, in 1839. In his *Memoirs* Fremont says, p. 40, "William Dixon (Dickson) and Louison Frenier had been engaged as interpreters and guides. Both were half-breeds, well known as fine horsemen and famous hunters, as well as most experienced guides." When the party had crossed to the east side of the river, where Pierre now stands, camp was made and almost immediately a drove of buffalo were discovered coming down to water. Fremont chased one animal a long distance and became lost on the prairie north of Snake Butte, and was compelled to lie out over night. Nicolet offered a prize to the man who would first touch the body of Fremont. "At daybreak * * * I saw three men riding toward me and the foremost touched me. It was Louison Frenier."

John with balance of outfit. All goes on well, no desertion. For further particulars I refer you to my letter to Messrs. P. Chouteau Jr & Co. herewith.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
September 1, 1845

Pierre Chouteau Jr & Co

You will receive herewith accounts of shipments and accounts of men going down. J. Jewette, B. Cadotte²⁴⁵ & Taussin Bergeuau²⁴⁶ are to return by first opportunity as their term of engagement will not expire until summer of 1846. The boats are all manned and every care has been taken in the loading of them. For particulars respecting trade &c I refer you to my letter to Mr. Picotte herewith.

Mr. Laidlaw's account \$69.92 for sundries furnished Mr. R. K. Lutz,²⁴⁷ which you will please collect and credit this outfit. The account has been handed to Mr. Luty.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre,
September 4, 1845.

Jos. Picotte,

Fort John:

Mr. Charles Primeau with four men arrived from St Louis yesterday. Mr. Picotte writes me to inform you that it will be necessary to haul up all the packs from the Chimneys to Fort John, and if you can possibly spare any wagons to send them to this place loaded with robes by Mr. Laboue and his men. You will see by this that the plan first given you in your instructions stands for naught. I have nothing

²⁴⁵The Cadottes were well known throughout the northwest. One of them cut a large figure in northern Minnesota trade. They were Canadians but this one, Bernard, was living in St. Louis when not on the plains. He accompanied Fremont upon his first expedition to the mountains. Benjamin Cadotte, 37 years of age, a hunter, born in Canada, was enumerated in the census of 1860 at Yankton agency, together with his wife, Mary, and four children.

²⁴⁶Toussaint Bergeron, (not Bergeuau) came with the Columbia Company, as a young man. His father before him served the Northwest Company.

²⁴⁷R. K. Lutz. No information. In 1836 there was a family named Lutz in St. Louis, one son of which became a Catholic priest. Perhaps the same as Mr. Luty of Note 238.

further to tell you * * * I write to Laboue by the present, in case he should be on his way before the present reaches him.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
September 16, 1845

Bridger & Vasquez:

Mr. Bridger's letter of 3rd inst has been duly received and contents noted. A copy of what was furnished Mr. B at Fort Union November 1843 was received at this place in December of the same year and charges made in conformity with said account * * * You have been credited with everything delivered Mr. Jos Picotte at Fort John on the 22nd inst but I cannot affix prices to the California sea shells until I see Mr. Honore Picotte on the subject. * * * Mr. Kipp collected two horses from James Hawthorne* last winter**— Lewis Willcocks²⁴⁸ is here, but not employed by the company.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
September 17, 1845.

J. Picotte,
Fort John:

Act you sent by Mr. Pope²⁴⁹ has been received. I will as soon as practicable forward you Ft. John itemized as soon as Mr. Montalon's departure * * * Mr. Pope is taking out all the goods asked for together with those intended for Fort John. All the brass and copper kettles which we had on hand have been sent you by Mr. Kellogg and we have no rifle locks nor sand paper.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
September 17, 1845

Pierre Choteau Jr. & Co.:

Mr. James Bridger arrived at Fort John on the 2nd inst

*James Hawthorne. No information.

²⁴⁸Lewis Willcocks. No information.

²⁴⁹Mr. Pope. No information.

and delivered Mr. Jos Picotte 840 beaver skins and castoram 675 dressed deer skins 28 mules 24 horses 1400 California sea shells H. C. the whole amounting to about \$5000 exclusive of the California shells, as I do not know what Mr. Picotte will allow for them * * * Mr. Bridger was in California, and plenty of beaver there, but he wouldn't trap as the Indian stole the traps as soon as the hunters had set them. Vasquez has gone with ten men to hunt on Wind River Mountain * * * The following is a list of the men going down and the amount due each:

Leonard Benoist * * * Vixert Tibeau²⁵⁰ * * * Franc-
cais Boissert,²⁵¹ Geo Hudson²⁵² Chas. Papont,²⁵³ Amable
Garifille²⁵⁴ (or Garisselle), Chas. Levellier,²⁵⁵ Baptiste De-
rosier.²⁵⁶

Mr. Chas Primeau arrived here on the 31st inst, two days after J. Jewette had left for St Louis. An Indian has just arrived from forks Cheyenne, plenty of buffalo there. I will start a trader for that place in a few days. No news from the upper country since my last.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
October 9, 1845

Alex Culbertson:

Mr. Picotte at his departure in June last requested me to advise you that J. B. Moncravre²⁵⁷ in June 1844, while going up with a keel boat to the Blackfeet had got drunk several

²⁵⁰Vixert Tibeau, see Note 13.

²⁵¹Francais Boissert. No information.

²⁵²George Hudson. No information.

²⁵³Charles Lapointe, was from Canada, via Pembina.

²⁵⁴Amable Garifille, or Carisselle, says Mr. DeLand. But I have no doubt at all that the man was Amable Gallerneau, who later settled at the mouth of Floyd Creek, Sioux City, and kept a ferry there. The name is frequently spelled Gallineau, and I believe that is the correct form. C. R. Marks spells it as above. When the census of 1861 was taken Amable lived in Charles Mix County and the name was spelled Gallineau.

²⁵⁵Charles Levellier. No information.

²⁵⁶Baptiste Derosier. No information.

²⁵⁷Jean Baptiste Moncravre. (Moncravie, Moncrevie, Moncrevier) Chittenden says Moncrevie is correct. This man was always in bad repute for drunkenness. In 1834-5 he was in a responsible position at Fort Union but lost his place due to excesses. See Larpenteur p. 72-76. Audubon mentions him many times and always as Moncrevier.

times and gave upwards of 20 gallons of liquor to the men, after Mr. Picote had ordered positively not to dispose of a single drop. You are therefore requested to charge Moncravre \$400 for the liquor he expended, to sieze upon all that he may bring from his expedition in payment of same and not to employ him any more. The informers are Messrs. Chardon, Harvey, Champagne²⁵⁸ and Etienne Provost.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
October 10, 1845

E. T. Denig
Fort Union:

A press of business renders it impossible for me to forward Fort Union account current at present * * *

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
November 9, 1845

P. D. Papin
Fort John:

* * * Proveau (Provost) arrived here on the 2nd inst, and I have detained him until now in expectation of the arrival of Mr. Picotte, but as the latter has not arrived, and the season is far gone, I have deemed it prudent that part of what you ask (?) * * * It is to be regretted that Mr. Picotte has not yet arrived, as in that case I could answer your several inquiries respecting Ward's California shells. The importance of the subject is such that I doubt not Mr. Picotte will immediately upon his arrival dispatch an express with his instructions.

A. R. BOUIS.

Fort Pierre
December 7, 1845

Pierre Chouteau Jr & Co

I arrived here on the 28th inst * * * No news from the Blackfeet since Harvey's arrival. Mr. Culbertson got up

²⁵⁸Jean Baptiste Champaigne, a French Canadian from Minnesota. See Constant R. Marks Note, Vol. IV, p. 227.

safe with his boat, there is every appearance that he will make peace with the Blackfeet and make a good trade. I hear from Mr. Kipp under date 5th ulto the Crow Boat reached her destination in safety. There were more buffalo in the vicinity of Fort Union this season than ever but the Assiniboines will not hunt, no whiskey, no trade at that place. There is no doubt if Mr. Kipp had some of that article he would turn out this season upwards of 800 packs, as it is he will make little or nothing. Mr. Chardon is with the Gros Ventres at L'ours gen clans (Bears that dance) * * * I am sorry however to inform you, that the Rees are very much dissatisfied that Mr. Chardon has left them. They threaten vengeance, but as Mr. Desaubele²⁵⁹ (or Desantele) has wintered with them with some goods, we may perhaps content them. Mr. Kipp writes that the Hudson Bay Co are trading liquor in plenty with the Assiniboines for small furs. Fortunately they will not trade robes. I need not here again tell you how important it is that he should have plenty of that article next season. Mr. Syblens (Sybille) people on the Riviere a Jacques opposing our traders strongly, not only with a good assortment of goods, but with liquor which they succeed to smuggle from St. Peters. I earnestly request of you to put a stop to this, the injury to the outfit is considerable. I will leave in a few days to visit the Yancton post and the post on the Riviere a Jacques and in two or three weeks will go to Fort John, but before I start for the latter place I will see Kansella and buy him out as I promised if possible. The Yanctons prefer to have their goods purchased in St. Louis, and freighted up in the company's boat next spring. I told Maj Drips that I was willing to bring them up at whatever terms Capt. Sire thought proper to make. I consider this an advantage to us, if we had paid the Yanctons this season they would not have been so industrious in their hunt, and what fur robes they would have made would have cost us very dear. I find that we have more carts and wagons in the country than necessary. * * *

HONORE PICOTTE.

²⁵⁹Mr. Desauble. This is DesAutel. Father DeSmet was entertained by him at the Mandans in 1846. Larpenteur calls him Deshotel, p. 217. His name was Joseph, and he died at Fort Pierre in 1849.

Fort Pierre
December 7, 1845

Jno B. Sarpy,
St Louis:

When I left this place to go down last summer I advised with Mr. Culbertson and we thought it best to order Mr. Harvey to finish his term at this place; Harvey was sent here accordingly but I am sorry to say that he appears to be very much dissatisfied, he swears there was a plot made to assassinate him at the head of which is Mr. Chardon, this I know nothing of. James Lee,²⁶⁰ M. Clark²⁶¹ & old Berger²⁶² attacked him and all three tried their best to kill him but could not succeed. He is now going down to procure an order to have these men brought down in order to prosecute them. I have done everything in my power to keep him here until next spring, but he is determined to go down. I also wished to re-hire him for two years, but he declined for the present, if it is possible to come to some terms they would do so provided he is reasonable. You may offer him the charge of the Blackfeet Post as he informs me positively that Mr. Culbertson is going down next spring, and I know of no other as efficient as he is, besides I believe nothing else but the charge of a post will satisfy him. I wish you to keep Harvey quiet for he has difficulties with some of the people in the country and ought not to run down the company for that reason. He has promised to speak to no one but ourselves about his difficulties.

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
December 18, 1845.

F. A. Chardon,
Fort James:

* * * I will early in the spring send up men to bring down corn you traded for this place. I assure you we all

²⁶⁰James Lee, as a young man, came into the country from St. Louis with Charles Larpenteur in 1833. He became a great bully about Fort Union. For a full account of this affair of Harvey's see Larpenteur, p. 222-226.

²⁶¹Malcolm Clark, see volume IV, p. 227.

²⁶²Old Berger. This was Jacob Berger, an old employee of the Hudson's Bay Company, who, in 1830, entered the employ of the American Fur Company as interpreter to the Blackfeet.

want it, the Indians here are not willing to give us meat at fair prices and our corn crop was nearly a failure.

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
December 18, 1845

Alex. Culbertson,
Ft Honori * * *

Harvey is going down to procure (trade and secure) an order from the Supt. Ind. Affairs, to have Clark, Bergen and Lee taken down to St. Louis on plea that they formed a plot to assassinate him, he wants the following men brought down as his witnesses: F. Archembeau,²⁶³ Bernabe,²⁶⁴ Pussi Crenier,²⁶⁵ Iagen Enuth,²⁶⁶ and Henry Robert.²⁶⁷ Now as some of these men wish to go down, I think you can take advantage of the circumstance to hire them cheap if you want them. My opinion is that Harvey is coming up in the spring to oppose us at the Blackfeet trade.

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
March 11, 1846

Pierre Chouteau Jr. & Co.:

(Mentions F. Robideau and "Young Jay Robideau"²⁶⁸ as men he would like to have hired, and "Old Jay Rabideau"—C. E. D.)

H. PICOTTE.

²⁶³F. Archembeau, sometimes spelled Archambault. There were several of the name on the river. Louis and Lizziam, were early settlers of Charles Mix County. Antoine Archembeau is still Indian trader at Bullhead station in Corson county. I do not find an F. Archembeau. Louis Archambault was employed by the American Fur Company in the forties at Fort Union.

²⁶⁴Bernabe. No information.

²⁶⁵Pussi Crenier. He was badly wounded at Fort Pierre in 1833 and Maximilian allowed him passage in his boat to Fort Union.

²⁶⁶Iagen Enuth. Mr. DeLand questions his transcript of this name and I can find nothing like it anywhere.

²⁶⁷Henry Robert, (Robar) was born at Carondelet, Missouri, about 1817. He was one of several brothers, among them Joseph and Louis, who engaged in the fur business upon the upper Mississippi.

²⁶⁸See note 203.

Fort Pierre
March 12, 1846

Francis A. Chardon,
Fort Berthold:

* * * I received some letters from St. Louis by Deigneau²⁶⁹ & Morain²⁷⁰ and two men who are now going to Fort Union with these dispatches * * * Should the Rees be very much dissatisfied with our I am willing to keep up Fort Clark with three men the year round * * * Please send me down Garreau to meet the boat here. * * *

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
May 2, 1846

P. C. Jr. & Co.:

* * * Cyfrois (or Cyproise) Ayotte²⁷¹ one of the men came down here formerly in the employ of P. & Cabanna. * *

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
May 2, 1846

J. V. Hamilton:

You will please come down with Mr. S. Picotte to Vermillion post as I wish Mr. Bruguier to come up here * * * You will hire Le Cherite²⁷² by the month, &c * * * Louis Willcocks man goes down by the present conveyance is to take your place at Campbells * * *

H. PICOTTE.

Fort Pierre
May 14, 1846

P. C. Jr. & Co.:

* * * I take the opportunity of Colin Lamont & Antoine Frenier who are going down in a skiff, &c.

H. PICOTTE.

²⁶⁹Deigeneau (Deneau) a Columbia Fur Company voyageur.

²⁷⁰Morain (Morren) a Columbia Fur Company voyageur.

²⁷¹Cyprois Ayotte, or Ayot, of St. Louis. His brother Honore was guide to Fremont upon his first mountain expedition.

²⁷²Francis LaCharite, long trader to the Yanktons, at the mouth of the James at Fort Vermillion and at Sioux City. His daughter Mary married Antoine Francis Bercier, see Note 204.

Fort Pierre
June 16, 1846

P. C. Jr. & Co.:

* * * Victor Baroser²⁷³ is going down "in irons" for killing Napoleon McDuffin.²⁷⁴ He is to be well guarded until he can be delivered to the proper authorities. From what I could learn he is a great villian and committed murder in cold blood * * * Witnesses in the case are Charles Primeau, Mason Frake,²⁷⁵ Louis Valle,²⁷⁶ Henry Collins,²⁷⁷ Wm. Wilson²⁷⁸ & Jos Turgeon.²⁷⁹

H. PICOTTE.

(Here ends book of letters from June 25, 1845 to June 16, 1846.—C. E. D.)

(Here begins book of letters from Fort Pierre, from Dec. 1, 1847 to May 9, 1848—C. E. D.)

Fort Pierre
December 4, 1847

D. D. Papin

* * * "Tashpa" arrived this morning. He met Mr. Picotte on White river. I sent you Jos. Boudein²⁸⁰ (or Boudieu) said to be a blacksmith.

Decr. 2, 1847

H. Laboue:

* * * Mr. Pouly (or Ponly or Pouty)²⁸¹ remained four days in the Fort and has started to visit the posts. He will visit you about the 15th.

A. D. W. D. H.

²⁷³Victor Varoser, or Barozer. I learn nothing of this man or of this tragedy which seems to have escaped all of the historians of the period.

²⁷⁴Napoleon McDuffian. No information.

²⁷⁵Mason Frake seems to have dodged all biographers.

²⁷⁶Louis Valle of St. Louis. The Valles were among the original settlers of St. Louis and always active in trade. Lewis and Clark found John Valle trading in a substantial cabin at Little Bend.

²⁷⁷Henry Collins. No information.

²⁷⁸William Wilson. Cannot identify.

²⁷⁹Joseph Turgeon. No information.

²⁸⁰Joseph Bodien, or Bodieu. No information.

²⁸¹Mr. A. M. Pauly, an Indian agent. This letter was doubtless a friendly hint to keep the spirits out of sight when the agent was in the vicinity.

Fort Pierre
December 4, 1847

Johert Barada,²⁸²

I send you by Mr. McElderry²⁸³ a new Pitt saw which Mr. Picotte brought up. * * *

(No sig)

Fort Pierre
December 4, 1847

Louison Frenier:

* * * I send you Mr. McElderry to remain a clerk with you and assist in trading * * * I also send you Mr. Meleau²⁸⁴ whom you can send out * * * I want you to send back with Isidore Montouie²⁸⁵ (or Moncrenie) etc.

(No sig)

Fort Pierre
December 1, 1847

Colin Campbell:

* * * I am told that Alexis wants to get goods for posts Dickson and calumet, &c * * * You can say to Rondelle²⁸⁶ I have read his letter, etc.

H. PICOTTE.
W. D. H.

Fort Pierre
December 7, 1847

C. Campbell:

* * * Should you have no immediate use for Lafromboise²⁸⁷ please send him up. * * *

(No sig)

²⁸²Johert Barava. No information.

²⁸³Mr. McElderry. No information.

²⁸⁴Meleau. Probably McLean of note 233.

²⁸⁵Isadore Moncrevie. Half breed son of Jean Baptiste Moncrevie. See Note 257.

²⁸⁶Rondelle. A Canadian pack trader, living with the Sissetons and itinerating along the James river. He lived in his old age in southern Brown county, where he was found by the first settlers and a township and railroad station there are named for him, Rondell.

²⁸⁷This was Francois LaFramboise, who twenty years later was very useful to Sully in his up river campaigns. He was a nephew of that Joseph LaFramboise who in 1817 made the first plant at Fort Pierre.

Fort Pierre

December 8, 1847.

Saml. E. McElderry:

* * * I now send Larante²⁸⁸ with a wagon, &c * * *
 I send Letris²⁸⁹ in the place of Welsh. * * * *

(No sig)

Fort Pierre

December 11, 1847

Jos. Jewette:

* * * This morning the "Fire Maker" arrived and
 delivered your letter, &c.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

December 15, 1847

Louison Frenier:

* * * John Barada arrived here yesterday from the
 Santee * * *

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

December 18, 1847

Francis Chardon:

* * * I have instructed Maj Drips in my absence to
 send you what goods he possibly can. Mr. Laidlaw arrived at
 this place early in the fall. He brought several gentlemen
 with him, among others Mr. Daveson²⁹⁰ said to be a good ac-
 count. * * * Frederick Beeman wishes to visit Germany,
 &c. H. P.

Fort Pierre

December 18, 1847

Jas. Kipp:

* * * I have made arrangements with Capt. Labarge
 of S. B. Marshal to bring both your wife and mine, &c * *

²⁸⁸Larante. No information.²⁸⁹Letris. No information.²⁹⁰Mr. Daveson. No information.

* * Antoine Moreau²⁹¹ (or Morin) will bring up the express. * * * * (No sig.)

Fort Pierre
December 18, 1847

Francis A. Chardon:

* * * Michelle Laferty²⁹² goes up with Proveau. He came up twice and is now on his way to Fort Union to hire for the Crow post.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
December 18, 1847

Louison Freniere:

Proveau leaves me this morning in charge of two traders bound for Fort Berthold. Bouis & Co traders have passed up. * * * And as they have not returned I am induced to believe they have passed without difficulty and the Indians will certainly let us pass also. * * * If you think you can pass them without risking the goods and animals too much Mr. Picotte has instructed to say to you, that he wishes you to leave your establishment in charge of Lebelle²⁹³ or McEl-derry a few days and proceed on with the trains until they pass the upper encampment of Indians. Having confidence that if they can pass at all you are the only one that can do it * * * It will be extremely embarrassing to us if Bouis & Co. traders pass on and ours do not * * *

(No sig.)

December 29, 1847

F. Laboue:

* * * Pechel²⁹⁴ has informed me you are scarce of some men I send you Bat Plante.²⁹⁵ He wintered last winter

²⁹¹Morain. See Note 270.

²⁹²Michelle Laferty. A son of this man still resides in Charles Mix county.

²⁹³Lebelle. Came from Minnesota.

²⁹⁴Pechel. No information.

²⁹⁵Jean Baptiste LaPlant. After sale of Fort Pierre, settled in Sioux City, but soon moved out on the farm in southern Union county, South Dakota, where he spent the rest of his life.

with Galpin and is a good man. * * * Mr. Picotte was trading a long while on White river otherwise he would have been with you ere this.

A. D. per
W. D. H.

Fort Pierre
January 4, 1848

Louison Freniere:

* * * I enclose you invoice of merchandise, which is now forwarded in charge of Moncrevie. He will leave some few articles with Malcon²⁹⁶ * * * Mocreniere²⁹⁷ tells me Malcon has about 14 lodges of Indians. I think myself that it would be better for me to remove the trade at the (or, to the) Santee. Cebelle (Sybille) will do well to send to the Tete Coupe and Moncousie you can send to the Marcell village to remain as long as our opponents keep a trader there. * * * As respects bringing your robes down in the spring, you can either trade skins and make canoes, or our men with those of the Shantee (Chantier) can easily take a boat up to you. Should you adopt this latter plan send me word and I will send a cartel up to the Shantee for this purpose * * * I have given to Boyer an American horse with 30 robes &c
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
January 8, 1848

J. V. Hamilton:

* * * As for LaCharite, I think exactly as you do, that he is an old fool and can harm but little * * * I send Lapelle²⁹⁸ & Lozier²⁹⁹ to you with 5 pack animals, &c. Mr. Picotte and Mr. Kipp have intimated to me that information of making our new steamboat * * *. As you have lost old Charite I shall endeavor to find a substitute to take charge of the post.
(no sig.)

²⁹⁶Malcon. (Malcontent) A cuthead Yanktonais Indian living in Brown county.

²⁹⁷This is Isadore the halfbreed. See note 285.

²⁹⁸Lapelle or Napelle. No information, but suggest it may be Labelle, of note 293.

²⁹⁹Lozier. No information.

Fort Pierre
January 8, 1848

Colin Campbell:

Napelle & Lozier leave me this day for the Vermillion
* * * Our Napleer³⁰⁰ (or Neplero or Nesstero) is trading
at the mouth of the Little Missouri.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
January 9, 1848

Jos. Jewett:

* * * (Prices of goods, etc.—C. E. D.) Medals, 1
Robe each if no more can be got * * * I send you one of
Necelle's horses which I have borrowed on account of those
belonging to the company being poor and tired, and I hope
that the "Feather in the Ear" will employ goods which will
not go out for less than 35 robes * * * I send you here-
with the account of Barker,³⁰¹ "Fire Maker" and "Pocamogin
Rouge". You will notice the "Fire Maker" got agreeable to
your request in your letter, a white buffalo skin for which
he promised to pay you a horse * * * The "Bad Lodge"
brought two orders from Clement for post robes which are
paid and charged to your post. It appears Mr. Bad Lodge was
not altogether satisfied with the horses he got, and after-
wards bragged he would be smart enough for us, those
twelve of the robes for which he got an order are painted
but are not yet delivered. Find out if you can how many
robes Clermond (Clement) **actually received** for which these
orders were given. When Schlegel³⁰² comes in let him bring
two or three of our best mules, &c * * * The enclosed
letter from Mr. Laboue you will please to send immediately to
him by Lapointe, who has remained with him, &c * * * I

³⁰⁰Our Napleer, Neplero, or Nesstero; whatever it may be, I get no sense from it.

³⁰¹I do not find the name of Barker in any frontier literature. Fire-maker was the noted Strikes Fire, one of the Fool Soldiers. Bad Lodge was a well known Blackfoot Sioux, and I presume Mr. Pocamoggin Red was also. According to Claymore, Jo Jouette was at this period trading at the Moreau.

³⁰²Schlegel. No information.

sent for Deschamp³⁰³ who is with Laboue to make me kegs.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
January 8, 1848

Jno. C. Rolette³⁰⁴

* * * I learn * * * that the greater part of your Indians have left for the Sand Hills and Berbeau's district. Now if this information is correct there is no use for us to oppose our own people, and it is useless to follow them, etc.
* * * I want you to try and be at our houses by the 1st of February so that Baptiste Picotte can come in to take the place of F. Behman, (Beeman) who will start for St. Louis.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
January 21, 1848

Louison Freniere:

Your letter per Turgeon was received this morning and I dispatched F. Durian without delay to you to contradict the report of our horses having been stolen * * * In the course of two or three weeks, however, Mr. Villandre will have arrived * * * I expect Rollette and all his people in the course * * * Leave Schlegel, Moncrevie or some trusty in charge of what you leave * * * As long as you have the goods, I wish you to supply our traders on the Moreau, those who are on the Cheyenne when they get out of goods can let their Indians come here * * * I want you

³⁰³Deschamps. This was a young man, the brotherinlaw of D. D. Mitchell, the Indian Agent, and youngest son of old Francois Deschamps one of the most desperate characters ever known in the west, for there was no cruelty to which he would not lend himself. He, it was, who killed Governor Semple of the Selkirk settlement. The traders and hunters at Fort Union on June 28th, 1834, turned upon this family and destroyed all of them, except this young man who was then five years old. Mitchell took this boy to St. Louis and educated him and he was taught the cooper's trade. For a full account of the Deschamps battle, see *Larpenteur*, p. 87 et seq. Maximilian also tells it p. 276. As the young man of the note was five years old in 1834, he had by this time become nineteen or twenty years of age.

³⁰⁴John C. Rolette, was a son of Joseph Rolette, the trader at Prairie du Chien, and the daughter of Chief Wapeshaw. He was born at Prairie du Chien, Wisconsin, in 1821. His brother Joseph became a large figure in the history of Minnesota.

to recollect that I dont want the post broken up, as long as there is any trade to be made. Maj Drips has started down according to my promise to your Indians for horses.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 12, 1848

F. Laboue:

Yours 9th inst per Peche & Plante is before me * * *
I have sent three wagons to Rollette to move him in * * *

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 12, 1848

Louison Freniere:

* * * I am preparing a wagon to take nails and tools to the Santee * * * You can keep all your people, Se-belle, (Sybille) Moncuire, (Moncrevie) &c until you come down.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 12, 1848

Jno. Barada:

From what Trugeon told me I expected to have you here. * * * You can keep Malcon with you at your post.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 15, 1848

Colin Campbell:

Since receipt of your letter from Vapeur I am without any news from you * * * Some Indians have arrived from Bouis and report the arrival of Villandre * * * The following Indians are indebted to us and promise to pay you: Mal di Cabrie (Bad Deer) Smutty Bear The Flying Bird Blue Earth * * *

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 16, 1848

Jos. Jewett:

The continuation of the fine weather induces me to believe that you will stand in need of your man to bring down your boats. I therefore send you five men, viz: C. Chattellon³⁰⁵ Louis Agard³⁰⁶ Jos Brazeau Jno Cauffman³⁰⁷ & Carlile Roberts to assist you * * * And it is my wish that you bring everything as far as where Moncrevie and Depuis³⁰⁸ (or Depruss) are * * * I send you also Jno C. Rolette * * *

(No sig.)

Feby 20, —

Per Schlegel

Your favor per Schlegel of 17th inst is in hand * * * Villandre has returned from St Joseph * * * I also expect a large band up early with Maj Drips.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 20, 1848

Colin Campbell:

I send Vapair³⁰⁹ back to you with goods, &c * * * I have kept Tison³¹⁰ here and send you Byonpre (or Begompe) in his place.

(No sig.)

³⁰⁵Chattellon. This was Henry Chatilon who figures in Parkman's Oregon Trail. He spent his summers hunting to supply meat to the steamboats navigating the upper river, and in the winter season hunted for the fur company.

³⁰⁶Louis Agard came to the Missouri in 1844 a mere boy, and lived for many years at Fort Pierre. After the American Fur Company withdrew, he clerked for Charles Galpin at Oak Creek (Wakpala) and in 1870 settled down at Fort Yates, where he died.

³⁰⁷John Cauffman. No information.

³⁰⁸Frederick Dupuis whose name has a place in our Geography as Dupree, was a native of Longueuil, Canada, but came to the river from Kaskaskia where many relatives resided. He arrived at Fort Pierre in 1838, and spent the remainder of his life in the vicinity, dying at his ranch on the Cheyenne in 1895. His greater service perhaps was the preservation of the buffalo which became the foundation of the famous "Scotty" Philip herd.

³⁰⁹Vapair. No information. As he appears to be in company with Tison, (Strikes Fire) I conclude that he is a Blackfoot, and perhaps Mr. Halsey has undertaken to write Vapeur which might be construed The Light Cloud.

³¹⁰Tison. Literally, a Torch, a Brand. The French name for the Blackfoot Sioux, Kaga Peta, commonly known as Strikes Fire. He was a member of the Fool Soldier Band of 1862. See Vol. II, p. 313.

Fort Pierre
February 26, 1848

Colin Campbell:

I send you per Narselle³¹¹ the six chief goods, &c
* * * I have sent McElderry with a small equipment to
trade with the Yanctonais on Snake River * * *
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 26, 1848

Jos. V. Hamilton:

Circumstances render it necessary for me to send another express to St. Louis, and Napelle leaves me on his way there this day * * *
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
February 26, 1848

P. A. Sarpy:

The bearer hereof A. (or H.) Nappelle is on his way to St. Louis, * * *

Respt S. C.

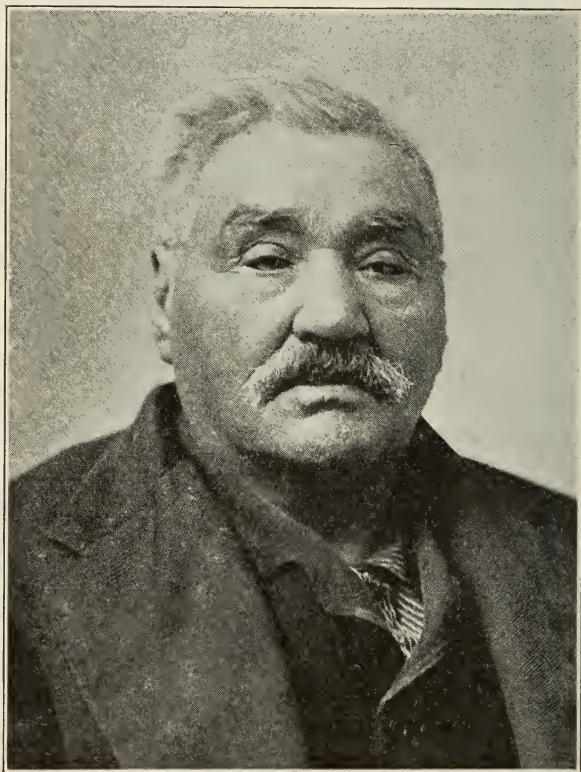
Fort Pierre
February 27, 1848

F. Laboue:

* * * Let the men have Parfleches and Simeaus enough to make a canoe in case the Cheyenne should be high on their return. I send you La Lozier to assist your post. Benoist has offered to help bring in the carts * * * Tom Durian guides the wagons your place. He is on a trapping expedition.

(No sig.)

³¹¹Narselle. This is Paul Narcelle, who was born in Longueuil, Canada, and came to the Missouri via Kaskaskia, in 1838. He was employed by the American Fur company until 1855, after which he engaged in business upon his own account. In 1881 he became totally blind and continued so until his death in 1889, which occurred at his farm near the mouth of the Cheyenne. In 1863 he opened a store for Indian trade near old Fort Sully, see Vol. IV, p. 116. He was the father of Narcisse Narcelle, who rendered important service to the whites during the Messiah War.



BASIL CLEMENT (CLAYMORE)
(Dit Jacquesmarie)

Fort Pierre
March 2, 1848

C. Campbell:

I send St Pierre back to you * * * (No sig.)

Fort Pierre
March 5, 1848

Honore Goulet:

I send Pacquette back to you * * * Cibella (Sybille)
can bring the boats back while you and Pacquette will re-
main to assist Barrada in building his boats.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
March 10, 1848

Sam F. McFlarry:

Moleau arrived here yesterday and brought me yours
of 7th inst * * * (No sig.)

Fort Pierre
March 12, 1848

J. Jewett:

I have yours of 3rd inst per Dupis * * *
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
March 15, 1848

F. Laboue:

Your favor of 10th inst per Colin Lamont reached me
yesterday * * * He returns to you with four men,
namely: Jos Leonais,³¹² Nobert³¹³ (or Norbut) Paure,³¹⁴ Jas
Adams³¹⁵ and Basl Jacquemarie³¹⁶ to aid you as to bringing
your canoes * * * (No sig.)

³¹²Joseph Leonais. Born in Sorel, Canada, in 1818; came to Fort Pierre in 1838 with Dupree and Narcelle. He married a half blood daughter of Louis Menard, at Fort Pierre, in 1851, and the next year settled in Sioux City. He died May 25, 1900.

³¹³Nobert, or Norbut. No information.

³¹⁴Paure. No information.

³¹⁵James Adams. No information.

³¹⁶Basl Jacquemarie. A nickname for Basil Claymore.

Fort Pierre
March 27, 1848

Colin Campbell:

Gerard & Vapeuz arrived this morning and brought me yours of 26th * * * Gerard mentioned your being in want of a trader. I send you Moncrevie, who has been trading above with the Yanctonais * * *

H. P.
per W. D. H.

Fort Pierre
April 3, 1848

Colin Campbell:

I received yours of the 30th ult. per Gerard yesterday. I now send you him and Vizolt³¹⁷ back to you. * * * You can tell Messrs. Rondelle & Alexis, our molasses is down, * * * Please let me know whether Bayers (or Bojers) Browlaw, Flying Bird has yet paid to you his credit * * * I sent Pascal Cerre & Little Dog to the Yancton tent * * *
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
April 3, 1848

Saml E. McElderry:

Yours of 27th Ult only reached me yesterday, Moleau having lost his way * * *
(No sig.)

Fort Pierre
April 10, 1848

Colin Campbell:

Your several favors per Proveau & Gerard are received * * * I now send you per Laframboise some goods, & * * * Mr. "Handsome Bear" gave me a horse for which I allowed him twenty robes * * * I let him have a drum for which he was to pay five robes.

(No sig.)

³¹⁷Visolt. No information.

April 17, 1848

Saml E. McElderry:

* * * As soon as you can consistently with your
interests close your trade and come.

H. P.

per W. D. H.

Fort Pierre

April 19, 1848

C. Campbell:

Your letter per the "Boues Gache" & St. Pierre* dame
in hand * * * St Pierre says you wish to know from
me if I intended abandoning the Yancton post. I do not
altogether. I will leave somebody there all summer, if it
is only one man * * * (No sig.)

Fort Pierre

April 19, 1848

C. E. Galpin:

I send "Sionais" back to you with two men, &c.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

April 21, 1848

The person in chg of wagons From Fort John:

Mr. Jos. Lamire³¹⁸ who will hand you this is on his way
to St. John with instructions from Mr. Papin, Etc.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

April 23, 1848

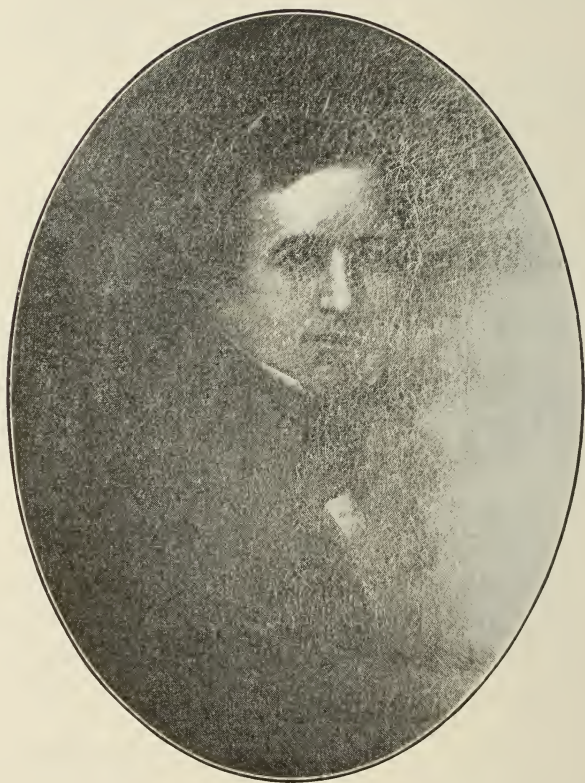
Colin Campbell:

I send Laframboise back to you, etc * * * Tell "He
who Strikes the Ree"³¹⁹ I am sorry I cannot send him the
calves he wanted * * * (No sig.)

*St. Pierre married a Yankton woman and settled in Charles Mix
county where he reared a family among whom is his daughter Gertrude
Bonin, the accomplished secretary of the National Society of American
Indians.

³¹⁸Joseph Lamire. No information.

³¹⁹He Who Strikes the Ree, means Struck by the Ree, the Yankton
Chief. See Vol. I.



MAJ. JOHN F. A. SANFORD

Fort Pierre

April 30, 1848

Louis Lageire:³²¹

I send you per Dauville (or Danville) a few more goods, &c * * * I wish that in case you find opposition for you to post a trader, etc * * * I want you to send me back Prairie³²² as soon as you conveniently can, etc.

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

May 1, 1848

Colin Campbell:

Moncurie arrived here yesterday with the carts, ets * * * I send Morin back with such goods as we have, etc * * * Shall be glad to see when Maj Drips arrives. Perhaps I will return with you on my way to meet the steam boat. I want you however, to send me an express (Laframboise or Lamont) immediately, etc * * * You can tell Mr. Rondelle that I shall possibly be better able to make him an offer for his robes when I see them, etc * * *

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

May 9, 1848

Pierre Garreau:

I send Constant Proveau with men to bring down the returns from Fort Union, etc * * * Mr. Culbertson informs we that 4 Bears wishes to give one of these animals (horses) * * *. Also please say to the 4 Bears that I have got the otter skins he requested me to obtain for him * * * I have instructed Mr. Besantel³²³ to furnish one man from his post to go up with Proveau to Fort Union, etc * * * Proveau and party may not pass by the post of Mr. Desantel in which case it will be necessary for you to send two men with Mr. Proveau, etc * * *

(No sig.)

³²¹Louis Lageire. No information.

³²²Prairie. A voyageur from Kankakee, Illinois.

³²³Mr. Desantel. I presume he is the same as Joseph Desantel or Desautel, of Note 259.



JIM BRIDGER

Fort Pierre

May 9, 1848

Jos. Desantel (or Desautel) :

Your favor of 23 of April was duly received per Creely³²⁴ (Cruly) * * * Our opponents have notified me of Mr. Piere Vasques having taken your boat. They are willing to pay us for it. I send Constant Proveau with men to Fort Union, etc * * *

(No sig.)

Fort Pierre

May 9, 1848

E. T. Dering:

Messrs. Culbertson & Kipp arrived here yesterday * * * Mr. Kipp's health has improved a little. He proceeded on to St Louis this morning * * * I send Constant Proveau to you with 7 men from here, and I have directed Messrs. Desautell & Garreau each to furnish one more man. Proveau is one of our best steersman, Antoine Morin is also a good steersman, and Couvar (Couas) can steer * * * It is my wish that Proveau should have the charge of these boats. Let Antoine Morin take the lead boat, and Mr. Lee can remain at Fort Union for the steam boat.

(No sig.)

(End of letter book Dec. 1, 1847 to May 9, 1848—C. E. D.)

³²⁴Creely, or Cruly. No information.

POST MANAGERS AND EMPLOYES.

Mr. DeLand was able to secure the following list of post managers and employes for the years 1830 and 1831 from the P. Choteau, Moffit Collections of the Missouri Historical Society.

1830.

At Fort Tecumseh—

Joseph Bary.

Joseph Benway, half breed son of Francois. See note 226.

Jno. N. Golse.

Louis Obachon. See note 116.

At Cheyenne Post—(Forks Cheyenne river.)

Louis Pileau. I think this is the Louis Piton of note 63.

At the Yanktonais—(There were several posts for the Yanktonais trade; one at Bismarck, one on the Little Cheyenne and two on the James river. From contemporaneous notes in the Fort Tecumseh journal I think this refers to the post at Bismarck.)

Ignace Grondiere. See note 108.

Hall Delouchamps.

Sylvester Denoyer, (Desnoyer). See note 127.

Samuel Hart.

Chs. Rovundre.

At the Ree—(This post was at the old Ree town destroyed by Leavenworth in 1823 but reoccupied. It was located on the Missouri a short distance above the mouth of Grand River.)

Louis Menechel.

At the Sawons, (Saone)—(This post was at the mouth of the Little Moreau.) See note 79.

Louis Bisson(ette). See note 232.

1831.

At the Huncpapas—(This post was on Grand river at present Bullhead sub-station.)

Louis Depont, or Dessant, voyager.

Joseph Bernabai, voyager.

Frederick LaBoue, clerk and trader. See notes 51 and 138.

At the Poncas—(At mouth of Ponca creek, Nebraska.)

Louis Luplus, clerk and trader.

Antoine Matelle, voyager.

John Sibelle, (Sybille). See note 191.

At the Rees —

Baptiste Deguire, voyager.

Richard T. Holliday, clerk and trader.

At the Sawons—

Louison (the) Brule, voyager.

Patrice Dauphin, clerk and interpreter, (not wanted).

Louis Menard, clerk and interpreter.

At Fort Tecumseh—

Baptiste Boyer.

Pierre Champeau, (Champenois).

Pierre Chatilion.

Chevalier Cauriere.

Jos. Fonchette, voyager.

Henry Hay, clerk and trader.

Nicholas LaComb, voyager.

Francais LeMay, voyager.

Jacques Mayoht, (Mayette), voyager.

John L. Menard, voyager.

Zephine Recontre, clerk and interpreter.

Matthieu Sallin, voyager, (good man).

Michel St. Paul, voyager.

At the White River—

Emillian Primeau. See note 59.

Joseph Brasseau. See note 114.

At Boise Blanc River—(Whitewood)

Francais Frenier, interpreter, (engaged at Teton river).

Jacques Frenier, interpreter.

Michel Cancellai, voyager.

At the Yanktons—

Brasseu Duchonquette, clerk and trader.

Francais LaCharite, voyager and trader.

Vital Papiche, voyager, (engaged at Teton river).

At the Yanktonais—

David D. Mitchell, clerk and interpreter.

Thomas Dickson, clerk and interpreter.

Jos. Platt, voyager, (sent back to St. Louis).

Jos. Human, (deserted boat coming up).

Gabreil Humeau, voyager.

Joseph Berthune, voyager, "good man".

Pierre, Gibeau, voyager.

Louis Lore, voyager.

Louis Pigette, voyager.

Andre Fouchette, voyager.

Louis LaBarge, voyager.

Maxan Deroy, voyager.

Etienne Derouin, voyager.

Jos. Lajanesse, voyager.

John Watts, voyager, "excellent man".

Baptiste Degarain, voyager.

Chas. Lajanesse, voyager.

Louis Fouque, voyager.

Louis Gudesoy, voyager.

Baptiste Molain, voyager.

Jno. Latrass, voyager.

Jos. Groneau, voyager.

Xawin Trudella, voyager.

Jean Douchonquette, voyager.

Faustin Riviere, voyager.

GENERAL ROSTER.

List of men to be employed by the American Fur Company to assist in the trade with the different tribes of Indians on the upper Missouri and to be transported on board the keel boat Assiniboine and by land to their places of destination: (As prepared by Mr. DeLand this list was "run in" and without regard to alphabetical arrangement. I have alliterated it for convenience in checking. The list is undated, but evidently was made before the general introduction of steamboats. While the text distinctly says "keel boat" I find no record of such a vessel. The steamboat "Assiniboine" did go up in 1833 even some distance above

Ft. Union where it was caught by the low stage of water and forced to winter.—D. R.)

V. M. Briot, boatman.

Ciprian Belcour, boatman.

Antoine Bessan or Bessau, boatman.

Louis Bissonette, boatman.

A. F. Boelet, boatman.

Jacques Bordeau, boatman.

Duchonquette Brazeau, boatman.

Jos. Brazeau, boatman.

Baptiste Cailot, boatman.

Colin Campbell, interpreter.

Baptist Caudaire, boatman.

Francais Cartaque, boatman.

Baptiste Cavalier, boatman.

Pascal L. Cerre.

Francis A. Chardon.

Iran Chemaur, boatman.

Batiste Defond, pilot.

Chs. Deschamp, boatman.

Noel Derasier, boatman.

Jos. Derouis, or Dervois, boatman.

Louis Dessant, boatman.

Thomas Dickson, interpreter.

William Dickson, interpreter.

Charles Digri, Digre or Digse, interpreter.

Baptiste Dorian, interpreter.

Jno. Dougherty, clerk.

John Duchenquette, boatman.

Auguste Duesche, boatman.

Iran Fillian, boatman.

F. Fouchette, boatman.

Nicholas Glieman, boatman.

Louis Gerbois, boatman.

J. M. Golpe, or Goese, boatman.

Ignace Grandieu, boatman.

Louis Grione, boatman.

Alexis Guillard, boatman.

Louis Guillard, boatman.

Jacob Halsey, clerk.
Jno. Hart, clerk.
David Hebert, boatman.
Pierre Hebert, boatman.
J. B. Jancas, boatman.
James Kipp, clerk.
Louis LaChapelle, interpreter.
Ugene LaBeriére, boatman.
Alexis LaBouche, boatman.
Frederick LaBouche, clerk.
Chs. LaJunette, boatman.
Jos. LaJunette, boatman.
William Laidlaw, clerk.
Pierre Larcienne, steersman.
M. P. Lasserine (?) boatman.
Jos. LaBoue or LaBone, boatman.
Pierre LeBran or LeBrie, boatman.
Baptiste Ledon^d or Ledonda, boatman.
Pierre Legris, boatman.
Gabiél Vital Lipe, (May be independent—C. E. D.)
Pierre Loscire, Loreicire, or Losiecire, boatman.
Kenneth McKenzie, trader.
Louis Marechal, boatman.
David D. Mitchell, trader.
Andre Palenier, boatman.
Vital Papiche, or Passiche, boatman.
Etienne Papin.
Louis Papin, boatman.
Pierre, D. Papin, boatman.
Albert Paquette, boatman.
Jos. Pelletier, boatman.
Henry Picotte, boatman.
Jos. Pineau, boatman.
Pierre Primeau, boatman.
Louis Privilee, boatman.
Etienne Provost, boatman.
Louis Prudhomme, boatman.
Noel Richard, boatman.
Francais Roy, boatman.

L. St. Laurant, boatman.
Thos. L. Sarpy, clerk.
Alexis Thibeau, steersman.
Chas. Vacha, boatman.
Pierre Vetubise (Ortubise), boatman.
Jos. Visina, boatman.
John Watts, boatman.

CERTIFICATE OF AUTHENTICATION

State of South Dakota	}	ss.
County of Hughes		
City of Pierre		

I, Chas. E. DeLand, do hereby certify that the above and attached transcript of my notes made in the City of St. Louis on, during and between the 11th day of October, 1916, and the 19th day of October, 1916, from the books and records of Fort Tecumseh and Fort Pierre trading posts on the Upper Missouri River (above the present city of Fort Pierre) and from original letters and memoranda examined by me and kept in the archives of the Missouri Historical Society in the Jefferson Memorial Building in said City of St. Louis, are a full and complete transcript of all of my said notes so made and pertaining to said trading posts and to the American Fur Company's business centered at said Fort Tecumseh and said Fort Pierre trading posts, which examination of records, etc., was made in behalf of the State Historical Society of South Dakota.

Dated Pierre, S. D., November 21 1916.

CHAS. E. DE LAND.

HISTORY OF DAKOTA CAVALRY.

In 1899 Hon. A. M. English,¹ who served as first sergeant in Company A, First Dakota Cavalry, 1862-1865, wrote a brief history of that organization which was published in the *Monthly South Dakotan*, serially beginning in February 1900 and ending in the number for May 1901. The importance of the work in which this organization engaged as well as the historic value of the story to citizens of South Dakota justifies its republication here with such editorial notes as the subject matter appears to warrant and with full rosters of the men serving in the battalion. The roster of Company B was made from the Company Descriptive Book presented to this department by Mrs. Uriah Wood,² of Elk Point. The descriptive book and roster of Company A has been lost and the War Department has no complete record of it, according to a letter from the adjutant general dated April 4, 1917. For the sketches of the members of the two companies we are very grateful to Hon. George W. Kingsbury who has supplied the most of them.

¹See Vol. III, p. 126

²Uriah Wood was the son of Lieutenant John R. Wood of the B Company, Dakota Cavalry. He was born in Wisconsin, January 1, 1847 and came to Dakota in his youth and served throughout the war, having joined the company in October 1862. Throughout his life he kept the old descriptive book as his most precious relic, but upon his death bed requested that the book, after his death be deposited with the Department of History.

DAKOTA'S FIRST SOLDIERS.

History of the First Dakota Cavalry, 1862-1865.

By HON. A. M. ENGLISH.

A few months after the commencement of hostilities between the north and the south there was a movement started in Yankton to raise a battalion of volunteer troops for service in the Union army. The movement soon took shape and an order was issued by the war department to raise two companies of volunteers. W. P. Lyman,³ a resident of Yankton at that time, and well known throughout the sparse settlements from the Big Sioux river to Fort Randall⁴ and above, was the prime mover and it was generally understood that he would receive a captaincy of one of the companies to be raised. General J. B. S. Todd⁵ was then delegate in Congress and took great interest in the movement, and being anxious to assist his old friend Lyman, procured a commission for him from the war department as Major of Dakota Volunteers and an order for him to proceed at once to Fort Randall and assume command. The fort was at that time garrisoned by three companies of the Fourteenth Iowa Volunteer Infantry—companies A, B and C, Captain John Pattee⁶ in command. Major Lyman arrived at the fort and after some delay the command was turned over to him, and a Dakota major was in command of the

³William P. Lyman came to the Dakota territory in 1855 with Harney's troops. I have not been able to secure a sketch of his life. He was the first permanent settler in Yankton county, having established a ferry and trading post on James river in 1857.

⁴For much information pertaining to Fort Randall see Vol. I.

⁵John Blair Smith Todd, for sketch see Vol. III, p. 127; Vol. VII, p. 485 et seq.

⁶Col. John Pattee, sketch and reminiscences, Vol. V, p. 273. Col. Pattee's story of the assumption of the command of Fort Randall by Maj. Lyman is interesting. Lyman never had a commission as major and was not confirmed by the senate. He received the matter of course notice from the War Department that he had been nominated for the position of major and forthwith proceeded to Randall, assumed command of the post and placed Col. Pattee under arrest for questioning his authority. This occurred upon February 4, 1862 and upon the 1st of the following April Lyman was notified by the War Department that his nomination had been revoked. He at once retired from Fort Randall leaving Pattee still under arrest. Lyman never at any time filed any charges or specifications against Pattee, but it was not until May 21st that he got things cleared up and was restored to his command.

fort and the troops garrisoning it—commissioned a Major of Dakota volunteers not yet raised. The blunder of the war department was soon apparent and Lyman's commission was revoked and he returned to private life. In the meantime recruiting went on and in the month of January, 1862, Company A First Dakota Cavalry was organized with Nelson Miner⁷ as captain; John K. Fowler,⁸ first lieutenant; Frederick Plughoff,⁹ an old regular army soldier, second lieutenant. John Hutchinson¹⁰ was territorial secretary at the time and in the absence of Governor Jayne¹¹ was acting governor and issued the commissions to the above mentioned officers.

This company was ordered into quarters at Yankton, at that time a mere hamlet, although it bore the honor of being the capital of the then Territory of Dakota. The building still standing on the west side of Broadway between Second and Third streets and since owned and occupied by the late Judge Congleton¹² as a residence, was used for quarters, as was also a log building in the east side of Walnut street between Second and Third streets near where the Madison house now stands, also a building on Walnut street and the house owned by D. T. Bramble¹³ and afterwards used for the surveyor general's office. A log building on the west side of Broadway near where E. C. Dudley¹⁴ is now doing business was occupied as cook-house, dining room and commissary store.

Here in the mother city of the Dakotas, we learned the

⁷See roster of company following.

⁸See roster of company following.

⁹See roster of company following.

¹⁰John Hutchinson, appointed secretary of Dakota by Lincoln had been through the border troubles in Kansas but at the time of his appointment resided in Minnesota. He was a lawyer of ability. He removed his family to Yankton and resided there until his resignation in 1865 to become U. S. Consul to Leghorn, Italy.

¹¹Gov. William Jayne died at Springfield, Ill., March 20, 1916, aged 89 years. For sketch see Vol. I, p. 118. See also Vol. VI "The Yankton Jubilee," p. 283 et seq.

¹²Leonidas Congleton born in Westmoreland county, Pennsylvania, in 1818 and came to Yankton in 1864, served many years as probate judge and court commissioner. He married Rose Stewart in 1839. He died about 1889.

¹³Downer T. Bramble. For sketch see Vol. III, p. 125.

¹⁴Edward C. Dudley, born in Illinois 1845 and settled in Yankton in 1869. Engaged in the hardware and plumbing business. He married Miss Ruch.

first rudiments of a soldier's life. Lieutenant Plughoff was drill master and well he did his work for the little time he was with us. His strict discipline was quite irksome but we had enlisted to become soldiers and to serve under the flag of our country and we obeyed all orders and soon became quite proficient in drill and discipline. On the 30th day of April, 1862, the company was mustered into the United States service to serve three years or during the war. Lieutenant Luce¹⁵ of Company B, Fourteenth Iowa Volunteer Infantry, then stationed at Fort Randall, performed the muster-in service and Dr. Justus Townsend¹⁶ was the examining surgeon. The company was soon after ordered to Ft. Randall, where it remained until late in July, except twenty-five men who were ordered to Sioux Falls under Captain Miner. The balance of the company was ordered back to Yankton where we received clothing, horse equipments and arms. The arms consisted of the old Hall's carbine, French revolvers and the regulation cavalry sabre.

The carbine and revolvers were miserable arms, the men being in about as much danger in the rear, as the enemy in front; however, we soon received Sharp's carbines and Colt's revolvers, at that time the best arms in the service. Just before the company left Ft. Randall, Lieutenant Plughoff resigned his commission as second lieutenant and J. M. Bacon¹⁷ was appointed to fill the vacancy and he relieved Captain Miner at Sioux Falls with an additional detachment of fifteen men. Captain Miner, soon after went to Vermillion with a part of the company, leaving the writer hereof in command of twenty men at Yankton.

In September of this year the Sioux Indian outbreak and massacre occurred in Minnesota under the savage and murderous Little Crow,¹⁸ spreading alarm and consternation

¹⁵Lieut. Marvin R. Luse, of Iowa City. Born in Pennsylvania in 1838. Commissioned 1st Lieutenant Oct. 23, 1861. Re-enlisted in 1864, Commissioned then as 1st Lieutenant in Co. L, 7th Iowa Cavalry. His name does not appear in the list of Iowa soldiers remaining in that state in 1885.

¹⁶Dr. Justus Townsend, was the first physician to locate in Yankton, and was afterwards adjutant general of the Territory.

¹⁷See roster of company following.

¹⁸See Vol. II.

throughout the west and along the frontier. Judge Amidon¹⁹ and son were murdered while at work near Sioux Falls, shot down in cold blood by the blood-thirsty savages. The place was soon after evacuated, the troops withdrawn and the detachment at Vermillion strengthened.

Sometime before the occurrence above mentioned, a party of Sioux Indians made their appearance on the hill above the camp at Sioux Falls, probably intending to attack the town. Lieutenant Bacon with a part of his command advanced to give them battle, but they fled on the approach of the troops and a lively but fruitless chase ensued, the red devils escaped but the chase relieved the monotony of camp life somewhat and gave the boys something to talk about around the camp fire and putting them on their guard against future raids. During the month of March, 1862, an incident occurred which I will relate: The first territorial legislature was in session, convened by proclamation of Governor Jayne. A bill for the location of the capital at Yankton was before the house. George M. Pinney²⁰ was speaker, and made rulings that delayed the passage of the bill and thus became very unpopular with the majority of the friends of the bill and they sought to remove him from his position as speaker. Mr. Pinney appealed to acting Governor Hutchinson for protection on representing that the house was disloyal and in a state of anarchy. Mr. Hutchinson at once called on Captain Miner for a file of soldiers to keep order in the house of representatives and Lieutenant Plughoff with a squad of ten men of whom the writer was one, was at once ordered to the state house with loaded guns to keep order. The house thereupon refused to proceed with business while soldiers were in the hall and soon after adjourned and the soldiers were withdrawn. Mr. Pinney was soon after removed from the position of speaker and John Tiernon²¹ was

¹⁹Ibid.

²⁰Geo. M. Pinney, sketch Vol. III, p. 125.

²¹John Tiernon, became Colonel John Lucke Tiernon of the Regular Army. He died recently in Buffalo, N. Y. He was born in 1840 in Indiana and came to Dakota with the Harney expedition of 1855. He lived at Fort Randall and was elected to represent all of the region west of Choteau Creek, in the first territorial House. He was the youngest member of the legislature and had enlisted after his election and at the time of his service was a lieutenant of the Third Artillery.

elected to fill the vacancy. The capital bill was passed and this bone of contention being out of the way business proceeded smoothly.

In September of this year the Sioux Indian outbreak and massacre occurred in Minnesota, led by Little Crow. The wily and blood-thirsty savages murdered (butchered) the people without regard to age or sex, often tearing nursing infants from the arms of their mothers and dashing out their brains against the corners of the house, chimney or whatever place was the most convenient to accomplish their murderous purposes. This terrible raid and the murders committed spread alarm and consternation throughout the west, especially along the frontier. About this time rumors began to reach the settlers along the Missouri river that the Yankton Sioux Indians were about to join those of Minnesota in a relentless war against the whites with a view to their extermination. This report caused great alarm among the settlers and many left the territory. The settlement at Bon Homme²² was entirely abandoned and the roads to Sioux City were lined with the teams of fleeing settlers, many of whom never returned, in fact the territory was nearly depopulated.

The officials of the territory mostly took refuge in Sioux City and for a while it looked as though the territorial organization would become a thing of the past, or in the language of the late lamented Jim Fiske²³ "would go where the woodbine twineth." The writer hereof was in command of a detachment of twenty men encamped on the bluff west of the James river near Yankton, a short distance north of where Judge J. R. Hanson²⁴ now resides. One morning, Merrill G. Lathrop,²⁵ who had been in town over night come to camp with a note from F. M. Ziebach²⁶ requesting me to

²²The settlement at Bon Homme dated from the opening of the reservation upon July 10, 1859, and contained a large number (considering its total population) of enterprising men.

²³This reference is not to Captain Fisk, of Dakota but to the notable financier.

²⁴Joseph R. Hanson, first settler of Yankton. Died in February 1917. For sketch see Vol. I, 127; Vol. III, 126; Vol. VI, "The Yankton Jubilee" p. 283 et seq.

²⁵See roster of company following.

²⁶F. M. Ziebach, for sketch see Vol. I, p. 127.

send a communication which he had written to Captain Miner at Vermillion warning him of the probable uprising of the Yankton Sioux Indians. I at once detailed the said Lathrop and Michael Fisher²⁷ for the duty and they were soon in the saddle and on their way. When they reached the ferry across the James river at the place where the steel bridge now crosses that stream they called for the ferryman, J. B. Greenway,²⁸ to cross them. He at once answered and started for the river when at least a score of savages raised up from their concealment in the grass and fired a volley of rifle and musket balls at him, but owing to their poor marksmanship they failed to hit him. Greenway was raised in the mountains of east Tennessee. He was accustomed to the use of firearms from his boyhood and was as brave as a lion. He at once stepped back to the house, seized his rifle and returned their fire from the corner of the log house. Fisher at once returned to camp, his horse going at the top of his speed, the rider, whose head barely reached above the grass—which grew very luxuriantly on the bottoms, having been flooded in the spring—hallooing at the top of his voice and wildly gesticulating; in a few words I gathered from him what had taken place.

I at once mounted eight men and prepared to pursue and punish the savages who had the temerity to attack a peaceful settler with a view to murder and pillage. I at once set out with P. C. Conway, George Pike, Merrill G. Lathrop, Michael Fisher, H. J. Austin and two others whose names have escaped me. When we arrived at the ferry we met Greenway on this side at the landing with his wife, they having just crossed over. The house in which Mr. Greenway

²⁷Michael Fisher was a pioneer of the Territory, coming out from Pennsylvania in the fall of 1860. He reached Sioux City late in the season, and walked from that point to Yankton carrying his baggage on the end of a cane across his shoulder. He was a brother of David Fisher, the blacksmith, a single man, about 21 years old. He enlisted in Company A, in 1861, but owing to poor health did not serve out the term of enlistment. Retiring from the military service, he learned the printer's trade in the office of the *Weekly Dakotan*, at Yankton, which occupation he followed for several years. He married a Michigan lady about 1864, built a dwelling-house on the northwest corner of Second and Linn streets, wherein he made his home until death came at the close of a long and painful illness. He served as Justice of the Peace two terms in Yankton. He left a widow, one son and one daughter. (G. W. K.)

²⁸J. B. Greenway was one of the pioneer settlers at Sioux Falls, coming there in 1858.

lived and from which he so bravely returned the fire of the Indians is still standing; it is on the east side of the river near the bridge, on the right hand side of the road going north; it was built by Mr. Greenway of hewn logs. Later when General J. B. Todd owned the property he built an addition to it and covered the whole with siding, thus giving it the appearance of a frame structure. It is now owned by Mr. White.³² This house should be preserved as a monument to those trying times when men took their own and the lives of their families in their hands in the settlement of what is the garden spot of our growing young state. After a hurried explanation of the route the Indians had taken, Mr. Greenway crossed us over and we took the trail of the savages down the road to the farm of the late John Stanage,³³ where they fired at Henry Bradley,³⁴ who is still a resident of Yankton, as he was returning from the river with a pail of water, the balls striking the logs above the door as he entered the cabin. They then took the horses that were picketed near by. Continuing down the road they arrived near the cabin of Cosak Bouret³⁵ and John La Foure, better known as "Old Dakota" by the old settlers. The old man was always on the alert, having been among the Indians on the frontier for twenty years or more, saw them approaching, hastily seized his double barreled shot gun and advanced to meet them, backed by Cosak with a like weapon. The old man called to them to halt as they were about to take the horses that were grazing at the end of their lariets; he told them he was the White Bear whom they all knew, that he did not wish to harm them but that they must move on as he would shoot and they knew he did not shoot for nothing. They took the old man's advice, left

³²This building is still standing, 1917.

³³John Stanage, an Irishman born in 1829. Came to America during the California gold excitement of 1849, but soon joined the army and came to Dakota with Harney in 1855. When his term expired he opened a farm near Mission Hill, Yankton county. Was a member of the First Territorial Legislature. He died about 1905.

³⁴Henry Bradley, also one of Harney's men. For sketch see Vol. VIII, p. 33.

³⁵Cosack Bouret and ³⁶John LeFoure were two Canadian French frontiersmen of the typical "dime novel" sort. Mr. English quotes him a little later as using the Yankee dialect, but that is because it was the attempt of Vermont Yankee to talk Canadian French. I am told by men who knew "Dakota" very well that he spoke with a decided French accent.

the horses and moved on down the river. After we crossed the river we took the road towards Sioux Falls as far as the mill, not seeing any Indians we halted a moment, when we heard the shot that was fired at Mr. Bradley and seeing the Indians leaving there we hastily retraced our steps to near the ferry, took the trail and soon arrived at Stanages and Bouret's, received their statements as above related and pulled out down the trail.

We overtook them near the big slough and not far from the present town of Gayville.³⁷ Old settlers will remember the road ran along the side of the lake as the big slough was then called. They had taken refuge around a farmer's cabin and prepared to stand us off. A skirmish at once commenced which lasted about an hour, when the Indians fell back to the high grass along the lake where we could not go with our heavy cavalry horses. One Indian was killed in the skirmish. We saw him fall and learned afterwards from the Indians that he was killed. There were no casualties on our side. We started back to camp having accomplished all that seemed possible and believing that the party we had pursued was but a small part of the Indians, then in the vicinity of Yankton, which proved to be correct, as we shall soon see. On our way back to camp we stopped at the house of Cosak Bouret and after a short consultation with him and "Old Dakota" they concluded to leave the ranch and accompany us to town. They also told us that another war party had passed down the road, soon after we left their ranch in pursuit of a party, who attacked Greenway, the ferryman, and that they left the road on our return and laid on the ground that had been recently mowed and smoked their pipes, concealed from view by the tall grass that intervened. We also saw other war parties on the bluffs and saw the flash of their glasses, as they signalled to their friends in the bottom. On reaching the farm of John Stanage he decided to move his family to town, as did also Mr. Bradley and Mr. Greenway, as lone families were certainly in great peril, with Sioux war parties roaming the prairies in all directions.

³⁷Omitted.

Before leaving camp in the morning I had directed the rest of my little command to break camp and move to town, where I found them encamped on the banks of the Minnecose, the Sioux name for the Missouri river, at the foot of Broadway. The people of the surrounding country had mostly come into town, having heard of the attack on the ferryman and the skirmish at the lake. They were all terribly excited and frightened; some commenced preparations for flight and applied to me for an escort to Sioux City, which I decided not to furnish. I was stationed at Yankton, by order of Captain Miner, and could not leave without orders from him, if I felt disposed to, which I did not. After talking the matter over and taking several votes on the matter, all decided to remain and fortify as best they could against the savages. All went to work with a will. Logs, posts, lumber and other material were brought into requisition and quite rapid progress was made, the soldiers helping as they could and all working in relief squads. The ladies took great interest in the work, encouraging the men by their hopeful words and the lunches and hot coffee which they passed to them as they hurried the work on the fortifications, which were quite formidable when completed. A few days later, when all were ready, to meet the Indians, we were spoiling for a fight. Old Dakota, walking around with his double-barreled shotgun, which he always carried on his arm, muttering to himself, "G-d d-m um, um feared um won't come," was a picture I shall not soon forget. He was with Fremont in his explorations of the Rocky Mountains, was a companion of Kit Carson in many a hunting and camping expedition, and had met the Indians in many scraps and hard fought battles.

Soon after the outbreak of Little Crow and his band in Minnesota, a public meeting was held in Yankton, at which a company of militia, or home guards, was formed, for home protection. Frank M. Ziebach was elected captain, David Fisher,³⁸ who died a year or two later, first lieutenant, and

³⁸David Fisher was a Pennsylvanian, and came west in quest of better health. He was a blacksmith, age about 26 years. He came into Dakota in 1858, one of the earliest of the white settlers, and before the land was purchased from the Indians. He came in the employ of the Indian trad-

John Lawrence,³⁹ who died three years ago at Deadwood, second lieutenant.

Major W. P. Lyman, Joseph Frank,⁴⁰ a partner of George W. Kingsbury,⁴¹ on The Dakotan, and J. K. Fowler, first lieutenant of Company A, were sent to the Yankton agency to ascertain the sentiment of the Indians on the war question. The committee interviewed Strike the Ree,⁴² head chief of the Yanktons, the agent Dr. Burleigh,⁴³ half breeds and friendly Indians, and learned that Strike the Ree was friendly to the whites and would do all in his power to keep the Indians at peace, yet he would not be able to control the young men of the tribe, who were anxious for a fight, and were liable at any time to raid settlements under the leadership of some less peaceably disposed chief, of whom there were several in the tribe.

The two soldiers, Lathrop and Fisher, after the fight at the lakes proceeded to Vermillion and delivered Captain Ziebach's dispatch to Captain Miner and also told him about the fight at the lakes. Captain Miner at once ordered his bugler to sound the assembly. The men rapidly fell into the ranks, the captain made a short speech to them about the fight, and that war with the great Sioux nation was on in the Territory of Dakota—a war that lasted over four years, cost the government millions of dollars, many lives, and kept the settlements in turmoil, fear and apprehension until a treaty was made with them.

The men were soon in the saddle and with their loved captain at the head of the column, took up the line of

ing firm, Frost, Todd & Co., and established a shop at Strike the Ree's camp, now Yankton. He continued business for a number of years but did not regain his health. He was unmarried, was an excellent citizen, and one of the foremost leaders during the siege of Yankton in 1862, being 1st lieutenant of Company A, Dakota Militia. He closed his business a few years later, due to his enfeebled condition, and started for Pennsylvania in care of a younger brother, Michael. He was obliged to make the first leg of the trip, about 300 miles to the nearest railroad in an ordinary wagon, and died just before reaching the Northwestern depot east of Boone, Iowa. His remains were sent forward by rail accompanied by his brother. (G. W. K.)

³⁹John Lawrence, for whom Lawrence county was named. He settled first in Sioux Falls in 1860.

⁴⁰Joseph Frank, not found.

⁴¹George W. Kingsbury. For sketch see Vol. III, p. 126; Vol. VI "The Yankton Jubilee" p. 283 et seq.

⁴²Strike the Ree, for sketch see Vol. I, p. 114.

⁴³Dr. Walter A. Burleigh, for sketch see Vol. 1, p. 130.

march to the scene of the late skirmish, and Yankton, where they arrived about sunset, having seen several war parties, on their way up. When the company appeared near the Stone farm,⁴⁴ now owned by his daughter, Mrs. William Powers,⁴⁵ it was reported to me by a soldier that the Indians were approaching in a large body, the people also mistook them for Indians and many were badly frightened. I could not believe that they would so boldly advance and attack us in open daylight. It was not in keeping with their former tactics, which had been to cowardly sneak upon the settlers and shoot them in the back. As soon as I had a good look at them I recognized them as soldiers, as did also Captain Ziebach and others. The captain, myself and others did all in our power to undeceive the people, all to no purpose. They would not be convinced and gave us a terrible tongue lashing.

I don't think I ever took so much abuse in my life as I took from one man on that occasion, being called a coward, a sneak, and everything else he could lay his tongue to. They said all of the soldiers were just like me, a lot of cowardly curs. That was no time for personal quarrels and I choked down my anger and went about my duties. As the company approached nearer, all saw their mistake and the fear and excitement turned to joy. Confidence was restored and a more joyous lot of people I have never seen. Captain Miner was hailed as their deliverer.

Captain Miner soon after returned to Vermillion, leaving Lieutenant Bacon in command of forty men at Yankton.

We afterwards learned that the Santee Sioux from Minnesota had sent emissaries among the Yankton Indians and that they had agreed to join them in a war of extermination against the whites, if they would first capture Yankton, and the night following the day of the skirmish at the lakes was set for the attack, as we learned through friendly Indians later, and the fact that several war parties were

⁴⁴On highway from Yankton to James river, about two miles from Federal building.

⁴⁵William Powers, born in Culpepper county, Va., in 1845. Served in Company C, 7th Wisconsin Volunteer Infantry. Settled in Yankton 1873. Was mayor and member of state board of Charities and Corrections. Died April 12, 1916.

seen in the vicinity would seem to corroborate the statement.

In the afternoon of the day of the attack on the ferryman and the fight at the lakes I took a squad of soldiers and proceeded to the cabin of Charles Nolan⁴⁶ down in the point between the Missouri and the James rivers, where I found the family apparently enjoying themselves, unconscious of the exciting and dangerous scenes being enacted around them.

Mr. Nolan and family were soon ready and with their effects loaded on a wagon and drawn by an ox team we escorted them to town, where they remained until after the close of the Sioux war. They soon after left the country.

Mounted pickets were kept out on the hills surrounding the town, who would ride into town and report the approach of war parties when at once everything was made ready to receive them.

During the summer and before the Indian war commenced, a small company was stationed on Turkey Ridge⁴⁷ north of Yankton about eighteen miles distant, near the Sioux Falls road, under Corporal Benjamin.⁴⁸ Soon after hostilities commenced and while Lieutenant Bacon was still at Sioux Falls Captain Miner detailed Michael Fisher and the writer to take orders to the lieutenant at Sioux Falls. Small war parties of the Sioux infested the country in all directions making it unsafe for travel, consequently dispatch carriers generally travelled in the night so as to avoid any small parties of savages who might be roaming over the country. We fed our horses and got ready starting just at dark and moved along at an easy gallop arrived at Benjamin's camp about ten o'clock where we fed our horses, took a short rest and again took the road, arriving at Sioux Falls soon after daylight. It was noticed while we were

⁴⁶Charles Nolan was best known as a butcher who furnished fresh meat to the early settlers in Yankton and vicinity. Until 1862, late, there was no one who gave attention to this business and the supply was irregular. Nolan peddled the meat to his customers. He may have had a residence on James river, but he had no permanent place for slaughtering his "beef critter" for some time which caused considerable gossip. He removed to Iowa during the Indian war days. (G. W. K.)

⁴⁷Turkey Ridge was the former popular name for the height of land near Volin. It takes its name from Turkey Creek which makes down toward the Missouri near by.

⁴⁸See roster of company following.

at Benjamin's camp that the horses were uneasy and continually on the alert as though there was something unusual about. Just as day approached the camp was startled by a shot and the sentinel who was guarding the horses called to the corporal that Indians were among the horses. In a moment every soldier was on his feet with a gun in hand and several shots were fired in quick succession after the retreating Indians. The Indians, had in numbers crawled up, each selecting a horse and in a moment when the sentinel's attention was attracted in another direction, cut the lariats and sprang onto the backs of the horses and made good their escape, although the corporal immediately sent a squad in pursuit. The Indians had accomplished a feat, which no doubt they told and bragged about around the camp fires for many moons after, how they had outwitted the soldiers and secured some valuable horses. Fisher and myself returned to Yankton the next day.

The Indians raided the country in every direction, carrying off everything they could find, that the settlers had left behind, who had left the country, or were within the stockade, but did not again run up against the soldiers until late in November, when Captain Miner met and defeated a party of forty at Sioux Falls, who were fresh from their work of killing in Minnesota.

When Sioux Falls was evacuated by the soldiers, the settlers all left, some coming to Yankton, and others moving into Iowa. Among those who came to Yankton were Captain Waldron⁴⁹ and family and Major J. W. Evans,⁵⁰ well known in this city for many years after. Many of them before leaving had cached all or a part of their goods, which they wished now to recover and they made up a party to proceed to the Falls for that purpose, escorted by a detachment of Company A, under Captain Miner. They pulled out one

⁴⁹George Prentiss Waldron, born Farmington, N. H., Sept. 21, 1821. Graduate Bowdoin College 1843. Came to Dakota with the Dubuque Land Company in 1859. He was provost marshal for Dakota during the Civil War. He died at Fort Pierre Aug. 26, 1896.

⁵⁰Major J. W. Evans, born in Wayne county, Ohio, January 17, 1832. Came to Dakota with the Dakota Land Company in 1857. Died in Yankton.

frosty morning, made camp at the crossing of the Vermillion river that night and reached Sioux Falls the next day, where they went into camp.

In the interval between the time that the soldiers evacuated the town and the arrival of the above mentioned party, the Indians had burned or destroyed nearly every building and other property that the town contained.

Pickets were put out on the hills while the people proceeded to secure their buried goods. Horses were saddled and everything kept in readiness for any emergency. When the goods were packed and the party nearly ready to commence the homeward march, the picket on the hill—Jacob Ludwig—was seen rushing toward camp, his horse at the top of his speed pursued by two savages upon whom he occasionally turned to discharge his Colt's revolver. The horses of the Indians were no match for the little grey on which Ludwig was mounted and they soon gave up the chase in the attempt to escape from the command of Capt. Miner which immediately moved forward in hot pursuit. They soon discovered a party of about forty Sioux just preparing to leave their camp, a short distance below the falls. Captain Miner, when within a short distance of them halted his command and with Sergeant Joseph Ellis⁵¹ as interpreter rode forward to have a talk with them, and this was the conversation that took place:

"Where are you from?"

"The Minnesota river."

"What are you here for?"

"To kill white men, G—d d—n you."

The last answer in plain English. Bang went the Captain's revolver, answered by the double-barreled shot gun of the Indian leader, followed by the command of the captain: "Charge, men, charge."

In the meantime the Indians had lined up for a fight but broke as soon as the Coyotes made the charge and began to scatter. They attempted to draw the soldiers into an impassable slough and thus have them at their mercy. The soldiers being acquainted with the locality did not fall into

⁵¹See roster of company following.

the trap set for them and a running fight ensued, in which one Indian was killed. Charles Wright,⁵² who is still a resident of Yankton and has been chief of police for some years, drew his revolver and spurring his horse forward turned it loose and shot the Indian in the sholder, the Indian replying with his double-barrel shot gun. He missed the crossing of the slough and his horse stuck in the mud. As he got off from his horse another shot brought him down, but he was soon on his feet again. Sergeant Joseph Ellis immediately drew his saber and urging his horse forward made a front cut at him. The Indian threw up his gun to ward off the blow, which was aimed at his head, at the same time calling out in good English, "me good Indian." To which Ellis replied, "Yes, I know you are a d—d good Indian and you are not afraid to die." Down came the saber with all the force of the right arm of the sergeant, who was a powerful man, striking the gun and breaking it at the small of the stock and knocking the good Indian down. He attempted to regain his feet, but too late, the bold trooper leaning over the side of his horse thrust his saber through the body of his enemy and pinned him to the earth and he was truly a good Indian. The rest of the band seeing their leader down beat a hasty retreat, scattering in all directions, as usual, when beaten. Captain Miner now turned his attention to the Indian camp. One horse, two wagons, and many other things that they had secured in their raid on the settlements in Minnesota were recovered. The command now took up its line of march for Yankton where it arrived in due time without any occurrence worth noting.

Inside the stockade living in tents and wagons, there not being accommodations for all inside the buildings, were the hardy pioneers of Yankton and Bon Homme counties, the settlement at Bon Homme being entirely abandoned. These people had taken their lives in their hands and had settled on the frontier were now driven from their homes by the merciless savages who spared neither age nor sex, even in some instances tearing unborn babes from their mother's

⁵²See roster of company following.

wombs and afterwards boasting of their achievements around the camp fires of the tribe.

There were many acts of heroism performed by the Dakota pioneers while corralled, as they were for several weeks, in the Yankton stockade, scarcely daring to show themselves one hundred yards from the gates without a military escort. Enos Stutsman,⁵³ in whose honor a North Dakota county is named, was seriously deformed, having but one leg and that not more than a foot in length, but who managed to get about on crutches, and was throughout the trying ordeal constantly to be found at the post of danger with his rifle swung across his back and his revolver strapped to his waist, from which exalted position its muzzle dragged on the earth, and no man was more ready to sacrifice his life, if need be, in the defense of the settlers, women and children, although he had neither kith or kin among them.

Among the women in the stockade was a Mrs. Edgar,⁵⁴ who was visiting her sister, Mrs. Obid Foot,⁵⁵ whose family was the second one to settle in Yankton. One night when an alarm was given the pickets came rushing in and all thought the Indians were about to attack us, there were two or three white-livered cowards, who quaking with fear, hid themselves in the hotel kept by H. C. Ash.⁵⁶ Mrs. Edgar sought them out, her eyes flashing with determination and regardless of all danger she made them, at the muzzle of her revolver, take their places with the rest on the line of works. The accidental discharge of a gun one night, in the hands of a man on picket duty, was followed by the whole picket force, dashing into the stockade. People inside had retired for the

⁵³Enos Stutsman. See Vol. I, p. 127.

⁵⁴Her bravery is celebrated in Joseph Mills Hanson's notable pageant of Yankton.

⁵⁵Obed Foote was a member of the Yankton Land and Townsite Company of which Frost, Todd & Co., were the principal promoters. He was a married man, and built a fine log dwelling on the eminence now occupied by the campus of Yankton College, and took up a preemption there in 1860. He brought his wife here in 1860, accompanied by her sister, Mrs. Edgar. He was appointed one of the first census enumerators by Gov. Jayne. He abandoned his claim and residence after the Indian troubles began in 1862, and returned to Indiana, his native state. Mr. Foote was a man of superior ability. (G. W. K.)

⁵⁶Henry C. Ash, first hotel keeper in Yankton, born December 25, 1827, in Alleghany county, Maryland. He settled in Yankton on his 32 birthday, 1859. He removed to Sturgis in 1876 and died there February 9, 1909.

night, but were aroused at once and some, who were living in tents and wagons inside the stockade with their women and children, made a rush for the buildings for better protection. One man in getting his family together in the excitement and rush, took one small child in his arms and seized another by the leg, undoubtedly thinking he had hold of the child's arm, made a rush for the Dakotan printing office, dragging the poor child along through the dirt, its little head bumping along on the hard ground and up the steps into the building, crying at the top of its voice, the father unconscious of the rough usage he was giving the little one. George W. Kingsbury, of the Press and Dakotan,⁵⁷ was editor and proprietor of the Dakotan, and I have no doubt he will remember the incident here related. During the few weeks that the people were virtually besieged in the stockade, Indians were raiding the country. Until winter set in and stopped their forays, we scouted the country in all directions, but did not succeed in running against any other savages. It seemed not to be their purpose to fight the soldiers, but contented themselves with marauding the country, looking for defenseless settlers and stealing whatever they could lay their hands upon. One day a report reached Lieut. Bacon that a small band of the enemy had been seen east of the Jim river. He directed the writer hereof to immediately proceed with a detachment of the company to the neighborhood where the Indians had been seen and if possible to find and punish them. I started at once, crossed at the ferry and followed the road down the river, past the place of John Stanage, and when riding at a good swift gallop, near a corn field, not far from what is now called the Howard bridge, the report of a gun rang out on the air. Having the Indians in mind I commanded a halt and was preparing to return the fire, which all thought came from the enemy in the corn field; when I noticed a trooper, who was riding next to me was slow in getting his gun ready for use, and glancing down I saw smoke issuing from the muzzle. That solved the mystery. Tom Tate had accidentally discharged his gun. We enjoyed a hearty laugh over the affair and moved on in search of the lost war party,

⁵⁷Established as Dakotan, June 6, 1861.

but were unable to find it and soon after, we returned to camp.

For better protection the settlers decided to build a block house inside the stockade. With that hardy and adventurous band of pioneers a decision was at once acted upon and all went to work. Logs were secured, hewed and hauled to the building site, which was on the same block and a little north of where the Merchants hotel now stands, and on the ground now occupied by W. B. Valentine's⁵⁸ brick block. The block house was about twenty feet square and two stories high. The second story being so constructed as to form a broadside over the corners of the first story. Port holes were made on each side of both stories, thus making it impossible for an enemy to approach from any direction without being exposed to a raking fire. With the block house completed we felt strong enough to meet the entire Sioux nation, armed as we were with Sharp's carbines and Colt's revolvers, at that time the best arms in the service, as against the bows and arrows and poor fire arms of the Indians.

Washington Reed⁵⁹ and sons, Matt and Tom, who lived on Smutty Bear's Bottom, a short distance west of Yankton, went from home up the bottom into the ravines and gulches after a load of timber for building purposes, determined that they at least should not be driven from their home and work by the treacherous savages. Not finding the required timber as convenient as expected they camped for the night in the timber. The family became alarmed and sent word to Capt. Miner, who a day or two before had arrived from Vermillion, and he at once led a detachment of ten men, of whom I was one, to learn what had become of the lost men. A. B. Smith⁶⁰

⁵⁸William B. Valentine, born in Buffalo, N. Y., March 31, 1836, settled in Yankton in 1870. An important contractor and builder.

⁵⁹Washington Reed, a frontiersman as well as pioneer. Removed to Dakota from Nebraska in 1862 and took up land in Smutty Bear Bottom about two miles from Yankton village. Was over 50 years of age and had a large and lusty family of boys and one daughter. Mr. Reed was a member of Company A, Dakota Militia, and served with credit. He represented the county two or three times in the Territorial legislature. Owing to the infirmities of age he finally returned to Nebraska, near Aten in Cedar county, where he died near the close of the last century. (G. W. K.)

⁶⁰A. B. Smith belongs to the frontiersman class. There is a difference between the frontiersman and the pioneer though the former includes the latter but it does not work vice versa. Mr. Smith was here before there were any pioneers in Dakota lawfully. He must have come in with Har-

and Samuel Mortimer,⁶¹ commonly called "Old Spot," two old homesteaders near town, also started to assist in finding their neighbors, the former with horse and sulky and the latter on horseback. The captain and his little command moved along the bluffs, scouring the ravines and brush when we came upon the sulky and harness of Smith's, the two homesteaders having become separated from our command. We concluded that the Indians had killed Smith and probably Spot and got away with their horses. Next to killing a white person, be it male or female, child or adult, the bravest thing an Indian can do is to steal a horse, and in a case where they accomplish both, it is heralded throughout the tribe and the felon is crowned the bravest of the brave.

The weather was quite warm and some of the boys had taken off their blouses disclosing their red flannel shirts. When seen in this picturesque garb, as we filed out of a ravine, Smith and Spot mistook us for Indians, and stripping the harness from Smith's horse they struck out over the hills for Yankton. We soon caught sight of them as they rode at a breakneck speed to get away from the supposed Indians. We also mistook them for Sioux and the command came from our captain in a clear tone, "Forward, gallop, follow me, boys; we must have those Indians," and putting spurs to his horse he dashed away, followed by his little command. Over the hills, through the ravines, gulches and brush, tearing our clothes and scratching our persons, on, on we went in pursuit of the red-handed savages, the murderers of our friends and neighbors, until we brought up in the mud in a springy, miry place near the head of a gulch we were crossing, where our horses stuck fast. William Neuman,⁶² a sergeant, who was out hunting a strayed horse, stood on a

ney's expedition in 1855 with Major Lyman, and came down the Missouri with Lyman on the flat boat in 1857 that was placed at the Yankton crossing of the James river in that year. He remained in the country for several years and originated a current wheel designed to furnish power from the current of the Missouri river that would turn the wheels of manufacturing establishments located on the shore. He was about 25 years of age and may have been connected with the Yankton tribe by marriage. He was a member or an officer of the early legislatures from Charles Mix county, and was a person of much originality, very temperate and intelligent. (G. W. K.)

⁶¹Samuel Mortimer, "Old Spot," afterward settled at Oakwood Lake in Brookings county.

⁶²See roster of company following.

high bluff west of the location of the Western Portland Cement Works watching the chase, soon became convinced that there were no Indians involved. Smith and Spot soon joined Neuman. We got out of the mud and again moved forward at a rapid gate toward the three men, whom we presently discovered were white men. We slackened our pace and rode very quietly and soberly up to the fugitives, with whom we swapped stories about the ludicrous mistake we all had made. We learned from Neuman that the Reeds had returned safely home. We proceeded to camp, feeling much better for the exercise and armed with a war story that could not be excelled as a genuine, side-splitting incident, and being true made it so much more amusing. It furnished many a feast of fun around the camp fire in the years which we spent in the service of our country.

The chase was fortunately ended and we returned to camp rejoicing over the safe return of the Reeds. Mr. Washington Reed, who is now nearly seventy years of age, is living with his son Matt on the Nebraska side a few miles west of Yankton, while Tom lives on the Niobrara.

Late in November we were relieved at Yankton by Captain Cooper,⁶³ Co. A, 14th Iowa Volunteer Infantry, and we were ordered into winter quarters at Fort Randall, where we arrived after a three days' march devoid of any noteworthy incident. We had just nicely settled in our quarters when news arrived from Fort Pierre, then a trading post of the Northwestern Fur Company,⁶⁴ that a band of hostile Indians encamped at Painted Woods⁶⁵ were holding white captives that they had taken in Minnesota a few months before during the great massacre. Lieut.-Colonel Pattee, then in command of the fort, at once organized an expedition for the purpose of effecting the release of the prisoners. The

⁶³Francis H. Cooper, of Cedar Falls.

⁶⁴In 1862 the fur trade at Fort Pierre was still conducted by the Upper Missouri Outfit of the American Fur Company.

⁶⁵Painted Woods Creek enters the Missouri from the east at Washburn, McLean county, North Dakota. I have it upon the authority of several Indians who were present that the circumstance related occurred at the mouth of Big Beaver Creek in Emmons county, much farther south. I am very certain that the captives were not so high up the stream as Painted Woods at any time. At page 311, Vol. II is a map showing the course followed by their captives in their pilgrimages made from the data supplied to me by Charger and Joseph LaFramboise.

command consisted of companies A and B of the 14th Iowa Infantry and Co. A, 1st Dakota Cavalry, Lieut.-Colonel Pattee in command. Captain Wolf⁶⁶ of Co. C, 14th Iowa, was left to garrison the fort. We started out in the month of December and marched to Willow Creek,⁶⁷ where we went into camp for the night. Soon after a courier appeared with the information that the paymaster had arrived at the fort. The payrolls had been signed by the boys before we left, and it was decided by Lieut.-Colonel Pattee that one officer each from the infantry companies should be sent back to receive the pay for their respective companies and that the 1st Dakota Cavalry should return in a body; for, being mounted, it could readily overtake the infantry. In compliance with this order we returned to the fort, received our pay and again took up the line of march on the trail of the infantry. The first night out and while in camp at Willow Creek a severe storm came up—one that a tenderfoot would call a blizzard. The next morning, after a hastily cooked breakfast, we pulled out against the storm, which was almost blinding, made a march of thirty miles and camped with the infantry at Ponca Creek.⁶⁸ The night was bitter cold, but we were supplied with Sibley tents and stoves and we found a good supply of wood, and, having plenty of blankets, we got through quite comfortably. When within about two days' march of Fort Pierre we met two half breeds with the white captives. The trader at Fort Pierre⁶⁹ had sent some friendly Indians to the hostile camp and ransomed the white women, who were in a deplorable condition, being dressed like squaws and having suffered all the indignities imaginable. They had been compelled to do the drudgery of the entire camp and to become the wives of members of the party, although some of the

⁶⁶George H. Wolf, of Oxford, Jones county, Iowa.

⁶⁷Willow Creek does not appear upon any available map. The Missouri River Commission map very carefully notes every stream, however small, which enters the Missouri. I take it Whetstone Creek on the west side 20 miles above Fort Randall was intended.

⁶⁸Ponca Creek rises in eastern Tripp county and runs down parallel with the Niobrara and enters the Missouri very near to the mouth of the latter stream, only one mile above. Mr. English must again be in error as to the stream where this camp was made.

⁶⁹The trader at Fort Pierre at this time was Charles Primeau, representing the American Fur Company. He was of a notable St. Louis family. Many of his offspring are still in the Dakotas.

captives were mere children. The captives consisted of Mrs. Julia A. Wright and her two little girls and Mrs. William J. Duly and one little daughter. The eldest of the girls was not more than fourteen. They were taken prisoner the previous August at Lake Shetak, Murry county, Minn. It was indeed a harrowing tale we listened to from the lips of Mrs. Wright, who told us of the terrible suffering and privation which they had endured.⁷⁰ The next day the party proceeded on its way to Fort Randall, but before parting, the officers and enlisted men of the command made up a purse of several hundred dollars to help them on their way to their friends. They remained at the fort a few weeks until they had located their relatives and then returned to them. The command proceeded to Fort Pierre without any incident worth mentioning, although the men suffered severely with the cold.

After a few days, the object of the expedition having been accomplished, Co. A, 1st Dakota Cavalry, and Co. A, 14th Iowa Infantry, returned to Fort Randall, leaving Co. B of the Iowa regiment to garrison Fort Pierre, Captain Mahanna⁷¹ commanding. We remained at the fort doing garrison duty during the winter. There is nothing so wearying to the soldier as garrison life and duty, and we longed for spring that we might again get out and punish the savages for their hellish atrocities. While we were at Randall we learned that the hostiles had broken up into small bands and were making their way down the river toward the settlements, being starved out of their winter camps, and finally we found that a party was camped on Pratt Creek⁷² near its mouth and about thirty miles from the fort. Lieutenant Bacon was detailed with a detachment of the Dakota boys to proceed to the camp to capture them or give them battle as they might elect. The lieutenant, with his usual energy, was soon en route with a party of enthusiastic Dakotans. After locating the camp he divided the command and approached the camp

⁷⁰For a full account of this dreadful experience see Vol. II, p. 310 et seq.

⁷¹Capt. B. Mahanna, born in Tennessee, died in Sioux City.

⁷²Pratt Creek was the correct name of this stream originally. It is the stream in Charles Mix county now known as Platte Creek. It was named for Bernard Pratt, a St. Louis trader, but was corrupted to Platte Creek and from it the city of Platte, located upon its headwaters takes its name.

from two directions. It was a bitter cold day, the thermometer registering 31 degrees below zero. The Indians were taken by surprise, and, being hemmed in between the soldiers and the river, where the boys were in a position to get a cross-fire on them, they surrendered without a shot being fired. There were one hundred and twenty of them, men, women and children. Lieutenant Bacon marched them to the fort, where the most desperate of them were confined in the guard house and the rest in quarters about the fort. They were fed army rations, and in the spring were in fine condition to again take to the warpath, which I have no doubt many of them did, as all were released except those confined in the guard house, and presumably made their way to the hostile camp. The guard-house prisoners did not seem to mind the confinements until Spring, when they became uneasy and longed for their liberty that they might renew their cowardly outrages against those who never wronged them in thought or deed. One day the leader—I think his name was Buffalo Bull—escaped from the guard at a lax moment and made a dash for liberty. He saw soldiers at the right and left, who immediately fired on him. The only way which appeared open to him was up the parade ground directly toward the quarters of the commanding officer, and this course he took, followed closely by Private Dempsey,⁷³ who had him in charge when he staked his life on the chance of escape. Dempsey fired one shot at him as he started without effect, then, not stopping to reload his Springfield, which was a muzzle loader, as was nearly all of the arms at that time in the service, determined to run him down at the point of the bayonet. The Indian, seeing no way to escape, as guards were on every side and other soldiers had seized their guns and were fast closing in on him, rushed into Colonel Patee's office, with Dempsey only a step behind him, and who would have bayoneted him at once had not the colonel interfered. He was marched back to his quarters in the guard-house. A few weeks later it was discovered one morning when the old guard was being relieved and the officer of the guard was turning over the property in his charge to the new officer of

⁷³Private Dempsey, not identified.

the guard that he had no prisoners to turn over. They had cut through the heavy plank floor with knives they had secreted, tunneling under the foundation, and all had flown. They had kept the floor where the hole was, covered with robes when not at work and when at work had beat the tom-tom and danced to distract the attention of the guard from any noise that might occur and give warning of their design. There were eight who thus escaped, and I have no doubt that they made their way to the hostile camp and met us in some of the battles that were fought during the next two years. Company A was at once ordered out and scoured the country in all directions for the escaped prisoners, but they were as completely lost to us as though the earth had opened and swallowed them. About this time—the spring of 1863—Clark Thompson⁷⁴ arrived from Minnesota with several hundred Santees and Winnebago Indians on steamers, with instructions from the commissioner of Indian affairs to locate them on a reservation on the Missouri river. Captain Miner was detailed, with a detachment of Co. A, to proceed up the river by easy marches and meet the boats as agreed with Mr. Thompson. The present location of the Crow Creek reservation was selected, the Indians located, the stockade built and named Fort Thompson.⁷⁵ Tom Powers,⁷⁶ who a few years ago represented the State of Montana in the United States Senate, was a resident of Yankton at that time. He accompanied the expedition and surveyed and established the boundary lines of the reservation. Captain Miner, with his command, remained and garrisoned the fort during the summer. About this time Lieutenant J. K. Fowler resigned his commission as first-lieutenant of Co. A and one Dewitt C. Smith,⁷⁸ a Wisconsin man, who had been hanging about the brigade headquarters and associating with the staff officers, was appointed 2d lieutenant, thus ignoring the rights of many worthy and

⁷⁴Col. Clark Thompson, was a notable citizen of Minnesota. He was born in Canada July 23, 1825. Came to Minnesota in 1853 and was active in business and politics. He died at Wells, Minnesota, October 11, 1885.

⁷⁵For description of Fort Thompson see Vol. I, p. 300. It stood practically upon the site of the present Crow Creek Agency.

⁷⁶Thomas Charles Power, born at Dubuque, Iowa, 1839. Still living at Helena, Montana. U. S. Senator 1889-1896.

⁷⁸See roster of company following.

true soldiers who deserved and had earned promotion by their soldierly bravery and by the performance of every duty devolving upon them. A more outrageous act was never perpetrated upon a body of true and patriotic soldiers, who had enlisted under their country's flag in its hour of great distress.

After Captain Miner had started up the river with Colonel Thompson, Sergeant Neuman, while out hunting his horse, which had developed a faculty for getting away to hunt for other pastures, was fired upon by a party of seven Indians. Neuman hastened back to the command, and the writer was commanded to take the trail with a detachment of Co. A boys to overtake the Indians, if possible. We were soon on the trail and followed it until darkness stopped further search. Not being provided with rations, I returned to the fort and reported to Colonel Pollock of the 6th Iowa cavalry. Next morning Captain Moreland of the 6th Iowa, with ten men from that regiment and five Dakotans, took the trail under orders from Colonel Pollock. He soon divided his little command into two parties sending part of them across country toward the mouth of the Keya Paha river; that appearing to be the direction taken by the Indians. Both detachments reached the Indian camp at the same moment, and Captain Moreland ordered a charge, which was gallantly and so successfully made that seven good Indians—the entire party—were left food for the coyotes.⁷⁹

⁷⁹Sergeant J. H. Drips of Company L, Sixth Iowa Cavalry, author of "Three years among the Indians in Dakota," at page 33 of his book gives another version of this story: "A sergeant from the First Battalion went out after horses and ran across an Indian who, he said drew a bow upon him. He came back to camp and reported to Colonel Pollock who immediately started Companies G and K to look them up and bring in an account of them. Captain Moreland with Company G went to Ponca Creek and found some seven or eight Indians. He took them prisoners, put a guard over them and went on with the rest of the company to hunt up some more. While they were gone the soldiers said the prisoners attempted to escape and the soldiers fired on them killing all but one and he was so badly wounded that he died shortly afterwards. The Indians after they found they were betrayed fought like tigers but superior numbers soon trod them down." Col. John Pattee has still another version which is published in his memoirs at page 293 of Volume V of these Collections: "Some horses were allowed to get away and Captain Moreland with a small party of men started out to hunt them up and while out on Ponca Creek found a small camp of Indians and by signs ordered them to go towards the fort and with these eight Indians marching in front, after they got well away from the Indian camp, shot seven of them without warning and one ran away; these Indians were just from the Yankton Agency and the most loyal and friendly Indians that could be found in the whole country. The one that got away ran for Fort

Soon after this I was ordered to report to Lieutenant Tell⁸⁰ of the 6th Iowa, who, with a detachment of our boys and a few Iowans from his regiment, left for a scout across country to the mouth of the Firesteel, on the James river, to intercept a small war party of Sioux that was said to be moving down the Jim for the purpose of raiding the settlements, stealing horses, and murdering such white men as they might be able to sneak upon. We started out with a few days' rations in our haversacks, a German named Heck acting as our guide. Third day out we reached Jim river at the mouth of Enemy creek (about ten miles below the present city of Mitchell) and went into camp on the bottom. A picket was set on Enemy hill, above the camp, and we set about preparing our dinner.

The picket soon reported that there was a large herd of Indian ponies on the opposite side of the river, but after a short inspection our experienced guide, Heck, decided that the supposed ponies were buffalo. After dinner Lieut. Tell, Heck, George Falkenberg,⁸¹ myself and others crossed the river and after skulking around until we had got within three hundred yards of the buffalo we put spurs to our horses and dashed on toward the herd. The animals were lying down unconscious of any danger, but at our approach dashed away at the top of their speed. We soon came up with them and commenced firing at random. It was our first buffalo chase and all were greatly excited except Heck, who out of patience with our stupidity, spurred his horse forward and cut out two fine animals, which he headed off to the right. The rest of the boys followed Heck, but I kept after the herd until I had emptied my revolver, when I realized that I was alone on the prairie without ammunition and no meat for supper. I made my way back to camp where Heck and his party soon made their appearance, with their horses loaded down

Pierre leaving their women and children in the camp without knowing what had become of the eight men. This Indian reached our camp and told his story and there was great excitement and it looked for a time as though a fight were inevitable." Drip's story is given as mere hearsay; English tells his as a near at hand witness, if he did not actually participate; while Pattee gives the Indian version.

⁸⁰Simon J. Toll, of Lyons, Clinton county, Iowa. He was a native of New York.

⁸¹See roster of company following.

with the choicest cuts of buffalo meat. The next morning we broke camp and moved up the river to the mouth of Firesteel creek and made camp on the ground where the town of Firesteel was afterwards located, about two miles from where Mitchell now is, where we remained for two days scouting the country and watching for the war party, which did not appear. We then returned to Ft. Randall, arriving on the third day, enroute passing over the exact spot where Mitchell now stands, and curiously enough while waiting for a few moments on that beautiful townsite, we discussed the possibility of the locality ever being settled and arrived at the conclusion that a white population could never be sustained there. Sixteen years later I visited the spot, when the railroad was being constructed, the town already platted and buildings in course of erection, the foundation of the prosperous city of Mitchell surrounded by a population of thrifty farmers, where we had hunted the buffalo and the antelope.

Soon after our return from the Jim river, Lieut. Bacon was ordered to Vermillion with a detachment of our company, where we went into camp on the bench land by a spring at the head of a ravine, there we received orders to patrol the country between Vermillion and Richland on Brule creek, a squad being detailed each day for the purpose. Leaving our camp in the morning under a noncommissioned officer the squad would proceed to Richland and remain over night and coming back next day meet the next party about half way, we also carried dispatches to Yankton and Sioux City, scouted the country in all directions and escorted the stage to Yankton. During this season small war parties continually stole horses and killed several citizens, but it seemed impossible to catch them, as they always had several hours start before the news reached any of the soldier camps. Two residents of Clay county, named Jacobson⁸² and Thompson,⁸³ were attacked

⁸²J. A. Jacobson and Thomas W. Thompson of Vermillion. They were returning from Fort Randall where they were hauling freight for the government and had camped on the east side of James River near the Ferry House on the night of May 5, 1863. At daylight the next morning they were attacked while asleep in the wagon and Jacobson was killed outright and Thompson seriously wounded. The attacking party was driven off by the spitefull fire of Greenway's rifle shooting from the protection of the Ferry House.

⁸³Omitted.

while in camp at Jim river ferry. Mr. Jacobson was killed and Mr. Thompson was seriously wounded. Shortly afterward Sergeant Trask⁸⁴ of the Iowa Fourteenth Infantry, while enroute by stage from Ft. Randall to Sioux City, was attacked near the old Tacket⁸⁵ station, on Choteau creek, by Indians who laid in the grass near the road. Trask was killed at once, the driver escaped unharmed, as did also John Bruiguiier a half breed son of Theophilus Bruguier,⁸⁶ who lived on the Iowa side of the Big Sioux river near Sioux City. The Indians mounted the stage horses and escaped. Trask was a very popular young man and his death was much lamented.

That summer the Sioux went to the house of Mr. Wiseman,⁸⁷ near St. James, Nebraska, who was absent as a soldier in the second Nebraska cavalry, Mrs. Wiseman, being that day in Yankton on business and in cold blood murdered the seven children. The eldest of these children was a girl aged fifteen years and there was abundant evidence that she had been ravished before her murder. When Mr. Wiseman heard of the murder of his children, he swore eternal vengeance against the Sioux race and well he kept his oath and many an Indian cut throat fell before his unerring rifle and the last information I had of him, he was still on their trail.⁸⁸ When the news of the murder of the Wiseman children reached our camp, Lieut. Bacon sent a detachment across the river to the scene of the tragedy, with orders to take the trail and follow and punish the murderers. The boys crossed the river on a flat boat and soon reached the Wiseman place where they saw the bodies of the seven children, all in one room in the little cabin, where they lay sweltering in their blood where they had fallen. They followed the trail of the Sioux

⁸⁴Eugene F. Trask, on September 3, 1863.

⁸⁵Tacket's Station was a notable road house of those days. It was located in what is now Rouse Township in Charles Mix county.

⁸⁶Theophilus Brouguier, an early trader. For sketch see Volume VI, p. 263.

⁸⁷The killing of Jacobson and the Wiseman massacre which occurred on July 25, 1863, were perpetrated by young Indians of the bands of White Lodge and Inkpaduta under the leadership of a son of Inkpaduta. I have this from Indians and confirmed by Joseph LaFramboise.

⁸⁸While English was scouting after the renegades in the direction of Sioux Falls, Captain Tripp of Company B was scouting the James valley as far north as the Dirt Lodges. There is not much to confirm the statement long current that Wiseman spent the remainder of his life as a nemesis upon the trail of the Sioux. He stoutly denied the accusation.

across the Missouri into Dakota and then returned to camp with their report. Next morning I was ordered to take ten men and endeavor to take the savages. We started at once with revenge in our hearts and two days' rations in our haversacks. We took the trail where they had landed on the Dakota side and followed it as fast as circumstances would permit in the direction of Sioux Falls. Our progress was necessarily slow as the trail was very dim and we lost it altogether when within five miles of Sioux Falls. Near Swan Lake we killed a lone buffalo, whose flesh added to our stock of rations. After losing the trail we proceeded at once to Sioux Falls, thinking as that was a great resort for the Indians, we might find them there. Our theory proved groundless and as we had already been out three days and the Indians had at least forty-eight hours the start, we allowed our horses a few hours rest and then took a direct line for Vermillion, where we arrived two days later.

While returning the weather was extremely hot and men and horses suffered for water. Finally the horses pricked up their ears and began to neigh. We could see no indications of water but we gave the horses their heads and they turned a little to the left and rushed forward and soon plunged into a creek. Soon after our return from this chase George Falkenburg and others killed a big buffalo between Vermillion and Richland, probably the last to be taken in that section. The carcass of this animal was dressed and a team and wagon brought it to camp where we feasted on buffalo steak for some days. We remained at Vermillion until the middle of October when we were ordered into winter quarters at Ft. Randall, where we arrived after four days march. Soon afterwards Company A recrossed the river and camped at what the Indians call Black timber, a grove of oaks near Seven Mile creek where there was a fine spring and from there we worked out in details building what is now known as the dugway or bluff road from Fort Randall to Yankton Agency, shortening the distance between these points several miles. The road having been completed, the company was divided into detachments, one being stationed at Yankton agency under Lieut. Bacon, one at White Swan, under this writer and

a third at the ranch of Felica Fallas⁸⁹ on Pratt creek at the old government crossing under Sergeant B. F. Estes.⁹⁰ At White Swan we built quarters for ourselves and stables for our horses and were quite comfortably situated. Captain Miner had his headquarters at the Fort. We remained at these several places until the spring of 1864, carrying the mail and special dispatches and doing escort duty. The winter was very mild and was passed pleasantly.

A short time before we arrived at Ft. Randall in October, 1863, Gen. Alfred Sully,⁹¹ who had succeeded Gen. John Cook⁹² in command of the district, returned from the campaign up the Missouri, having met and defeated the Indians in a hard fought battle at White Stone Hill,⁹³ midway between the James and the Missouri, near the north line of the state. Ft. Sully was established and built on the east bank of the Missouri seven miles⁹⁴ below Pierre and was garrisoned by a battallion of Sixth Iowa cavalry. K company of that regiment relieved Capt. Miner at the Crow Creek Agency, and he returned to Ft. Randall as above related. At this time the Dakota boys received the soubriquet, "Kiote," which adhered to them to the end of the war and has since become a favorite nickname for the state. Two of our boys, Ananias Jones⁹⁵ and Charles Wambole,⁹⁶ bought a horse of one of the Second Nebraska boys and matched him in a race against

⁸⁹Felicien Fallas, squaw man and legislator. His ranch on Platte Creek was famous in its day. He died in 1909. For sketch see Vol. VIII, p. 31.

⁹⁰See roster of company following.

⁹¹General Alfred Sully, for sketch see Vol. I, p. 120; also Vol. VIII.

⁹²Gen. John Cook, for sketch see Vol. VIII, p. 111.

⁹³Whitestone Hill is located 12 miles northwest of Ellendale, N. Dak.

⁹⁴The location of the first Fort Sully was three miles below Pierre, opposite the upper end of Farm Island.

⁹⁵See roster of company following.

⁹⁶Charles Wambole was one of the youngest of the earliest pioneers of Sioux Falls, but his name does not appear in its records until 1862 and then in connection with the public political meetings which in that year were held in all the counties for the first time under the laws of the recently organized Territory. He was then about 21 years of age. Mr. Wambole next appears as a soldier, having enlisted in Company A. He served during the war in the volunteer service, and established a creditable record, and was honorably discharged in 1865, settling in Yankton. He was a young man of more than ordinary energy and business enterprise, and was connected by marriage with either the Sisseton or Yankton tribe of Sioux. He established a ranch on James river, four miles from Yankton, and engaged in farming and live stock growing, raising blooded stock. His place was well improved. About the year 1881 he removed to Wyoming, thence to Oregon and our latest information from him located him in California with his family, abiding on a ranch of his own, and surrounded by many evidences of wealth. (G. W. K.)

a black horse named Dandy, owned by Maj. House⁹⁷ of the Sixth Iowa. The race was run at Ft. Randall and the Major's horse was badly beaten. William Truesdell of Company A, Fourteenth Iowa Infantry, remarked that the Dakota horse ran like a coyote and its owners at once gave the horse that name, which almost immediately afterwards was applied to the entire Dakota Company.

In the spring of 1864 the Coyote Company was ordered to Ft. Thompson where we relieved the Iowa boys, who rejoined their battalion at Ft. Sully. We went into quarters inside the stockade, our horses being picketed on the hills through the day under guard to graze, but at night they too were brought inside. Small war parties infested the country, making it unsafe for soldiers or others to go any distance from the fort. With the advance of spring the Sioux resumed hostilities. Parties of soldiers detailed to carry dispatches from forts Randall and Sully were constantly harassed by them, frequently exchanging shots and more frequently escaping from the Indians, by the superior speed of their horses.

We passed through this ordeal without loss of life or horses. There was a large camp of Indians at Fort Thompson, consisting of Santee Sioux and the Winnebagoes, the latter having been sent into exile at the earnest request of the governor and congressional delegates of Minnesota, backed by the people of that state, who had become so prejudiced against the Indians that they would not tolerate their remaining in the state, although they had remained peaceable during the great Sioux raid and had been very friendly with the whites for many years. They had been forced to leave their reservation in Blue Earth county, in southwestern Minnesota, and were very discontented with their abode on the Crow Creek reservation. Their discontent finally led the government to remove them to the Omaha reservation in Nebraska, they having been invited to become residents of that reservation by their old-time friends, the Omahas. One day the Sioux Indians got into a fight among themselves over the

⁹⁷Major A. E. House, West Union, Iowa. He was an uncle of J. F. House of Chamberlain.

ownership of a horse. Knives, tomahawks, bows and arrows, clubs, and anything they could get hold of were freely used. They had no guns, having been disarmed by the government. Word was brought to the commanding officer, Lieut. DeWitt C. Smith, and the writer was ordered out with a detachment of coyotes to quell the riot. The camp was about three hundred yards from the stockade on a level tract of land. The bugle sounded the call, and the boys quickly fell into line eager to reach the scene of the fray, which we could distinctly hear, the Indians whooping and yelling as only Indians can, squaws and papooses yelling like so many hyenas. Carbines and pistols were examined and loaded and cartridge boxes filled. Everything being in readiness, the gate swung open and revealed to our sight a riot in an Indian camp. They swayed back and forth, as one side or the other gained a slight advantage. It was bedlam broke loose, to say the least. All their weapons were in use. Camp kettles were flying in the air, and many of their lodges were overturned and pandemonium reigned supreme. "Forward, Double quick!" the command rang out, and we broke for the struggling mass of humanity with the hope that we might have the opportunity of firing at least one volley into the savages, who only eighteen months prior to this occurrence had murdered settlers and mutilated bodies in the most horrible manner conceivable. But as soon as we had emerged from the stockade the cry rang out "Ekeechita cooa! Ekeechita cooa!" "The soldiers are coming!" "The soldiers are coming!" And in scarcely more time than it takes to write this sentence the rioters had dispersed. I now halted my little command and awaited orders. They soon came: "Arrest the ringleaders and confine them in the guard house." Who were the ringleaders? I did not know the ringleaders from one at the fag end of the riotous crowd, and I still awaited orders and they soon came. The agency interpreter was sent down to point out the leaders, who had by this time surmised what our orders were from past experience, and many of them skulked into the medicine lodge, thinking, no doubt, that there they would be safe from arrest. But a soldier does not know the difference between a medicine lodge and any other lodge, and

cares less. Stationing my command around the lodge, I with one soldier and the interpreter entered, and with pistol in hand arrested the leaders as the interpreter pointed them out to us. They were marched to the stockade and confined in the block-house, where they were kept and fed for several days as punishment for having led the rioters, and then turned loose as usual.

Soon after this Company A was ordered to go into camp on the Missouri river, about two miles above the stockade, where we went at once, glad to get out of the quarters where we had been packed like sardines in a box all winter. We had been crowded in quarters with simply government rations. No vegetables of any kind were to be had, and the scurvy began to make its appearance in our ranks, some of the boys being badly affected with it, some of whom have since drawn pensions from the effects. While in camp here we received marching orders from Gen. Alfred Sully, the veteran Indian fighter and campaigner, who had won the Star of Virginia under Gen. McClellan, and had served under Pope and Burnside against Gen. R. E. Lee's Army of Northern Virginia. His headquarters were at Sioux City, Iowa. We were ordered to hold ourselves in readiness to join the expedition against the hostile Sioux. This we all hailed with delight, as we thought it would give us an opportunity to meet the savages in battle. Up to this time we had simply met them in small parties, and not in any general engagement. The coyotes were spoiling for a fight. The different regiments, batteries and independent companies were concentrating at Fort Sully preparatory to the march into the Indian country. Brackett's battalion of Minnesota cavalry, Major Brackett commanding; Sixth Iowa cavalry, Col. Bullock commanding; three companies Iowa Seventh cavalry, Col. John Pattee commanding (originally the Fourteenth Iowa infantry); two companies, A and B, First Dakota cavalry, Captains Nelson Miner and William Tripp, and an independent company of Nebraska cavalry, commonly called "Nebraska Scouts," whose commanding officer's name I do not now recall, and Pope's battery of mounted rangers comprised the first brigade. First Lieut. James M. Bacon was detailed as brigade quartermaster and

ordered to report to Gen. Alfred Sully at Sioux City, Iowa, district headquarters. While still in camp at Ft. Thompson, and while the troops were concentrating at Ft. Sully, two men of Brackett's battalion got lost and came into our camp, tired and hungry, and remained with us over night. The name of one of these soldiers was Frank Tubbs. I afterward met him at High Forest, Minn., while visiting my people. He afterward returned to the territory and kept a hotel at Vermillion for a short time. Should he see these lines I doubt not that he will recall this occurrence. In company with some of the boys I visited the camp of Brackett's battalion, about five miles above Ft. Thompson, and met some of my old friends from Olmstead county, Minnesota, among whom was Charles Bream, now a resident and prominent business man of Sioux City. We spent a pleasant time with the boys of the gallant battalion renewing old acquaintances and forming many new ones. Soon after this we were to report to Col. Pollock, commander of the first brigade at Ft. Sully. We at once took up the line of march, camping the first night about eighteen miles from Ft. Thompson. The next morning we moved out and made a march of about sixteen miles, camping that night on Medicine Creek, a beautiful stream of pure spring water, running through as fine grazing country as I ever saw. Many of the boys, including myself, improved the opportunity and took a bath in the beautiful stream. The next day we reached Ft. Sully, fifty miles from our starting point. We went into camp there for a few days. While waiting here, clothing, camp and horse equipments were issued, and in fact everything that Uncle Sam furnished.

On the 28th day of June, everything being in readiness, wagons loaded, mules and horses shod and all necessary repairs of wagons, harnesses, etc., made, steamboats loaded that were to take the supplies up the river to points designated by the general commanding, (an immense amount of supplies being necessary they could not be hauled by the number of teams that were available for the use of the expedition,) we moved out into the Indian country. We were to cut loose from our base of supplies and launch out into a wild country never before trod by white men, except perhaps a few ad-

venturous spirits, who had tramped and hunted with the wild Indians of the plains. We marched twenty-five miles the first day and camped on Okoboji creek, where there was good grazing and water. Wood was scarce. We were now well into the Indian country and it was necessary to keep a sharp lookout. A line of pickets was put out around the camp to guard against surprise, however the night passed quietly and the next morning we broke camp bright and early and moved out in two columns, our supply train being in the center, the better to protect it. We marched eighteen miles this day through the dirt and dust, some of the time so blinding we could hardly see the right column, three hundred yards away, and made camp on Snake creek, nothing having occurred worth noting. On June 26th, a day long to be remembered by every one in the command,, as the day on which death first entered the ranks of the little army, we broke camp at daylight and proceeded on the march further into the country of the hostile Sioux. Captain Miner was acting field officer of the day. Captain Fielder,⁹⁸ topographical engineer and a

⁹⁸Capt. John Fielner; for sketch see Vol. V, p. 303. Frank Meyers, in his "Soldiering in Dakota," p. 12, tells this story thus: "The 27th (of June 1864) brought us to Cheyenne Creek (Little Cheyenne river in the present Potter county.) In the morning (28th) as we started, Capt. Fielner, our topographical engineer, left the command and went off to the west to inspect a rock close to the Cheyenne. This rock had a flat, smooth surface some fifteen feet wide and on top of it were three foot prints imbedded in the rock about two inches. The Indians call this medicine rock. After examining the rock the captain and men started for the command. In explanation I will say we had one company of Dakota soldiers called the Dakota Scouts, in which there were about 20 Indian soldiers. They always marched or scouted ahead of the command. This company had reached the creek and picked out a camp. This is the camp Capt. Fielner and men were going to and when getting within one mile of the scouts the trio picketed their horses with the intention of going down to the creek to get a drink and wait until the command came up. There was a heavy clump of bushes a few rods ahead of them and as the men came near these bushes, the Captain in front, whang went a gun and the Captain was shot through the lungs. Three Indians rushed out of the brush after the three horses but the horses jerked up their picket pins and got away. Then the Indians took to their heels. The soldiers got after them as soon as possible and had to run about 15 miles before getting into gunshot of the reds. They killed the three Indians, cut off their heads and brought them into camp, which they reached a little after dark. Captain Fielner lived until about 10 o'clock that night." Drips in his "Three Years among the Indians in Dakota" also tells the story adding a few details missed by English and Meyers: "Captain Feelinger of the Regular Army who was appointed Topographical Engineer of the expedition was in front of the advance guard hunting specimens. He was fired on by three Indians who immediately fled. Capt. Miner's company of Dakota Cavalry, which was on the advance saw the Indians and started in pursuit. The scouts also, under Frank La Framboise were after them but I guess would have let them escape had it not been for Capt. Miner's men, who were Indian hunters and Indian haters too. They followed them up and succeeded in killing all three of the Indians without losing a man. They came in and reported to Gen. Sully about the time Capt. Feelinger died. The

member of the general's staff, was killed by the hostile savages. He had left the command and proceeded ahead of the advance guard accompanied by two soldiers. The general had frequently cautioned him that there was danger in thus straying away from the command, but he laughingly replied that he did not believe there were any Indians in the country and as the general did not order him to stay with his command, he followed his usual custom to the sorrow of every man in the little army, over which his death cast a deep gloom. The captain and his two comrades had reached the Little Cheyenne river, which empties into the Missouri river about three miles above Forest City, and a short distance from its mouth picketed their horses in the luxuriant grass on the bottom and proceeded to the creek to get a drink of water, when a shot rang out on the hot summer air and the brave and gallant captain fell, shot through the arm and lung. The two soldiers were some distance away and the Indians, three in number, were between them and their horses, for which they made a rush. The horses not liking the looks of their would be captors, reared and plunged and before the Indians could get to them pulled their picket-pins and dashed away out onto the prairie. Captain Miner was at the head of the column, when the news of the sad tragedy was reported to Gen. Sully, who ordered him to pursue and punish the cowardly assassins. Captain Miner came tearing back along the column, saying as he reached my side, "Sergeant, Capt. Fielder has been killed and we are ordered to pursue the Indians." He gave three commands in quick succession, "Column, left, command, trot, gallop, follow me, boys," and sinking his spurs deep in the flank of his horse dashed away.

When we reached the stream we were going at a break-neck pace. My horse cleared the creek at a bound, as did many others, but some jumped into the mud and stuck fast, demoralizing the company order. We soon reformed and moved on at a rapid gait. The day was exceedingly hot

General started out a party with orders to bring in the Indians' heads. This was done and then he ordered them stuck up on poles to warn other Indians." Capt. Fielner's name is rarely spelled correctly in any of the old manuscripts.

and some of the horses possessing better mettle than others were soon in the lead. Capt. Miner therefore decided to turn the Coyotes loose and he instructed me to inform the boys that they might break ranks and go after the Indians in any way that we saw fit. The order was hailed with delight and a hearty cheer went up for Capt. Miner. As the strongest horses forged to the front, the Captain and myself being well mounted were enabled to hold our positions at the head of the company. Gen. Sully standing on a high hill watching our movements, exclaimed: "See the d—d Coyotes, they go like a flock of sheep." It is probable that we did not make a very military appearance. The order of the Captain turning us loose alone made it possible to overtake the savages. We were detained for a moment by an orderly from the camp, who came in hot pursuit with orders from Gen. Sully stating that it was so exceedingly hot that he feared we would ruin our horses without overtaking the Indians, and that he thought we had better come back. Capt. Miner replied: "Report to the General that we are in sight of the Indians and without I have a positive order to return I purpose to take them." We pushed on at gallop, for we could see the Indians on a hill a short distance ahead in a patch of mullen stalks,⁹⁹ the first and only ones I have seen in Dakota, and in the condition of the atmosphere we mistook the stalks for Indians, several hundred in number, but nothing daunted Capt. Miner pressed on followed by the Coyotes, who made the welkin ring with the battle cry: "Death to the murderers." It is creditable to the courage of the boys, that although we appeared to be vastly outnumbered, not one showed the white feather. We soon saw our mistake. Having reached the hill among the mullen stalks, we saw three Indians go down the other side and disappear in a ravine. We watched the point closely and soon saw them distinctly, as they raised their heads to watch our movements. When we approached, within short range they again rose up and

⁹⁹Mullen stalks. It is most likely that in the haste of the occasion Mr. English did not very carefully examine these plants. It is scarcely possible that mullen was growing in Potter county at that date. Even in the country where the mullen is generally grown the stalks have attained no great height upon the 27th of June.

fired directly at Capt. Miner and myself, but fortunately for us their aim was bad. We formed a circle around them to prevent their escape. John McClellan,¹⁰⁰ who recently died in Sioux Falls, and J. B. Watson,¹⁰¹ also of Sioux Falls, and some others sprang from their horses and advanced on foot, while the rest of us remained mounted. The Indians raised their breechcloths on ramrods to draw our fire, but the boys had been too long on the frontier to be deceived, until an Indian's head appeared above the high grass when a rifle shot laid him low. We distinctly heard the thud of the ball. We were now but a few rods from the buffalo wallow in which they had taken refuge and as we rushed in upon them, the Indians sprang to their feet, gave a blood-curdling yell and fired their guns directly into our faces. We were not over twenty feet distant, but strange to say no one was hit, not even a horse, though Amos Shaw's¹⁰² bridle rein was shot off. The next instant both Indians fell riddled with bullets, and the death of the brave young Fielder was partially revenged. We were fifteen miles from camp and suffering for water. Leaving the writer to gather up the scattered company Capt. Miner hastily rode to camp and made his report to Gen. Sully, who at once ordered Lieut. Bacon of our company, to come out to meet us with a keg of fresh water and a keg of commissaries. The Lieutenant was highly elated over the success of chase and dealt out the commissaries in large doses. He then, accompanied by Sergeants Ellis and Estes and the driver of the ambulance, proceeded on our trail to the place where the Indians were killed, and cutting off their heads with a butcher knife, brought the ghastly relics into camp. Capt. Fielder died that night and his remains were shipped to his friends by the first boat. The next morning, under orders from Capt. Miner I reported to Gen. Sully, with the heads of the Indians. Gen. Sully directed me to hang the heads on poles on the highest hill near the camp as a warning to all Indians who might travel that way. We broke camp that morning and marched fifteen miles to Swan Lake. Here

¹⁰⁰See roster of company following.

¹⁰¹See roster of company following.

¹⁰²See roster of company following.

scouts reported that steamboats loaded with supplies for the expedition were at the mouth of Swan creek. We remained in camp here until July 3d, resting our horses and reloading our wagons from the steamboats. The Dakota battalion was sent to the river to guard the boats. June 30th the second brigade joined us. The second consisted of the Second Minnesota cavalry, the Eighth Minnesota infantry, mounted, and a battery of six pound guns under Lieut. Jones. Col. Thomas of the 8th Minnesota, commanded the brigade, which had marched across country from Fort Ridgely, Minnesota. Gen. Sully, having orders to establish a military post on the upper Missouri, went forward by boat looking for a site. July 3d the first brigade broke camp and marched twenty-four miles further into the Indian country, the second brigade remaining in camp at Swan Lake for rest. A large emigrant train accompanied this command enroute to the gold fields of Idaho. July 4th opened bright and glorious and everybody wanted to celebrate, but we had to obey orders to move on, and that day we proceeded twenty-two miles to Wahinkapa creek (the creek where they make arrows) and on the 5th in a thirty-three mile march we passed the beautiful Loon Lake and camped on Beaver creek. It was at the mouth of this creek that Maj. Galpin discovered the white captives from Lake Shetak,¹⁰³ who were afterward rescued by friendly Indians below the mouth of the Grand river as related in a previous chapter. July 6th we made a short march of eleven miles and camped on Sand creek where there was fine grazing and good water. Scouts were sent out to look for the boats. They found Gen. Sully, who sent directions for us to remain where we were until further orders. July 8th we were joined by the second brigade and that day Gen. Sully ordered us to march twenty-two miles to a point on the river opposite the site he had selected for the location of Fort Rice. While encamped here Capt. Moreland and party came in, having been lost for two days on the prairie while hunting. Scouts sent out for them had been unable to locate them and had given them up, believing that they had

¹⁰³This notable rescue took place in the east side of the Missouri almost exactly opposite the mouth of Grand river, and near the site of the present city of Mobridge.

been taken by the Indians. Shortly we crossed the river to the fort site. Before unsaddling our horses a buffalo was discovered nearby and Capt. Miner and some of the boys chased and soon brought him down and we enjoyed a feast that night. While here Lieut. Dewitt C. Smith resigned and shortly afterward Gov. Newton Edmunds commissioned David Benjamin to fill the vacancy. Monday, July 11th, we received marching orders with information that we would meet the enemy soon. Buffalo were plenty in this section and from a herd of about 300 seven were killed, the Dakota boys obtaining their full share. On the 14th, while grazing their horses some distance from camp a party of Nebraska boys were fired upon from a clump of bushes. After this the horse guard was strengthened and the next day the Nebraska company were sent out on a scout to locate and punish the reds who fired upon them the previous day, but were unable to find them. Two companies sent to the Cannonball also returned without important information.

The site selected by Gen. Sully for Fort Rice is the finest I have seen on the Missouri river. It is a high plateau coming up close to the channel, and the bottoms above and below are heavily wooded. Four companies of the 30th Wisconsin which had come up on boats were detailed to remain and build and garrison the fort. July 19th we again broke camp and marched sixteen miles to the Cannonball, passing a recently deserted Indian camp on the way. The next day we passed another camp giving evidence that the enemy was close at hand, but it was not until the 25th, when we reached Heart river that we finally located the hostile camp. That day we cooked rations and got things ready to move on the hostiles. The next day having corralled our train and also the Idaho immigrant train, we took seven days' cooked rations in our haversacks and with light wagons we started for the enemies' camp, lighthearted and ready for the fray. When within four miles of the Sioux camp scouts came in and reported that the Nebraska company had engaged a party of Indians a short distance ahead. Gen. Sully at once sent Brackett's battalion to reinforce the Nebraskans, but the Indians beat a hasty retreat after firing a few shots.

The next day, July 27th, we camped on Knife river, being forty-seven miles from our former camp on Heart river. Extra pickets were put out.

We slept on our arms and were not allowed to build fires, owing to our close proximity to the hostile camp. On July 28th we started at daylight without our breakfast, marched about ten miles and stopped on the banks of a small lake and made coffee and ate our hard tack. We pulled out a short distance, when the scouts came in from the front, having sighted the hostile camp.¹⁰⁴ Gen. Sully at once made preparations for battle, forming his troops so as to present three sides of a hollow square, the open side being to the rear, which was soon closed by a body of troops. The ambulance train and light wagons were placed in the center of the square the better to protect them.

The Indians came out from their camp, which was on the side of a range of high hills and ridges. A veritable fortress. The fighting commenced in the front center, and soon became general along the whole front, and on both flanks. The Indians often concentrated their forces and striking our lines at their weakest point, only to be hurled back by the steady fire of musketry and artillery that was poured into their ranks with deadly precision. They would soon rally their forces and repeat their tactics at another point, to be again driven back with heavy loss of life. Co. A was at first held in reserve to protect Captain Pope's battery of mountain howitzers. A gap afterwards occurred in the line of battle between the Eighth Minnesota infantry and the Sixth Iowa cavalry and the company was ordered forward to fill the gap and were soon in the thick of the fight. The troops on our flanks diverged still more to the right and left, carried no doubt by the movements of the Indians. We were now quite isolated from the rest of the command, seeing which the Indians concentrated a strong force in our front and made a stand and finally a charge, which was met by the

¹⁰⁴Meyers, p. 16 says: "Not being permitted to bring our tents no lights were allowed; we ate cold grub and rolled up in our blankets. As the advance guards of Dakota scouts had a little brush with the reds just before camping, it is safe to say not many of us tried very hard to sleep."

steady fire of our boys. We met in a ravine and they stood quite well for a few minutes. Being at close range they used their arrows and they swished by our heads with great force, but they were poor marksmen and did but little damage. They were no match for our Colt's revolvers. They soon gave way and broke for cover. During this time Co. B was held in reserve to protect Jones' battery of six-pounders and was to the left of Co. A. At one time there was a lull in the front line of battle. The Indians concentrated several hundred warriors and made a dash for the train. This movement of the Indians was at once detected by Gen. Sully, and Lieut. Jones was ordered to send one gun of his battery to that point. They went tearing back at full speed and threw a few shells among the Indians, with such effect that they concluded that they did not want the train. The steady fire of the musketry and the shells of Jones' guns made sad havoc in their ranks and they went scurrying off, to seek and strike some other weak spot in our ranks, but not once did they succeed in piercing that line of blue.

The Indian camp was on the side of Deer mountain at the Falling Springs. The mountains were a full succession of ridges and buttes, each one rising above the other, broken by ravines, gulches and canyons, a position that could be easily held by civilized troops against ten times their number, the whole rising several hundred feet above the surrounding plains, on which the battle was being fought. We passed well into the foot hills and close to their camp, where we could see the squaws and papooses hastily striking their teepees and moving farther into the mountains. The artillery was throwing shells into their camp from which they hastily decamped leaving behind the greater part of their camp equipage and supplies. The Indians had been beaten at all points and at no time had they gained even temporary advantage.

Night was rapidly approaching, the firing ceased and the battle was won. Won by the valor of American volunteers, many of whom had never before been under fire. We camped on the field of Taks Cha Okota (Deer Mountain). The loss of the Indians in this engagement was estimated at two

hundred, though but few dead were left on the field. We could distinctly see them carrying off the dead and wounded as they fell. Our loss in this engagement was fourteen killed and thirty wounded.*

The loss of the Dakota cavalry was one man of Co. A, wounded in the abdomen, private Benjamin F. Bellows.¹⁰⁵ We had won a decided victory over the savages in a battle in which two brigades of about three thousand men had been engaged in one of the most hotly contested battles ever fought with the Indians on American soil. In this battle the Indians outnumbered us three or four to one. A master mind was in command and the troops were handled with great skill. All were volunteers and few had ever before been in battle, but all behaved like veterans. The next morning we pushed on into the hills after the Indians, but the country was impassible to our light wagons and ambulance and nearly so to the cavalry, so having but two days' rations left, the General decided to return to our camp on Heart river. The skilled Indian campaigner and fighter, that nothing could daunt, who was with Gen. McClellan in the Peninsular campaign and who, side by side with the late Gen. C. T. Campbell,¹⁰⁶ the veteran fighter of two campaigns, had hurled his battalions against the flower of the Confederate army at Fair Oaks and at other battles of that campaign, was now held at bay by the Mauvis Terres—the bad lands of the Little Missouri. We at once went into camp where we were and detachments from companies A and B Dakota cavalry were sent out to destroy what was left of the camp, deserted by the Indians in their haste to get away. Lodges, buffalo robes, dried buffalo meat, dried berries, numberless camp kettles and other utensils were piled on their lodge poles, the match applied and all went up in smoke. We then started back, marched about ten miles and bivouacked for the night. Soon after unsaddling our horses the Indians attacked

*For the complete official reports of this battle see Vol. 8 p. 360.

¹⁰⁵See roster of company following.

¹⁰⁶General Charles T. Campbell, of Scotland, was born August 10, 1823, in Franklin county, Pennsylvania. He served in the Mexican and Civil Wars, and located in Dakota immediately after the close of the latter. He died at Scotland about 1895.

us. The bugles sounded "to horse" and the men were soon in the saddle and rushing to the rescue of the outposts, but the Indians disappeared so quickly that we did not get a shot at them. The batteries hurled a few shells that hurried them on their way. During the night there was a good deal of firing on the picket line and three soldiers were killed. The Indians crawling close up to their posts shot them with their arrows. A sergeant was killed on his post, by his men, they mistaking him for an Indian. We reached camp again on July 31st without any further casualties worthy of notice. Capt. Tripp had been left in command of the camp and had it well fortified against any attack the Indians might make. We remained in camp until August 3d and during the time received the General's congratulatory orders on the conduct of the troops in battle. We now pushed further into the enemy's country, marching in the direction of the Yellowstone and passing over some fine grazing country and some that was destitute of vegetation, except cactus and sage brush. Our route was up Heart river, on which stream we camped that night, having marched twenty-three miles. Through this section we found many indications of coal and in some sections it cropped out along the cut banks of the stream. The next day we marched eighteen miles and again camped on Heart river. August 5th we marched twenty-five miles over a rough country, almost destitute of grass, and camped on the high table lands overlooking the bad lands of the Little Missouri. From our camp we could look down into that wonderful tract of country. It was like standing on a high pinnacle and looking down onto a range of mountains. I shall never forget the feeling I experienced when first I beheld that wonderful region of mountains, hills, buttes, ravines and gulches. I was perfectly awe struck. It was like looking into another, and a terribly desolate world. It surpassed anything I had ever seen, read or heard of, this veritable fortress of the red man, where they had made their boast that they would wipe out the soldiers. "Kill them all and take their horses" who had invaded their country and driven off their buffalo. This "hell with the fire out" as Gen. Sully expressed it. The veteran of many battles was again

at bay, held back by the same strip of country that stopped our progress after the battle of July 28th. Mountains, hills and buttes towering hundreds of feet above the bed of the Little Missouri, of all conceivable shapes and colors, the tops of them reaching to the level of the surrounding country. The next morning pioneer parties were detailed to make a road into this desolate region. We moved on, and by dint of hard work and perseverance, we worked our way in a few miles and made a camp. Here we were put on two-thirds rations, with lots of hard work and fighting ahead, more time having been consumed than was expected to reach the Yellowstone river, up which two steamers had been sent with supplies. The next morning while in camp the Indians slipped through our picket line and made a rush for the horses of the herd guard. The guards became panic stricken and all run, except one John Beltz,¹⁰⁷ a Coyote from Co. A, who single handed advanced on the Indians, some five or six in number, firing at them with his carbine and finally dropping it he turned his Colt's revolver loose on them and drove them off and saved the horses. The rest of the guard retreated to camp and reported the old German killed by the Indians, but not so, he came out of this little skirmish unscathed and lived on his farm, near where the steel bridge crosses the James at Yankton, for several years and died late in the seventies. He was a brave and true soldier, a good citizen and an honor to the community in which he lived. A little later the Indians made a dash on the camp at all points in an attempt to stampede our horses. The bugle sounded "to horse" and every man run to his steed. They had run the gauntlet of the pickets and as we went to our horses we soon became all mixed up with them, exchanging shots with them as we secured our horses. The Indians giving their wild war whoop and the soldiers answering them with yells of defiance and shots from their revolvers. One soldier went to his horse, pulled up the picket pin and started for camp having hold of the end of the lariat rope. An Indian slipped up, cut the lariat, mounted the horse and dashed away. The

¹⁰⁷See roster of company following.

soldier looked around with a peculiar expression on his face as if to ask "how was it done?" The Indian made good his escape with the bullets from our revolvers whistling around him. He was a horse ahead. The soldier returned to camp musing over the fact that he might have to walk the next day. We moved out from camp, marched a short distance, crossed the Little Missouri and camped on that stream for the night. About sundown and just as we had got settled the Indians again charged our camp, but were quickly driven back, although there was continued picket firing all night and all slept on their arms. The next morning fighting commenced at daylight and the battle was soon raging with great fury. The Indians again made an attack on all sides at once.

We broke camp, the pioneers having dug a road through the worst part. There was but one road made, so the train which usually moved in three columns, was concentrated into one and stretched out a long distance. From here our road for a long distance was through a dry creek bed with almost perpendicular hills on each side several hundred feet high. The Indians finally concentrated a strong force in our front and taking possession of commanding positions prepared to dispute our farther progress in this "hell with the fires put out." The troops took good positions on either side of the road our train was pursuing. Step by step the Indians were forced back. Beaten in front, great bodies of them passed around our left to the rear, no doubt thinking there was a weak spot. Co. H of the Sixth Iowa cavalry and Co. A of the Coyotes formed the rear guard, and being warned by the general of the movements of the Indians, Capt. Miner, who was commanding the rear guard, prepared to give them a hot reception. They soon came and we were dismounted and prepared to fight on foot. The Indians had learned that to dismount meant to fight and not run away, and they did not stand long before our steady fire. They were driven back at all points and soon disappeared among the rocks and buttes. The command was then given to mount and catch up with the train, but no sooner were we mounted and on a brisk trot than the Indians appeared, ten to one, half naked and howling

and yelling as only they can. In a few minutes they were close to us, and the bullets zipped past our heads thick and fast, and the swish of the deadly arrow was terrible to our ears, with our backs to the enemy. How that little command escaped without serious loss has always been a mystery, but not a man was hit, yet hundreds of the naked savages were "pumping it" into us at short range.

Their triumph was of short duration. As we closed up with the train, our captain gave the command "left front into line." Not waiting for further commands, the boys sprung from their horses and slipped through the ranks to the rear, pouring such a deadly fire into the redskins that they at once sought cover.

We had an ox train with us, and when one played out, as they often did, he was at once turned into the herd and another put into the yoke. At this time such an exchange was made, but the poor, tired fellow refused to travel with the herd and laid down. The orders were for the rear guard to shoot all animals that could not travel, and many horses and mules were shot to keep them from falling into the hands of the enemy. The ox above mentioned, hearing the sharp firing around him got up and looked around; the Indians spying him, wanted the ox. They started for him, but he was not to be caught that way; with head up and eyes that you could have hung your hat on, his tail standing up like a liberty pole on the Fourth of July, minus the flag, he broke for the herd, the Indians after him until they got within range of our guns, when we turned our Sharp's carbines loose on them and stopped them in their wild chase. The gait that ox made would be a credit to some of the horses at our late state fair. There was not a horse ridden by a Sioux brave that could keep pace with that played-out old ox, and at no time did they gain on him. He went into the herd, crossed the Missouri and Yellowstone and returned with the herd to Sioux City the next fall. He should have been placed on the retired list for the balance of his days by general orders. We then mounted and pushed on after the train, which we soon came up with. The Indians soon came again. It seemed as though for every Indian killed, ten more sprang up in his

place. A Co. H, Sixth Iowa, man stopped a moment, and an Indian from behind a rock let fly an arrow that struck him on the hip. He was badly scared and broke from his company, leaving his arms and equipment on the ground. The Indian quickly secured them, and getting on the top of one of the highest buttes, tantalized us by swinging them in the air and telling us with an air of bravado of his brilliant feat. There was probably a hundred shots fired at him, but none of them hit him as he was too far off, although we made him get down. No doubt he lived to brag of his brave act around the camp fires many moons after.

We were now fighting on foot against a party of Indians who were attempting to get between us and our train. Capt. Miner commanded the writer, who was in command of the first platoon, to take possession of a hill that would command their position. We secured the hill at once, but the Indians continued to multiply, and we soon found ourselves cut off from the main command and surrounded by not less than five hundred Sioux warriors, making the air hideous with their wild war whoop. They kept closing in and were soon so close that we were able to see the color of the paint on their faces. Our fire was quite severe on their ranks, and we thought we had perhaps answered our last roll call, but we heard the clattering of hoofs in our rear, and looking around I saw our brave captain at the head of the Coyotes, coming down on the savages at a swift gallop. He struck them with the force of a cyclone. He hurled his troops against the red devils of the prairie and scattered them to the four winds. A hearty thank God went up from the lips of the men who composed my little command. When cavalry dismount to fight on foot, every fourth man is detailed to hold four horses. I being in command of the platoon, there was no one to hold my horse. In the heat of the fight, I sprang to the ground, not giving my horse a thought. After the Indians were driven back, I looked around for him; I choked up until I could hardly speak, for fear I had lost him; but no, he was close to my heels, his nose almost on my shoulder. After that I was not afraid that he would leave me. That was the hottest scrap that the company got into during its term of

service. The battle continued until dark, only to be renewed in the morning. Picket firing continued all night. At daylight the battle was renewed with great fury. We were now nearly out of the Bad Lands and the Indians charged our lines at all points, but they were beaten and driven back as usual and scattered in all directions. Discouraged and disheartened, their supplies all captured, they finally gave up this unequal contest, and permitted us to pursue our weary way unmolested the rest of the day; and thus ended the battle of the Bad Lands, a three days' contest, against the allied forces of the whole Sioux nation. They had received heavy reinforcements after the battle of Deer Mountain on July 28th. We were now living on one hard-tack a day, although we had plenty of bacon; but that, without vegetables or bread, is a poor diet. The game was all driven out of that part of the country, and we were yet several days' march from the Yellowstone river, where we expected to meet the boats with supplies for the command, if they had been able to ascend that stream, that had never yet been navigated by steamboats. One cracker a day and lots of hard work ahead, was the situation that stared the veteran Indian fighter and his victorious command in the face, ten days' march from Ft. Union. With two large rivers to cross, the Yellowstone and the Missouri, the situation was anything but pleasant. Hungry to bed, and hungry in the morning, a lot of hungry, cross and crabbed mean to deal with, was a condition that I hope I may never be called upon to deal with again.

August 11th found us out of the Bad Lands, the wonderlands of the Dakotas, the lands of petrifications and curios, the land, which I have no doubt, was an immense bed of coal that had in some mysterious way become ignited and burned out, thus allowing the earth crust, or surface, to fall in. Petrifications were exposed in all directions; stumps ten and twelve feet in diameter, and bodies of trees from fifty to one hundred feet and over in length, and in one place, what seemed to be a pile of lumber, buried under a hill or butte, where it was piled in regular courses. Logs cut into the proper lengths for the saw-mill, were lying around as if piled

there by human beings—the whole suggesting a prior habitation by a now extinct people.

The above is the description of George Falkinburg's petrified saw-mill as he expressed it upon his return to camp, bringing a piece of lumber with him, which was seen by the soldiers of the command. He said it was evident that the men had gone to dinner, as he found no human remains.

August 11th the Indians, having given up the fight and scattered in different directions, we marched rapidly towards the Yellowstone river, and made thirty miles over a country entirely destitute of vegetation, except sage brush and cactus, any very little water, the day being hot and dusty. We made camp on a small creek about five miles from the Yellowstone. The water was strongly impregnated with alkali, and the grass poor and scarce.

August 12th the command remained in camp, Capt. Miner being sent out with a detachment of twenty-five men to search for the steamboats that had been ordered to proceed up the Yellowstone river, if possible, with supplies for the command. In a short time two soldiers returned and reported to the general that Capt. Miner had found the steamboats, "Alone" and "Chippewa Falls," two light-draft boats. On the receipt of the news we were ordered to break camp at once and march to the river where the boats were waiting us. We reached the stream early in the afternoon and camped on the high table land overlooking that river.

The stream very much resembled the Missouri river, with its sand bars and ever shifting channels, the banks along the bottoms being fringed with cottonwood timber, which in some places was quite heavy. The grass on the river where we camped had all been eaten off by the buffalo and other wild animals. The next morning, August 13th, the Dakota battalion was detailed as pioneers to make a road through the timber and effect a crossing of the river, if possible. We were placed under the direction of brigade quartermaster, Lieut. J. H. Bacon, who rode by my side through the timber until we reached the stream. He directed me to lead the command and cross at once, and he returned to look after the movements of the train. We rode into the stream, the cur-

rent of which was very swift, having our arms and equipments strapped to our persons. I rode a horse that took to the water like a duck. I knew him well and was confident he would carry me safely across the raging stream. Being at the head of the company, I dropped the bridle reins on his neck, thus giving him his head. He at once turned his head quartering up stream and carried me safely to the north bank, followed by the balance of the company, without accident, except to two of the horses, who stumbled in the quicksand, thus thoroughly wetting their riders. Company A was the only company who crossed the stream mounted, the rest crossing on the steamboat. Two enlisted men lost their lives here by drowning, and Lieut. Bacon came near losing his in the same way. He was crossing on his horse and in some way became dismounted. The current was very swift and he being quite heavily clad was unable to swim. He was fast being carried down stream, when one of the soldiers on shore bravely plunged in and assisted him to the shore, which he reached more dead than alive to all appearances.

Sunday, August 14th, we took up the line of march down the river to Ft. Union on the Missouri river, a post of the Northwestern Fur Co., about five miles above the mouth of the Yellowstone. We marched about eight miles, where we camped on a small creek, where we had good grazing, wood and water. After arriving at camp a few shots were fired from a cannon, followed by a few sky rockets being sent up to announce to the command at Ft. Union, the approach of the expedition. There were two companies of the 30th Wisconsin stationed at the fort at that time. The next day we broke camp at eleven o'clock and marched fifteen miles down the river, over a level table land, destitute of vegetation, and camped on the river, finding good grazing, wood and water. The boats had some trouble in getting over the sand bars and the greater part of the troops were sent to their assistance, with a portion of the train, to which a part of their cargos was transferred. On the 16th day of August we reached the Missouri opposite Ft. Union, where we camped and commenced preparations to cross that stream. An attempt was made by Company B to drive the cavalry horses

across in a body, but they were not successful, and after two fine horses had been drowned the attempt was abandoned. Capt. Miner, who in the meantime had rode his horse safely across, was ordered to take charge of the crossing. After a consultation with Gen. Sully, it was decided to defer the crossing until morning. At sunrise on August 17th we stacked our horse equipments and left a man to guard them. We mounted our horses bareback and rode into the stream. Capt. Miner and the writer at the head of the column, and crossed to the north side without accident. The balance of the train and all equipments were across by the evening of August 19th. The wagons and supplies being crossed on the steamboats, which had come down the Yellowstone and then steamed up the Missouri to the post for that purpose. August 20th, Capt. Miner received orders to pursue and capture deserters, who had gone with the emigrant train that was on the way to Idaho, and had parted company with us here. We pulled out before daylight in the morning and made a forced march, overtaking the train twenty-five miles out, but not the deserters, they having pushed on ahead of the train. We now rested our horses, munched hardtack and then pulled for camp at Ft. Union, where we arrived about ten o'clock p. m., having made a march of fifty miles. While in camp at Ft. Union, ice froze on our camp kettles the thickness of window glass. On Monday, August 22d, we marched twenty miles and overtook the command, which had broke camp at Ft. Union while we were pursuing the deserters, stopped and got breakfast and marched ten miles further, camping on the Missouri. We were now on our way back to civilization where we were to winter, and all rejoiced over again meeting friends and passing our last winter of service in a civilized community. We moved along by easy marches, keeping near the Missouri river and often camping on that stream. These camps always seemed like havens of rest, as we had good water and good grazing for our animals and most of the time plenty of wood. When we camped on the small streams the water was poor and often unfit for use, being strongly impregnated with alkali and we had to depend on buffalo chips for fuel, which answered the

purpose very well when dry, making a hot fire. On the 26th of August we crossed the trail of the Indians, whom we had fought in the Bad Lands. Near where they crossed we found some of their abandoned bull boats which they had used in crossing the river and then abandoned. These boats were made of buffalo skins, the hair being left on. The edges of the skin were puckered around a willow hoop, making a boat much the shape of an ordinary wash tub. I would rather risk my life in a battle with a warlike Sioux than in one of their boats crossing the Missouri. The twenty-eighth was quite cold, we needing our overcoats and gloves on the march. August 28th we camped a few miles from Ft. Berthold. The next morning as the boats had not arrived we did not move, they having trouble in getting over the sand bars. The hostiles being scattered through the country in small bands, the General decided to keep near the river, the better to protect the boats from the Indians who were continually lurking along the stream and hanging on our rear for the purpose of cutting off and murdering stragglers and securing supplies, such as dead horses and cattle. Those which had played out and were unable to travel, even in the herd, were shot by the rear guard and gladly seized by the Indians, who gloated over them as quite a prize. On August 29th Company A was ordered to move down near the Indian corn field to guard it against the depredations of unprincipled parties, camp followers, etc. Ft. Berthold was a small trading post and there was the remnant of three small tribes of friendly Indians, the Arickaree, Groventres and Mandans. They lived in conical shaped dirt lodges from one to two hundred feet in diameter, there being a small opening at the top to emit the smoke from the fire, which was built in the center of the lodge. They raised great quantities of corn, which was their chief diet, their corn field extending over the bottoms for miles. Nearly as far as the eye could reach were field after field of the golden grain. The most of it was ripe, but some of it was at the roasting ear stage and we feasted on the succulent corn which we obtained by trading the Indians sugar, coffee and other rations that we had to spare. They would not take money in ex-

change. They did not seem to know what it was. These Indians were deadly enemies of the Sioux, and being few in number they were confined pretty close to their camp and seldom went far on the hunt, living mostly on their corn and other truck that they raised. They were great fighters and in their contests with the Sioux generally won out, especially if they were nearly even handed. They did not hesitate to attack the Sioux in the vicinity of their own village, even in overpowering numbers, and seldom came out second best. They welcomed us warmly and were loathe to have us leave. They were situated in a fine grazing country, the nutritious buffalo grass growing luxuriantly. I visited the trading post; it was a small affair. I made some purchases for the company and found the prices very high. I paid one dollar per package for saleratus, such as is usually sold for ten cents per package. I thought it was an outrageous price, but as we were sorely in need of it for our flapjacks, invested four dollars. Later Capt. Miner returned to camp, having bought four packages at two dollars per package, after which I thought I had driven a sharp bargain. August 30th we broke camp after dinner and marched six miles, joining the rest of the command which had passed us in the morning. The next morning we pulled out from camp in the direction of Mouse river in the search of a hostile camp, three scouts having been sent out to locate the camp.

The grass had all been eaten off by the buffalo, several large herds of which we had passed during the day's march. The water of the lake on which we camped was thoroughly impregnated with buffalo manure, but we made coffee out of it and it was much better than no coffee. As soon as we arrived in camp some of the boys from each command, probably one hundred or more, went out and succeeded in killing several of the monarchs of the prairie, so that we all had buffalo steak for supper. The firing of the hunters reminded me somewhat of our late battle, so incessant was the firing. We were now on the buffalo range, that is where they were ranging at that time. They were a migratory animal and when the pasturage became poor they moved on to where the grass is good. Many of them could be seen on

all sides. Many were killed by the boys, and everybody was supplied with the juicy and palatable meat. For several days we marched through herds of this animal that thronged the plains, many thousand of them being in sight at once. On every side were buffalo, buffalo as far as the eye could reach, no animal life could be seen except the buffalo. The boys often killed them for fun, when they did not want the meat, or because they were in the way, and the carcasses were left lying where they fell. Sometimes they were quietly grazing until something would startle them, when they might be seen running in all directions. Sometimes we were obliged to halt our trains or open up a gap to allow large herds to pass through, because when they were running in large bodies they would not stop nor turn aside for any obstacle, but kept right on and run down anything and everything that came in their way. If they came to a stream they plunged in at once and crossed, sometimes many of the weaker ones losing their lives before reaching the other side. Nothing could withstand this onward rush. We were now in the coteaus and passed many small lakes. One evening we approached a small lake, the bugle sounded halt and we prepared to go into camp. Just as we had our horses unsaddled and were picketing them on the luxuriant grass, the bugle sounded boots and saddles. We could not think what it all meant. Was there another fight in prospect, or what was the matter? After a good deal of growling and a great many cuss words being said, all were in the saddle and were moving away from the lake. Soon word was passed along that the water was poisonous and we must move over to another lake, but a short distance ahead, which we soon reached and made camp. September 4th we remained in camp, drying our clothing and blankets that had been wet in a rain the day before, that lasted about two hours while we were on the march. The day was warm and pleasant, quite in contrast to the day which preceded it, and we enjoyed it hugely. I put in the greater part of the day at work on the muster roll of the company. A cracker box was my table and my seat was mother earth. The next morning we moved on, marching twenty-one miles and camped on Burnt Wood creek,

a good grazing country, but the grass was eaten down by the buffalo that had ranged the country. The scouts that had been sent out to locate the hostile camp had returned without having found the enemy in any large body, they having broken up into small bands, the better to subsist, after the loss of their supplies in the late battles. We were now headed towards the Missouri river and civilization. September 6th we marched twenty-four miles through a cold drizzling rain. Company A was out as flankers during the march. Our heavy cavalry overcoats with their large capes kept us quite dry, but we were heavily water-logged; when we dismounted our high cavalry boots were full of water. A heavy fog settled down over the prairie as night approached and soon all were lost in the fog and were traveling we knew not where; however about four o'clock we stumbled on to a pool of water, among a lot of hills, buttes, gulches and knobs and made camp. Grass was very good; we had no wood, but plenty of buffalo chips, but they were so wet they would not burn, and it looked as though we were to pass a dismal night and go coffeeless to bed in our wet blankets, but Capt. Miner, who was ever on the alert to make his soldiers comfortable, and was equal to any emergency, ordered a light wagon unloaded and with three or four men struck out to find some wood. The fog was so dense that an object could be distinguished but a short distance, and I suggested to the captain that the party might get lost in the fog and be unable to find the camp, but he only laughed at me and in a short time returned with a nice load of dry cottonwood. Knowing that the Missouri was to our right he went in that direction and struck the river about three miles distance. As soon as the command struck the pool of water mentioned, guards were stationed around it so as to preserve it from the men, as to all appearance there was but a small amount and the men must have coffee. Our poor horses too were not allowed a drink after the hard day with its long and tiresome march. Company A had a large camp fire around which we all gathered and over which we made our coffee and cooked our buffalo meat. The coyote company was the only one who had a fire that cold, dismal night; some of the boys from the other

companies came to our camp and made coffee and cooked a bit of meat, a privilege we were glad to grant to our comrades in arms, who were less fortunate than ourselves. After satisfying the inner man we rolled up in our blankets for the night and were soon lost to all noises and disturbances incident to the camp of soldiers and passed a comfortable night. I do not think I ever slept better during my three years' service than I did that night in my wet blanket, which steamed when I crawled out of it the next morning, like a pig's nest in the winter.

We ate our breakfast, the guards were taken away from the pool of water, which they had guarded so carefully for the use of the men. Horses, mules and all of the stock were watered, several thousand head in all, and still there was water in abundance, it had not been lowered a particle. We examined it closely and found it was an immense spring of clear, cold water from which a tiny stream trickled down the ravine a few feet and then disappeared. In the morning we pulled out of camp and marched fourteen miles to Apple creek; the weather was quite pleasant after the rain of the day before. The next day, September 8th, we reached the Missouri river opposite Ft. Rice, where the Dakota battalion and Company M, 6th Iowa cavalry, went into camp, having marched twenty-four miles. The balance of the command remained back about six miles and made camp the better to graze the horses and stock. The next morning Gen. Sully and staff, the Dakota battalion, and Company M, 6th Iowa, crossed the river at Ft. Rice and went into camp just outside the fort.

There we learned that a train of emigrants on their way from Minnesota to Idaho under Capt. Fisk, was corralled on the Heart river. This train had intended to reach Ft. Rice in time to pass through the hostile country under escort of the command of Gen. Sully, and were greatly disappointed. Col. Dill, who was in command of the fort, furnished them with an escort of twenty-five men under Lieut. Smith, of Company A, who remained at the post pending the acceptance of his resignation, which he had tendered while the command was at the fort in July. With this little escort Capt. Fisk had

pushed out boldly into the Indian country, with the result above noted. After being corralled for several days, Lieut. Smith and two privates were requested, by Capt. Fisk, to return to the fort for assistance. They stole through the cordon of Indian guards in the night and reached the fort in safety the same day that our command reached there. Gen. Sully at once detailed the four companies of the 13th Wisconsin, who had built and garrisoned Ft. Rice, to proceed to the relief of the train, and the Dakota company and Company M were detailed to garrison the fort in their absence. On September 14th, Lieut. Wood,¹⁰⁸ with twenty-five men from Companies A and B, was detailed to proceed to the Cannon Ball river after some quarter-master's property left there by Col. Dill's command on its way to the relief of the immigrants. They returned the next day, having secured the property and killed seven buffalo, the flesh of which they brought to camp, and we were again supplied with fresh meat.

The next day, September 14th, I drew clothing and issued to such of the men as were in need. The boys became very tired of doing garrison duty and were anxious to again be on the move, however on the 18th we received our pay, which cheered them up somewhat. On the 19th we received the gratifying intelligence that Atlanta, Georgia, had fallen, that rebel stronghold that had been the bone of contention between the two armies for several weeks. Also that six companies of troops were on their way up the river to relieve Col. Dill's command at Ft. Rice. On the 21st, the hostiles made a raid on the first brigade, creating a stampede among the stock and got away with four horses. A sergeant with four men was sent in pursuit and came in contact with two parties of the Indians near the river, a score or more in all; a running fight ensued, in which Sergeant Murphy was killed. One man threw his rifle into the river and escaped by swimming across to Ft. Rice, another hid in the brush

¹⁰⁸Lieutenant John R. Wood, of Elk Point, born in Montgomery county, N. Y., January 4, 1820. He commanded the escort that conducted the Montana road builders in 1865 and was held captive by Redcloud for three weeks. He died at Elk Point October 29, 1911 being almost 92 years of age.

and afterwards returned to camp, the others escaped by running their horses. A company was at once sent out, but did not succeed in finding the Indians, who had made good their escape; however they found the body of Sergeant Murphy.

We found his body where it fell. He had been scalped. The Indians were continually lurking around the fort, on the hills, and also on the east side of the river in the rear of the first brigade, watching for a chance to run off stock and pick up straggling soldiers.

September 23d, the Dakota battalion broke camp and crossed the river and joined the first brigade a short distance below the fort. The weather was cold and stormy with some snow in the air. On the 28th Indians attacked a herding party on the Cannonball and killed a man also named Murphy, of Company E, 6th Iowa. Company A was ordered in pursuit of the Indians, but gave up the chase after several hours hard riding without securing a trace of them. That day Capt. Dill's party returned to the fort with the immigrant train and the next morning the command pulled out down river, marched twenty-two miles and camped on Beaver Creek. It was at the painted woods at the mouth of this creek that Mrs. Wright and Mrs. Duly and several children were rescued by friendly Indians in the month of December, 1862.¹⁰⁹ October 1st, we met George Pleets, a dispatch carrier, who was captured by hostile Indians while on his way from Fort Sully, with despatches for the general, and whose life was saved by the intercession of two Indians, relatives of Pleets' Indian wife, and who escorted him on his way until he met the command. Company A was sent out to the band which had captured Pleets and found them as they were going into camp on a small lake. Our orders were not to attack but to bring them into camp where the general could have a talk with them, and they followed willingly, for they were assured of that it meant *utuh ota* (a plenty to eat).

In the talk with Gen. Sully they confirmed the reports of our scouts that they were badly beaten in the battles of Deer

¹⁰⁹This statement is of course incorrect and in conflict with the previous statement. See note 103.

Mountain and the Bad Lands, their supplies all captured, and discouraged and disheartened they had broken up into small parties the better to subsist. We arrived in camp about eight o'clock, having marched thirty-seven and a half miles. Next day we reached Swan Lake creek, where we made the junction with the Second Brigade, when we went up in the spring and reloaded our train with supplies from the steamboats. The next day we came upon a band of Indans who had made a surround and killed and cut up several buffalo. Upon our approach they decamped, leaving the meat lying on the ground, and we had plenty of steak for supper. We marched thirty-seven miles and crossed the Little Cheyenne where Captain Fielder was killed in the summer. This reminds me that we were told by the scouts of the famous Medicine rock in which human footprints were to be seen, and some of the boys visited it, but I heard so much of Spirit Mounds and rocks that I paid no attention to it, but in 1894, while engaged at Cheyenne river agency I did, in company with others, visit the rock and found it as represented, a large white lime rock eighteen or twenty feet long and eleven feet wide at the widest point. In that hard rock are plainly imprinted three human foot tracks and one imprint of a human hand. Some society should take the necessary precaution to preserve this wonder from vandals who are fast destroying it. Having digressed somewhat I will now resume the thread of my story.

We camped on Snake creek and found good water and good grass for the stock. Next day we proceeded eighteen miles to Okaboji creek, and on Tuesday, October 6th, reached Fort Sully on the river. It was a balmy morning when we started, but a gale arose from the northeast and the dust blew in blinding blizzards. From Fort Sully we made rapid progress toward the settlements camping the first night at the crossing of Chapelle creek and the next three miles from Crow creek. As we passed the agency the morning of the ninth we were rejoined by Annanias Jones, Thom. Tate¹¹⁰ and Timothy Prindle,¹¹¹ and other members of our company,

¹¹⁰See roster of company following.

¹¹¹See roster of company following.

who had been left there in the spring, and marched on to American creek and camped at Jim Somers's¹¹² ranch. Our train loaded with rations and supplies had been detained at the agency, and, missing the way, had taken the upper road. Supperless we rolled in our blankets as hungry, cross and crabbed a lot of men as I ever saw. At daybreak we mounted our horses and set out to find the lost train, which we overtook near Bijou Hills, where we took a lunch of "hardtack and sow belly" and moved on to Snake creek where we met Maj. Joseph R. Hanson and John Thompson,¹¹³ who had been appointed commissioners to take the vote of the Dakota troops in the election of a delegate to congress. Next day we reached Platte creek and camped near the ranch of Felicia Fallas, an old time Indian trader and trapper. This was election day—October 12, 1864—and the vote of the troops was taken by the commissioners in the memorable campaign between Gen. J. B. S. Todd and Dr. Walter A. Burleigh, the latter being elected by a heavy majority and re-elected two years later. From Platte creek we moved rapidly down toward civilization, camping at White Swan and reaching Yankton agency on the 14th, where we parted from B company and did not see it again as an organization. B company went into winter quarters there, a detachment being sent to Tacket's station and Chouteau creek, and spent the season carrying dispatches and doing escort duty, the next spring taking the field again under Gen. Sully. We bid adieu to our friends, camped the first night at Chouteau creek and reached Dr. Durleigh's farm at Bon Homme the second day, where he gave us a royal welcome and inviting us to his house treated us like princes of the blood. We left this hospitable camp very early the next morning and arrived in Yankton in time for breakfast, which the most of us took at the Ash hotel, which stood where the Merchants now is. Here the 6th Iowa left us and proceeded down to Sioux City, while A company went up to the mouth of Beaver

¹¹²Jim Somers' ranch was located at Chamberlain. Somers was a dare devil frontiersman who came early into Dakota and served as sergeant at arms of the first territorial legislature.

¹¹³John Thompson, of Baltic, Minnehaha county. See sketch in Vol. VIII.

creek and relieved a detachment of Iowa boys who had built quarters there near Mr. Strunk's place during the summer. There the writer was detailed to garrison these quarters with a detachment of forty men, while Captain Miner with the main part of the company were stationed for the winter at Vermillion and a small detachment was sent down to Richland. We had just got comfortably settled in our quarters after hard work in fitting up, putting in floors, hanging doors and building stables when I received orders to report with my force to the captain at Vermillion. We were mad enough, but there was nothing to do but obey, though we did not neglect the soldiers prerogative to growl, and I growl yet when I think of the work I had done to make ourselves and our horses comfortable and then have to leave it all for some others comfort while we were compelled to do it all over elsewhere. However we were soon settled at Vermillion, where we passed a mild winter, with comparatively light duties, consisting chiefly of taking care of ourselves and our horses and carrying an occasional despatch to Sioux City or Yankton. While at Vermillion the company did one noteworthy thing. That town was Capt. Miner's home, and he resolved to build a school house. To plan was to act with Capt. Miner and work was commenced at once.

Some of the boys went into the timber to hew logs, others hitched up their cavalry horses and hauled the logs to the building site, which was at the mouth of a deep and beautifully wooded ravine, through which a wagon road wound up to the table land on which the present prosperous town of Vermillion stands, but at that time the town was all on the bottom. A day was set for the raising, and invitations were sent out to the people to come and assist in raising the building. The soldiers turned out en masse, but strange to say, only two citizens came from the settlement. These were L. W. Case,¹¹⁴ who for many years has been and still is a citizen of Yankton, but was then proprietor of the "Vermillion Hotel", the other being Crock Russel,¹¹⁵ who brought his oxen and hauled the logs around as they were needed. Hugh

¹¹⁴Lewis W. Case. For sketch see Vol. VIII, p. 41.

¹¹⁵Crock Russell, unidentified.

Compton,¹¹⁶ a merchant, said he could not leave his business, but would send a substitute. This substitute soon made its appearance in the form of a pail of whiskey and a tin cup. The boys worked with vigor. I notched the logs and carried up one corner of the building. Compton's substitute passed around every time a log went up, and proved to be the strongest man on the job, as it not only got the logs up, but got some of the boys down. We made good progress, and by night the walls were up and the roof timbers in place. The Captain bought the lumber and all other material needed. The roof was made of boards extending from the ridge pole well down over the plates, and was covered with dirt. The floor, seats and desk were of cottonwood lumber. The walls were chinked and plastered with clay. When completed, Captain Miner employed Amos Shaw, a non-commissioned officer of the company, to teach the school, and paid him from his personal funds. Thus was built the first school house in Dakota Territory,* and to Captain Miner and his boys the credit is due. The wife of Dr. G. W. Vandenhule of Yankton made a sketch and a fine oil painting of this school house after it had been somewhat remodeled, and the dirt roof exchanged for one of shingles.

Allow me to digress a little to relate an incident which occurred while we were at Crow Creek in 1863, and which escaped my memory, when writing of that period in a former chapter. An Indian named Te Maza (Iron Door) was inordinately jealous of the other bucks for attentions shown his handsome young squaw, and, after brutally beating her, slashed her face with a knife, disfiguring her for life. The friends of the woman insisted that Captain Miner should inflict severe punishment on the brute, but the captain determined that the Indians should themselves deal with the case in their own way. An Indian court was organized, and after much talking it was decreed that the fellow should pay for

¹¹⁶Hugh Compton settled in West Vermillion in 1860, and in company with Hon. Jacob Deuel, established the first saw-mill in the Territory in the forest lands of the Missouri and Vermillion bottoms. Mr. Compton was a member of Company C, Dakota Militia, called into service by proclamation of the Governor in August, 1862. He was also a member of the Territorial Council in 1863-4 and 1864-5. He removed to Nebraska in company with Mr. Deuel a few years later. (G. W. K.)

his devilishness with his life, but they wanted the military to carry out the sentence. This Captain Miner firmly declined to do, and they then determined that Te Maza should be shot by a fifteen-year-old brother of the injured squaw. The prisoner was in the keeping of the military. When the time for the execution arrived Te Maza was marched to the creek above the stockade, and a military guard was drawn up in line. A vast crowd of Indians were present to witness the execution. Presently the lad appeared with his rifle. He was so frightened that he trembled like an aspen leaf, and, as might have been expected, fired, missing the mark. At the instant of the discharge of the rifle Te Maza sprang forward, brandishing a large knife which he had managed to conceal about his person, and slashing right and left, wounded several in a serious manner, and his would-be executioner, dropping his gun ran for his life, while the crowd scattered like sheep; but Captain Miner, the coolest man on the field, drew his revolver and brought down the brutal savage, thus probably saving other lives, and at least much personal injury to the bystanders.

We lost during our term of enlistment, by death, James Cummings, John McBee and John Tallman. Cummings and McBee died in the hospital at Ft. Randall after lingering illnesses, and were buried with military honors in the post cemetery. Tallman froze to death while hunting in Nebraska opposite Vermillion in the winter of 1864-5. He and George Pike started out together, and after crossing the river, separated. Pike returned alone in the evening, but concluding that Tallman had stopped to visit some Nebraska acquaintances, we were not at all concerned, although the weather was intensely cold. About the middle of the next forenoon a settler came to camp and reported that he had found a dead soldier in the timber across the river. A detail was sent out at once and his body was found, wrapped in his blanket, and lying at full length. His gun leaned against a tree near by. His body was brought in and was followed to his grave by the command and by the citizens of Vermillion. We buried him in an unmarked grave on the highland to left of the

ravine in which the historic school house stood, there to await the reveille on the other side of the dark river.

For disability there were discharged from Company A George Herrick, Henry Snow, Joseph Cramer, John Gibson and Michael Fisher. John Fell was discharged under the "boy act," he being under age when he enlisted. One soldier was drummed out of service at the point of the bayonet.

One member of our company was dishonorably discharged and conducted out of camp by a fife and drum corps playing the rogue's march, he having been convicted by a garrison court martial of a violation of the articles of war. He was very young, scarcely eighteen, and immediately enlisted and went south, where he made an honorable record as a soldier, and has lived a life since which has made him honored and respected by every one.

The winter at Vermillion passed without noteworthy incident in our camp. We rejoiced over the surrender of Lee, and were depressed by the news of Lincoln's death, but our spirits were soon revived by information that we would be mustered out on May 9th, and on that long hoped for day Captain Theaker¹¹⁷ of the regular army arrived to perform the muster out ceremony. Then came the last roll call, the usual farewells, and the members of A company were out of the United States service, never as an organization to meet again. Of those now living, Charles Wright, Josiah Gray,¹¹⁸ Robert Buckhardt,¹¹⁹ George Pike, Adolph Mauksch¹²⁰ and A. M. English reside in Yankton; J. B. Watson in Sioux Falls; Thomas Weeks,¹²¹ Edward Anderson,¹²² Amund Hanson,¹²³ Harmon P. Tyeltvet and Ole B. Larson¹²⁴ in Clay county; William Benedict¹²⁵ and Bucklin Wood¹²⁶ in Bon Homme county;

¹¹⁷Hugh Albert Theaker, born in Ohio. Commissioned 1st lieutenant in the 16th Infantry, May 14, 1861; breveted a captain November, 1863 for service in the battle of Missionary Ridge; captaincy July 28, 1864; transferred to 34th Infantry, 1866; to the 16th Infantry, 1869; Major 15th Infantry, 1886; lieutenant colonel 14th Infantry, 1891; colonel 16th Infantry 1896; retired August 11, 1898.

¹¹⁸See roster of company following.

¹¹⁹See roster of company following.

¹²⁰See roster of company following.

¹²¹See roster of company following.

¹²²See roster of company following.

¹²³See roster of company following.

¹²⁴See roster of company following.

¹²⁵See roster of company following.

¹²⁶See roster of company following.

George Falkinburg and Thomas Tate at Hot Springs; Lieutenant David Benjamin at Beresford; Edwin Wilkins¹²⁷ at Pipestone; Peter Omeg¹²⁸ is in Oregon; Ananias Jones, at Coldwater, Michigan; and Markwell¹²⁹ and Christ Olson¹³⁰ are in Nebraska.

In May, 1865, B company accompanied General Sully upon another expedition against the Sioux up the river. They went up to Fort Sully, and thence across to Devil's Lake, but found no Indians, the hostiles being west of the river. On this expedition the B men were under command of Captain Tripp. They arrived at Sioux City in the fall.

A detachment of twenty-five men from B company was detailed, under command of Lieutenant John R. Wood, to escort Colonel Sawyers' expedition¹³¹ to Idaho under orders from the government to establish an emigrant road from Sioux City to the gold fields. Colonel Sawyers, in command of an Iowa regiment, had served in the Indian war. The expedition left Sioux City as soon as the grass started in the spring, and came up river until opposite Yankton, where Lieutenant Wood and his men crossed over and joined them, and then made over to the Niobrara, and followed up that stream around the western base of the Black Hills, and reached Powder river, where trouble commenced. Here the command was surrounded by several hundred hostiles for fifteen days, during which time there was constant skirmishing, but only one man lost, young Hedges, of Sioux City. Finally the Indians withdrew, and the expedition reached Tongue river, where it was again held up three days by the hostiles, but got away without casualty. When the Crow country was reached Colonel Sawyers felt that he could dispense with the escort, as the Crows were friendly, and the Dakota boys retraced their steps and reached Sioux City in the fall in time to rejoin the company, which was soon after mustered out.

¹²⁷See roster of company following.

¹²⁸See roster of company following.

¹²⁹See roster of company following.

¹³⁰See roster of company following.

¹³¹The official reports of this expedition are to be found in the Rebellion Records. The report of Col. Nelson Cole, 2nd Missouri Light Artillery is in Vol. 48, pt. 1, p. 366, and that of Capt. George W. Williford, 5th Volunteer Infantry is the same volume page 388.

In conclusion then, a word to my old comrades in arms, all of whom I remember with the kindest feelings. I have written these sketches almost entirely from memory. Some errors may have crept in. I have tried to do justice to all, and if I have failed let this be my excuse: It is difficult to recall all occurrences after a lapse of thirty-six years.

I regret my inability to follow the fortunes of Company B in detail from the time we parted company at Yankton agency in the fall of 1864, but I have been unable to collect data as yet to assist me in the work. The First Dakota cavalry was a South Dakota organization in all that the name implies. There was not a man in either company from the northern part of the territory. All served with credit to the territory and nation, and with honor to themselves.

—A. M. ENGLISH.

Yankton.

DAKOTA CAVALRY

The Company Discriptive Book of Company A, Dakota Cavalry, 1862-1865 is not in the War Department and has probably been lost. The following roster was made from memory by Sergeant A. M. English, Second Lieutenant David Benjamin and Thomas Tate in 1899 and is believed to include all men who served in this company:

Captain Nelson Miner, of Vermillion:

Captain Nelson Miner, of A Company, came to Dakota from Adel, Iowa, in 1860 and settled at Vermillion where he engaged in the hotel business. He returned to Vermillion at the close of the war and continued to reside there until his death October 24, 1879. His sons William and Charles are still honored citizens of Beadle county.

First Lieutenant J. K. Fowler, resigned:

John Kendrick Fowler was the first lieutenant of Company A. He was not a military man, but was the brother-in-law of the Secretary of the Territory (John Hutchinson.) Mr. Fowler was single man, about twenty-three years old, of excellent habits, but had no employment while in Dakota except his lieutenancy. He remained with the company about one year, and then resigned and left for California where he secured a position which may have been either with a mining or a railroad company. He was occasionally heard from during the 20 years following, and appeared to be prosperous and contented. It was reported that he removed to Utah or Idaho later. (Geo. W. Kingsbury.)

First Lieutenant Frederick Plughoff, resigned:

Frederick Plughoff was the first Second Lieutenant of Company A, an ex-soldier and well instructed in the military art. He was about 30 years old and we do not learn that he had a local residence in Dakota. He gave the members of the Company their preliminary instruction during the winter of 1861-2, and was regarded as nearer proficient than the other officers. He was promoted to First Lieutenant when Mr. Fowler resigned, but did not continue long in that capacity. He resigned and was succeeded by 2nd Lieut. James M. Bacon. He did not remain in the territory after his resignation. (G. W. K.)

First Lieutenant James M. Bacon:

Lieut. James M. Bacon was 1st Lieutenant of Co. A, appointed in 1862, and served with credit to the close of the Civil and Indian War in 1865. His family resided in Sioux City. He was a popular officer with the company and held in high esteem generally. He was in command of a detachment of the Company when the Governor ordered the evacuation of Sioux Falls in August, 1862, having no adequate force to protect the settlers from Indian raids. After the close of the war he engaged in the hardware business in Sioux City, and continued in that business for a number of years, and until his death. (G. W. K.)

Second Lieutenant Dewitt C. Smith, of Wisconsin:

Dewitt C. Smith, who succeeded Lt. Bacon as 2nd Lieutenant of Co. A., was not a Dakotan and for that reason his appointment gave rise to more or less criticism among the members of the company who felt that the place should have been filled by promotion from the boys in the ranks, and this feeling was shared by friends outside the company. Mr. Smith was an

agreeable gentleman, but had no special aptitude for the profession of arms, and as Company A was constantly employed in active duty, generally in separate detachments during the first two years or more, it was felt that the commands should be entrusted to soldiers of experience. Hence D. C. Smith felt it incumbent to resign after a few months, and David Benjamin was appointed from a corporalship to the vacancy.

Second Lieutenant David Benjamin, later of Beresford:

David Benjamin, died at Hot Springs Soldier's Home, March 18, 1914, aged 82 years. He lived for many years near Beresford, Union County. He was made 2nd lieutenant of Company A while at Fort Rice in July, 1864.

Top Sergeant A. M. English, of Yankton:

A. M. English was born at Middlesbury, Vermont, December 22, 1836. Settled in Yankton 1860. Served as first sergeant in Dakota cavalry in war of outbreak. Served in legislature of 1865 and as mayor of Yankton three terms. Contractor and builder. Died at Yankton February 9, 1909.

Second Sergeant Patrick Conway:

Patrick Conway was second sergeant of Company A. He was a citizen of Cedar county, Nebraska, when he enlisted. He had been in the regular army, had been honorably discharged, and had taken up land in Cedar county and begun farming. He was a single man, on the shady side of 30; a genial, whole-souled gentleman, born in Ireland and spoke the language with a broad accent. He was an excellent soldier and served with credit. He was not aware that his residence and voting privilege remained in Nebraska when he enlisted in Dakota, and was somewhat chagrined when his vote was thrown out, as illegal, in the Todd and Jayne congressional contest of 1862. Congress threw it out on the ground of non-residence in the Territory when he enlisted. He settled in Yankton after his discharge from the army, became a citizen, and was employed for a number of years as the Chief of City Policemen. It was said that he perfected his title to his Nebraska pre-emption, but became a citizen of Dakota. He died a number of years ago. "He lived respected and died regretted." (G. W. K.)

Commissary Sergeant Kerwin Wilson:

Kerwin Wilson was commissary sergeant of Company A. He was a single man, and came into the Dakotas with the Hanson party in 1859 and probably settled in Charles Mix county as he is found there immediately after his discharge, on a claim. He was a young man of intelligence and energy. He took an interest in the political affairs of Charles Mix; held important county offices, and represented the county in the early legislature. (G. W. K.)

Sergeant Peter F. Holden:

Sergeant William Neuman:

William Neuman enlisted in Company A and was made a sergeant. He was a German emigrant, a single man, and was one of the colony of that nationality that took the first claim near James river on the west side and within a few miles of Yankton during 1859, 1860 and 1861. He was a tall muscular young man and had no dread of the Indians. He was among the best of the soldiers, and quite popular in the company. After the war he returned to his claim, married and became the father of one daughter, called Nettie or Nellie. Mr. Neuman removed from Dakota later, and selected an abiding place in Missouri. (G. W. K.)

Sergeant Benjamin F. Estis:

Benjamin F. Estes was a sergeant in Company A, and served with credit during the war. He enlisted in 1861 from

Union county, or what subsequently became Union county. Was about 25 years of age and a farmer. He was a man of excellent character. He settled either in Union or Charles Mix after the war, and accumulated a competency by his industry. (G. W. K.)

Sergeant Jesse B. Watson, of Sioux Falls:

Jesse B. Watson, still (1917) resides at Sioux Falls.

Sergeant Horace J. Austin, of Vermillion:

Horace J. Austin, born in Washington county, N. Y., July 11, 1837. A land surveyor by profession, he settled in Yankton in 1859. Served in Dakota cavalry throughout the war and at the close settled at Vermillion. He was several times a member of the legislature, and while serving in the house of representatives at Pierre, died on February 27, 1891.

Sergeant Charles B. Stager:

Charles B. Stager enlisted in Company A from Bon Homme county under recruiting officer Jas. M. Allen. He was one of the Minnesota colony that settled in that county during 1859, 1860 and 1861. He came from Mantorville. He was one of the sergeants of the company and every inch a soldier. His age cannot be accurately stated, but he was nearing 25 judging from his appearance and conversation. He was a farmer and a single man. He may have settled in Bon Homme county after his discharge from the army in 1865, but we find no record of his residence. (G. W. K.)

Corporal Joseph Ellis:

Sergeant Joseph Ellis was a popular and trusted member of Company A, and resided, after the war, in Charles Mix county, and we have an impression that his residence was in Charles Mix or Bon Homme county before enlisting. He was one of the settlers and soldiers who are termed by neighbors and comrades as "a square man" fearless as a soldier and a citizen of exemplary and enterprising character. He pursued the honorable occupation of farmer after retiring from the service and remained a citizen of Charles Mix. If living, he is yet a citizen of that county. (G. W. K.)

Corporal William Young:

William Young enlisted from Bon Homme under officer Allen. He was one of the pioneers who removed from Mantorville, Minn., in 1858 with the Shober colony which formed the nucleus of the first settlement of Bon Homme. Mr. Young was a single man, and about twenty-five years old, and one of the finest vocalists in Company A. His ancestry was Scotch. He was endowed with more than ordinary intellect, and was an exemplary soldier. Sometime after his discharge he took up the clerical work in a companionable way with Merrill Lathrop, and also sought a field for practical work in New England. (G. W. K.)

Corporal George Falkinburg:

George Falkinburg was a resident of Bon Homme county and one of the Shober pioneer party who came from Minnesota in 1858 and located at the old town of Bon Homme. He was a young man about the age of 22, and enlisted in Company A in 1861 from Bon Homme county. At the close of the war he settled in Yankton county, and took unto himself a wife, Miss Olive Stone, daughter of the pioneer, James M. Stone. His wife died a few years after her marriage. One son was born to them, who is now engaged in the publication of a newspaper at Scotland. Mr. Falkinburg served for a number of years as deputy U. S. Marshal under L. H. Litchfield, in which employment he won renown because of his success in finding his man who in a number of instances had sought an asylum with some of the Indian tribes. Leaving employment as marshal he engaged in the live stock business near the Black Hills, and quitting that entered the South Dakota Soldier's Home where he died several years ago. (G. W. K.)

Corporal Christian C. Brurud:

Chris C. Brured, Scandinavian nationality, had lived for a brief time on a claim west of Vermillion. He was highly respected and enlisted in Company A, induced by a belief that it was his duty at the time. He served with much credit to the end of the war, then returned to his farm, and after a brief time was married to a Yankton county lady, Caroline Olson. Some years later, the family removed to Caledonia in the northern part of Dakota Territory. (G. W. K.)

Corporal Amos Shaw, of Vermillion:

Amos Shaw was an early resident at Sioux Falls and Vermillion. At the latter place he taught the first school in the famous school house in the ravine. He died recently in Washington.

Corporal Adolph Mauksch:

Adolph Mauxsch, a native of Germany, settled in the western part of Yankton county, south of Lakeport in 1861. He was a single man. He enlisted in Company A the following winter and became one of the non-commissioned staff. He served during the war and was known as an all-round excellent soldier. Retiring from the army in 1865, he returned to his claim; took a wife and entered upon his life of opening up a farm on the virgin soil of Yankton county. The remainder of his long life was devoted to this work, and he had the satisfaction of enjoying for many years one of the finest farm homes and most productive farms in the Territory. His was a fruit farm, a grain farm and a live-stock farm. From his porch he overlooked many miles of the most attractive scenic portions of the Missouri river as well as the noble stream. He died at his farm residence a few years ago, an aged veteran. (G. W. K.)

Corporal Charles Wright, of Yankton:

Charles Wright, of Yankton, born in Virginia August 14, 1847, died at Yankton April 25, 1916. Served many years as peace officer.

Bugler Amund Hanson:

Amund Hanson was among the newcomers at Vermillion in 1860 or 1861. He enlisted under Captain Miner at that point. He was one of the Norwegian recruits and a fine young man. After quitting the service in 1865 he remained in the Territory and took up land south of Meckling in Clay county where he died several years ago. He was one of the enterprising farmers of that section, and secured a competency. (G. W. K.)

Bugler Edwin Wilkins:

Edwin Wilkins may have been a resident of Sioux City when he enlisted in Company A in 1862. His record as a soldier was without a blemish and when he retired from the service or soon after, he engaged in the agricultural implement business in Sioux City. He was a denominational Christian—a Methodist. (G. W. K.)

Farrier Ananias Jones:

Annanias Jones was holding a claim in the western part of Bon Homme county, near the Missouri river in 1861-2 at the time he enlisted in Company A. He had a wife and one child and it is claimed that Wales was the land of his nativity. He served as a soldier until he was mustered out and enjoyed the respect and confidence of his comrades. His descendants are now residing on the old pioneer claim which has come to be a fine farm and an attractive rural home. (G. W. K.)

Blacksmith Robert Burkhart:

Robert Burkhardt came to Dakota with the earliest German colony in 1859 or 1860 and lived with John Solberger about 4 miles northeast of Yankton. He was a mechanic and an ex-

cellent blacksmith; a single man about 21 years of age. He became a member of Company A, and was appointed company blacksmith, discharging his duties with credit. He launched into the blacksmithing business at Yankton after quitting the military service, and remained at the head of a prosperous industry for about 30 years when continuous ill health compelled his retirement. He died at Yankton in 1914. He married at the close of the war. His widow survives him and resides on their farm a few miles west of Yankton. (G. W. K.)

Privates

The first spelling is as supplied by Sergeant English, the enclosed spelling is as printed in Kingsbury's History of Dakota Territory.

Alderson, Richard:

Allen, John E.

John E. Allen was an American, and a lawyer, who was among the earliest pioneers of Sioux Falls. He was a native of Ohio. He came to Yankton and enlisted in Company A in 1862. His military record was creditable. What part he took or where he abided after the war, we have been unable to ascertain. (G. W. K.)

Anderson, Edward:

Edward Anderson was a Norwegian who was one of the recruits secured by Captain Miner at Vermillion. His military record was an honorable one. Retiring from the service with Company A in 1865, he settled on a claim northwest of Vermillion where he resided when last reported, and was known as a prosperous farmer. If living he is about four score years of age. (G. W. K.)

Anderson, Michael:

Michael Anderson, a young man and a Norwegian, was a pioneer of the lower James valley and enlisted in Company A, probably under recruiting officer Fowler of the Yankton district. He was an efficient soldier and an exemplary young man. After the war he settled on the James River land and was there, hale and hearty, when last heard from. (G. W. K.)

Andrews, Cornelius:

Cornelius Andrews was an American born and bred, and lived at Vermillion at the time of his enlistment in Company A. He was a married man, by occupation a farmer, made a faithful soldier and was mustered out with the company at Vermillion in 1865, and went back to his farm. His present whereabouts are not known, but if he is living he is about 80 years of age. (G. W. K.)

Bell, John:

Bellows, Benjamin:

Benj. F. Bellows was a member of Company A, and was dismissed from the service before his term expired. (G. W. K.)

Bellows, George:

George Bellows was a native of the United States, about 23 years old, a married man, who had taken a claim near Vermillion where he resided at the time of his enlistment in Company A. He returned to his farm after being mustered out, but of his subsequent career we have no information. (G. W. K.) See roster of Company B.

Bellows, Henry:

Henry Bellows was probably a younger brother of George and unmarried. Was a native of an eastern state. He held a claim near Vermillion when he enlisted in Company A, and returned to it when he was honorably discharged from the service in 1865. If living he would be about 75 years of age. (G. W. K.)

Benedict, William W.:

W. W. Benedict was born at Providence, Lucerne county, Pa., February 5, 1831. Emigrated by way of New York to Austin, Minn., in 1858 and thence by way of Dixon county, Nebraska in 1860 and then canoed across the river to Vermillion D. T., where he settled in 1860 with his family and took up land. He joined the army in 1862, and served with credit to the end of the war. Returning to civil life he removed to eastern Yankton county and became a prominent citizen of the county. He acquired a competency and later went to the Black Hills where he prospered, returning to Springfield, where he resides with his daughter's family. He is now about 82 years old and in fairly good health. (G. W. K.)

Betz, John:

John Betz was a member of Company A, and belonged to the German colony that made the first early settlement west of the James in what is now Yankton county. He was a farmer, and was honorably discharged from service in 1865, after which he found a wife, Miss Doritta Donaldson, and settled on his early pre-emption. His death occurred a few years later, and his widow became the wife of John Woodman. (G. W. K.)

Bradley, (John) George:

John Bradley born in Ireland, was a brother of Henry Bradley, of Yankton, both among the earliest of Dakota's pioneers, and both having served in the regular army John Bradley re-entered the service in 1861 by enlisting in Company A and serving throughout the war. He was honorably discharged, settled at Yankton, and resided with his brother Henry who was a hotel keeper. John died at Yankton about 20 years ago.

Campbell, David:

David Campbell had been a Missouri river steamboat pilot prior to enlisting in Company A in the winter of 1861-2. He was a single man, about 40 years old, and made an excellent soldier. He settled at Yankton on retiring from the army and engaged as a pilot on the Government snag-boats which were then destroying the nests of snags with which the upper river abounded to the serious hindrance of navigation. He went to the Black Hills in 1877. (G. W. K.)

Claude, John:

John Claude was a native of old France, came to Yankton county and took up land in the neighborhood of the German colony near James river. He was a single man and enlisted in Company A in the winter of 1861-2. His military services were decidedly creditable and at times exceedingly hazardous and arduous. He returned to his land at the close of the war, found a wife, cultivated his farm for a few years and then removed, but where to we have been unable to ascertain. (G. W. K.)

Collins, John:

John Collins was a pioneer of the Missouri and Vermillion valley region and enlisted in Company A under Capt. Miner. He was a married man. He was a prominent man among those who laid the foundations of Dakota's settlement and was prominently identified with early common school work. His son, Edward C. Collins, who resided at Elk Point became one of the State Superintendents of Schools. Mr Collins' record as a soldier was one of the best. He settled in Union county at the close of the war. (G. W. K.)

Cramer, Joseph:

Cummings, James:

Cusek, (Cusick) Nelson W.:

Nelson Cusick was a young farmer who by himself or by his parents had taken up land east of the Vermillion in 1860. He enlisted in Company A under Capt. Miner who was recruiting officer for the Vermillion district, no counties having as yet been defined, in the winter of 1861-2, being one of a number of the earliest immigrants to the Territory. Cusick was of Norwegian parentage. He served with credit during the war and was mustered out with the company at Vermillion, in the spring of 1865. He was living on his farm three miles east of Vermillion (G. W. K.)

Deloney, (Delaney) Sahil:

Ellingson, Neils:

Neils Ellingson enlisted from the Vermillion district during the winter of 1861-2. He had taken up land west of the lower Vermillion river not far from the old town of Vermillion under the bluffs which was washed away in the great flood of 1881. Neils' record as a soldier entitled him to an honorable discharge, which he received. The entire company received an official commendation at the time of its "muster out" and it was because of the uniform excellent soldierly deportment of the members of the company that we get no occasion to note the promotion of its private members, who were worthy of promotion, but no vacancies were open "for cause." Ellingson died several years ago at his farm home west of Vermillion. (G. W. K.)

Felling, Nicholas:

Fisher, Michael:

Michael Fisher was a pioneer of the Territory, coming out from Pennsylvania in the fall of 1860. He reached Sioux City late in the season, and walked from that point to Yankton carrying his baggage on the end of a cane across his shoulder. He was a brother of David Fisher, the blacksmith, a single man, about 21 years old. He enlisted in Company A, in 1861, but owing to poor health did not serve out the term of enlistment. Retiring from military service, he learned the printer's trade in the office of the weekly Dakotan, which occupation he followed for several years. He married a Michigan lady about 1864, built a dwelling-house on the northwest corner of Second and Linn streets, wherein he made his home until death came at the close of a long and painful illness. He served as Justice of the Peace two terms in Yankton. He left a widow, one son and one daughter. (G. W. K.)

Fjeltvet, Herman P.:

Floeder, Julius:

Ford, John O.:

John G. Ford enlisted in Company A at Vermillion in the winter of 1861-2. His name was Ferde and his nationality Norwegian but as the name was pronounced Ford he finally adopted it. He was a single man and farmer, and retired from the service with an honorable discharge. He died in Clay county in 1885 (G. W. K.)

Frick, Louis:

Louis Frick was a German and a younger brother of Thomas Frick. He became a member of Company A and made an ex-

cellent military record, crossing the Bad Lands with Sully in 1864. After quitting the service in 1865, he took a homestead in the valley of the Jim river south of Henry Strunk's, and three and a half miles from Yankton. He was an adventurer and went to the Black Hills in 1877, and finally drifted away to the Pacific coast, where becoming incapacitated for labor, he entered the California Soldier's home, and died there. He was not a married man. (G. W. K.)

Frick (Frek) Thomas:

Thomas Frick was a member of Company A which he joined during the winter of 1861-2. He was a native of Leighenstein, Germany; emigrated to America in 1852, settled in Iowa and remained there until 1859, removing with his family to Dakota Territory in August 1859, where he took a pre-emption on the west bank of the James river 4 miles northeast of the townsite of Yankton which was laid out the same year. The public land had not been surveyed, and he took a "squatter's right" and joined the "Yankton Claim Club," an organization for the defense of this class of early settlers. Mr. Frick was about 30 years of age at this time and a staunch Democrat. He was also a public spirited citizen. His pioneer cabin stood near the bank of the river, and when the Little Crow outbreak occurred in August 1862, a band of Indians made a hostile excursion down the river valley on the east side and poured a volley of bullets into the logs which composed the structure, but it was not occupied, the family having been removed to Yankton the day before. Frick's military record was highly honorable. He resumed farming on his claim at the close of the war in 1865, and remained on his pre-emption, prospering and rearing a family that is a credit to the State. One of his sons owns and cultivates the old place to this day, the old pioneer having died in 1888. He was a member of the Territorial legislature at one time and always active in promoting the public good. (G. W. K.)

Gibson (A.) John:

Gray, Benj. F.:

Benjamin Gray removed from Nebraska to Yankton county in 1861 and with him came quite a family of grown boys and girls. He took up land but may not have made a settlement for though nearly 50 years of age, enlisted in Company A in January 1862 and served throughout the war, retiring to Yankton at the close of hostilities and taking up his residence in the city, where he died a few years later. Mr. Gray was an American citizen. (G. W. K.)

Gray, Josiah:

Josiah Gray was a son of Benjamin Gray, and enlisted in Company A, at the same time the elder joined. He served through the war, and returned to Yankton and settled at the expiration of his military service. Here he remained several years, having married, and engaged in business which he successfully conducted until early in the present century, when he removed to St. Helena, Cedar county, Nebr., where he died quite suddenly, a few years later. He was an excellent citizen and won an honorable discharge from the army. (G. W. K.)

Haggin, (J.) Zachariah:

Zachariah Haggin was a pioneer of the lower James river valley in Yankton county. He occupied a tract of land in an abrupt turn of the river which was known as "Haggin's Bend." He was an American and a man with a family. His place subsequently became one of the polling places of the county. He enlisted in Company A in the late winter of 1861-2 and served to the end of the war doing efficient service. His age was in the neighborhood of 30. He remained for many years on his farm, but ceased to be a resident years ago. Can give no information of his later life. (G. W. K.)

Harrington, E. (Not in English's list but in Kingsbury's):

E. Harrington enlisted in Company A at Vermillion in the winter of 1861-2 and served with credit through the Indian wars of the following three or four years. He resided on land west of Vermillion after being honorably discharged from the service, but we have no reliable information concerning him for several years. He was an American farmer. (G. W. K.)

Hart, Benj.:

Benjamin Hart was a young man about 21, of good education and engaging manners, who enlisted in Company A at Yankton. He impressed one as a young gentleman who had seen something of the ways of men and women of the world, and was not averse to witnessing more of it. Frontier soldiering was a new experience but he was never known to object to scalping the foe when nothing milder would bring the desired results. He came out of the war weather beaten but otherwise victorious, and remained at Yankton and Bon Homme a number of years, going to the Black Hills in 1876. He had been fairly well educated, was evidently capable of taking care of himself, and while nothing was known to his Yankton chums of his later life, all who remember his genial presence would wish him well. (G. W. K.)

Hobler, P. F. (Not in English's list but in Kingsbury's):**Hosick (Hoosick) George:**

George Hoosick was an American, a single man about 25 years of age when he enlisted in Company A in 1862. He was an industrious citizen and enterprising. Owing to failing health he was released from the service and returned to Yankton, where he built a chalkstone residence of attractive proportions which is still in use as a comfortable dwelling. Later Mr. Hoosick was married to a daughter of Benjamin Gray and removed to Kansas about 1880, where he engaged in a profitable business. It is many years since we have had any information concerning him or his family. (G. W. K.)

Johnson, John:

John Johnson who was a member of Company A was born in Norway and came to America with his parents in the last year of President Fillmore's administration. The family settled in Minnesota and after a few years removed to North Bend, Nebraska, where young John was located in 1859 or 1860 and from whence they crossed the Missouri river and settled near the lakes in the lower James river valley. John enlisted in the early spring of 1862 joining the recruited squad under Lieut. Fowler. He proved to be one of the most capable soldiers in the company, adways ready for duty. He held a claim near the lakes, and it may be that he took it up after he was discharged in 1865, for he had a farm and home near Gayville, and died there in 1877. (G. W. K.)

Kinney, James:

James Kinney, a worthy soldier and member of Company A during the Civil War, may have enlisted from Sioux City or from Covington, Nebraska. He was a single man and an American. After the war he took up steamboat employment for a time and was Captain of the ferry boat that plied between Springfield and Santee. He was identified with Covington, Neb. for a number of years. (G. W. K.)

Larson, Ole B.:

Ole B. Larson, who subsequently became quite a prominent citizen of Clay county, enlisted in Company A at Vermillion under Capt. Miner in the winter of 1861-62. He was a young Norwegian farmer of superior intelligence and served his adopted country faithfully during the long Sioux Indian war which continued until it was starved out by General Sully in his Bad Lands campaign of 1864, in which Larson with Company A par-

ticipated with marked credit. After his discharge from the service Larson became a Clay county farmer, and was later elected to the Territorial legislature. He was conducting his farm work and was hale and hearty when this scribe heard of him in 1915. Larson had a reputation for efficiency, ability and honesty. (G. W. K.)

Lathrop, Merrill G.:

Merrill G. Lathrop, occupation unknown, but probably farmer. Probably son of Marcellus Lathrop who was one of the pioneers of Vermillion, coming there from North Bend, Nebr., in 1860. He enlisted in Co. A, in 1861, was a single man, age about 25, and an excellent soldier. He served to the close of the war, and within a few years thereafter removed east, took up the study of theology and became finally an evangelist, in which work he was quite successful. (G. W. K.)

Lewesson (C. Lewison) Ole:

Ole Lewison was a young Norwegian claim holder when he enlisted in Company A, under recruiting officer Lieut. Fowler, in the winter of 1861-2. He was well educated and entered the army as a matter of principle. He felt that his country needed him and it was his bounden duty to take up arms in its defense. His record as a soldier was above reproach and he was among those most respected when the time came for the boys to return to civil life. He became a Clay county farmer, selecting his claim northwest of Vermillion. He served his legislative district a term or two in the Territorial Legislature. He died several years ago, and left his family well provided for. His sons are still conducting the pioneer farm. (G. W. K.)

Long, Charles:

Charles Long was an American-German, a single man, and enlisted in Company A at Yankton. He was one of the most useful of soldiers, being an expert butcher. At the close of the war, in company with Charles Wright, as "Long and Wright" established a meat market at Yankton. A few years later Long went to Sioux City and became immersed in the commercial affairs of that rapidly growing metropolis, and was soon lost to his Dakota friends. (G. W. K.)

Ludwig, Jacob:

Jacob Ludwig enlisted in Company A at Yankton. He was an American-German and an enterprising young man. His occupation was that of a brick mason and in 1874 he built the Pacific Hotel on Cedar Street, Yankton, opposite the Masonic Temple, and became a hotel keeper. He remained in Yankton county for a number of years. He was married to a Yankton lady and finally removed to LeMars, Iowa, and thence to Kansas, where illness or other misfortunes overtook him. He then entered the Soldier's Home of that state, where he died. (G. W. K.)

McBee, James H.:

James H. McBee died in hospital at Fort Randall, during his term of enlistment. (G. W. K.)

McClellan, John, of Sioux Falls:

John McClellan, who came to his death in Sioux Falls in 1899 through being crushed under the elevator in the Van Epps Building, was of Irish birth, but as to his age and life nothing is known except that he came to Sioux Falls in 1857 and took a quarter section of land within the townsite which laid the foundation of the fortune which has for 18 years occupied the courts of South Dakota.

McLeese, Thomas A.:

Thomas A. McLeese was of Scotch parentage, and probably from Canada to Detroit, Mich. He came out to Dakota from that place in 1859 with Mr. Redfield, the first Yankton Indian Agent, as the agency carpenter, and laid the foundations of Greenwood,

the Yankton Indian Agency village. He was a married man with no children, and in 1860 removed with his wife and brother-in-law, Mr. Bordino, to Yankton, and assisted in constructing the first log cabins of the first capital city. He built the McLeese House and kept hotel after the pioneer fashion. He enlisted in Company A in 1862 and served with credit during the long campaign against the Sioux Indians, and was mustered out with the company at Vermillion in 1865, bearing the badge of "well done, good and faithful servant." He then returned to Yankton, engaged in the building industry and was employed with the public land surveying parties, finally drifting away to the Black Hills in 1876, and farther west. We have no tidings of this man's subsequent career. (G. W. K.)

Maskell, (Markell) John:

John Maskell was a member of Company A and one of its early members. We get no trace of his residence or employment until some years after the company was mustered out. We find that he was living on a farm on Lime Creek, Cedar county, Nebr., in 1885. He was then a farmer and forging ahead. (G. W. K.)

Minde, (Mind) Mathias J.:

M. J. Minde was a young man and a bachelor, and an excellent musician—an expert violinist. He came from Norway where the family resided in the enjoyment of much worldly wealth. Young Minde had disappointed his father in declining a matrimonial alliance, which resulted in his abandoning the parental roof and emigrating to America and to Dakota where he enlisted in Company A and proved a valiant soldier. He remained a resident of Yankton a number of years after leaving the service, taught music principally, took a claim in the vicinity of Mission Hill, and finally removed to California where he was living when last heard from. (G. W. K.)

Morse, John J.:

John J. Morse was known as "Deacon Morse." He was appointed one of the first Census enumerators in 1861, by Gov. Jayne and assigned to Charles Mix and the west of the Missouri settlements including Fort Randall. He was at Sioux Falls prior to this. He enlisted in Company A among the first and served with credit. He was a single man of fair ability, and may have been a professor. Of his career after leaving the service nothing is definitely known. (G. W. K.)

Munson, Albert:

Oleson, (Olson) Andrew:

Andrew Olson was a son of Louis Olson, who emigrated from Norway and settled on the east bank of James river near the German settlement in 1860. Andrew was one of the oldest boys in a numerous family. He was a single man. His military record was excellent. After the war he returned to the pioneer cabin and home and assisted in farm work. His father died about 1889, having long passed the four score period of life. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, (Olson) Christian:

Christian Olson was a member of the Louis Olson family, pioneers of Yankton county. An elder brother and himself became members of Company A. He made an excellent soldier, and returned to the parental home at the close of the war, but as to his subsequent career we have no information. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, (Olson) Ole:

Omeg, Peter:

Peter Omeg was a naturalized citizen whose native country was Germany. He enlisted at Vermillion and his occupation was given as laborer. His military record was without a flaw. At the

close of the war he obtained employment with the steamboat people, and later settled in Sioux City, and engaged in business. (G. W. K.)

Orland, Ole N.:

Peters, James E.:

James Peters was an early settler of Yankton county, an active steady young man, but he contracted one of the earliest marriages in Yankton. His bride was a Nebraska girl and in order to secure her the couple eloped from the girl's parental roof, crossed the Missouri in a dug-out, made their way to the James river ferry house, where the knot was tied by Rev. Ingham, the pioneer Methodist minister of Dakota. Peters enlisted in Company A subsequently and was known as an efficient soldier always ready for duty. We cannot gain the least information regarding the subsequent career of the family. (G. W. K.)

Phelps, Loeman E.:

Looman B. Phelps was an American citizen with a family consisting of wife and children, who lived on a claim near Vermillion at the time he entered the military service as a volunteer in Company A. He was then over 30 years of age which would make him a nonagenarian if living at this date. He drifted to the Pacific coast before South Dakota became a state. (G. W. K.)

Phelps, Oscar:

Oscar Phelps was one of the early day stage drivers from Sioux City to Fort Randall. He enlisted in 1862 and earned the reputation of a good soldier. He was a married man, and said to be the father-in-law of Mr. Rokusek, a prominent farmer of the present day in Yankton county. (G. W. K.)

Pierce, Henry M.:

Henry M. Pierce was a citizen of the Vermillion valley at the time of his enlistment. He was an American who had come in from either Iowa or Minnesota with a wife and children. He was about 35 years old at the time and by occupation a farmer. His present whereabouts are not known to this writer. (G. W. K.)

Pike, George:

George Pike, Jr. was born in Ohio, and had been a resident of Sioux City before coming into Dakota Territory in the spring of 1860. His trade was that of brick or stone mason and plaster work, but being a born frontiersman he had indulged in some adventures before settling down to army life which he did in 1861 by enlisting in Company A. He was unmarried and his age was about 23. His military record was creditable, and after his discharge from the army he took a claim near Utica in Yankton county, which he converted into an excellent farm and followed farming for many years. He died at Yankton about 1900. A younger brother, Herbert Pike, who came with his father, is now one of the prominent citizens of the old capitol city. (G. W. K.)

Prindle, (Pringle) Timothy:

Timothy Prindle was a pioneer veterinary surgeon and blacksmith, but had barely begun his business at Vermillion or Yankton, before he joined Company A in 1862. He was an excellent mechanic and qualified veterinarian. He established himself in business at Yankton after the war, but being of an adventurous nature went to Montana in the early years of the occupation of that Territory. (G. W. K.)

Ramsey, (R. A. Ranney) Peter A.:

Robeart, Fred

Fred Robeart was the son or young brother of Antoine Robeart, a Canadian Frenchman who opened a business house in Yankton during the winter of 1861-2, and handled a restaurant and sold liquors at retail, the first of its kind in the Territory of Dakota. Fred enlisted in Company A at Yankton, and became an excellent cavalryman. He was a single man, about 21 years of age at enlistment. We know nothing of Fred's career after leaving the army, his father or elder brother removing from Yankton in 1865. (G. W. K.)

Sherman, Philip:

Philip Sherman was an American, married, who occupied a pre-emption claim quite close to Vermillion. He was quite young, not over 23. He enlisted in the winter of 1861-2, and made an efficient soldier. We have no information regarding him after his discharge in 1865 except that he returned to his pre-emption claim and proved up on it a short time after. (G. W. K.)

Snow, Henry:**Snow, John B.:****Snyder, William:****Solburger, (Solberger) John:**

John Solberger was a native of Prussia and had seen military service in the fatherland. He settled with the James river German colony in Yankton county in 1860, and his relatives and descendants are cultivating his pioneer farm to this day. He enlisted in Company A in 1861-2, and four years later was given an honorable discharge, when he returned to his farm which remained his home as long as he lived. Through his descendants his name has become familiar to the present generation, and the "old Solberger place" is one of the landmarks of the James river valley. (G. W. K.)

Tallman, John:

John Tallman enlisted in Company A at Vermillion under Captain Miner. He was a single man, and highly esteemed by his comrades. He met death during his term of enlistment. He went out from the Vermillion camp one cold evening in December 1864 to secure a deer that he had discovered in the forest at that point, and was overcome by the cold of the night. A searching party found him in a sitting posture, his back to a tree, lifeless, rigidly frozen. The incident cast a gloom over the camp and the community where he was well and favorably known. (G. W. K.)

Tate, Thomas J.:

Thomas Tate, came to Dakota July 10, 1859 with the Shober party and settled at Bon Homme. He died at the Soldier's Home April 1, 1910, aged 71 years. He was one of the builders of the famous Bon Homme log school house in 1859 or 1860, the first school house in the Territory of Dakota. He enlisted in Company A at Bon Homme and was one of the youngest of its members. He was famous as a speaker, and quite popular with the company members. It was said of him that he was never seen in an angry mood. He established a city water service at Yankton after leaving the army, hauling the water from the Missouri river and delivering it to the city consumers at 25 cents a barrel. He accumulated considerable money but competition destroyed the profitable feature of the business. He never married. (G. W. K.).

Trucks, (Trake) Abraham J.:

Trumbo, John:

John Trumbo was a pioneer of Clay county and enlisted in Company A at Vermillion early in 1862. He was an American and an enterprising young man with ambition to become useful to his fellow men. At the close of the war, or probably some years later he became identified with Charles Mix county and was chosen its legislative representative for several years after South Dakota became a state. (G. W. K.)

Wambole, Charles:**Weeks, (Weegs) Thomas H.:**

Thomas H. Weeks was a pioneer of Vermillion and held a claim near there when he enlisted in Company A, under Captain Miner. He was a young man of prominence among the pioneers of that day. At the close of his military service he conducted a farm about 7 miles northwest of Vermillion but because of ill health removed many years ago to Colorado. Knute, a brother, resides at Vermillion. Norway is the parent country of Thomas and his brother. One or both the brothers have represented Clay county in the Territorial legislature. (G. W. K.)

Will, (Wells) Joachim:

Joachim Wells was a young married man at the time of his enlistment in Company A early in 1862, one of the youngest members of the Company. His occupation cannot be given, but it is morally certain that he had taken a pre-emption claim, the homestead law not having been enacted until later in 1862. Joachim had a wife but no children. We do not find him or his descendants in the list of Clay county's people at the present day. (G. W. K.)

Wood, Bucklin H.:

Bucklin Wood was a pioneer of 1861, and a younger brother of Hon. Bligh Wood, prominent in our early political history. He enlisted in Company A at Vermillion, and became one of the best soldiers. He was a single man before his enlistment, but married after quitting the service. He remained in Yankton until the Black Hills were opened, became a pioneer of the gold regions, and returned and settled in Bon Homme county, at Tyndall, later than 1880. He was residing at Tyndall in good circumstances until about 1911 when he was stricken suddenly with a malady that ended his life. (G. W. K.)

Woodruff, Henry:

Henry Woodruff was a resident of the East Vermillion settlement in 1861 and entered the government military service in 1862 by enlisting in Company A. He was of patriotic American stock and a native of an eastern state. He completed his term of enlistment with honor and in 1865 returned to Clay county and opened a farm on the public lands where he resided and prospered for a number of years. He was one of those who aided materially in making the reputation of Clay county as the leading agricultural county of Dakota. (G. W. K.)

COMPANY B., DAKOTA CAVALRY**William Tripp, Captain, Appointed October 21, 1862:**

William Tripp was born in Maine in 1819. Was an older half brother of Bartlett Tripp. One of the earliest settlers of Yankton. After muster out of the company he practiced law in Yankton and was an esteemed member of the Yankton Bar. He died in March 1878.

John R. Wood, 1st Lieutenant, Appointed October 21, 1862:

Lieutenant John R. Wood, of Elk Point was born in Montgomery county, N. Y., January 4, 1820. He commanded the escort that

conducted the Sawyer wagon road expedition to Montana in 1865 and was held captive by Red Cloud for three weeks. He was appointed 1st Lieutenant Oct. 21, 1862. He died at Elk Point October 29, 1911, being almost 92 years of age.

T. Elwood Clark, 2nd Lieutenant, Appointed Sept. 4, 1862:

Thomas Elwood Clark was born at Kennett Square, Penn. In the very early days of the territory he came to Yankton, where he engaged in newspaper work and also in the mercantile business. He was appointed 2nd lieutenant September 4, 1862 and served as such until muster out in 1865. It appears that after the war he lived at Springfield, Mo., and then later moved to Kansas. He died April 8, 1912 at Eureka Springs, Ark.

Non-commissioned Officers

Elijah K. Robinson, 1st Sergeant:

Josiah R. Sanborn, Sergeant:

Louis St. Onge, Sergeant:

Melancthon U. Hoyt, Sergeant:

Samuel M. Crooks, Sergeant:

Nathan McDaniels, Sergeant:

Norris J. Wallace, Quartermaster Sergeant:

Eli B. Wixson, Commissary Sergeant:

Sterling L. Parker, Corporal:

Myron Sheldon, Corporal:

Charles Leonard, Corporal:

Sherman Clyde, Corporal:

Lawrence Digman, Corporal:

Ferdinand Turgeon, Corporal:

Trobridge R. Jewell, Corporal:

John S. Hall, Corporal:

George W. Dimick, Corporal:

Josiah Whitcomb, Farrier:

John Fitzgibbon, Wagoner:

Theodore Oleson, Blacksmith:

William H. H. Fate, Corporal:

William McDermott, Corporal:

Privates

Allen, Oliver:

Oliver Allen, age 18 born in Putnam county, Indiana, farmer, enlisted October 3, 1862 under militia recruiting officer Lieut. W. W. Adams at Elk Point. Honorably discharged when company was mustered out at Sioux City, Nov. 15, 1865. Allen then went in company with his uncle, Elijah Robinson to St. Johns, Ia., and from there out west. He has resided of late years at Vancouver, Washington, where he held civil offices. (G. W. K.)

Allen, John E.:

John E. Allen was not in Company B. J. Allen was in Company A. (G. W. K.) See roster of Company A.

Arend, Henry:

Henry Arend, age 41, born in Cassel, Germany, farmer, enlisted Nov. 1, 1862, at Elk Point under Tripp. Honorably discharged when company was mustered out, and returned to his home in Yankton county where he took up land near James river. He was one of the leaders of a strong German colony and settlement whose descendants are there to this day. The pioneer is not now living. (G. W. K.)

Arend, Christopher:

Christopher Arend, age 18, born in Cassel, Germany, bugler, enlisted November 1, 1862, at Elk Point under Tripp. Honorably discharged with the company. Eldest son of Henry Arend and a "good boy" and so recognized by his comrades. Returned to his Yankton county home after his discharge, and aided in developing the farm. He died several years ago. (G. W. K.)

Armstrong, Thos. H.:

Thomas H. Armstrong, age 23, born in Delaware county, New York. Trapper and civil engineer. Enlisted Feb. 29, 1864, under Provost Marshal G. P. Waldron at Yankton. Was honorably discharged when company was mustered out in 1865. Claimed that he had been a scout under General Sibley in Minnesota in 1862. He located after his discharge in northwest Iowa, married, reared a family, and is probably living in this year (1918) not far from Correctionville, Iowa. (G. W. K.)

Bellows, George:

George Bellows, age 21, born in Renfrew, Canada, laborer, enlisted Sept. 8, 1863 at Vermillion under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged with the company. Comrades can give no information of his subsequent career. (G. W. K.) See roster of Company A.

Bellows, Benjamin:

Benjamin Bellows, age 20. Born in Renfrew, Canada. Laborer. Enlisted August 11, 1863 at Vermillion under Capt. Miner. English and Kingsbury place this man in Company A, which see.

Bigelow, Gilbert B.:

Gilbert B. Bigelow, age 45. Born in Onida county, N. Y. Enlisted Nov. 18, 1862 at Vermillion under Tripp. Was discharged April 10, 1865 at Yankton Agency by command of Gen. Curtis. Returned to Vermillion. Was a lawyer by profession. Did not marry, and lived much of the time alone. Engaged in politics and was elected to the Territorial House in 1865 and was made speaker at the ensuing session. He accumulated some property at his home town, Vermillion and did some law business; also operated a livery. He died at Vermillion about 1903. (G. W. K.)

Bradley, John:

John Bradley, age 35. Born in Camp Margaret, Ireland. Laborer. Enlisted Sept. 11, 1862 at Yankton under Miner. English and Kingsbury place him in Co. A which see.

Cirtier, Leander:

Leander Cirtier, (or Cordier), age 41. Born in St. Francis, Canada, farmer. Enlisted at Elk Point, Oct. 3, 1862 under Lt. Adams. Returned to Elk Point after his discharge. Was a kind-hearted friend, but lacked energy, and made no headway in life. He died near Sioux City about 1897. (G. W. K.)

Cowan, Miles:

Miles Cowan, age 30. Born in Champlain county, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted at Yankton under Provost Marshal Waldron and assigned to Co. B., April 11, 1864. A married man from Harrison county, Iowa. Was honorably discharged at mustering out and returned to his wife and farm. He died at his Iowa home—date not given. (G. W. K.)

Clyde, Sherman:

Sherman Clyde, age 33, was appointed corporal April 1, 1863. Born at Otsego, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted at Elk Point, Oct. 11, 1862 under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged in 1865, and returned to Union county and his farm where he remained until about 1885. He then sold out and bought a farm in the Ozark Mountains, Missouri, where he died about 1897. (G. W. K.)

Crooks, Samuel M.:

Samuel M. Crooks, age 34. Sergeant from April 1, 1863. Born in Beaver county, Penn. Enlisted at Brule Creek, Cole county Sept. 21, 1862 under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged. Mustered out in 1865. A brief time thereafter Sergeant Crooks and J. R. Sanborn opened and conducted a provision and meat market business at Yankton. Crooks went from this point to Clarinda, Iowa, where he conducted a mercantile business. It was learned from most recent reports that he is living in the province of Columbia, Canada, comfortable situated. (G. W. K.)

Desy, Louis H.:

Louis H. Desy, age 35. Born in Montreal, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Dec. 25, 1862 at Elk Point, under Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Had been a pioneer of Sioux City in 1856-7, and returned there after the war. He died about the time South Dakota was made a state, 1889. His aged widow was living in Sioux City according to advices up to 1917. (G. W. K.)

Digman, Lawrence:

Lawrence Digman, age 22. Born in Ontario county, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted Nov. 10, 1862 under Capt. Gore. Made a corporal April 1, 1863. Honorably discharged in 1865. Returned to Elk Point where he remained for a number of years. He was living at Great Falls, Montana two years ago, but nothing of his whereabouts has been since obtainable. (G. W. K.)

Dimick, George W.:

George W. Dimick, age 24. Corporal. Born in Washington, N. Y. Laborer. Enlisted Sept. 4, 1862 at Vermillion under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged at muster out. He then returned to Union county and was married, and settled down on his farm in that county where he remained until the time of the opening of the Black Hills in 1877, when he sold out and moved west, finally landing in Vancouver, Washington, where he purchased land which he cultivated with success. He reared a large family and amassed considerable property in his new home, where he died in 1915. (G. W. K.)

Dormidy, James:

James Dormidy, age 40, was born in Carlow, Ireland. Teamster. Enlisted at Elk Point Oct. 3, 1863 under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged in 1865. Returned to Elk Point where he had a comfortable property, and owned a farm in Woodbury county, Iowa. He died about the time South Dakota became a state, 1889. (G. W. K.)

Ealey, John R.:

John R. Ealey, age 25. Born in Cleveland, Tenn. Farmer, Enlisted March 21, 1863, at Elk Point under Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out, and located at St. Johns, (now Missouri Valley, Iowa), after leaving the army. Nothing definite concerning Ealey has been learned by his old comrades in arms, but a report has gained circulation and some credit that he met death by violence during the days of lawless excitement in Oklahoma. (G. W. K.)

Farnsworth, Samuel:

Samuel Farnsworth, age 23. Born in Warren county, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted March 15, 1863, at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged and returned to near Woodbine, Iowa and married. Of his life there is no further record obtainable by this chronicler. He died about 1879. (G. W. K.)

Fate, Wm. H. H.:

Wm. H. H. Fate, age 22. Corporal. Born in Locking, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 19, 1862, at Brule Creek, under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged when mustered out. Returned to Brule Creek and was married. His first wife died and he was married a second time. Mr. Fate developed a fine farm, has filled many church and county offices efficiently, and has reared four sons and five daughters, all of whom are living, and the father is yet (1918) while four score years or thereabouts, an active and useful citizen. (G. W. K.)

Filling, Nickolas:

Nickolas Filling, age 26. Born at Wilmot, N. J. Cooper. Enlisted October 29, 1862 at Yankton under Capt. Miner. Nothing further can be learned of this man.

Fitzgibbon, John:

John Fitzgibbon, age 40. Born in Limerick, Ireland. Wagoner and mason. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged and returned to Sioux City and settled there. Became an esteemed citizen. Died there about 1910. (G. W. K.)

Fjeltvet, Harmon P.:

Harmon P. Fjeltvet, age 20. Born in Bergen county, Norway. Laborer. Enlisted July 25, 1863 at Vermillion under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged with the muster out and returned probably to Vermillion. Name also given as Fjeltvet. No reliable information regarding his life. (G. W. K.)

Fleury, Antoine:

Antoine Fleury, age 25. Born in Quebec, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 11, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged and returned to his home in Big Sioux township, Union County, where he was married. He was an enterprising farmer and quite successful. He became the father of a numerous and intelligent family. He is living yet on his old homestead, now a model farm, an honored octogenarian. (G. W. K.)

Frick, Louis:

Louis Frick, age 20. Born in Lichtenstein, Germany. Laborer. Enlisted Dec. 13, 1863, at Fort Randall under Capt. Miner. English and Kingsbury place him in Company A, which see.

Furlong, James J.:

James J. Furlong, age 21. Born in Tipperary, Ireland. Enlisted Oct. 10, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged. Went to Austin, Minn., and there amassed a fortune as a farmer. He died about 1907. (G. W. K.)

Furlong, Wm. F.:

Wm. F. Furlong, age 20. Born in Tipperary, Ireland. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 10, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out, and from what must be considered reliable information he later became insane and was taken to the South Dakota Hospital for the Insane at Yankton. He failed to recover and died there many years ago, or before the end of the last century. (G. W. K.)

Gates, Lewis:

Lewis Gates, age 32. Born in Warren, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 18, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged, and returned to his former home in Iowa. Died at Woodbine, Iowa about 1910. (G. W. K.)

Gaughran, Hugh:

Hugh Gaughran, age 30. Born in Cervan, Ireland. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 18, 1862 under Lt. Bell at Elk Point. Honorably discharged when mustered out, and returned to Sioux City, and from that point removed into Nebraska not far from Sioux City, but of his occupation this scribe could obtain no reliable information. He died during the last decade of the 19th century. (G. W. K.)

Goodfellow, Wm. R.:

Wm. R. Goodfellow, age 25. Born in Wooster, Ohio. Explorer. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 under Lt. Adams at Elk Point. Was company clerk and an artistic penman. Was honorably discharged with his company, and became clerk at Crow Creek Indian Agency in 1866. Remained there until 1869 when he emigrated in company with Judson LaMoure of Union county to Pembina where he settled and held important subordinate positions in the customs house and also in the U. S. land office. He died at Pembina about the close of the 19th century. (G. W. K.)

Gregory, John:

John Gregory, age 14. Born in Joe Daviess county, Ill. Farmer. Enlisted July 9, 1864 at Yankton under Provost Marshal Waldron. Honorably discharged with the company. Was known as the "boy soldier." Nothing has been learned of him since his discharge. (G. W. K.)

Hall, John S.:

John S. Hall, age 19. Corporal. Born in Athens county, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted March 23, 1863 at Elk Point under Tripp. Honorably discharged at mustering out, and returned to near Woodbine, Iowa, and in 1867 went to Wyoming and Utah and worked on the new Union Pacific railway which was then under construction. Quitting that employment, he returned to Union county and married; became a prosperous farmer; filled county and town offices with efficiency. An all-round useful citizen. Resided in 1918 in Woodbine, Iowa. (G. W. K.)

Hammond, James T.:

James T. Hammond, age 18. Born in South Carolina. Farmer. Enlisted March 31, 1863 at Elk Point under Tripp. Was discharged from the hospital at Sioux City quite early in his military career. Was an excellent "boy soldier" and highly respected by his soldier comrades. (G. W. K.)

Hampton, Thos. J.:

Thos. J. Hampton, age 29. Born in South Carolina. Farmer. Enlisted Dec. 21, 1862 at Elk Point under Tripp. Was honorably discharged from the service and went south, probably to Missouri, since which time nothing has been learned concerning him. (G. W. K.)

Homer, Wm. C.:

Wm. C. Homer, age 28. Born in Warren, N. J. Farmer. Enlisted January 21, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged. Returned to his home near Elk Point where he remained a few years, then sold out and went to Michigan about the year 1908. Returned from Michigan to Union county, and now resides a few miles west of Jefferson in old "Old Union." (G. W. K.)

Horton, Stephen:

Stephen Horton, age 24. Born in Vernon, Mich. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 19, 1862 at Brule Creek under Adams or Gore. Honorably discharged at mustering out and returned to Brule Creek and married. He built up a fine farm on the Brule. He also reared a large and intelligent family. He died by a supposed accidental shot from a gun in his own hands about 1912. (G. W. K.)

Hough, John:

John Hough, age 18. Born in Bath, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Dec. 1, 1862, at Yankton under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged in 1865, and then spent some time in drifting around, and finally landed at Mitchell, D. T., where he found a wife and settled down. Did an insurance business for a while and was then appointed boss farmer at the Yankton Agency. Returned in a few years to Mitchell, where he died of typhoid fever about 1903. (G. W. K.)

Hoyt, Melancthon U.:

Melancthon U. Hoyt, age 27. Born in Indianapolis, Ind. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 15, 1862 at Elk Point, under Lt. Adams. Appointed sergeant April 1, 1863. Honorably discharged at time of muster out. Son of Rev. Melancthon Hoyt, early Yankton clergyman, who resided at Yankton. The soldier son was a married man and settled at Yankton and engaged in the mercantile business; was appointed post-master of Yankton in 1869 by President Grant. Was elected to the Territorial Legislature in 1866, and re-elected. Removed for a time to his farm in Nebraska about the time of the Black Hills opening; farmed with good success for a number of years. Finally retired from active pursuits and settled with his son and daughter in Minnehaha county where his son has a farm. Is now, 1918, living in Sioux Falls with his daughter. (G. W. K.)

Jarvis, Ulrick:

Ulrich Jarvis, age 30. Born in Montreal, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted at Yankton, February 29, 1864 by Provost Marshal Waldron. Honorably discharged with the company. Was a clerk in Sioux City before enlistment, and a very intelligent and agreeable French gentleman, but what became of him after leaving the service, this reporter has no knowledgs. (G. W. K.)

Jewell, Trobridge R.:

Tobridge R. Jewell, age 21. Born in Calhoun county, Mich. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 4, 1862 at Vermillion under Lt. Clark. Honorably discharged in 1865, and returned to the home of his parents near Vermillion, where he remained several years, and then went to Washington Territory. Of his later life the chronicler has no record. (G. W. K.)

Keeler, Alexander:

Alexander Keeler, age 21. Born in Armstrong county, Penn. Farmer. Enlisted March 30, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out, and went to Greenwood (Yankton Indian Agency) and he may yet be living there. (G. W. K.)

Keely, Daniel:

Daniel Keeley (or Kelley), age 27. Born in Kilkenny, Ireland. Laborer. Enlisted Nov. 6, 1862 at Elk Point under Tripp. Was discharged from the service at the Sioux City hospital, and remained in that place. This chronicler learned that he had died at Sioux City many years ago but cannot approximate the date. (G. W. K.)

Larson, Matthais:

Matthias Larson, age 28. Born in Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 18, 1862, at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out, and soon thereafter located on land in Yankton county near the mouth of James river. Made a farm, married and reared a family. Is not living. (G. W. K.)

Larson, Ole B.:

Ole B. Larson, age 18. Born in Dean, Wisconsin. Laborer. Enlisted July 15, 1863 under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out and settled in Clay or Yankton county on a claim, but am unable to obtain definite information concerning his life. (G. W. K.)

Larvie, John B.:

John B. Larvie, age 29. Born in Quebec, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Feb. 18, 1863, at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out, and returned to Union county where he remained a year or so, and then moved up the Missouri river valley, but to what point this chronicler is not informed. He is not living. (G. W. K.)

Larvie, Octave:

Octave Larvie, age 27. Born in Quebec, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Feb. 15, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Returned to near Jefferson, Union county, and engaged in farming. Married and reared a family. Died about 1908. (G. W. K.)

Leonard, Charles:

Charles Leonard, age 43. Corporal. Born in Cork, Ireland. Laborer. Enlisted February 16, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at the time of mustering out. Returned to Sioux City where he accumulated considerable property. He died near the close of the 19th century. (G. W. K.)

Lionot, Joseph:

Joseph Lionat, age 45. Born in Sorrell, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged at muster out. Then returned to Sioux City where he died, date unknown to this scribe. Before his enlistment in Co. B, he had titles to lands now important parts of Sioux City. (G. W. K.)

McCumber, Henry:

Henry McCumber, age 44. Born in Herkimer county, N. Y. Mechanic and farmer. Enlisted Oct. 13, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out. An almost over-age soldier and a Union (Cole) county pioneer settler south of Elk Point. Married many years before his enlistment. Returned to his home and family upon quitting the service, and lived there a number of years when he sold out and tradition has it that he removed to Yankton. Lost track of him since that time. (G. W. K.)

McDaniels, Daniel N.:

Daniel W. McDaniels, age 18. Born in St. Claire county, Mich. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 20, 1862 at Bon Homme under Capt. Fuller. Was honorably discharged with his company. He returned to Bon Homme county with his father, Nathan, where they had

land and opened farms in the Choteau creek valley, where they resided for about 10 years, then went west to the Black Hills country, where Daniel took up a ranch in Meade county. (G. W. K.)

McDaniels, Nathan:

Nathan McDaniels, age 44. Enlisted Oct. 20, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Clark. Honorably discharged at muster out. Father of Daniel McDaniels; from Bon Homme county. Was a duty sergeant. This chronicler has not been able to learn anything of his later life except that he made his home on Choteau creek and probably went west with his son to Meade county. (G. W. K.)

McDermott, Wm.:

Wm. McDermott, age 19. Corporal. Born in Marshall, Ill. Farmer. Enlisted August 20, 1863 at Yankton under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Went to south-central Iowa. Later career unknown. (G. W. K.)

McDonough, John:

John McDonough, age 43. Born in Clare County, Ireland. Laborer. Enlisted Oct. 11, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out, and returned to the Irish settlement near Elk Point where he had a homestead. Afterwards sold out and invested in Sioux City property. Nothing further has been learned of his career. (G. W. K.)

McKnight, Jacob J.:

Jacob J. McKnight, age 19. Born in Washington county, Ind. Farmer. Enlisted March 17, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Deserted at the Yankton encampment, or at St. James, Nebraska, while on detail duty, July 30, 1863 and nothing has been learned of his subsequent career. (G. W. K.)

McNamarow, Cornelius:

Cornelius McNamarow, age 28. Born in Clare county, Ireland. Moulder. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out. Returned to his family in Sioux City and engaged in farming on his own land near that city. Have no record of his subsequent career. (G. W. K.)

Marmon, Robert: (or Marson)

Robert Marson, age 33. Born in Cass county, Mich. Farmer. Enlisted March 15, 1863 at Elk Point under Tripp. Discharged Dec. 30, 1863 for physical disability. Marson finally located in Nebraska, but this scribe has not been able to learn of his later career. (G. W. K.)

Matthieson, George D.:

George D. Matthieson, age 18. Born in Fall River, Mass. Laborer. Enlisted Nov. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged with his company. George Matthieson's father was killed in the Spirit Lake massacre in 1857. Mrs. Matthieson, the widow, moved to Bon Homme county, D. T., in 1862, with her three sons, George, Richard and Robert and left Bon Homme and settled in Yankton city in the fall of 1862 during the Indian troubles. George returned to Yankton for a short time and then removed to Fort Pierre and Stanley county and entered upon the rearing of live stock, which he followed with such success that he became very prominent in that industry and correspondingly prosperous. He was well known throughout Dakota and highly regarded. He served in the legislature of 1893 as a member of the House from Stanley county. He died suddenly December 27, 1916 while visiting a married daughter in Faulk county. (G. W. K.)

Matthieson, Richard W.:

Richard W. Matthieson, age 14 years 7 months. Born at Coles-

burg, Iowa. Printer. Enlisted Feb. 29, 1864 at Yankton under Provost Marshal Waldron. Honorably discharged at muster out. A younger brother of George. He was one of the detachment of Company B sent as an escort for the Sawyer wagon road expedition in 1865. Richard returned to Yankton and attended public school for a time and then joined his brother at Fort Pierre in the live stock business, and by a diligence and honorable dealings went to the head in that industry. He is yet (1918) among the most prominent and esteemed citizens of the great plains counties. (G. W. K.)

Metcalf, Martin D.:

Martin D. Metcalf, age 39. Born in Courtland, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted September 11, 1862 at Yankton under Capt. Fuller. Resided in Bon Homme county. He was discharged January 9, 1865 at a hospital in Davenport, Iowa, and he probably returned to Bon Homme county, where he had taken a claim before he enlisted, and where he exercised the privileges and authority of a clergyman of the Methodist denomination. Was rather infirm for military service. He came from a section about 25 miles southeast of Sioux City when he immigrated to Dakota. He was a member of one of the early legislatures or was elected Chaplain of the House of Representatives. Was highly respected. Returned in time to Iowa and was lost sight of. (G. W. K.)

Metcalf, Wm.:

Wm. Metcalf, age 19. Born in Steuben county, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 11, 1862, under Lt. Clark. Residence in Bon Homme county. Honorably discharged at muster out of Co. B. Returned to his claim in Bon Homme county; went back to his early home southwest of Sioux City. Believe he was a son of Martin D. He later became a benedict, built up a good farm and reared a family. He died about 1907 from an injury received by a kick from a horse, at his home near Bronson, Iowa. (G. W. K.)

Nelson, Anthony:

Anthony Nelson, age 18. Born in Christiana, Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 11, 1862 at Vermillion under Lt. Clark. Honorably discharged at muster out. Was with the detachment that escorted the Sawyer wagon road expedition in 1865, and was killed by Indians in Wyoming. (G. W. K.)

Nieff, John:

John Nieff (or Ness), age 39. Born in Bavaria. Butcher. Enlisted Oct. 7, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with the company in 1865 according to acceptable record, but unable to obtain any information of his career since that time. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, Bringle:

Bringle Oleson, age 27. Born in Bergen county, Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 27, 1862 at Elk Point under Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Returned to near Vermillion and died there about 1878-9. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, Colburn:

Colburn Oleson, age 34. Born in Bergen county, Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 20, 1862 at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Discharged August 15, 1864 in hospital at Fort Randall. Locatel in Clay county near the Yankton county line and not far from Gayville. Reared a family; improved a farm. Died about the beginning of the present century. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, James:

James Oleson, age 20. Born in Bergen county, Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 21, 1862 at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out. Passed the next winter in Wisconsin. Brought his bride with him in the spring and located on Government land on Brule Creek; improved the farm, and was blessed with an interesting family. Died in 1916. (G. W. K.)

Oleson, Theodore:

Theodore Oleson, age 35. Blacksmith. Born in Christiana, Norway. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 21, 1862, at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with his company and located with his family near Clay creek in Clay county soon after leaving the army. Improved a farm. Died about 1908. (G. W. K.)

Parker, Sterling L.:

Sterling L. Parker, age 33. Corporal. Born in Tioga county, Penn. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 11, 1862 at Yankton under Lt. Clark. He lived in Civil Bend township, Cole county, upon retiring from the army he returned to Elk Point and married. He made a farm home near Elk Point, and finally removed to Nebraska, living at various places. He was a gospel minister and during his life in Union county filled various county or town offices. He died at Leavenworth, Kansas, in 1915, at National Soldier's Home. (G. W. K.)

Pattee, Ferman:

Fernan Pattee, age 17. Born in Ashtown, Mich. Farmer. Enlisted Feb. 10, 1864 at Fort Randall under Capt. Tripp. Relative of Lt.-Col. John Pattee, 7th Iowa Cavalry, then stationed at that post. Honorably discharged at muster out, and probably returned to his Iowa home when the 7th Iowa was mustered out later the same year. (G. W. K.)

Phelps, James O.:

James O. Phelps, age 18. Born in Amity, Penn. Farmer. Enlisted Nov. 24, 1862, at Fort Randall, under Miner. Honorably discharged with the company, but can give no definite information concerning his later career. (G. W. K.)

Phillips, Abel R.:

Abel R. Phillips, age 18. Born in Racine county, Wisconsin. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 21, 1862 at Brule Creek under Lt. Clark. Deserted at Sioux City, Iowa, May 8, 1863, soon after the company was mustered in, but we find that he was judge of probate in Union county in 1864. He was a Brule Creek physician. (G. W. K.)

Reese, General M.:

General M. Reese, age 18. Born in Miami county, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted March 15, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. His friends believe upon authentic report that Reese became a gospel minister with western Nebraska as his field. (G. W. K.)

Rendeau, Baptiste:

Baptiste Rendeau (or Reandeau), age 19. Born in St. Thomas, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 22, 1862 at 12 Mile House, Union county, under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with the company. He returned to Elk Point and engaged in the saloon business. Went to Oklahoma, reporter believes, and died there about 1893. (G. W. K.)

Rendeau, Thos.:

Thos. Rendeau (or Reandeau), age 23. Born in St. Thomas, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 16, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with the company. Had a comfortable home of his own near Jefferson, Union county. Died, leaving a widow, in 1883. (G. W. K.)

Rimer, Miles:

Miles Rimer, age 34. Born in Jackson county, Indiana. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged when mustered out, and returned to St. Johns (Missouri Valley) Iowa to his family. He did not live long after leaving the army. (G. W. K.)

Robert, Fred:

Fred Robert, (or Robeart), age 18. Born in Montreal, Canada. Laborer. Enlisted Sept. 8, 1863 at Fort Randall under Lt. Bacon of Company A. It is probable that he was the son of Antoine Robeart of Yankton, who removed from that place to his former home near Council Bluffs, Ia., during these Indian war times. Upon his discharge from the service the son probably joined the family near Council Bluffs. Nothing whatever has come from them since the war days. (G. W. K.)

Robinson, Elijah:

Elijah K. Robinson, age 39. Born in Putnam county, Indiana. Carpenter. Enlisted October 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged at muster out. He was orderly sergeant of the company. He returned to St. John, (Missouri Valley), Iowa when discharged, where he remained a few years, then went to California. He is not living. (G. W. K.)

Rose, George:

George Rose, age 18. Born in Fulton county, Indiana. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 7, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Was honorably discharged at mustering out, and creditable tradition has it that he went over to the Nebraskians where he became a minister of the gospel with praiseworthy results. (G. W. K.)

Rouse, John:

John Rouse, age 22. Born in Santa Fe, New Mexico. Resided in Bon Homme county on a homestead or pre-emption. Enlisted Sept. 8, 1862 at Yankton under Capt. Ziebach. Came from Minnesota to Bon Homme with the Shober colony. Was one of the Sawyer wagon road escort through Montana in 1865, and was reported killed in a skirmish with the Indians. Lt. Wood of Co. B was commanding the detachment. (G. W. K.)

St. Onge, Louis:

Louis St. Onge, age 44. Born in Verdure county, Canada. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Clark. Sergeant, appointed Oct. 11, 1862. Honorably discharged at muster out. Returned to Sioux City and was seriously injured by a runaway team. He is not now living. (G. W. K.)

Louis St. Onge, age 21. Born in St. Louis, Mo. Painter. Enlisted May 14, 1864 at Yankton under Provost Marshal Waldron. This young soldier had a fair record and received an honorable discharge at muster out, but what employment he engaged in or whither he went does not appear to have been known by any of his old company comrades who survive in the year 1918. (G. W. K.)

Sanborn, Josiah R.:

Josiah R. Sanborn, age 32. Sergeant, appointed Oct. 11, 1862. Born in Chester, Rockingham county, N. H. Lumber dealer. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged on muster out in 1865. Widower with two sons in New Hampshire. After discharge settled in Yankton. Married a Vermont lady. Removed his family to Yankton. Sons about 12 and 15 years of age. The father engaged in the provision business, and later in furniture. Prospered. Held many important offices in church, college and city. Leading citizen with Ward, Tripp, Edmunds. His eldest son, Joe B., now colonel of Illinois militia. Mr. Sanborn died at Yankton before 1905. (G. W. K.)

Searls, William:

William Searls, age 32. Born in Round, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Clark. Died in company quarters at Yankton Agency, D. T., May 19, 1865 of congestion of the lungs. (G. W. K.)

Sheldon, Myron:

Myron Sheldon, age 28. Born in Windham county, Vermont. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 15, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Clark. Corporal. Honorably discharged, and returned to his home near Elk Point where he resided with his family until about 1877, when he sold out and moved to Moscow, Idaho. Died about the end of the last century. (G. W. K.)

Snow, John B.:

John B. Snow, age 18. Born in St. Louis, Mo. Clerk. Enlisted July 25, 1863 at Vermillion under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out in 1865, since which his comrades have no tidings of him. (G. W. K.)

Snyder, Wm. W.:

Wm. W. Snyder, age 21. Born in Coshocton, Ohio. Laborer. Enlisted January 20, 1864 at Fort Randall under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Nothing further can be given concerning his career. (G. W. K.)

Sirrick, John:

John Sorrick, age 18. Born in Warren, Penn. Farmer. Enlisted July 1, 1863 at Yankton under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Went to Rock Island, Illinois, after leaving the service, but of his subsequent life this scribe has no information. (G. W. K.)

Sprague, Dempster B.:

Dempster B. Sprague, age 34. Born in Seneca, Ohio. Farmer. Enlisted March 31, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. Was a Sioux Falls pioneer of 1858-9. He was a teamster in the service, and regarded weak mentally. He died in Yankton about 1870 quite suddenly from the effects of excessive drinking of intoxicants given him by his associates during an early day carnival. (G. W. K.)

Stringer, Joseph:

Joseph Stringer, age 28, Born in Otsego county, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 7, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with his company. Returned to Elk Point and went into business. Sold a variety of goods, keeping something of a department store for about four years. His health failing he removed to Missouri, dying there before the close of the last century. (G. W. K.)

Townsend, Hezekiah:

Hezekiah Townsend, age 44. Born in Yates county, N. Y. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 18, 1862 at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with his company. Located a farm home for himself and family after quitting the service, just south of Elk Point. About 1876 he went to the Black Hills, but returned again to the old home near Elk Point, where he died early in the present century. (G. W. K.)

Travercie, Alexis:

Alexis Travercie, age 23. Born in Woodbury county, Iowa. Farmer. Enlisted Dec. 26, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged and then after a brief time it was believed that Alexis went to an Indian reservation and was lost sight of. (G. W. K.)

Travercie, Paul:

Paul Travercie, age 18. Born in Woodbury county, Iowa. Farmer. Enlisted March 31, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged at muster out. It was generally understood by his acquaintances in Union county that Paul made his home at Fort Pierre after his discharge from the army and died there. (G. W. K.)

Trumbo, William:

William Trumbo, age 18. Born in Highland, Ohio. Laborer. Enlisted Sept. 21, 1862 at Vermillion under Lt. Clark. Was honorably discharged at muster out; returned to Vermillion and was married to Miss Eliza Jordan. Improved a farm in Spink township, Union county. Sold it about 1892-3 and moved to Texas, and died there early in the present century. His widow and children are living in Texas. (G. W. K.)

Turgeon, Ferdinand:

Ferdinand Turgeon, age 25. Born in Belchase county, Canada. Farmer. Enlisted Dec. 13, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged, and returned to Union county near Sioux City, but have no further knowledge concerning his life. (G. W. K.)

Vandevier, Joseph W.:

Joseph W. Vandevier, age 26. Born in Posey county, Indiana. Explorer. Enlisted Nov. 8, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Was honorably discharged with his company, and returned to Elk Point where he located a government land claim. Was elected justice of the peace for Elk Point in 1866, and was re-elected several times. He was a married man but had only one child—a daughter. He was possessed of a competency when he died about 1910. (G. W. K.)

VanOsdel, Samuel:

Samuel Van Osdel, age 18. Born in Madison county, Indiana. Farmer. Enlisted June 26, 1863 at Yankton under Tripp. A brother of Wm. T. Van Osdel. Samuel is still living in Yankton. 1918. (G. W. K.)

VanOsdel, William:

William T. Van Osdel, age 16. Born in Madison county, Indiana. Mar. 1, 1847. Farmer. Enlisted November 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged with the company. Then engaged in farming and freighting until the railroads came. Later took a homestead and three claims and went in for stock-raising, at which he was very successful. In later life devoted himself particularly to the buying and selling of live stock. He was married in 1871 to Miss Permelia Morey of New York, and two daughters were born to them. Mr. VanOsdel is still living in Yankton (1918.)

Verwyk, Berand:

Berand Verwyk (or Barre) age 40. Born in Germany. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 21, 1862, at Brule Creek under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged with the company. Returned to Brule Creek, and located a claim on the Sioux Valley near the bluff, two miles below Richland. He became an invalid about 1870, and died at Wm. Frisbie's house. He gave his claim to a German youth named John Holts. (G. W. K.)

Wallace, Norris J.:**Welch, Jno. J.:**

John J. Welch, age 41. Born in Middlesex, Mass. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 9, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Adams. Honorably discharged at muster out. Returned to Elk Point and to land where he farmed for several years, and then sold his place and moved to California, where he died about 1903. (G. W. K.)

Whitcomb, Josiah:

Josiah Whitcomb, age 29. Born at Grafton, N. H. Mechanic. Enlisted Oct. 13, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Was discharged April 1, 1865 at Yankton Agency by command of General Curtis, March 23, 1865. Returned to Elk Point where he remained for some years, then went west and was killed by hostile Indians. (G. W. K.)

Will, Henry:

Henry Will, age 18 . Born in Germany. Farmer. Enlisted Sept. 11, 1862, at Yankton under Lt. Clark. Honorably discharged with the company. Mr. Will was highly respected by his comrades. Good soldier and fine social manners. Passed out of sight as soon as discharged, and no tidings have come from him (G. W. K.)

Wilson, Thomas:

Thomas Wilson, age 22. Born in Shelby, Kentucky. Farmer. Enlisted March 31, 1863 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Honorably discharged with the company. Returned to St. Johns, Iowa. Became a farmer and fruit grower. Married and reared a family. Is now a resident of Missouri Valley, Iowa. (G. W. K.)

Wixson, Eli B.:

Eli B. Wixson, age 29. Born in Wayne, Steuben county, N. Y., May 6, 1833. Farmer. Located at Elk Point July 22, 1859. Enlisted Oct. 3, 1862 at Elk Point under Capt. Tripp. Returned to Elk Point and resided at or near there until his death which occurred a number of years ago. He was married Nov. 30, 1865 to Mrs. Clara E. Christie, nee Cook, and to them were born six children. He was appointed commissary sergeant Oct. 11, 1862.

Wood, Lorenzo:

Lorenzo Wood, age 20.. Born in Green Lake, Wis. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 7, 1862 at Elk Point under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged in 1865. Returned to Elk Point, married, secured an excellent quarter section of government land. About 1878 he sold out, and joined a colony of emigrants for Idaho. Wood located at Moscow in that Territory. No further information concerning him can be given in this sketch. (G. W. K.)

Wood, Uriah:

Uriah Wood, age 18. Born in Green Lake, Wisconsin. Farmer. Enlisted Oct. 7, 1862 under Lt. Bell. Honorably discharged with the company in 1865. Returned to his father's, John R. Wood's home, near Elk Point. He married Jennie Collins, located a tract of government land near Elk Point and developed a farm. He owned and operated a livery at Elk Point. He reared a fine family of sons and daughters. He died October 29, 1916. (G. W. K.)

Laundresses

Mrs. Henry Arend, April 14, 1863:

Mrs. Theodore Oleson, April 14, 1863:

Mrs. Lydia Robinson, December 1, 1864:

Mrs. Samuel M. Crooks, December 26, 1864:

THE LESUEUR TRADITION

By Doane Robinson

In March 1883 I was detained in St. Paul by a snow blockade and spent much time in the rooms of the Minnesota Historical Society where I met Dr. Edward Duffield Neill,¹ formerly secretary of the Society, but at that time president of Macalester College.² He told me of some of his explorations of French and Canadian archives in search of materials for northwestern history and among other things related some of the enterprises of Charles Pierre Lesueur.³ Speaking of Fort L'Hullier,⁴ Dr. Neill said that the trip of 1700 resulting in the building of that post was not Lesueur's first visit to the far west, but that he had doubtless secured his knowledge of western Minnesota long before by personal inspection. I made no notes of his recital but so far as Dakota is concerned it was substantially as follows:

When the report was received in Canada that LaSalle had demonstrated that the Mississippi river flowed down to Gulf of Mexico. Lesueur and his kinsman, Pierre Lemoyne, (D'Iberville)⁵ conceived a plan to secure furs on the Mississ-

¹Edward Duffield Neill, Presbyterian clergyman, born in Philadelphia August 9, 1823, died in Saint Paul, Minnesota September 26, 1903. He graduated from Amherst 1842; came to Minnesota in 1849 and occupied the Presbyterian pulpit at St. Paul, was superintendent of public instruction and chancellor of the State University 1859-1861; assisted in organizing the Minnesota Historical Society in 1849 and was its first secretary; Chaplain First Minnesota infantry throughout the Civil War, and was U. S. Consul at Dublin 1869 and 1870. Was president of Macalester 1873-1884 and thereafter until his death professor of history, literature and political economy in that institution. He is the author of the History of Minnesota 1882.

²Macalester College, a Presbyterian institution located adjacent to Saint Paul, Minnesota, founded as an academy in 1872 and reorganized as a college in 1884.

³Charles Pierre LeSueur, born about 1657 in the parish of Notre Dame, in Artois, near Calais, France, the son of Victor LeSueur and Anne Honneur. LeSueur married Marguerite Messier, at Boucherville, Canada, March 29, 1690. His wife was the daughter of Michael Messier and Anne LeMoynes, the latter being an aunt of Pierre LeMoynes, D'Iberville. LeSueur and LeMoynes, though related by marriage were not cousins as has frequently been stated.

⁴Fort L'Hullier (Lullay) the post built by LeSueur near Mankato in 1700. Named for Count L'Hullier farmer general of the French court.

⁵Pierre LeMoynes D'Iberville, born at Montreal July 16, 1661, died at Havana, Cuba, July 9, 1706. First governor of the Province of Louisiana, with his capital at Biloxi, Mississippi.

ippi and float them to the gulf and thence to the English market, thus avoiding the payment of tribute to the Canadian government upon the shipment. With this in view Lesueur secured a stock of goods and came west, while Lemoyne took a small ship and went to the gulf.

When Lesueur reached the Mississippi he was chagrined to find that Frontenac had anticipated the trick and had policed the Mississippi at Rock Rapids. Not to be defeated in his undertaking Lesueur conceived the plan of going far west to some stream which he believed he would find that entered the Mississippi below Rock Island and trading upon it circumvent the police station. He consequently struck west from the mouth of the Wisconsin and found no river that seemed to answer his necessities until he reached the Big Sioux at Sioux Falls.

Here he found a large community of Omaha Indians to whom he brought the first white wares, and for a very small expenditure secured a fabulously large amount of fur. He built flat boats below the falls and carried his booty down the Big Sioux, Missouri and Mississippi to the gulf where Lemoyne was waiting and carried the furs away to London. Lesueur himself did not go down to the gulf but securing a small amount of fur on the Mississippi carried it back to Canada and dutifully paid the tax upon it.

An unidentified writer in the *Toronto Globe* for about 1887 in effect tells the same tale fixing the date of the enterprise at 1683.

For many years I have endeavored to secure some verification of this report. Apparently Dr. Neill left no record of it. However in his history of Minnesota he publishes DeIsle's map, made in 1702 from information given him by Lesueur and upon it is laid down a mark leading from the mouth of the Wisconsin to Sioux Falls and this mark is labeled "*Chenan (Chemin) des voyageurs*," (track of the voyagers) which gives some support to the tradition of a visit to Sioux Falls by Lesueur, but nowhere have I been able to get substantial proofs.

In 1913 while working upon the Verendrye papers I submitted the matter to Dr. Benjamin Sulte,⁶ the notable Can-

adian historical authority and he, with his usual care, went through all available records of the ancient period and made extensive notes which he supplied to me. He did not find the definite proof but declares: "As an opinion I say that Dr. Neill is likely right. Pierre Lemoyne and Lesueur were both given to the fur business, no matter how they did it."

Dr. Sulte made diligent effort to discover the whereabouts of these worthies in 1683 but was only partially successful. Lesueur was in bad repute in Canada at the time. Sulte quotes the court record (Council Souverain de Quebec) for July 14th 1781: "Pierre Lesueur, now in the prison of this town under the accusation of having gone to the far away nations and made a traffic with them contrary to law. He acknowledges the fact that he had been at Sault Ste. Mary and no further, because that, when there the Rev. Father Bailloquet, Jesuit, had told him he was wrong in doing so. He adds that from the moment he left his companions and remained in the service of the Jesuits of the Saut who employed him to go from mission to mission without any pay or benefit of my fur trade. He is condemned to a fine of 100 francs as a mild punishment." It was but a few months after this that the news of LaSalle's discovery electrified the traders of Canada.

Dr. Sulte, finds in Tanquay, V. 375 that "in 1683 Lesueur goes down the Wisconsin, then up the Mississippi, to trade with the Sioux." This would place him in a position to have made the trip to the Falls of the Big Sioux, at the very time the tradition says he did make the trip.

We hear no more of Lesueur until 1689 when he was again on the Mississippi with Nicolas Perrot⁷ in his treaty

⁶Dr. Benjamin Sulte, F. R. S. C. born at Three Rivers, Sept. 17, 1841, educated at the Friar's School, Three Rivers; began life in commercial and lumbering enterprises but soon entered the army and after 1865 has been in civil service. He has occupied many places of high importance and great honor. President of the Institute Canadien, President of the Royal Society of Canada. He has written extensively and is the author of *Historie des Canadiens-Francaise*, a wonderful work in 8 folio volumes tracing the history of practically every French Canadian family. He is known as the National poet of Canada and his contributions to Canadian history and literature are voluminous and important.

⁷Nicholas Perrot a notable French Canadian explorer, born at Montreal in 1644. In 1689 he was charged with the duty of negotiating treaties with the Wisconsin Indians looking to the opening of the high-ways to travel across that state, then closed by the hostilities of the tribes toward each other and toward the French.

making business and thereafter he was operating about the great lakes until 1695 when Frontenac sent him to build a post at Lake Pepin at about the present location of Redwing, Minnesota, and that fall he returned to Canada taking with him the Sioux Chief Cioascate (as the French spelled the name phonetically) and 12 canoe loads of Indians. Lesueur stayed in Canada the following winter and the Sioux Chief died there. While in Canada Lesueur told the authorities about the mines of which he had heard on the upper Minnesota river. In the spring of 1696 he seems to have hurried back west with his Indians and then was again in Quebec in the autumn whence he sailed by permission of Frontenac to France to secure royal permission to open the mines. He secured the backing of the court and returned to the Mississippi by way of the gulf having first visited Canada, in the winter of 1799 and the following summer with a party of 19 Frenchmen ascended the Mississippi and Minnesota to the vicinity of Mankato, where that autumn he built Fort L'Hullier, upon a high bluff on the east side of the Blue Earth river and just below the mouth of the Lesueur. No more beautiful or sightly location could have been chosen. Dr. Neill in his history of Minnesota, page 103 says: "He commenced his operations, not only with a view to the trade of beaver, but also to gain a knowledge of the mines which he had previously discovered." From this post it is certain that his traders,—if he did not personally,—traded west to the Sioux river.

While Dr. Sulte was able thus to trace the whereabouts of Lesueur for most of the time from 1781 forward, he was not so fortunate in the case of LeMoyne for the same period though he found nothing that would indicate that he was not absent upon this enterprise at the time suggested by Dr. Neill.

In 1702 D'Iberville as governor of Louisiana made a report to the French Government upon conditions in his domain in which he recommended the diversion of the western fur trade from the Canadian to the Mississippi route. Count Ponchatrain, the French minister in commenting upon this recommendation thus illuminates the character of Lesueur:

"It ought not to be surprising that M. d'Iberville pro-

poses the one named Lesueur to go among these nations, being a man of his own, having married his first cousin, and one of the most ardent from Canada for the trade of the woods, having done nothing else for forty years, at first under pretext of stopping the war among themselves and with the Foxes and other neighboring nations, at which he was not successful, altho he was many times under express orders from M. de Frontenac, contenting himself with bringing back beavers, and then he has proposed to his majesty to explore the mines in the very Sioux country. He has been there for the sake of Canada under this pretext. * * * It appears that he has been driven from the banks of the Mississippi * * * through the precautions of Messrs. de Callieres and de Champigny who have been fully convinced that this particular man had no other design than to carry on trade, and not at all the intention of being useful to the King."

On the contrary Margry gives a good deal of information which leads one to conclude that LeMoyne was entirely ignorant of the mouth of the Mississippi until the 31st of March 1699 when he made the discovery and LeSueur who was with him at once embarked up the stream upon his famous expedition which resulted in the founding of Fort L'Hullier. In a considerable correspondence which LeMoyne sends to the Minister of Marine under date of June 28, 1698, nor in his journal of the trip of 1699 is there a single suggestion that he had ever seen the region previously. All of this material will be found in Margry,* Book 4. "*Decouverte Par Mer des Bouches Du Mississippi, et Etablissements de LeMoyne D'Iberville sur Le Golfe du Mexico.*"

This correspondence with others connected with it shows that Canada was tremendously wrought up over the Mississippi establishments and against LeMoyne and LeSueur toward the end of the seventeenth and the beginning of the eighteenth centuries.

To summarize the entire evidence it appears entirely possible that Leseuer should have visited Sioux Falls as early as 1683 and during the following fifteen years may have ex-

*Margry, Vol. 4 p. 607. Translation by C. Stanley Stevenson.

plored all of that region repeatedly. His map of 1702 confirms this view and there is nothing whatever that combats it.

It seems quite improbable that he sent furs down the Mississippi at that time, or that LeMoyne conspired with him in the matter, but it does appear that later he did engage in illicit trade in the west and that his cousin LeMoyne was no doubt a party to it. That Dr. Neill was perhaps mistaken by a dozen years or so in the date of the enterprise. Certainly the legend that Lesueur visited Sioux Falls before the year 1700 is as well supported as are many facts accepted as settled history.

Sulte's Notes on LeSueur

The following notes pertaining to Lesueur, made by Dr. Sulte, and not already quoted above are published for their value to the general history of the period.

1683 Lesueur goes down river Wisconsin, then up the Mississippi to trade with the Sioux.

Tanguay V. 375 says that Lesueur was sometimes called Pierre-Charles and that his family surname was Dagenais.

In May 1689 when Nicolas Perrot took possession of the Upper Mississippi in the name of France, Le Sueur was present.

During the autumn of 1692 he built a trading post on Madeline Island in the bay of Chagouamigon at the place afterwards called La Pointe. Previous to 1692 and from about 1660, La Pointe was on terra firma opposite the island—a distance of say 3 miles. The name of La Pointe was carried to the post erected by Le Sueur. It is said he intended to make that spot the base of operations in the Sioux country. The government of Canada kept a military officer at that place until 1750 if not later.

1692. Lesueur, it appears had instructions to try to induce the Indians of Saut Ste Mary to keep in good terms with the Sioux, with a view to facilitate the fur trade.

It is stated that the French coureurs de bois used to pass by Green Bay and meet the Fox, also the Mascoutins and that these Indians commonly robbed the coureurs de bois

because they carry merchandise to the Sioux their enemies. (LaPotherie III 187.)

1692. In May or June, Lesueur left Montreal with instruction to put himself under the direction of the commandant at Michil-limebrusc. In this voyage he went to Chagourmigon. Lesueur was again in Montreal in September 1693.

1695. Summer. Lesueur is in Montreal with Chingoube, Sauteur chief, also with Cisocate, a Sioux chief, also the first Sioux woman seen in Canada; besides these three he had with him a number of Indians in twelve canoes.

Arriving on the 15th of July, they were received by Callicies, governor of Montreal, and Champigny the intendant of the colony, with great marks of friendship. On the 18th Frontenac granted them a solemn audience where all the "society" of the town was present. The French had a strong desire to make allies of the Sioux—in the interest of the fur trade—and Cioscate was treated like a prince because he was supposed to be a man of influence amongst his people.

1695-1696. The Sioux chief undertook to spend the winter in Montreal, but he became sick before the spring and died after thirty days of suffering.

1696. Le Sueur did not give up the hope of making money with the fur trade, but he added another business to his programme: that about a mine of which he had heard as existing near the Minnesota river.

Frontenac was favorable to the scheme, nevertheless he dared not sign the permission to that effect because of the opposition in the Council. Therefore, he granted leave to Lesueur to go to France, and the fellow left Quebec for that purpose in the fall of 1696.

1697. May. LeSueur is in Versailles. He writes a statement for the king saying he had been told of mines of lead, copper, blue earth and also green. He proposes to form an establishment in the Sioux country to secure these rich products. He says that the English were advancing by the Wabash and that it was necessary to take a footing before them.

Perrot had crossed the Mississippi without doing any-

thing more. Le Sueur wished to make a regular settlement on the west shore.

He asked to be appointed commandant at Chagouamigon, with instruction to spread around the Mississippi, lakes and rivers comprised between the sources of the great river on the western and river of the Kikapous on the east, and Lake Pepin on the south.

1697. April 27th. The king allows Le Sueur to commence a poste on the Mississippi. He was permitted to hire in Canada from 20 to 25 men to work the mines, but no fur trade is permitted.

By the end of June next, Lesueur embarked at La Rochelle to return to Canada. When they came near Newfoundland they were captured by a British fleet and sent to Portsmouth. Happily the treaty of peace (Buswick) was signed soon after and our man went to Versailles for new papers—he had thrown the original ones at sea when captured.

1698. Champigny, always opposed to the plans of Lesueur, because he considered them chimerical wrote to the Court against the new enterprise. Frontenac, the “accomplice” of Lesueur, was dead. Callieres was governor general and entirely in accord with the views of Champigny—he also wrote strong letters, and declared that he was not such fool as to be blind over the illicit traffic of Lesueur. He say “all the business of the far away countries turn to the benefit of Lesueur, Tonty, La Forest and the Coureurs de bois.”

1698, May 21st. A new patent is signed by the king, with permission to take fifty men for the work, also the privilege to deal with any fur which did not enter into the making of hats.

In September following, Lesueur was in Montreal getting ready to start for the West.

1699, 29th October. The Conseil Souverain de Quebec takes into consideration a declaration signed by the king on the 27th May of that year cancelling the permission given on the 21st May 1698 to Le Sueur, for working some alleged mines on the shores of Mississippi, forbidding him now to infringe the declaration of the king, under date of May

23rd, 1696, against such enterprises. The Conseil registers the document and orders that the measure will be carried out.

1700. Automne. Lesueur explores 44 leagues on rivers St. Peter and Green up to the 1st October.

Green River discharges itself into river St. Pierre, says Penicault.

They worked at the pretended mines during the winter.

1701. May. Leaving 10 or 12 men to work at the mines, all the rest went back to the lower part of the Mississippi bringing with them a certain quantity of earth—blue and green—which was sent to France—and we hear no more of it.

The post at river St. Peter was soon abandoned.

1700. Summer. The English of the East were beginning to approach the Mississippi.

By the end of April 1700 d' Iberville gave Lesueur a large barge or rowing boat and 25 men, to go to the mines. A very slow voyage. Penicault is full of details on the subject.

After passing Pelee Island they arrived at St. Croix River "where there was a cross planted."

Thirty-nine miles further they came to St. Anthony Falls. (Margry V. 414.) There they stopped, on the 16th of September.

Then, they withdrew a little in order to enter St. Peter River—or Minnesota.

In some way Le Sueur learned of the cancellation of his patent, for he went to France and joined d' Iberville who left, in 1699, for the mouth of the Mississippi where he arrived in the spring of 1700.

Le Sueur had not seen the Mississippi since the summer of 1695. This time he was at its mouth.

They found some Canadians amongst the Cahokias, between the Ohio and the Illinois Rivers. Henry de Tonty resided on the Illinois; he knew that d' Iberville was coming and, with twenty men, went to meet him.

1703. Le Sueur trades in the Sioux country under a privilege from the king dated May 1702.

In a memorandum dated 14th June 1704 from Versailles, the governor of Canada is told that Madame Lesueur is permitted to join her husband in Louisiana.

A few years later Lesueur was on the sea, coming from France, when he died. He was returning to Louisiana.

In 1713 Madame Lesueur was still in Louisiana.

1701. June. Lesueur is authorized to transport to France some goods he possessed in Montreal, provided there is no fur amongst them.

1702. April. He goes to France with d' Iberville. Once there he helped Guillaume Delisle in the preparation a map of the Mississippi.

Delisle, 1718, we see fort l' Huilier near a tributary of Minnesota River and this seems correct, but, below lake Pepin, west side of the Mississippi, there is another post, not certainly that of Lesueur because this one was above the lake.

Same map has a trading post on the upper St. Croix River. The lead mines are shown above river Moingnoa or Des Moines.

Children of Pierre Lesueur and Marguerita Messier.

1693, 15th Feb., Montreal. Anne. Not known otherwise.

1694, 4th June, Montreal. Louise Marguerita. Married 1718, Montreal.

1696, 21st April, Montreal. Marie. Married 1713, Boucherville.

1697, 1st June, Montreal. Jean Paul.¹

1699, 4th July, Montreal. Marguerite. Not known otherwise.

¹I have seen a mention of Louis son of our Lesueur, about the year 1703, but cannot find it again.

1694 or 1695. Perrot having abandoned forts Saint Antoine, Saint Nicolas and the one called les Mines, and returned to Lower Canada, at Becaucourt his place of residence (where his descendants are still living) the count of Frontenac sent Lesueur to build a fort on an island of the

Mississippi "at more than 200 leagues higher up than the Illinois," in the hope to keep the Sioux and the people (Indians) of saut Ste. Mary in peaceful terms.

It is believed that this fort was situated on the vicinity of Red Wing, west shore of the Mississippi, a little above lake Pepin.

On the map of Delisle

EXPEDITIONS INTO DAKOTA.

BY C. STANLEY STEVENSON

The years 1844 and 1845 brought two exploring parties within the borders of what has since become South Dakota. The first under the command of Capt. James Allen, Co. "I," 1st Dragoons,¹ crossed from the headwaters of the Des Moines to the Big Sioux, thence down that river to the Missouri and back to Fort Des Moines. The following summer, 1845, Captain E. V. Sumner, Co. "B," 1st Dragoons, was ordered to visit the Indians on the St. Peter's or Minnesota river, and the half-breeds farther north in the Red river country, and on this expedition crossed over into South Dakota into what is now Roberts county.² Both of these expeditions are of sufficient interest to merit an account of the explorers and a reproduction of their story of the country explored, especially that pertaining to South Dakota.

Allen's Expedition in 1844.

James Allen³ was born in Ohio in 1806. At nineteen years of age he entered West Point Military Academy as a cadet from Indiana, graduating from there in 1829, ranking

¹After the Louisiana Purchase, the United States found it necessary to police the western frontier and for that purpose had stationed up and down the Mississippi in sixteen establishments approximately 56 companies of infantry, some of them mounted. These companies acted as escorts to the incoming white population, as a protection from the incursions of the returning Indians, and as the enforcers of Federal laws regarding trade and the Indians. In 1832 there was organized the United States Rangers, who ranged the western frontier for a year and then, experienced troops, were converted into dragoons. The bill authorizing such a reorganization was signed by President Jackson, March 2, 1833 and with the appointment of the officers two days later, the 1st Regiment of Dragoons was ready for duty on the western plains. Henry Dodge was made the colonel and among the other officers were Captain Edwin V. Sumner, and Lieutenant Jefferson Davis, afterwards president of the Confederate States. This regiment served as the 1st Dragoons until 1855 when it became the 1st Cavalry, and this was changed to 4th Cavalry in 1861. (Pelzer's *Marches of the Dragoons in the Mississippi Valley*, Iowa Hist. Soc. 1917, and *Historical Register and Dictionary of the Army*.)

²Although there is nothing in the report to indicate definitely the route into South Dakota, it is likely that the command crossed to the south side of the Minnesota river and so were on the east side of Big Stone lake and crossed between that lake and Lake Traverse into Roberts county on its way to Devil's Lake, North Dakota. (See note 51.)

³See *Marches of the Dragoons*, *Historical Register and Dictionary of the Army*, and *Iowa Journal of History and Politics*, Vol. II, No. 1, January 1913, page 68 et seq.

34th in a class that included such men as Robert E. Lee and Joseph E. Johnston. With a commission of 2nd Lieutenant he was at once assigned to the 5th Infantry for duty on the western frontier. It was while thus commissioned that he was chosen to accompany Henry R. Schoolcraft⁴ on his exploring expedition of 1832. . Thus is his name linked with the discovery of the headwaters of the Mississippi. In 1839 Nicollet⁵ explored the same country and in his report says: "The honor of having first explored the sources of the Mississippi, and introduced a knowledge of them in physical geography, belongs to Mr. Schoolcraft and Lieut. Allen," etc.

On March 2, 1833 the battalion of mounted rangers stationed on the western frontier was discharged, and in lieu of it there was organized the 1st regiment of dragoons. Second Lieut. Allen was transferred to this regiment, a little over two years later, May 31, 1835, was made a 1st Lieutenant and then two years later than that, June 30, 1837, received a Captaincy.

During the summer of 1842, Capt. Allen with "I" Company of the 1st Dragoons was ordered to Fort Atkinson, Iowa Territory, and later to the Sac and Fox Agency,⁶ there

⁴Henry R. Schoolcraft. 1793-1864. Born in New York. In 1817-1818 made a tour of the west especially through Missouri and Arkansas. Accompanied the Lewis Cass Expedition of 1820 and in 1830 was commissioned by the government to explore the headwaters of the Mississippi in search of its real source. On this expedition Lake Itasca was explored and named, though known before that as Lac La Biche. Superintendent of Indian Affairs in the Northern Department. In 1851-57 publisher of six volumes of "Historical and statistical Information Respecting the History, Condition, and Prospects of the Indian Tribes of the United States. (New International Ency., and Minn. His. Coll. Vol. VII.)

⁵Joseph N. Nicollet. 1790-1844. Born in Cluses, Savoy. Educated there and in Paris, where he was naturalized in 1819. Became noted as an astronomer. Forced through financial mishaps to come to the United States. Was given some government assistance in making a geographical and geological survey of the Mississippi-Missouri country. Result was published as "Report and Map of the Hydrographical Basin of the Upper Mississippi River." See New International Ency., Minn. His. Coll. Vol. I, S. Dak. His. Coll. Vol. I, p. 106.

⁶Sac and Fox Agency. Under a treaty with the Sac and Fox Indians, dated October 21, 1837, an agency was established the following spring on a site selected by the agent, Joseph M. Street, and some of the principal chiefs. The site selected was on the Des Moines river near what is now Agency or Agency City, Wapello county, Iowa. The Indians resented the persistent incursions of the whites on their land and the insistent demands for a new treaty which they as persistently refused to make. It was to put down the threatened violence on the part of the whites that Capt. Allen was ordered to the agency in 1841, establishing himself in some abandoned cabins of the American Fur Company, which he tried to name Fort Sanford, but which the War Department referred to simply as the Sac and Fox Agency. The removal treaty was finally made how-

to establish a protectorate over the Sac and Fox Indians, keeping away the numerous trespassers and squatters. In November of 1842 he built Fort Raccoon⁷ or Fort Des Moines at the confluence of the Raccoon and Des Moines rivers and from that post in 1843, '44 and '45 made short expeditions of exploration and in the line of his particular duty. One such expedition, that of 1844, was up to the headwaters of the Des Moines, west through the "Hole in the Mountain"⁸ to the Big Sioux and so he came within the borders of what is now South Dakota. Capt. Allen, or rather Lieutenant Colonel Allen,⁹ died August 23, 1846, while conducting the "Mormon Battalion"¹⁰ from Missouri and Iowa west to New Mexico.

We print herewith those parts of the letter of transmit-

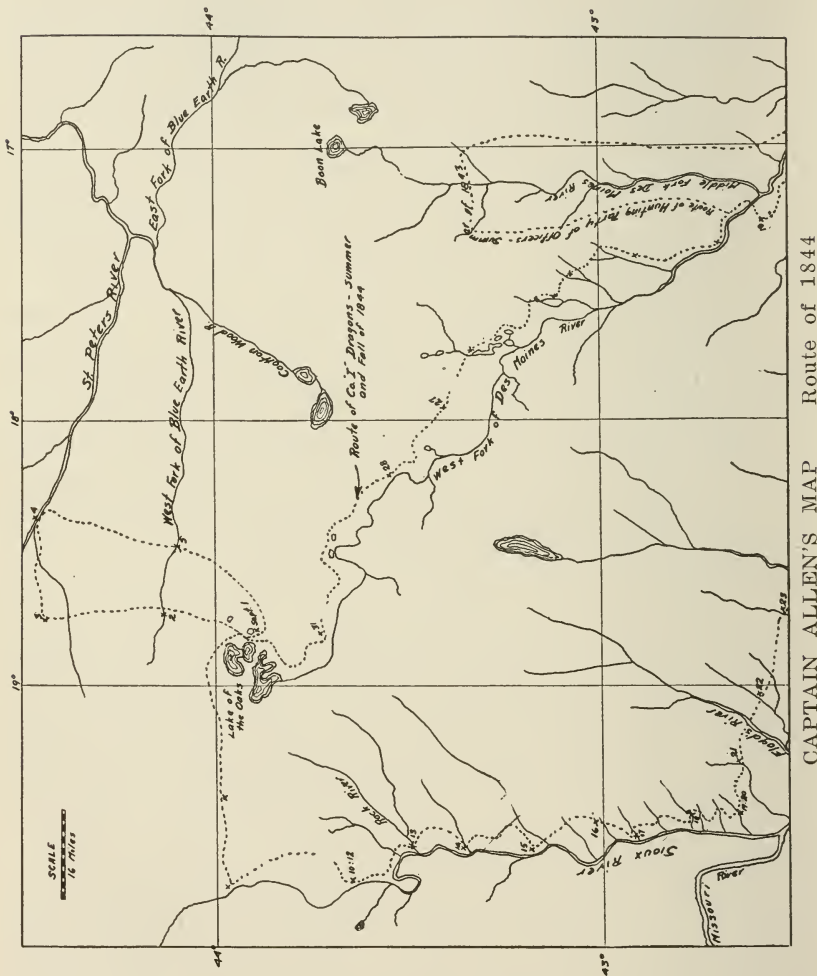
ever in October 1842 and the following spring the agency was re-established near Fort Des Moines. Here it remained until 1845 when the last of the Sac and Fox tribes were forced across the Missouri river. (Iowa Journal, July 1916, p. 375.)

⁷Fort Raccoon or Fort Des Moines. Following the treaty of October 1842 with the Sac and Fox Indians which necessitated their removal farther up and west on the Des Moines river, this fort was constructed at the junction of the Raccoon and Des Moines rivers. Capt. Allen attempted to have it officially recognized as Fort Raccoon but the War Department ignored his suggestions and Fort Des Moines it became. The main purpose of this establishment was the protection of the Sac and Fox from the Sioux Indians. (Iowa Journal, April 1914, P. 192.)

⁸Hole in the Mountain. Samuel A. Medary, engineer to Wm. H. Nobles, Superintendent of the Fort Ridgley and South Pass Wagon Road, in his report says: "Coteau Percee Creek, the outlet of Lake Benton, winds through an opening in the Coteau des Prairies, running in a southwesterly direction to the Big Sioux River. This opening, called "Mountain Pass" or "Hole-in-the-Mountain," half a mile in width, is enclosed by irregular bluffs from two to three hundred feet in height. The surface of the valley thus formed descends imperceptibly to the Big Sioux River. It is the only route known favorable for a railroad, through or over the Coteau des Prairies." This expedition of W. H. Nobles in 1857 was over a section of a proposed wagon route from St. Paul to the Pacific Ocean with the idea of making it a line for a transcontinental railroad. See reports of the Nobles expedition in S. Dak. His. Coll. Vol. VI, page 183.

⁹Lieutenant-Colonel Allen. The Historical Register and Dictionary of the Army gives James Allen's highest rank as that of Captain, while the Centennial of the United States Military Academy, 1802-1902, says he attained the rank of lieutenant-colonel, page 630.

¹⁰Mormon Battalion. Driven out of Ohio and Missouri, then for a while in Illinois and Iowa and then in 1845 and 1846 driven from there, the Mormons set out for the Rocky Mountains and the country beyond. While the main body of this great pilgrimage was encamped at Mt. Pisgah, in what is now Union county, Iowa, it was joined by Captain Allen who set up a recruiting station for volunteers for the Mexican War and succeeded in enlisting five companies of one hundred men each. It has been stated that the exceedingly destitute condition of the Mormon band finally induced the leader, Brigham Young, to try and obtain the \$20,000 bounty money offered by the government for a regiment of volunteers, and (as Van der Zee quotes in "The Mormon Trails in Iowa," Iowa Journal, Jan. 1914, p. 14) "Brigham recruited a regiment, persuaded, commanded them to leave their families, many of them destitute, and join General Scott's Army, then in Mexico, and they obeyed." Evidently it was for this service that James Allen received his commission as a lieutenant-colonel, (Ex. Doc. 8, 1st sess. 30 Cong. p. 653) and it was while engaged in this task of taking his regiment of "volunteers" to Mexico that he died, August 23, 1846.



tal and of the journal¹¹ which relate particularly to our state.

Report of an expedition into the Indian country, made by company "I," 1st regiment of dragoons, in obedience to orders No. 13, dated headquarters third department,¹² St. Louis, Mo., June 13, 1844.

The company was organized for this expedition in the early part of July, but was detained by subsequent orders until the 11th of August. It marched from Fort Des Moines with the following strength:

Captain J. Allen, 1st dragoons, commanding;

Assistant Surgeon J. S. Griffith,¹³ medical staff;

First Lieutenant P. Calhoun,¹⁴ 2nd dragoons;

Second Lieutenant P. Noble,¹⁵ 1st dragoons;

Brevet Second Lieutenant J. H. Potter,¹⁶ 1st infantry, A. C. S., and A. A. Q. M.;

50 rank and file of dragoons; and

2 privates of infantry.

The troops were provisioned with pork for 40 days, flour for 60 days, and small rations for 70 days. The route

¹¹This letter and journal may be found in House Executive Documents, No. 168, 29th Congress, 1st Session.

¹²Third Department. General Orders No. 40, dated July 12, 1842, re-districted the country geographically into nine departments. The third department consisted of "The State of Missouri (above the 37th degree of north latitude,) the State of Illinois, the Iowa Territory, that part of Wisconsin Territory west of the 13th degree of longitude west from Washington, and the Indian country north and west of the lines indicated. Headquarters, Jefferson barracks." House Doc. 97, 27th Cong. 3rd Sess.

¹³John Strother Griffin. Born in Virginia, Enlisted from Kentucky. Commissioned as Assistant Surgeon June 18, 1840. Assigned as post surgeon at Fort Des Moines from 1843 to 1846. Resigned September 14, 1854. (Hist. Reg. and Dict. of the Army, Iowa Journal January 1913, p. 74.)

¹⁴Patrick Calhoun. Born in District of Columbia. Cadet of West Point from South Carolina. Graduated 1837, ranking 37th in his class. Was breveted 2nd lieutenant of the 2nd dragoons, July 1, 1841, and commissioned as such in December. 1st lieutenant July 29, 1847; captain September 6, 1853. Died June 4, 1858. (Hist. Reg. and Dict. of the Army.)

¹⁵Patrick Noble was born in South Carolina and entered West Point a cadet from that state, graduating 33rd in his class in 1838. Brevetted 2nd lieutenant 1st dragoons, July 1842 and commissioned as such December 31, 1843. 1st lieutenant December 6, 1846. Died December 27, 1848.

¹⁶Joseph Haydn Potter. Born in New Hampshire. Cadet from same state. Graduate 1839. No. 22 in class, next to U. S. Grant. Brevet 2nd lieutenant 1st infantry, July 1, 1843; 2nd lieutenant 7th infantry October 21, 1845; 1st lieutenant October 30, 1847; Captain January 9, 1856; colonel 12th N. H. Infantry, September 22, 1862; brigadier general of volunteers May 1, 1865; honorably mustered out of volunteer service January 15, 1866; lieutenant colonel 30th infantry July 28, 1866; transferred to 4th infantry March 15, 1869; colonel 24th infantry December 11, 1873; brigadier general April 1, 1886; retired October 12, 1886. Died December 1, 1892. Was several times cited and advanced for gallant and meritorious conduct in the Mexican and Civil Wars. (Hist. Reg. and Dict. of the Army.)

designated in the department orders referred to was up the Des Moines river, and to the sources of the Blue Earth river of the St. Peter's; thence to the waters of the Missouri; and thence returning through the country of the Pottowatomies. So little was known of the true geography of the country to be passed over, that it was impossible to define the route beforehand with minute exactness; and I was of course embarrassed, in some degree, to estimate the time we ought to be out, and the distance we might have to march. I therefore made provision for a march of about 800 miles, and an absence of 70 or 80 days, assuming that many days might be employed in exploring the country near the line of our route. For the actual route passed over, I must refer to the accompanying map,¹⁷ which will show it more fully and completely than it could be made by any other description. The map was constructed by Lieutenant Potter, under my immediate direction, and the care of taking minute notes on the way, and the pains taken during its projection by that officer to secure all the information within his reach, will warrant me in saying that it gives a very correct delineation of the country passed over, as also the topography of other parts of this territory perhaps the most accurate on record.

For a minute description of the country, and a close relation of all matters connected with the march, I will refer to the accompanying journal, which gives the observations of each day, and is nearly a literal copy of my notes made at the time shown by the record.

The route was from this post up the Des Moines river on the west side, as far as the "Iron Banks,"¹⁸ when we crossed that river a few miles above its forks, and 100 miles

¹⁷In transmitting the report and journal of the Allen expedition to the Secretary of War, Adjutant General R. Jones says: "Instead of the map of the route accompanying the report, I submit the more perfect map of the Upper Mississippi by Nicollet, (from which Captain Allen's sketch no doubt was taken,) etc." The Allen map, however, has been secured from the War Department and appears in this volume.

¹⁸Iron Banks. At Humboldt, Iowa. Allen's journal for August 19 says: "* * * *"; went on a due north course about 5 miles, when we struck the west branch of the Des Moines at a place called the "Iron Banks;" here we crossed without trouble at a rapid ford, on a bottom of lime rock and primitive boulders; the river was above its meridian height, and was rising; a little below the ford is a limestone ledge of 20 feet height, on the east bank, in their horizontal strata, and much mixed and colored with oxides of iron."

above the mouth of Raccoon; thence up between the forks, but near the west branch, to the extreme source of this branch, in a lake which I have named "the Lake of the Oaks,"¹⁹ 248 miles from the mouth of Raccoon. This lake may be taken as the true source of the Des Moines river, being at the most northerly point of any of its waters, and the furthest from its mouth. It is otherwise remarkable for a singular arrangement of peninsulas, running into it from all sides, and for a heavy growth of timber that covers these peninsulas and the borders of the lake. We found its latitude, by several observations of the sun, to be 43 degrees, 57' 32"; but the observations were made with a small and imperfect sextant, and ought not to be assumed as entirely correct. We had no means of determining its longitude, as we could not with our instruments measure even lunar distances, and we were not supplied with a chronometer.

From the Lake of the Oaks, I explored the country north 37 miles to latitude 44 degrees, 27' 32", and thence east to the St. Peter's river in the same latitude.

In this route I crossed twice going out, and once returning, a small stream²⁰ bearing to the south, and which I took to be a branch of the Blue Earth river; and, if so, it is the most northerly branch of that river. From the St. Peter's river, I made a circuit to the southward of 57 miles, to return to the Lake of the Oaks, where a portion of the command had remained encamped. Thence I marched nearly due west 38 miles to a river which I took to be the Big Sioux of the Missouri. We followed this river down 159 miles to

¹⁹Lake of the Oaks. Without doubt Lake Shetek in Murray county, Minn. Allen gives the altitude here at this lake as 43 degrees, 57' 32" but adds that this sextant was a little off. A comparison of his map of the route with the modern map will make clear his mistake in supposing Lake Shetek to be the source of the Des Moines, which, apparently leading to the lake suddenly turns to the southwest and into Great Oasis Lake. His latitude readings should have been 44 degrees, 10 or 12 minutes. Taking this into consideration we find that he was in reality 10' or more higher than his readings indicate. Thus his route west to the Big Sioux, as he says as 44 degrees, was really along the line of 44 degrees 10', which would take him through or near the Hole in the Mountain, south of Lake Benton, and along the north line of Moody county, S. Dak. The word Shetek is an Ojibway word meaning "Pelican" and the lakes were so named by the early voyageurs. The Sioux call this group "Rabechy"—the place where the pelicans nestle.—Nicollet's Report, p. 13, House Doc. 52, 28 Cong. 2nd Sess.

²⁰Cottonwood river. Not a branch of the Blue Earth. In the lower part of Redwood county where the crossing was made the Cottonwood flows in a southeasterly direction.

its mouth in the Missouri river, and thence took the nearest practicable route back to Fort Des Moines, crossing on the way the Little Sioux river, and several minor streams noted on the map. * * * At the Lake of the Oaks there are many hundred acres of excellent timber; but the country all around is high and bleak, and looks so inhospitable that it will be many years before any settlement can be led to it. From this point north and east to the St. Peter's, 50 or 60 miles, there is much fine rich prairie, covered with a luxuriant grass, easy to march over in any direction, but no timber to speak of. Much the same kind of surface extends west from the source of the Des Moines to the Big Sioux of the Missouri. And here was the first great buffalo range that we had seen—and surely, of all this upper country, these animals could not have selected any more rich, luxuriant, and beautiful for their summer feeding. All of the country from the St. Peter's river to the Big Sioux, in latitude 43 degrees to 44½ degrees, may be easily traversed by troops, but the commander of a column must not march widely from the timber of the streams and lakes, else he will find himself often encamped without fuel to cook his provisions. The grass is rich and abundant in its season, and the surface is well adapted to the operations of cavalry.

We came to the Big Sioux on the 10th of September, in latitude nearly 44 degrees,²¹ and here we saw the first Sioux Indians.²² There were some 20 or 30 of them; and they

²¹See note 19 regarding correction in latitude readings. Allen's 44 degrees would place him near the northern boundary of Moody county if not in Brookings county.

²²In Volume II of these Collections, page 198, this expedition is spoken of as having been ordered for the purpose of capturing the murderers of a party of whites. The perusal of this journal and other authorities that have since come to light would indicate that the Allen expedition was entirely one of exploration and that the capture of the murderers was made by a command under Lt.-Col. Henry Wilson and Capt. Sumner. It appears that in the late summer of 1844 a party of Americans, taking some cattle to Fort Snelling, lost their way and wandered to the northwest or to the region of the upper Minnesota where they finally fell in with a war party of Sissetons who were returning from an unsuccessful raid against the Ojibways. The apparent route of the Americans and the destination of the cattle was toward the Red River and the hated half-breeds from Canada. The Sissetons fell upon the party, killed one of the men, Watson by name, and robbed the other two men, Turner and Bennett, of everything. Finally making their escape, these men tried to find their way back to civilization. After four days Turner was drowned in crossing a river, but Bennett, five days later than that, reached the Sioux camp at Swan Lake in the Traverse des Sioux region. The news of this appearance was at once carried to the mission and confirmed later by Bennett himself. A force was sent in the latter part of September or the early part of October from Forts Snelling and Atkinson to capture the

were much alarmed at seeing us in their country: (see my journal of this date.) They were otherwise careless in every respect, and seemed to be moving along with the buffalo as if they were all the same people. When we struck this river, it looked large enough to have its source 70 or 80 miles above.²³ The general course of the river from here to its mouth (159 miles) is nearly due south, and it seemed to run all the way in a gentle current of two miles per hour, except at the falls described in my journal, where it breaks through a wonderful formation of massive quartz that crosses it perpendicularly, and over which the river falls 100 feet in 400 yards. The valley of the river is seldom more than a mile broad, but is all of the way of the richest soil, resembling the alluvions of the Missouri. There is but little timber on any part of it—not enough to authorize a full settlement of the valley proper. The general level of the country back is from 300 to 500 feet above the bed of the river; and it falls off to the valley generally in gentle slopes, until within fifty miles of the Missouri, when the country becomes exceedingly broken, from six to twelve miles back, and the bluffs near the river are frightfully steep, and cannot be crossed anywhere without the greatest difficulty.

* * * * * * *

Twenty-five miles west of the source of the Des Moines, we struck the range of the buffalo, and continued in it to the Big Sioux river, and down that river 86 miles. Below that we could not see any recent signs of them. We found antelope in the same range with the buffalo, but no elk, and very seldom a common deer. While among the buffalo, we killed as many as we wanted, and without trouble.

murderers. This was under the command of Lt. Col. Henry Wilson with a company or two of the 1st Infantry stationed then at Fort Snelling, and Captain Sumner with Company "B" of the 1st Dragoons from Fort Atkinson. Some of the murderers were apprehended but succeeded in making their escape before reaching Traverse des Sioux. Four of them were arrested again the following July by Capt. Sumner and sent down to Dubuque for trial by the civil authorities. After spending the winter in confinement, they escaped, but on their way back to the Sisseton country, three of them died, the other finally reaching his destination. See letter by Mrs. S. R. Riggs from Traverse des Sioux mission dated October 10, 1844. "Mary and I"—Riggs, p. 115; Sumner's expedition of 1845 in this volume.

²³The Big Sioux rises near the north boundary of Grant county which is approximately 76 miles north of the south line of Brookings county. Throughout its upper reaches and especially through Brookings and Moody counties the river meanders and twists until it perhaps doubles that distance. The exact length is not available.

The geological features of the route are sufficiently noticed in my journal, and nothing very remarkable on this subject was presented.

The only rocks seen in place were, first, a limestone ledge, forming one bank of the Des Moines at the "Iron Banks," where we crossed that river; second, the great bed of granite in the valley of the St. Peter's;²⁴ and, third, the massive quartz at the falls of the Big Sioux.

I was surprised at not meeting with more Sioux Indians. We penetrated their country very far, saw numerous trails and other signs of them, but only came actually in contact with two small roving parties on the Big Sioux; and we came upon these so suddenly that they were forced to meet us. They were much alarmed; approached us with great timidity, and, notwithstanding our assurances of friendship, seemed to wish to get rid of us as soon as possible. They told us there was a trading house²⁵ down the Big Sioux, where there were also thirty-six lodges of Sioux Indians, all of which was entirely false, as we afterwards ascertained. We must have been seen frequently by other parties of these Indians, who did not wish to meet us; on one occasion two or three Indians were seen watching us from a distance.

This expedition, together with the almost simultaneous one made by Captain Sumner's company from Fort Atkinson,²⁶ near the valley of the St. Peter's, and to the north of it, must have produced a great moral effect upon these wild Indians, as showing them conclusively that we can easily throw cavalry enough into the heart of their country to chastise them for any wrong they may do our people and government.

In regard to the information requested of me by Captain Cram,²⁷ of Topographical Engineers, in his letter to Colo-

²⁴Characteristics of the Minnesota from the Lac qui Parle down to near New Ulm when it changes to a sandstone formation.

²⁵Big Sioux Post was built by the American Fur Co. at the mouth of the Big Sioux and remained there for some time by Joseph Laframboise. (Chittenden's Fur Trade Vol. III, p. 952.)

²⁶See note 22. Evidence that it was Sumner's and not Allen's force that was sent to capture the murderers of the Watson party.

²⁷Thomas Jefferson Cram. Born in New Hampshire. Cadet at West Point from same state. 4th in class of 1822. Bvt. 2nd lieutenant 2nd Artillery, July 1826; 2nd lieutenant 4th Artillery July 1826; 1st lieutenant April 1835; resigned September 16, 1836; captain topographical engineers

nel Kearney,²⁸ dated St. Louis, July 25, 1844, on the subject of the extraordinary floods of last summer of the Mississippi and its tributaries, as connected with the subject of alluvial formations, I regret that, for want of time and proper means necessary for making the nice observations necessary to a close investigation of this matter, I will not be able to furnish all the information anticipated and politely desired by Captain Cram.

* * * * *

The next river to be noted is the Big Sioux, which we first touched 38 miles east (west) of the source of the Des Moines, and in a latitude about half a degree below our point on the St. Peter's. It had risen about 17 feet, covering all of its bottom lands five or six feet. Great masses of drift wood had been deposited on its low grounds and timbered bottoms but I saw no earthly deposits worthy of note. We followed this river down 159 miles to its mouth, and the rise had been everywhere greater as the stream increased in size. Near its mouth it had partaken of the great rise of the Missouri. And here I noticed water-marks four miles from the Missouri, which I estimated to be at least 25 feet above the ordinary level of that river. The Missouri had been over all of its valley by a great depth; but seeing it only at and near the mouth of the Big Sioux, I did not observe deposits of alluvion worthy of note.

* * * * *

Fort Des Moines, Iowa Territory, January 4, 1845.

J. ALLEN,

Captain, 1st Dragoons

COLONEL S. W. KEARNEY,

Comm'g Third Military Department U. S. Army,
St. Louis, Mo.

July 1838; major August 1861; lieutenant colonel September 1861; colonel additional aide-de-camp September 1861 to November 1865; colonel engineers November 1865; brevet brigadier general of volunteers March 1865; brevet brigadier general and major general U. S. A. January 1866 for faithful and meritorious service during the war; died December 20, 1883.

²⁸Stephen Watts Kearny. Born in New Jersey. Enlisted from New York. 1st lieutenant 13th Infantry, March 1812; captain April 1813; major 3rd Infantry May 1829; lieutenant colonel 1st Dragoons, March 1833; colonel, 1836; brigadier general June 1846; cited for services in Mexico and California; died October 31, 1848. (Hist. Reg. and Dict. of the Army.)

Journal of march into the Indian country in the northern part of Iowa Territory in 1844, by company I, 1st regiment of dragoons.

August 11. March from Fort Des Moines in very good order at 10 a. m.; * * *

September 6. Reached the source of the Des Moines and Lieutenant Noble's camp²⁹ late in the afternoon, after a hard day's march; Lieutenant Noble had reached his present camp two days before, having moved up his detachment from the point where I left it on the 1st instant, agreeably to instructions sent back to him from this point. All the country we have seen, on this trip to the St. Peter's is of an almost worthless description, being broken, poor, and marshy, and without any timber of consequence; the hills are of a sandy sort of lime and primitive pebbles, and the valleys are deep marshy slues, with tall heavy grass; it is a tedious and difficult country for operations of troops, though near the St. Peter's it does not offer many hiding places for the Indians. Distance to-day, 22 miles.

September 7 and 8. Remained encamped on an arm of this pretty and singular lake, and took our latitude from several observations of the sun meridian; made it 43 degrees, 57' 42". I have not, however, much confidence in the accuracy of our little sextant, and think it probable that our latitude is higher than here shown. This lake is filled with water-fowl, and the camp is stocked with ducks; to-morrow I march west in search of the Big Sioux river.

September 9. The lake that we left this morning is surely the head of the Des Moines river; we crossed the only inlet it has about two miles above the lake, where it is only a little slue; I do not find any lake on the maps corresponding with this, and I infer that it has not hitherto been explored by any of the map-makers; I have named it the "Lake of the Oaks," from the forests of immense white oak trees that border it and cover its peninsulas. Leaving this lake, our course was NW. by W., on a large, high, level and dry prairie, that seems like the dividing elevation be-

²⁹On Lake Shetek or as Allen called it "Lake of the Oaks."

tween the waters of large rivers;³⁰ it divides here the tributaries of the Missouri from those of the Mississippi. This prairie, like all of this upper country, is dotted over with little lakes, though to-day we have seen the timber of only three or four, and have touched only one of them; we passed much sign of buffalo, but have not yet seen the animal. Encamped³¹ near sunset on the border of a slue, in the open prairie, there being no timber in sight; the night cold, cloudy, and rain. Course NW. by W.; 22 miles distance.

September 10. Continued our course on the Big Prairie, and in the first eight miles saw three buffalo grazing on an eminence about a mile ahead, the first we had anywhere seen. I halted the command in a depression of the prairie, and, taking some of the officers and men, made a circuit of the animals, and put them in full chase straight to the command, at a halt, and by this means easily killed all three in less than half an hour. Lieutenant Potter killed the first one in full chase by the first shot of his pistol. They were bulls, and rather lean; but being our first buffalo, we took a quantity of the meat. The day was cold, moist and disagreeable; marched on eight miles further, striking, at 3 p. m., a deep looking river running almost due south,³² and as broad as the Raccoon at Fort Des Moines. This is evidently a river of the Missouri, and we are inclined to think it the Big Sioux, but have some doubt on this;³³ we ought, before reaching the

³⁰They were in all probability on the Coteau des Prairies.

³¹Probably on the upper waters of Flandreau Creek and very near the north line of Pipestone county, Minn. From here the due west course might take them through the Hole-in-the-Mountain or it might have led them over the divide itself, for Allen makes no mention of this pass.

³²A difficult feat indeed, for in its course through Brookings and Moody counties, the Big Sioux is just continuous meander and at no time in a due south course for more than a mile or so. Allen's map shows the camp of the 10th to have been just below a creek flowing from the northwest into the Big Sioux, very likely Medary creek. However, at this point in the northwest corner of Riverview township, the river flows southeast, turning a little more to the south when half-way north and south through the township, flows east into Spring Creek township about half-way north and south and then turns to its most southern direction in sections 29 and 32 of this township and 5 and 8 of Flandreau township to the south. Thus for perhaps $3\frac{1}{2}$ or 4 miles it takes a very general course to the south. In all probability Capt. Allen's first camp within the borders of the state was just below Medary Creek, but because of the meagerness of his topographical notes in the journal it is hardly possible to locate the spot with exactness.

³³It is hard to understand just why there should have been any doubt concerning the identity of this river. In 1838 Nicollet and Fremont had explored and mapped the Sioux valley and the adjacent lake country and east to the St. Peter's or Minnesota river. Their explorations of 1839 took them from the Missouri river at Ft. Pierre northeast to Devil's Lake and

Big Sioux, to have crossed a long stream shown on the maps as Floyd's river; but since leaving the Des Moines, we have not touched or seen such a river. Some Sioux Indians came to our encampment at the point where we struck this river. They composed two or three lodges of a roving band of prairie Indians, who seemed to be wandering here with the buffalo. They approached us with the greatest timidity, two only at first, and then three others; and they probably, would not have come to us at all, if we had not surprised them in a place where they could not escape our observation. I had no interpreter through whom to speak to them; one of the dragoons spoke a few words of their language, but all he could understand of what they said was, that they lived on the St. Peter's river high up, and that we would find a trading-house on the river we were then on, three days down it. We caught a great many fish in this river, but buffalo—meat of the bulls—seems to be the rage for to-night. The country to-day had been slightly rolling, but good for marching; the grass here is very luxuriant. Course W. by S.; distance 16 miles.

September 11. Last night a heavy white frost, the first that we have experienced; determined to follow down the river, at least to the trading-house spoken of by the Indians, so marched out on the bluffs. In a few miles, killed a lone buffalo bull, and soon after came upon two lodges more of Sioux Indians. They were also much alarmed at our approach, and three men of them, whom we first saw near their lodges on horses, came at us at full gallop, and in great agitation. After I explained to them, as well as I could, that we were friends, and were traveling through their country on a mission of friendship, they seemed much pleased, and the principal man galloped off to his lodge and hoisted a little American flag; and as we passed his lodge offered us the

then down along the Lake Traverse, Big Stone lake and Minnesota river route so that the general lay of the land should have been known. The report of this expedition was not published however until 1843 but on the map appears Lake Shetek, or Allen's Lake of the Oaks, and while Nicollet had not explored the river country throughout northwest Iowa yet with the common knowledge of the time he placed the Floyd river in approximately its correct position, its headwaters quite a ways to the south of the route from Lake Shetek west to the Big Sioux. Why Captain Allen, the assistant geographer of the Schoolcraft expedition, did not possess this common knowledge, it is difficult to understand.

meat of one or two buffaloes that were curing about his camp. These lodges were on the bald prairie, far from timber, and seem to be only a stopping place to cure and eat the meat they had killed near it. This is surely a fine buffalo country, the prairie is cut up with their trails in all directions, and we have seen many small parties during the day, but, as yet, no large herd. Just before we went into camp, I saw several at a distance that I took to be cows, and allowed some of the men to give them chase. They soon killed four, but all bulls again, and we do not need the meat, except the tongues and marrow-bones. In the afternoon, Jones killed an antelope, and we saw ten more in a short distance among the gentle hills of the prairie; I was surprised to meet them in this country; went late down to the river to encamp,³⁴ and did not get a good site, the timber being very scarce on the borders of the river. 32 miles distance; course S. W. by S.

September 12. Twelve horses and mules were missing this morning, and under a strong suspicion that the Sioux had been among them—some known to have been picketed in the best manner are among them. Three of mine, one of Dr. Griffin's, and two of Lieutenant Potter's, are also in the number. I remained encamped all of the day, sending parties in all directions in search of the missing horses, and recovered all except four. Lieutenant Potter and Dr. Griffin and four dragoons are yet out, and will be out all night; it is very unusual for any of the horses to stray from camp at night, at this distance and time from home. Last night was very dark; the horses were picketed in very tall grass, where sentinels could not watch them closely, and I think it very probable that Indians came in and loosened and drove off all that are gone, and have probably secured some of them. The Sioux are great rascals, and capable of all kinds of theft.

³⁴Leaving the river and traveling in a southeasterly direction they must have gone around the big bend of the Sioux at the present site of Flandreau, then taking a more southerly course till night when they returned to the river for a camp. Figuring the 32 miles for the round-about course approximately, and taking into consideration that the next day they reached the falls after 12 miles, the next camp must have been near the center of Sverdrup township in Minnehaha county.



SIOUX FALLS 1859

Sketch by Moses E. Armstrong, Harpers Weekly 1863.

September 13. Sent out a party on our back trail, and marched on down the river. In about twelve miles, came to a great and picturesque fall³⁵ of the river, where we found Doctor Griffin and Lieutenant Potter and party, who had been

³⁵The falls of the Sioux River. This is the first actual, verified and recorded visit of white men to Sioux Falls. From the very earliest times in mid-western history, the falls have been an outstanding feature of the country. From as early as 1683 there comes evidence of white men at the falls, although LeSueur's visit of that date is still considered somewhat legendary. (See the article on Lesueur's visits later in this volume.) His visit of 1700 is much better substantiated and the map of 1701 which he dictated to De l'Isle shows a supposedly well-defined route from the Mississippi river to a point on the Sioux about the correct distance above the mouth to be at the falls. Law's map of 1723 shows the same route. (See Vol. II S. Dak. Hist. Coll. pp. 42-50.) When Lewis and Clark came up the Missouri in 1804 they recorded in their journal of Tuesday August 21: "We set out very early this morning and proceeded on under a gentle Breeze from the S. E. passed Willow Creek Small on the S. S. below a bluff of about 170 feet high and $\frac{1}{2}$ Mls. above Floyds River at 1 $\frac{1}{2}$ Miles higher & above the Bluff passed the Soues River S. S. this River is about the Size of Grand river and as Mr. Durrien our Soues intpr. says "is navigable to the falls 70 or 80 Leagues and above these falls Still further, those falls are 20 feet or thereabouts and has two principal pitches, and heads with the St. peters passing the head of the Demoin, on the right below the falls a Creek comes in which passes thro Cliffs of red Rock which the Indians make pipes of, and when the different 'nations meet at those quaries all is piece." (a sort of asylum for all nations, no fighting there.)" (Lewis and Clark Journals for August 21, 1804) These visits by white men, while definite enough in themselves and generally accepted as historic fact, are yet unrecorded from first hand sources. This report and journal of Captain Allen contains then the first record of white men at the falls and the two men to make the visit were Dr. John Strother Griffin (See note 13) and Lieutenant Joseph Haydn Potter (See note 16), who encamped at the falls the night of September 12, 1844. As they sat on the rocks "smoking away their horses" I wonder if they could imagine, even in the ecstasies of a new pipeful of tobacco, the passing of the red men with their inconvenient habit of horse-stealing; the extermination of the buffalo which at that time dotted the hills around them; the mingled hope and doubt and fear that beset the little band which a few years later was to struggle on that very site for a new home; or could they see in the future of seventy-five years the mighty falls harnessed to do the work of a great city, on the very heart of whose site they were then encamped.

The next chapter in the history of the falls tells of the beginnings of white settlement in 1857. The Dakota Land Company of St. Paul, organized for the purpose of securing control of all the good townsites and water powers in the territory west of Minnesota, which their political connections told them was soon to be organized as a separate territory, arrived at the falls only to find them occupied by a rival concern, the Western Town Company of Dubuque. However the two companies worked in harmony under the able leadership of Governor Medary of Minnesota, who was president of the St. Paul company. Other settlements were made at the same time up and down the valley of the Sioux. The year following the settlement, 1858, the Indians drove the settlers from the town of Medary (Brookings county), came down toward Sioux Falls, where they found the whites fortified in Fort Sod, and retired west to the James river without further trouble. In 1861 the Republican party gained control of national politics and the fate of the new city was sealed, for the two companies of Democratic boomers lost their political backing at Washington and their hopes were sent glimmering. Their enthusiasm, lost, the town soon dwindled in size and with the uprising of the Sioux in the Outbreak of 1862, it was finally abandoned. On May 1, 1865, a military post, Fort Dakota, was established at Sioux Falls, and immediately the white settlers came back, but it was not until 1869 that the population was as large as in 1862. When the big Dakota boom started in the late 70s, Sioux Falls had only three or four hundred inhabitants, but the great wave of prosperity and growth that swept over the state at that time was epitomized in Sioux Falls, which only seventy-five years after Captain Allen's visit could boast a population of approximately 25,000.

searching for lost horses, and encamped here last night· they had seen no traces of them, and had resigned themselves to their loss. Doctor G. and Lieutenant P. were sitting on a rock, and “smoking away their horses to the Sioux,” (referring to the Indian custom of giving away horses on a ceremony of smoking.) These falls present a remarkable feature of the river and country; the river, until now, running nearly due south, makes above the falls a bend to the west, and round to the northwest, and passes the falls in a due east course, and continues below in a northeast course for six miles, when it resumes its former direction. The rock of these falls is massive quartz, and is the first rock formation, or rock in place, that we have seen since we left the St. Peter’s river. It crosses the river here north and south, and is not seen elsewhere, the bluffs or general level of the country covering it some 250 feet. The fall, as near as I could measure it, is 100 feet in 400 yards, and is made up of several perpendicular falls—one 20, one 18, and one 10 feet. The rock in the course and on the borders of the stream is split, broken, and piled up in the most irregular and fantastic shapes, and presents deep and frightful chasms, extending from the stream in all directions. There is no timber here on the borders or bluffs, and only a little on a small island at the head of the rapids. After spending an hour or two at these rapids, moved down the river 12 miles, and encamped³⁶ on a little stream near the main river. As we were going into camp, saw a herd of more than 100 buffaloes at the site of the encampment, gave them chase, and killed two cows and a calf, which (it being dark when they were slaughtered) were left on the prairie for the night, with hunters to guard them from the wolves. Distance 24 miles; course S. E. The party sent to hunt horses this morning came up at night, found none; so the four yet lost are abandoned³⁷—one horse and one mule being public.

September 14. Went a little out of our course to pick up the meat killed last night, and continued over a rough

³⁶At the mouth of Split Rock creek.

³⁷Two of these animals were picked up the following year by Captain Sumner when returning from his expedition to the Red River country. See his report following.

country, much cut up by various and little brooks; encamped at the mouth of one of them,³⁸ and killed a buffalo bull standing across the river, six men firing at him by volley, and each ball taking effect. Buffalo³⁹ have been in sight almost always since we struck this river, and we might have killed hundreds by delaying for that purpose. Distance 18 miles; course S. by E.

September 15. Ascended very high bluffs, and marched SE. over smooth prairie till 12, then S.W. till 4½ p. m.; at 1 struck a clear little river coming down from the east, which I take it to be the stream at the mouth of which the Indians we first met told us we would find a trading house; saw what we supposed to be a party of Indians far to our left, in the afternoon, but it may have been buffalo. Followed down the clear stream, and encamped near its mouth on the main river. We can see no signs of a trading-house here, no trails nor appearance of near habitation, and I believe the Indians have lied to us respecting the existence of a trading-house in this country. The little stream,⁴⁰ above referred to, is 30 feet broad, 2½ feet deep, and runs three miles per hour; the banks are low, and it runs over pebbles and sand. General course S.; distance 22 miles.

September 16. Crossed the clear stream near its mouth, and again ascended the bluffs, which here are near 300 feet high and much broken—the breaks running far out from the main river; the obstructions forced us to leave the river far on our right, and make the line of our march very crooked. I sent two men to follow the river as closely as practicable, and look if there was any appearances of a trading-house in the neighborhood. They found none, and so it is demonstrated that the Indians have basely lied and deceived

³⁸Probably one of the small streams emptying into the Sioux a mile or so above Beloit, Lyon county, Iowa and not far from the present site of Canton, S. Dak. About half way across Lyon county.

³⁹A herd of 100 buffalo within six or seven miles east and north of Sioux Falls at this time, 74 years later, would create some excitement in the city and yet it has been but a comparatively few years since Sioux Falls was well within the great buffalo range. (See article on the extermination of the buffalo east of the Missouri in South Dakota later in this volume.)

⁴⁰Rock river, Sioux county, Iowa. (Iowa Journal Jan. 1913.) The mouth of this river is opposite and nearly on the Lincoln-Union county line extended across the Sioux.

us in this respect, and for what purpose, I am unable to conceive. It is said of the Sioux, that they are prouder of, and more habituated to, lying than truth-telling, and here is pretty good evidence in support of the charge. Encamped on a slue at a bunch of willows far out on the prairie, horses and mules much fatigued; we have not seen any buffalo today, nor any fresh sign of them; we are apparently out of their present range.⁴¹ Distance, 20 miles; course S. by W.

September 17. Marched SW. to strike the river, and encamped⁴² on it at 11 a. m., to rest the horses and get an observation for latitude. The river here is a large stream, larger than the Des Moines, below Racoon, not quite so broad, but is deeper, and runs more water. It has increased much since we last saw it, (30 miles above), and must have received tributaries⁴³ from the west that we could not see for our distance from it. The bluffs here are not so abrupt as above, and the bottoms are broader and more fertile; but the timber of the river does not increase, only a few elms and willows skirting the banks, which are deep and muddy like those of the streams near the Missouri. I cannot yet determine what river this may be, whether Floyd's river or the Big Sioux. I shall follow it down further, and see more of its character; and if the season were not so late, I would cross it and explore further west. But my horses are much worn, and the grass and prairie are killed by the frost, and it is incumbent to hurry home. The river here seems to abound in catfish; the men caught 20 or 30 large ones in a few hours with fish-hooks. Distance 10 miles; course SW.

September 18. Continued down the river with greatest difficulty, having to rise and descend the bluffs, which have increased in height and steepness. After going over several points, fell again into the valley of the river, and soon

⁴¹This would put the southern boundary of the buffalo range east of the Sioux somewhere near the central part of Plymouth county, Iowa, across the Sioux from the line between Sioux Valley and Brule townships, Union county.

⁴²Still in Plymouth county, Iowa.

⁴³Only two small creeks, Union and Brule.

saw a great opening to the westward,⁴⁴ which I at once recognized as the valley of the Missouri. I had not expected to meet that river for 30 miles yet, and was surprised at seeing it here; though as our river here only runs into the valley of the Missouri, it may be several miles to its mouth. Encamped early, on a little brook, to feed on luxuriant peavine in its little shaded valley. Course S.; distance 16 miles.⁴⁵

September 19. Endeavored to follow down that valley of the river, but could not; it washes the bluffs so often in its bends, we were again driven over the bluffs, which here are 500 or 600 feet high, and broken almost every mile by deep ravines, that, from the heights, look like great chasms in the earth. Of course we had all sorts of trouble, upset one wagon twice, killed one mule, and broke another wagon square off at the hounds. The romance of marching through a wilderness country is much abated. General course S.; distance 10 miles.⁴⁶

September 20. Remained encamped to repair wagons; but in the meantime, I determined to find the mouth of the river we had traced so far. Doctor Griffith, Lieutenant Calhoun, Lieutenant Potter, and J. C. Calhoun, jr., volunteered to accompany me, and leaving Lieutenant Noble in charge of the camp, we set out early for this purpose. We encountered bluffs, ravines, vines, valleys, tall grass, and swamp, and plum-brush, and willow thickets, worse than any thing we had seen;⁴⁷ but worked our way along, and, in the distance of seven miles, reached really the point where the river unites with the Missouri. It comes to the Missouri in a due south course, and the Missouri meets it perpendicularly, as coming from the west. Both, at their junc-

⁴⁴At this distance from the mouth of the Sioux the view to the westward would be certainly misleading for just before meeting the Sioux the Missouri makes one and perhaps at that time made two great bends to the north. The valley is very wide and low and the main channel exceedingly uncertain in its whereabouts.

⁴⁵Still in Plymouth county, Iowa.

⁴⁶In the extreme southwest corner of Plymouth county, Iowa. (The notes locating places in Iowa are largely from the Iowa Journal for January 1913 which published the Allen report and journal with an introductory article by Jacob Van der Zee.)

⁴⁷Sioux Cityans would hardly recognize their city from the description, but it was through what is now the western part of Sioux City that these explorers passed on their way to the mouth of the Sioux.

tion, wash the base of a steep bluff,⁴⁸ some 500 feet high, and the great river then pursues its general course to the southward and eastward. Opposite to this point, there appears to be a large island of the Missouri, but we could not see enough to know if it were really an island, or a peninsula in one of the great bends of this river. I have learned all I can, now, of this river which we have followed to its mouth. I shall consider it the Big Sioux, until I shall be better informed. To-morrow I shall march for home by the nearest route I can find. It has rained most of the day and is cold and disagreeable.

* * * * * * *

October 3. Struck our trail going out, and followed it home. Distance eight miles. Reached Fort Des Moines at 1 p. m., having marched, since we left the post, 740 miles, and having been absent 54 days.

Fort Des Moines, December 31, 1844.

J. ALLEN,

Captain, 1st Dragoons.

COLONEL S. W. KEARNEY,

Commanding third military department, St. Louis, Mo.

True copy:

R. JONES,

Adjutant General.

March 18, 1846.

Sumner's Expedition of 1845.

Edwin Vose Sumner was born in Massachusetts and entered the army from New York. On the 3rd of March, 1819, he was commissioned a 2nd lieutenant in the 2nd Infantry, and a 1st lieutenant, January 25, 1823. At the time of the reorganization of the mounted rangers as the 1st Dragoons, he was made the captain of Company "B," March 4, 1833 and was stationed at Fort Atkinson, Iowa Territory. In June 1846 Captain Sumner was made a major in the 2nd regiment of dragoons, in which capacity he served

⁴⁸The Missouri River Commission map, of 1892 gives the water surface elevation at and near the confluence of the two rivers at 1,115 and the height of the bluffs to the east at not to exceed 1,350 at the highest point. This description would indicate that the two rivers then met over what is now Riverside Park.

until July 13, 1848, when he was made lieutenant colonel of the 1st dragoons. Here he served until March 3, 1855, when he became the first colonel of the 1st regiment of cavalry, which was changed to the fourth regiment of cavalry in 1861. On the 16th of March, 1861 he was made a brigadier general and on the 4th of July, 1862, a major general of volunteers. Three of these advancements came directly as the result of his extraordinary ability and personal bravery in action. In the Mexican War, while a major of the 2nd dragoons, he was cited for gallant and meritorious conduct in the battle of Cerro Gordo, and breveted a lieutenant colonel. For gallant and meritorious conduct in the battle of Molino del Rey he was made a colonel, September 8, 1847, and in the Civil War was made a major general May 31, 1862 for gallant and meritorious conduct at the battle of Fair Oaks, Va. He died March 21, 1863.⁴⁹

While captain of Company "B" of the 1st dragoons and stationed at Fort Atkinson, Iowa Territory, he received orders from headquarters, dated May 7, 1845, to make a reconnaissance of the Indian country to the north and west. This brought him into South Dakota between Lake Traverse and Big Stone Lake,⁵⁰ into what is now Roberts county.

His official report⁵¹ of this expedition follows:

Fort Atkinson,⁵² I. T., August 23, 1845.

Sir: In compliance with instructions from department headquarters, dated May 7, 1845, I marched from this post with "B" company 1st dragoons on the 3d day of June.

⁴⁹Historical Register and Dictionary of the Army.

⁵⁰There is nothing in Captain Sumner's report to indicate whether he went up the south side of the Minnesota river (St. Peter's) or on the north side. The annual report of the commanding General of the Army dated November 20, 1845, (House Ex. Doc. 2, 29 Cong. 1 Sess. p. 208) says: "Another detachment of the same regiment (1st dragoons) under Captain Sumner, consisting of his own and Captain Allen's companies, was in the saddle during the same period. These companies, from the Des Moines and Turkey rivers, took a northerly direction;—crossed the St. Peter's, and ascended its left bank to the Lac Qui Parle (in this river) north of the 45th parallel of latitude."

⁵¹Sen. Doc. 1, 29th Cong. 1st Sess. p. 217.

⁵²Fort Atkinson. In 1839 the Winnebagoes were removed west of the Mississippi river and settled in the so-called Neutral Strip between the lands of the Sac and Fox Indians and the Sioux. This aroused the Sac and Fox and to protect the Winnebagoes, Fort Atkinson was established on Spring Creek, a branch of Turkey River. In June 1841 Captain Sumner with Company "B" of the 1st Dragoons arrived to strengthen the garrison, thus making it about 160 strong. Fort Atkinson was abandoned February 24, 1849. (Iowa Journal July 1915, pp. 328 and 335.)

The prairies were very wet and the streams all full, which delayed my arrival at "Traverse des Sioux" till June 22. I came up with Capt. Allen, on the 13th of June, about half way between this and the St. Peter's, and the two companies continued together from that time. On the 16th of June, two men of "I" company 1st dragoons were seriously injured by the accidental discharge of a pistol. I sent those men down to Fort Snelling by water. One of them, private Berry, died after his leg was amputated by Dr. Turner; the other, private Howard, the man by whose carelessness the accident happened, has recovered.

On my arrival at Traverse des Sioux, I found a boat from Fort Snelling, with my howitzers, provisions, &c. A great mistake was made in the provisions forwarded by Major R. B. Lee,⁵³ commissary: instead of 31 barrels of flour, which should have been sent, 17 only were forwarded. This mistake subjected my command to great inconvenience, for I am not in a country where it could be corrected by purchase. I marched from Traverse des Sioux on the 25th of June, and reached "Lac-qui-Parle" on the 1st of July.⁵⁴ I found there a large band of "Warpeton Sioux;" and after holding a council with them, I gave them a part of the presents that had been sent to me for the Indians. I said to these Indians, as I said afterward to all those I met in council—that our government felt a deep interest in their welfare; and that so long as they conducted themselves properly, and did not wantonly molest the whites, they might be sure of protection. I impressed upon them, at the

⁵³Richard Bland Lee. Born in Virginia. Cadet at West Point from same state. Graduate 1814. 9th in class. Was breveted captain for 10 years faithful service in one grade in 1829. Major for meritorious service in Florida war and major, commissary of subsistence, in 1841 and as such stationed at Fort Snelling. Resigned in May 1861 to serve with Confederate army as colonel, commissary department. Died August 2, 1875.

⁵⁴At Lac qui Parle they were probably entertained at the mission home of Rev. and Mrs. Stephen R. Riggs. for Mrs. Riggs wrote to her mother under date of June 23, 1845: "having put our missionary cabin in order for the reception of Captains Sumner and Allen, and Dr. Nichols, of the Army, I am reminded of home. I have not made half the preparation which you used to make to receive military company, and I could not if I would, neither would I if I could. I do, however, sometimes wish it afforded me more pleasure to receive such guests, when they occasionally pass through the country. We have so many uncivilized and so few civilized, and our circumstances are such that I almost shrink from trying to entertain company. I sometimes think that even mother, with all her hospitality, would become a little selfish if her kitchen, parlor, and dining room were all one." (Riggs, "Mary and I," p. 115)

same time, the fact, that our government had now become so strong that no crime could remain unpunished—that there was no part of the Indian country in which a criminal could not be reached, and that he certainly would be. I was particular in this, as I do not think the disposition of the upper Sioux toward us is very friendly. They receive no annuities, and are not connected with us in any way, and they have always had a strong partiality for the British; I believe, principally, because that government has been more liberal in their presents to them. One thing I observed particularly—they seemed unwilling that we should interfere with the “half-breeds” from the British settlements; and I am convinced that the Indians would prefer that that people should continue to hunt upon their lands, than that our government should send troops through their country to keep them out. I asked them who had made the complaints about the inroads of the half-breeds, and they all professed ignorance on the subject, disclaiming it entirely for themselves.⁵⁵ I reached Big Stone lake on the 5th of July, and on the 6th I met in council a large band of Sissitons, and I gave them the residue of the presents. I am much inclined to think that the small presents we make to the Indians do more harm than good, for they serve as a contrast to the very liberal presents they formerly received from the English agents. I left Big Stone lake on the 7th of July. On the morning of the 8th I was holding an informal council, in the saddle, with a band of Sissitons, when three of the murderers of Watson and party,⁵⁶ that escaped last fall from Col. Wilson’s de-

⁵⁵In his report to Governor Chambers, Superintendent of Indian Affairs for Iowa Territory, dated September 1, 1845, the agent to the Sioux, Amos J. Bruce reported differently, viz: “The half-breeds of the Red river still continue their hunting expeditions into our territory, and upon the lands which have always been claimed by the Sioux.” It seems that when warned by Captain Sumner to stay out of this territory the half-breeds introduced a counter-claim to the country based on priority of title. Bruce goes on to say; “But as I learn a report will be made by Captain Sumner, favorable to the half-breeds, I thought it proper to place the question in its proper light before you. The Sioux will never consent to relinquish their right in these lands, which have been in their hands since time immemorial.” As to the extent of the damage done to the buffalo by the Sioux through these expeditions from the north, Mr. Wm. T. Hornaday estimated that the “total number of buffaloes killed in twenty years, (1820-1845 and by the Red River half-breeds only) 652,275; total value of buffaloes killed in twenty years \$3,261,375; total value of the product utilized and added to the wealth of the settlements, \$978,412. (“Extirmination of the American Bison” by Hornaday in Smithsonian report 1887, pt. 2 p. 437.)

⁵⁶See note 22.

tachment of the 1st infantry, had the assurance to walk directly into the council. I recognized them at once, and instantly seized them as fugitives from justice. It produced a great deal of excitement at the moment; but I told the band it was useless to talk about it—the criminals were my prisoners, and would remain so; and that if they had any thing further to say about it, I should be back there in about a month, and they could say it then; and I purposely returned by the same route, in order that they might know where to find me. I took these prisoners with me to the end of my march, having them in confinement about forty days. On my return to Traverse des Sioux, I sent an officer with them, by water, to Du Buque, and there turned them over to the civil authority.

As an evidence of the ill-will of the upper Sioux, I was informed that they had said they were glad we were coming up; that they knew we had fine horses, and that they intended we should come back on foot. As the best method of guarding against this threat, I always took occasion to say to the Indians in council that I was not at all afraid of their stealing our horses, intimating by manner that they could try it as soon as they pleased; but I would just tell them, by way of caution, that if an Indian came near them at night he would be instantly shot; and it gives me great satisfaction to report that not an animal was stolen from the squadron this summer. I reached "Devil's Lake,"⁵⁷ on the 48th degree of north latitude, on the 18th of July. On that day I came upon the trail of the "half-breeds," and sent my interpreter and guide after them. They brought ten of the principal men to me, and the next morning I moved to their camp. There were about 180 men, including Indians that were with them. These half-breeds are descendants from the English, Scotch, Irish, and French. I had several talks with them, and I found them to be a shrewd and sensible people; but they are by no means as formidable as they have been represented to be. They have no discipline, no capable leaders, and they are hampered by their families.

⁵⁷Between Benson and Ramsey counties, North Dakota.

A few regular troops have nothing to fear from them. They said at once that they had no idea of resisting the authority of the American government, and had never thought of such a thing for an instant. They had hoped that, although they were British subjects, their hunting excursions, within our limits, would be over looked, as they were only hunting on the lands of their Indian parents; but above all, as the subsistence of their families actually depended upon them, that there was not game enough on the other side of the line; that they had followed this life from childhood, and knew no other, and that they did not know what they could do if our government inhibited them at once from their old hunting grounds. I told them they must perceive that their incursions into our country were violations of our territory, and that all governments were rightfully very jealous on these matters. They then asked me how they would be received if they should move across the line. I told them at once that I could give them no answer to that question, for I thought it would be an improper interference with the rights of their government for me to hold out any inducement for them to secede in a body from their allegiance. They then asked if no time could be granted in which they could change their habits. After due reflection, I advised them to address a letter to our government, asking as a favor that a year or two might be granted to them in order to give them a little time to commence some other course in life. I told them expressly that I would give them no encouragement to believe that their request would be granted; and if it was not, they must discontinue their incursions at once. It will be an extremely difficult thing to keep these people out of the country, if they should determine to disregard the order; not from any resistance on their part, but, on the contrary, from the confidence they will place in us. They know very well that their families and themselves will always be safe with United States troops, so long as they do not resist them; and they might continue to come into the country expecting even to meet us, but prepared to retire at once on being ordered to do so; and they would continue to retire so long as the troops remained in the country; but the

moment we left it, they would return again to their old hunting grounds. There is a branch of the American Fur Company now established on the line near the British settlements, under the charge of Mr. Kitson,⁵⁸ a very respectable and capable man. A number of these half-breeds are becoming connected in trade with this establishment, and I understood, indirectly, that many of them intended to move across the line this fall. There seemed to be a strong disposition among them to become citizens of the United States; and I am much inclined to believe that many of them will become so, within a few years, without receiving any encouragement from our government. There are in all, in this band of half-breeds, about 600 men, and they are increasing fast. I arrived at Traverse des Sioux, on my return, on the 7th of August. I saw many of the Sioux on my way down; and although they manifested but little friendship, they took care to show no hostility. In the summer of 1844, Captain Allen, while on a march in the Sioux country, lost a government horse and mule, and two horses belonging to officers of his command.⁵⁹ These animals were stolen by an Indian. I heard of this man frequently. He had been running about the country boasting of this feat, and I determined to arrest him if possible, as it appeared to me highly important that all Indians should be made to know that the horses of the government, on service in the Indian country, are inviolable, and that they cannot be touched by them without the certainty of punishment at the time, or afterwards. I arrested this Indian at Traverse des Sioux; but as there was no testimony against him, that would convict before a court, I thought it inadvisable to turn him over to the civil authority. I sent him down to Fort Snelling, requesting Captain Backus to keep him in close confinement until he heard from division headquarters on the subject. I would

⁵⁸Norman W. Kittson. Born in Canada in 1814, and died in 1888. Sent to Pembina from St. Paul in 1843 to take charge of the American Fur Company's interests. The same year Kittson founded the Red River Transportation Co., in connection with Joseph Rolette. He was an Indian trader at Pembina in 1850, and at Turtle Mountain in 1853. Member of the Minnesota Territorial legislature for the years 1851-55. (North Dakota Coll. Vol. 1, p. 368. See also "Report of Major Wood, relative to his expedition to Pembina Settlement" House Ex. Doc. 51, 31 Cong. 1 Sess.)

⁵⁹See Captain Allen's journal for September 13, page of this volume.

respectfully refer this case to the commanding general of division. The Indian will not be released till orders to that effect are received at Fort Snelling.

I broke up the squadron at Traverse des Sioux on the 11th inst., ordering Captain Allen, with his company, to proceeding to Fort Des Moines, and I reached this post with my own company on the 19th inst.

I am, sir, very respectfully, your obedient servant,

E. V. SUMNER,

Captain 1st dragoons.

The Acting Assistant Adjutant General.

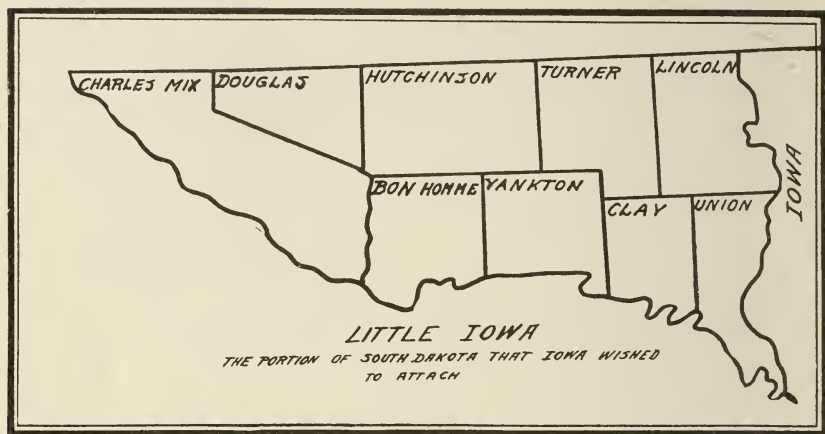
Third Military Department, St. Louis, Mo.

Remarks.

The Secretary of War, to whom this interesting report is submitted, will, no doubt, be pleased with the firm and judicious conduct of Captain Sumner towards the Indians and half-breeds, mentioned within. The expedition has been made in conformity with a report submitted by me to the Secretary of War some ten or twelve months ago.

November 10, 1845.

WINFRED SCOTT.



"LITTLE IOWA"

Uncle Sam found some annoyance in determining boundaries that satisfied the pioneer settlers of Iowa. When they fixed the bounds of the state by the first constitution of 1844 it was made to include all of Minnesota south of a line running approximately from Sioux City to Mankato and thence down the channel of the Minnesota to the Mississippi.¹ Failing to secure approval of this ambitious plan Iowa was admitted December 28, 1846 with its present boundaries. Still the pioneers were not willing to abide by the terms of Congress and on July 15, 1856 a joint resolution of the Iowa legislature was approved by Governor Grimes and transmitted to Congress. It reached that body upon July 22 and in the Senate was referred to the Committee on Territories,² but in the House it went to the Committee on Public Lands, of which James Thorington of Iowa was chairman.³ This resolution follows:

¹Executive Documents, 2 Sess., 28 Cong. Vol. 1. (Serial No. 463.)

²Senate Miscellaneous Documents, No. 69, 34 Cong. 1 Sess. Col. 1, (Serial No. 835.)

³Senate Documents, Vol. 56, 61 Cong. 2 Session.

"Memorial and Joint Resolution for the Extension of the Western Boundary line of Iowa to the Missouri River."⁴

"To the Senate and House of Representatives of the United States of America in Congress Assembled:"

"Your memorialists, the general assembly of the State of Iowa, would respectfully represent, that the Missouri river is the most natural and appropriate western boundary for the State of Iowa; and that it is highly important to the best interest of said State, as it will be to the people who may hereafter settle and occupy the delta of land located between the present western boundary of said State and said river, that the same should be attached to and made a part of the State of Iowa, so that the Missouri river may constitute the entire western boundary line of said State; and as a parallel of latitude, (fortythree degrees and thirty minutes,) extending from the Mississippi river to the Missouri river, may constitute the northern boundary line of said State.

"Your memorialists would therefore respectfully ask of your honorable bodies that a law be passed providing for the immediate extinguishment of the Indian titles to said land and for its annexation to the State of Iowa.

"Resolved, that the senators from this state be instructed, and the representatives be requested to use their best exertions to procure the passage of such a law as is asked for in the foregoing memorial and that the secretary of state forward a copy thereof to each.

REUBEN NOBLE,
Speaker of the House of Representatives

MATURIN L. FISHER,
President of the Senate.

JAMES GRIMES,
Governor."

Approved July 15, 1856.

⁴House Reports, No. 347, 34 Cong.1 Sess Vol. 3. (Serial No. 870.)

No action appears to have been taken by the Senate committee, but Mr. Thorington, on the 11th of August reported back favorably and with apparent enthusiasm. His report was as follows:

"Though not calculated to attract attention at this distance from the region of the country concerned, the people interested, and the future necessities of the inhabitants now and hereafter of Iowa and Minnesota, is of more importance than we may at first imagine. Neither the Sioux river, nor the one west, called Jacques, is a navigable stream, as contemplated by law; yet they are of such a character that they will at no distant day occupy much attention in legislation, and a drawback to intercommunication in that region of country. It will be found that these rivers, the Sioux river in particular having beds consisting of moving soil, light and loamy, of such a character that bridging will be difficult, unless by one span, this in many cases will be found extremely difficult, unless it is far up toward their sources, on account of these streams spreading out in great bottoms, dangerous in crossing to the traveler as well as to the buffalo. Under these circumstances, then, how necessary that these streams, as far as practicable, should be under one State sovereignty, where legislation in reference to bridging, ferries, and privileges can be secured before one State legislature, without resorting to two. We deem it an advantage to all parties, and the demand some day will be clamorous on the part of settlers in that region of the country for annexation, while the speculator, who has an exclusive franchise on one side, will resist the act with a money power that in new countries, as well as old, too often overpowers right. Your committee, therefore, recommend the passage of the accompanying bill."⁵

Notwithstanding his apparent interest no bill to carry the proposal into effect appears to have been introduced in

⁵House Misc. Documents, 34 Cong. 3 Sess., Vol. 1.

either house of congress, and the above report seems to have been the end of the matter for the session.

The Iowans were not yet ready to give up and the state legislature at its next session renewed the request in this form:

“Resolved by the General Assembly of the State of Iowa, That our Senators be instructed, and our Representatives in Congress be requested, to use their influence to procure the annexation of all that portion of land lying west of the Big Sioux river and west of the State of Iowa due west to the Missouri river; and that copies of this memorial be forwarded without delay to each of our senators and representatives in Congress of the United States by the Secretary of State.”⁶

This memorial, approved January 8, 1857, was received in Congress on January 28 and read and referred and this appears to have been the end of it. Thus the rich counties of Lincoln, Union, Clay, Turner, Yankton, Bon Homme, Hutchinson, Douglas and Charles Mix are spared the fate of appearing upon the map of the United States as the “pan-handle of Iowa” or as “Little Iowa,” as the region was designated in the fifties.

THE BOUNDARIES OF SOUTH DAKOTA.

By STEPHEN SARGENT VISHER, Ph. D.

Recently of the University of South Dakota.

In many cases the establishment of the boundaries of political areas was influenced by widespread geographic, economic, political and historical conditions, and their location reflects the power of these influences at the time of their selection. Accounts of the establishment of the boundaries of many of the states are available. South Dakota's boundaries are no less interesting than are those of most of the states. It is hoped that the following account of their establishment will be of interest and historic value.

Between 1803 and 1812 Dakota was a part of the Louisiana Territory. Between 1812 and 1861 the section west of the Missouri River, already a well known river, was included in Nebraska Territory. The section east of the Missouri belonged, successively, to the territory of Missouri (1812-1834), Michigan (1834-1836), Wisconsin (1836-1838), Iowa (1838-1849), and Minnesota (1849-1858). From 1858 to 1861 it was unorganized, and known as the "Land of the Dakotahs." Dakota Territory, as organized in 1861, included what now are North and South Dakota, most of Montana, and parts of Nebraska and Wyoming. In 1863 it was reduced to approximately what is now North and South Dakota. In 1864 it was again extended, but a permanent reduction was made in 1868. Minor changes along the Nebraska-South Dakota boundary were made in 1870 and 1882.¹

The Eastern Boundary. The eastern boundary of Dakota Territory was the western boundary of Iowa and Minnesota; in other words, the Red River, Lakes Traverse and Big Stone, the meridian south from the end of the latter lake to Iowa, and the Sioux River to its junction with the Missouri.

The Red River of the North nearly follows a meridian

¹Gannet, H.: The Boundaries of the United States, and the several states and territories, Bulletin 226, U. S. Geol. Sur., pp. 117-132, especially p. 129. (Washington 1904.)

for a long distance. The fact that its source is in Lake Traverse increases its significance as a natural boundary since Lakes Traverse and Big Stone are the longest lakes for many miles and were of importance as sites of Indian settlements with which there was fur trading before 1750. A short distance south of the end of Lake Big Stone, the Big Sioux River, also an important stream in the early fur trade, having been visited by the French before 1700,² comes to approximately the same meridian and continues south near it to the Missouri river, which stream in turn flows southward into the state of Missouri. This combination of waters forms a rather striking geographic boundary line.

As the area between this dividing line and Wisconsin and Illinois was sufficiently large to permit the creation of two average-sized states between Missouri and Canada, it was rational that this strongly suggested north-south line should have been adopted as the western boundaries of Iowa and Minnesota. The absence of geographically suggested boundary either to the east or west of this one and still sufficiently near to it so that that territory to the east as far as the Mississippi would give average-sized states,³ increased the likelihood of the choice of this line.

In the adoption of boundaries for states, Congress was influenced greatly by the boundaries as well as the areas of older states. In several cases the same or approximately the same meridians or parallels are used as parts of the boundaries of three or more states, and other parts of streams which formed the boundary for parts of older states in many cases were taken advantage of in bounding younger states.

Iowa, as admitted in 1845 had for its western boundary approximately the meridian which formed much of the western boundary of Missouri; but in 1846 it was extended westward to the Missouri and the Big Sioux rivers. The rather

²Robinson, Doane: A Brief History of South Dakota, p. 22, (New York 1905).

³Had the relatively insignificant Dakota River, but slightly known in 1846, when the present western boundary of Iowa was established been chosen, the area to the north of Iowa would have been more than 115,000 square miles, about 35,000 square miles larger than Minnesota, and greater than any state then admitted except Texas. In 1846 there was great objection in Congress to the making of states of large size.

sharp western bend of the Missouri near the mouth of the Sioux doubtless was a factor, in addition to that of the area, favoring the choice of the lesser stream as a boundary.⁴

When Minnesota was about to be admitted in 1858, the choice of its western boundary probably was influenced by the fact that the meridian which is followed approximately by the Red River and Lake Traverse was approximately the one followed by the rivers which form the western boundary of Iowa and part of Missouri.⁵

The Western Boundary. The western boundary is the meridian 27° west of Washington, D. C. (approximately 104° west of Greenwich). It is not known that geographic factors directly determined the selection of this particular meridian. The fact that it passed through the mouth of the Yellowstone River, near which point was located the then important Fort Union, suggests that they were, but search in the U. S. House and Senate Documents, the Congressional Globe and elsewhere has failed to reveal the cause for the choice of this meridian. During 1863 and 1864 it served as the western boundary of all the Dakota Territory. During the latter year the Territory was extended greatly westward south of the 45 parallel. In 1868, when Wyoming Territory

⁴The boundaries of Iowa, as provided by Congress in 1845 gave it an area much smaller than its present one. The reason for this small size was a desire on the part of a majority of Congress to carve many, rather than few states out of the free territory. The people of Iowa so strenuously objected to this restricted area that they twice rejected the constitution offering admission with these boundaries. They demanded, instead, the so-called "Lucas Boundaries," by which the Missouri River formed the western boundary, and the northern boundary extended northeast from the mouth of the Sioux River, including in Iowa several counties now in southwestern Minnesota. The basis for these demands were (a) the desire for a larger area, and (b) the desire for the "natural" boundary afforded by the Missouri River. The present boundary was a compromise offered by Congress in 1846. The parallel of 43 degrees 30 minutes was followed from the Mississippi River to the Sioux River. Thus the area demanded by Iowans was reduced in the northeast but extended about one-third the amount of this reduction in the northwest. (Shambaugh, B. F. "History of the Constitution of Iowa," pp. 256-284, 306-317, and his map showing the "Boundary History of Iowa," Iowa Journal of History and Politics, Vol. II, p. 374, 1904.)

⁵The enabling act of December 1856 gave the west boundary as the Red River, Lake Traverse and the Sioux River. The committee on territories, influenced, it is said, by the land speculators who had laid out Sioux Falls (Andreas Historical Atlas of Dakota, p. 95, Chicago, 1884), substituted Lake Big Stone and the meridian due south from its southern end to the Iowa boundary, for the Sioux River which was considered by the chairman to be too small in its upper section and too crooked for a state boundary. This substitution deprived Minnesota of some 600 square miles, including the territory upon which Watertown, Brookings, and Sioux Falls are now located. (Winchell, Alex. H., "Minnesota's Eastern, Southern and Western Boundaries," Minn. Hist. Coll. Vol. X, pt. II, p. 677-687, and the "Congressional Globe" for Jan. 31 to Feb. 25, 1857.)

was formed, this meridian again became the sole western boundary. In 1867 the western boundary of northern Nebraska was established on this meridian, so in adopting it, Nebraska followed Dakota.

The Southern Boundary. The southern boundary of Dakota Territory was established in 1861 when the Territory of Nebraska was divided. The 43rd parallel was followed to the Keya Paha River, which was followed to the Niobrara River, which in turn was followed to its junction with the Missouri, which formed the rest of the boundary. In 1882, the unsatisfactory nature of a boundary determined by small, crooked streams was realized, and the 43rd parallel was made the boundary eastward to the Missouri River. In 1870 a minor adjustment, made desirable by the shifting of the main channel of the Missouri, was made, and a small area was ceded to Nebraska.

It may be conjectured⁶ that the choice of the 43rd parallel was made (1) because it approximately extends the line of the big eastward bend of the Missouri River, (2) it nearly follows the divide between the White and the Niobrara rivers, (3) it is just south of the southern border of the Black Hills.

The Northern Boundary. The Territory of Dakota extended northward to the Dominion of Canada. It was divided in 1889, into two states, along the seventh standard land survey parallel and a westward extension of this parallel. This line is four miles south of 46° north latitude. Its choice made the division of townships unnecessary, a division which would have been necessary had the 46° parallel been followed. It also divided the territory approximately into halves.

Geographic influences which worked for the division of Dakota were (1) its large area—approximately twice the average size of the American states of today and nearly three times the average size of those which had been admitted already. North and South Dakota combined would have

⁶Search in government documents, publications dealing with Nebraska or Dakota and elsewhere, has failed to disclose any discussion of the reasons for the selection of this precise boundary. The choice was made by the committee on territories, whose deliberations were not recorded. The chairman of the committee had traveled extensively through the west and in his speeches in Congress repeatedly showed an appreciation of geographic factors.

an area nearly three times that of the present medium sized states, such as Illinois, Iowa and Wisconsin. (2) The community of interest between the most densely settled sections was very weak, because of the lack of communication. The lower (northern) portion of the Red River Valley was the first part of northern Dakota to be settled, while it was the extreme south-eastern corner of southern Dakota which was first settled. Between these settlements was a tract of nearly 400 miles in width, long sparsely settled, and crossed by neither navigable streams nor, until after 1887, by a railroad. With the coming of railroads, many lines which enter North Dakota came from Minneapolis-St. Paul, already a fairly important industrial center, while two of the more important lines which enter South Dakota came through Sioux City which is nearly due west from Chicago, a great railroad center. The chief railroad systems of South Dakota are the Chicago, Milwaukee & St. Paul; the Chicago and Northwestern, and the Chicago, Burlington & Quincy, while in North Dakota the chief ones are the Northern Pacific, the Great Northern, and the Sault St. Marie. Each of these lines has little or no mileage in the other state. Even today the railroad communication between the two states is not good. (3) Many of the people predicted that what were then the more densely populated regions would remain widely separated by sparsely settled stretches. (4) A non-geographic factor was the selfish ambition of many office seekers. Two states meant twice as many state offices.

A few quotations concerning the causes for a division of the Territory may be of interest. "Division was inevitable. The great territory contained three one-sided centers of population, widely separated and differing in social interests, products and transportation facilities."⁷ "There was at this period an inherent difference between the people of northern and southern Dakota. South Dakota was chiefly occupied by homesteaders who brought with them the conservative notions of the small farmer about public and private economy, morality, and education. On the other hand

⁷Hagerty, F. H.:The Territory of Dakota, p. 5 (Aberdeen 1889).

North Dakota was controlled chiefly by bonanza farmers, captains of industry, whose traditions were entirely at variance with those of the homesteaders of South Dakota,"⁸ (and later of western North Dakota). "Large holdings of land were secured much more readily and promptly by wealthy men in northern Dakota than in southern, as in the former there were large tracts of railroad lands given by the government to subsidize the building of the Northern Pacific Railroad. There were no such lands in southern Dakota. The fact that the nearly level Red River Valley occupied early by bonanza wheat farmers, has its southern end near the 46th parallel possibly was an influence, as was the fact that this parallel divided Dakota nearly equally."⁹

⁸Robinson, Doane: A Brief History of South Dakota p. 172, New York, 1905.)

⁹Visher, S. S.: The Geography of South Dakota, (Vermillion 1916).

BUFFALO EAST OF THE MISSOURI IN SOUTH DAKOTA

BY C. STANLEY STEVENSON

One of the greatest of the ranges for the wild buffalo of seventy five or a hundred years ago was the country east of the Missouri; the valleys of the James and the Sioux; the coteaus of the Missouri and the Coteau des Prairies. This vast country was wonderfully well suited for the great herds that roamed over it, the grass was luxuriant and nutritious, water was there in plenty and the winters not too severely cold nor the summers too excessively hot. This range included also the southwestern corner of Minnesota and the northeastern quarter of Nebraska. The removal of the various tribes of Indians from Illinois, Iowa and Minnesota toward the Missouri river jeopardized the existence of the buffalo on their usual range and they too were forced across the Missouri or remained to their total destruction. And all this within a very short space of time indeed.

The history of the buffalo east of the Missouri in South Dakota is but typical of the fate of the vast herds of the whole mid-west plains country.¹ In his report to the Smithsonian Institution in 1887,² Mr. Wm. T. Hornaday, the taxidermist and naturalist, says: "Of all the quadrupeds that have lived upon the earth, probably no other species has ever marshaled such innumerable hosts as those of the American bison. It would have been as easy to count or to estimate the number of leaves in a forest as to calculate the numbers of buffaloes living at any given time during the history of the species previous to 1870." But why previous to 1870? From then on the railroads carried thousands of professional hunters into the heart of the buffalo country, men armed with the repeating rifle and seemingly ruled by no other motive than to exterminate the buffalo. And they did.

¹For a very full and authoritative discussion of this general question see "Extirpation of the American Bison" by William T. Hornaday in the Smithsonian Report for 1887, Pt. II, page 367 et seq.

²The Smithsonian Report for 1887 was published as House Miscellaneous Documents No. 600, 50th Cong. 1st Sess.

The modern mind can hardly grasp the significance of mere numbers when applied to these herds, its credulity is taxed to the limit to believe the tales and records of those who were fortunate or unfortunate enough to have lived in the days of pioneering and Indian fighting and of trekking to the gold fields of California, Montana and Idaho right through the buffalo country. We cannot help but doubt their recorded words, so sweepinig and complete has been the change, and yet the evidence is clear and indisputable. The 1910 census reports for South Dakota a total of 1,552,000 head of domesticated cattle and yet this is about the estimated size of the Northern herd,³ which was but a comparatively small part of the buffalo that roamed over the western plains but a few years ago—a great national, natural food resource, which though practically gone now, yet adds its protest against national, state or individual waste of any resource. But this is to be the story of the buffalo east of the Missouri river in South Dakota.

When Lewis and Clark came up the Missouri in 1804 they found buffalo in great numbers on that river from the mouth of the Kansas river and killed their first one between Elk Point and Vermillion. On their return trip in 1806 they recorded in their journal that at the mouth of White river "these last animals (buffaloes) are now so numerous that from an eminence we discovered more than we had ever seen before at one time; and if it be not impossible to calculate the moving multitude, which darkened the whole plains, we are convinced that twenty thousand would be no exaggerated number."⁴ In 1832 George Catlin made extended reports on the habits and habitat of the buffalo. In his "North American Indians"⁵ he tells of meeting the "most immense herd crossing the Missouri river" from east to west near the

³Ernest Thompson Seton in Scribner's magazine for October 1906, p. 402, gives the following table of buffalo statistics:

"Estimate of buffalo in primitive days.....	55,000,000
Estimate in 1800	40,000,000
Estimate in 1850	20,000,000
Hornaday's estimate in 1871	4,500,000
Hornaday's estimate of Northern herd	1,500,000"

⁴Hosmer's "Lewis and Clark." Reprinted from the 1814 edition and edited by James K. Hosmer. Vol. II, p. 446, journal entry for Friday, August 29, 1806.

⁵Catlin's Letters and Notes of the Manners, Customs, and Condition of the North American Indians. Vol. II, pp. 13-14.

mouth of White river. "When we came in sight, we were actually terrified at the immense numbers. * * * The river was filled, and in parts blackened, with the heads and horns. * * * This was one of the instances that I formerly spoke of, where thousands and tens of thousands of these animals congregate in the running season. * * * In the grand crusade no one can know the numbers that may have made the ford within a few days."

As typical of the great and profligate waste of this great resource even as early as 1832 and later, Catlin says⁶ that when he arrived at Fort Pierre in May, Mr. Laidlaw and Mr. Halsey, the American Fur Company managers, reported a buffalo hunt of a few days before when "a party of five or six hundred Sioux Indians on horseback forded the river (to the east side where Pierre now is) about midday and spending a few hours amongst them, recrossed the river at sundown and came into the fort with fourteen hundred fresh buffalo tongues, which were thrown down in a mass, and for which they required but a few gallons of whiskey." Thus did the fur trading posts throughout the extent of the buffalo range, with their cheap whiskey to trade for robes, change the attitude of the Indian toward the buffalo and he became a hunter for hides and tongues, a waster.

The report of Captain James Allen's expedition of 1844⁷ would indicate that at that time the valley of the Sioux and the Coteau des Prairies was one of the great ranges of the buffalo, and thus it remained for twenty years or more, for when the expedition⁸ sent by General Sibley to join General Sully on the Missouri passed over this country, Geo. W. Dowd, a private in Co. "G", 8th Minnesota, in his dairy⁹ for June 16, 1864 writes: "Immediately we are on the banks of Tiza-Ptan-an and Chan-an-pa lakes (Two Woods lakes in Deuel county). * * * One mile further and a herd of

⁶Catlin's Letters and Notes of the Manners, Customs, and Condition of the North American Indians. Vol. I, p. 256.

⁷See journal of Capt. Allen in this volume, journal entry for September 14.

⁸For report of this expedition see Vol. VIII, of these collections, 1916; or Vol. 41, Part 1, p. 168 of the Rebellion Record.

⁹Verbatim copy of this dairy now in possession of this Department. See article on the Dowd dairy elsewhere in this volume.

buffalo is seen to the north * * * one hundred or more." Judge J. B. Hubbell,¹⁰ a contractor delivering supplies to Ft. Thompson¹¹ on the Missouri, while approaching the Big Sioux from the east in July 1864, saw four buffalo, but failed to capture any. In an article in the *Monthly South Dakotan* for May 1902, he says: "I believe these were the last wild buffalo ever seen east of the Big Sioux river." And only twelve years before Rey. Stephen R. Riggs¹² reported buffalo in large numbers as far east as Lac qui Parle, Minnesota. Tom Phillips, of Pierre, reports killing a buffalo on Brule Creek, a branch of the Sioux in Union county, in 1865.¹³

The country between Big Stone lake and the James river was called by the Indians "Tatanka Okadakiciye" which signified buffalo republic. In the fall of 1865 the officers at Ft. Wadsworth (Sisseton) in a spirit of revelry organized this "republic" by the election of officers and the appointment of a "military force" to proceed against the "woolly buffalo," the citizens of the republic. An inspection party of high officials gave them an excuse for a big hunt and near the site of the present city of Groton, Brown county, they found a herd of twenty-five or thirty thousand animals and the fun was on.¹⁴ Two years later than this by the treaty¹⁵ with the Sisseton Indians that section of the country between the James river and the western boundary of the Sisseton reservation north of a line from Lake Kampeska to the mouth of Moccasin creek on the James river (near Aberdeen) and as far north as Devil's Lake, N. Dak., was set aside as a great buffalo pasture for the Sisseton Indians, which land was ceded back to the United States in 1872 for a consideration of \$800,000.

¹⁰James Boyd Hubbell, born in Winsted, Conn., 1836; died in St. Paul, Dec. 19, 1905. Came to Minnesota in 1857, settling in Mankato; was register of deeds for Blue Earth county, 1859-1861; engaged in mercantile business, and later in the fur trade. (Minn. Hist. Coll. Vol. XIV, p. 350.) Contractor for delivery of supplies to Ft. Thompson, Dakota Territory; with Moscow expedition. (*Monthly South Dakotan*, May 1902.)

¹¹Present site of Crow Creek Agency, Buffalo county.

¹²"Mary and I"—Riggs, p. 132-133.

¹³In conversation with Mr. Doane Robinson of this Department.

¹⁴This account given by Mr. Sam J. Brown in *Monthly South Dakotan* for September 1900, p. 149.

¹⁵For text of this treaty and the land cession of 1872 see Vol. I of these Collections.

The story of the last few buffalo east of the Missouri is told by Robert L. Walker, the old assistant in the federal surveyor's office at Huron, in the *Monthly South Dakotan* for June and July, 1902. A pitiable story, indeed, of the last of these monarchs of the prairies, a story of a small straggling band of a dozen or more wandering over the coteaus of Sully, Potter, Faulk, Edmunds, McPherson, Walworth, and Campbell counties, until one by one they drop at the hand of the settler, and the story of the buffalo is at an end. West of the river the herds fared no better for the year 1883, which practically marked the extinction of the species east of the river, saw the last organized hunt of extermination there, at least of the so-called Northern herd. With the completion of railroads through Nebraska, Kansas and Texas, and the importation of professional hunters and game hogs, the larger Southern herd met a like fate.¹⁶

For years it has been a mooted question as to what caused the rapid extermination at the very end. Three or more solutions have been advanced. First, there is the possibility of an epizootic, the prevalence of which carried off vast numbers. Then there is the suggestion that some great blizzard played havoc with them. This theory was advanced by Mr. R. M. Bunn, an early settler in Kingsbury county, in an extended correspondence with this department in 1907. Mr. Bunn homesteaded in that county in 1880 and found on his claim the skeletons of 50 animals of all ages under the shelter of the highest hill in the neighborhood. Judging from local reports at the time, he makes the statement that "on a region here approximately 100 by 200 miles it is no dream to state that there were 20,000,000 of these skeletons in 1880, not including calves, which had disappeared entire." Mr. Bunn wrote that such writers as Mr. Ernest Thompson Seton and Mr. Reuben G. Thwaites agreed with him in this theory, Mr. Seton, however, advancing the theory also, that very large numbers met their end by crossing the Missouri when the ice was bad, and thus materially hastened their

¹⁶See "The Extermination of the American Bison"—Hornaday, in *Smithsonian Report* for 1887.

own extermination.¹⁷ Mr. Bunn spoke of Mr. Theodore Roosevelt as "the one notable exception" and he quoted Mr. Roosevelt as replying to his letter thus: "I am very sorry not to agree with your reasoning. I was an eye-witness to the extermination of the bison. They were killed by hunters—partly by the red-men but chiefly by the whites. Nothing else was any real factor in their extermination. Occasional great snow storms such as you describe caused local extermination during certain years. It is another error to think that the buffalo never moved south. They often did. The extermination of the American Bison in the fifteen years culminating in 1883 had nothing whatever to do with climatic conditions. It was due to the numbers of hunters. The man with the rifle was the sole, appreciable, active factor." Which well states the third and most widely accepted theory of extermination. Mr. Hornaday, the naturalist, says:¹⁸ "The primary cause of the buffalo's extermination, and the one which embraced all others, was the descent of civilization, with all its elements of destructiveness, upon the whole of the country inhabited by that animal." He goes on to catalog the secondary causes as "(1) Man's reckless greed, his wanton destructiveness, and improvidence in not husbanding such resources as come to him from the hand of nature ready made. (2) The total and utterly inexcusable absence of protective measures and agencies on the part of the National Government and of the Western States and Territories. (3) The fatal preference on the part of hunters generally, both white and red, for the robe and flesh of the cow over that furnished by the bull. (4) The phenomenal stupidity of the animals themselves, and their indifference to man. (5) The perfection of modern breech-loading rifles and other sporting firearms in general." In 1885 Mr. Hornaday reported,¹⁹ "The buffalo may now be said to be practically extinct in the United States. Here and there in two or three isolated spots in Montana, Colorado and Idaho occasionally a dozen may be

¹⁷Mr. Seton advocated this theory as a probable cause in an article on "The American Bison" in *Scribner's* for October 1906, p. 392.

¹⁸Smithsonian Report 1887, Pt. II, p. 464.

¹⁹Smithsonian Report 1885, Pt. II, p. 299.

seen. The hunter, merciless sportsman, Indian and civilization have all contributed to this result."

South Dakota has one of the few large herds of semi-domesticated buffaloes in existence, the Scotty Philip herd at Ft. Pierre. This herd was started in 1882-3 when Frederick Dupree,²⁰ the old fur trader of the Cheyenne River Agency, with his sons captured five wild calves about 100 miles west of Fort Bennett. Of these, two died after two months of captivity and a third was killed by an Indian in 1885. By 1888 this nucleus had grown to a small herd of nine pure-blood buffaloes, five of them cows, and seven mixed bloods. At the time of Mr. Dupree's death in 1898 the herd came into the possession of Mr. James (Scotty) Philip of Fort Pierre who established them in a pasture enclosed with a substantial woven wire fence. Here the herd has increased until today they number approximately 500 head.²¹ South Dakota has officially taken the buffalo into consideration and through the Department of Game and Fish²² has transferred 46 head of pure bred stock from the Philip herd to the State Game Park in Fall River county, and thus the state has engaged in the work of preservation and restoration of the buffalo of the plains.

²⁰Smithsonian Report 1887, Pt. II, p. 462; S. Dak. Hist. Coll. Vol. I, p. 139.

²¹According to Hon. G. H. Jaynes, of Pierre, who each year slaughters several head for the Christmas markets.

²²See the Fifth (1914) and Seventh (1916) Annual Reports of the Department of Game and Fish, and the Bulletin by the same department issued in 1917.

STEAMBOAT WRECKS IN SOUTH DAKOTA

In the Annual Report of the Missouri River Commission for the Fiscal year ending June 30th, 1897, Captain Hiram M. Chittenden¹ publishes a compilation showing the loss of 295 steamboats on the Missouri river from the beginning of steam navigation to the date of the report. Of these 20 were lost within the boundaries of the present state of South Dakota. Captain Chittenden's report may be found by those interested as Appendix W. W. of the Annual Report of the Chief of Engineers of the Army for 1897. We have herewith extracted from it the information pertaining to the South Dakota wrecks, arranged them chronologically and added to them such additional information as we have been able to secure.

Kate Swinney, usually written Sweeny. The first wreck noted is that of the Kate Swinney, which occurred August 1st, 1855, at what has since been known as "Kate Sweeny Bend," between Vermillion and Elkpoint, where the line dividing Union and Clay counties meets the river. The boat was a side wheeler of 328 tons and was returning to Saint Louis from a trip to Fort Union and was loaded with Fur.² She was owned by Capt. Pierre M. Chouteau.³ George Anderson, her mate and Henry Dickson her fireman started to walk from the wreck to Sioux City and were never again seen and were supposed to have been killed by the Sioux.⁴ The boat was named for Miss Kate Swinney, daughter of Capt. W. D. Swinney, of Glasgow, Missouri. From the Saint Louis newspapers of the period we are enabled to get some of the particulars of the wreck:

¹Hiram Martin Chittenden, brigadier general U. S. A., born Western, New York, October 25, 1858, graduated from military academy 1884. Was long connected with the engineering work on the Missouri and other western rivers and is the author of several works on western history and upon engineering.

²This is an error as a further reading of this narrative will show. The Kate Swinney was employed that summer to carry soldier's and military supplies to Fort Pierre and was returning empty.

³Pierre M. Chouteau, of the notable Chouteau family of St. Louis, son of the Pierre Chouteau of Fort Pierre fame.

⁴I can find no evidence confirmatory of the statement that these men were killed by the Sioux.

Fetcoe the pilot and Black the carpenter got away in a life boat and reached St. Joseph in safety. Before leaving the wreck the Captain sold the salvage to "some nearby settlers"⁵ for \$300.⁷

Peoria Belle. A side wheel steamboat 180 by 22 feet, Capt. James Clarke, Master, was grounded upon a sand bar at Arcrow's Store⁸ five miles above the mouth of the Cheyenne, at the bow of Little Bend, in October 1864. She lay there until the next spring when she was cut down by the ice and lost. The Peoria Belle had been employed by the government the previous summer in transporting supplies for Sully's army in its first campaign against the hostile Sioux. She was for a long time grounded near the camp on Peoria Bottom north of Pierre and it was from her that the Bottom took its name. In his journal for July 28th, 1863, Sergeant J. H. Drips, historian of the expedition says: "The Belle Peoria went down today and took our mail. The boats brought provisions for 2500 men thirty days."

When the Belle stuck and it was found impossible to get her off a messenger was at once dispatched to Fort Rice for help and a company of soldiers were sent down armed with shovels. It was thought that the sand could be dug away and the boat floated off but the diligent efforts of 80 men availed nothing and the vessel was left in care of a guard in the hope that a late rise might float her. The rise did not come and the gallant Belle lies under the Big Sand bar at the bow of Little Bend.

Tempest snagged at Bon Homme Island. No particulars.. 1865.

⁵I cannot locate any settlement in the neighborhood unless it might have been the traders still at old Fort Vermillion. There is no record of any settlement nearer than Sioux City on either side of the river. Theophile Bruguier the enterprising Sioux City Frenchman was long engaged in trade at Fort Vermillion and perhaps it was he who saw a bargain in the wreckage of the Kate Swinney.

⁷There must have been another "Kate Swinney," for Phil Chappell in the Kansas Collections, Volume IX, p. 343, tells of a "Kate Swinney," a lower Missouri river boat of 600 tons that navigated the Kansas river in time of flood as far as Lawrence with a great cargo of lumber, in 1858.

⁸Arcrow's Store. I have been unable to secure any information of this trader. It is probable that he was trading for the American Fur Company, supplying the needs of the considerable band of Sioux who always resided about Little Bend. According to Basil Clement Arcrow was post trader at mouth of Grand River 1840-41.

Pocahontis No. 2. Sidewheeler, 180x32, in Fort Benton trade, but at the time was carrying Indian supplies. Snagged and lost at Pocahontis Island, opposite Academy, Charles Mix county, August 10th, 1866. No particulars learned.

Imperial. A stern wheel boat of moderate size was destroyed by the ice at Bon Homme island in 1867. The vessel was grounded on a bar in the fall and destroyed by the ice in the spring. During the winter Judge Wilmot W. Brookings attached the vessel for a debt and the action was still pending. Out of the wreck he secured the bell, which he presented to the Congregational church at Yankton and it was mounted on the old Capitol building where the church held services. It was taken from the capitol building to Yankton Academy and finally passed into the possession of the school board and is said to be still in use in the high school building at Yankton. Prof. Durand however fails to confirm this statement.⁹

Livingston. Sunk by ice at Runningwater, in 1868 but afterward raised without much loss.

Helena No. 1. Owned by Senator Power of Montana, Capt. McGarrah, master, snagged and sunk at Bon Homme Island, Oct. 31, 1868, but raised with small loss.

Antelope owned by W. R. Massie, a fine boat of 326 tons and valued at \$20,000 loaded with \$38,000 worth of goods burned at Bon Homme Island April 12th 1869. A chambermaid was burned to death. The boat and cargo was a total loss. I do not learn the name of the woman burned. The boat was lost below the island and near the Bon Homme-Yankton line.

Urilda, bound up river loaded with merchandise April 24th 1869 ran upon a snag at the foot of Kate Sweeney bend. There is a tradition that the vessel had a large cargo of whiskey which connoisseurs consider must be well ripened by this time and several efforts have been unsuccessfully made to recover the liquor from the wreck which has been located in the

⁹Life of Joseph Ward of Dakota, p. 76.

quick sands and portions of which are at times uncovered by the river.¹⁰

Bachelor, a stern wheel boat struck a rock in the channel and sunk at Fort Pierre in November 1869 and was wholly lost. No further particulars are obtainable.¹¹

Hiram Wood No. 1, a little stern wheel boat 100x22 feet owned by Dr. W. A. Burleigh, engaged in transporting Indian supplies was snagged and sunk at the old Rosebud landing, opposite Bijou Hills, in March 1870. Capt. Grant Marsh bought the wreck and converted it into a ferry boat.

North Alabama, a stern wheel vessel 160x32 feet engaged in the Upper Missouri trade, Capt. James McGarrah, master, was snagged and sunk near Vermillion, October 27th, 1870. About this vessel Phil Chappell, in Volume IX of the Kansas Historical Collections has the following notes: "North Alabama, 1868. Sunk at mouth of Vermillion river on upper Missouri in 1870. Telegram in the New York Tribune, July 12th, 1906,—'Vermillion, S. Dak., July 11, 1906: The river steamer North Alabama, which was sunk in the Missouri river six miles below here, in 1870 strangely rose to the surface yesterday and today crowds of spectators line the banks. The boat carried a cargo of flour and whiskey for the Yellowstone district. The fifty barrels of thirty-six year old whiskey have attracted the lovers of good liquor and already a scramble to find the prize has begun. As yet it has not been reached, owing to the quantities of mud accumulated over the lower decks.'"¹² The Vermillion Plain Talk of July 12th 1906 identifies this wreck as the "Evening Star," but this is an error, the Evening Star having burned at the wharf, St. Louis, August 24th, 1869. The Plain Talk speaking of the wreck further says: "After all these years under water the old boat is now partially in sight. Within the past few days the bow has seemingly pushed upward and now shows

¹⁰See note on "North Alabama," following. The Urilda lies below Kate Sweeny Bend, not far from Elk Point while the Alabama lies above this bend and nearer to Vermillion.

¹¹Captain Chittenden is in error as to the date of this disaster. The Bachelor was lost in 1884. Mr. H. E. Cutting of Pierre was then in charge of river transportation at Pierre and certifies to the fact. Other citizens recall it.

¹²See "The Urilda," above.

plainly from either shore. At the time when the boat went down it was in the main channel of the river but in recent years the channel has been changing and this is no doubt responsible for the raising of the front end of the boat."

Ida Reese, stern wheel, 180x32, 225 tons, snagged near mouth of White River, June 20th 1871. The boat was owned by Durfee & Peck, Indian traders and was returning from Fort Benton loaded with fur. Most of the cargo was saved. John Gillam was her master.¹³ Phil Chappell, at p. 303, Vol. IX, Kansas Collections is mistaken when he says the Ida Reese was sunk by ice at Yankton in 1871.

Sioux City No. 2. Owned and operated by Capt. C. K. Baker. She was side wheel 160x30 and was in the mountain trade. She was caught by the freeze up at Fort Sully in the fall of 1872 and the next spring, March 19th, 1873 was cut down by the running ice. Capt. Baker also owned Sioux City No. 1 operating on the lower river.

Carroll, No. 2, owned by Dr. W. A. Burleigh of Yankton, carrying Black Hills supplies and passengers, from Yankton to Fort Pierre was burned on the night of April 19th, 1877, at Hot Springs Island very near to the southwest corner of Castalia township, Charles Mix county where the boat had tied up for the night. Among the passengers aboard was Dan Scott,¹⁴ the Sioux Falls newspaper man and he sent out graphic accounts of the fire. The following accounts are from the Yankton Press and Dakotan of the Period:

A brief dispatch in our telegraphic columns conveys the intelligence of the total destruction by fire of the steamer Carroll and her cargo this morning fifty miles above Fort Randall. A confirmatory dispatch has since been received from Walter A. Burleigh, Jr., clerk of the boat, who is on his way down in a yawl and will reach Yankton tonight. He represents that the boat and cargo are a total loss. The Carroll left Yankton last Monday afternoon with 285 tons of freight and about eighty passengers besides officers and

¹³John Gillam was of a very notable family of Boston seamen, who nearly three hundred years ago were famed for their daring enterprises, especially into the Huson's Bay.

¹⁴Dan Scott, born in Montgomery County, New York, Feb. 19, 1841.

crew. Her passengers were all bound for Pierre and the Black Hills and a portion of the freight of the boat were the private goods of Hills emigrants. Several Yankton parties also had supplies, lumber and wagons on the boat for Pierre and the Hills. The following is a partial list of parties who had goods on the boat:

Adler & Ohlman, Yankton, liquor and cigars \$4,000, insured for \$3,500; Dewitt & Co., Yankton and Ft. Thompson, flour and oats, \$400; Richey & Dix, Yankton, hardware, \$150; M. T. Woolley, groceries, \$50; Bross & Leeper, Ft. Pierre and Yankton, merchandise and household goods; M. W. Sheafe, Jr., Elk Point, lumber for warehouse and grain; J. D. DeRussey, Lower Brule, merchandise; Louis Volin, Ft. Pierre, new freight wagons; Dr. H. F. Livingstone, Ft. Thompson, merchandise; Dr. A. J. Lambough, Lower Brule, merchandise; O. M. Roberts, Fort Thompson, merchandise; O. P. Stafford, Fort Pierre, merchandise; William Swartz, Yankton, household goods; M. D. Johnson, Fort Pierre, flour; Clark Lewis, corn and flour; Charles Collins, Gayville, printing material; H. C. Ash, Yankton, household goods. On the losses there was no insurance except the \$3,500 on the stock of Adler & Ohlman.

The Carroll was built two years ago at Pittsburgh at a cost of \$20,000, was owned by Dr. W. A. Burleigh and Capt. Tim Burleigh, of Yankton, and was running in Burleigh's Yankton and Pierre line. She was one of the staunchest and fastest running boats on the river and was a general favorite with steamboat men. Our telegraphic account states that she was completely destroyed and as there was no insurance on the boat the loss falls wholly on her owners. As intelligence of the disaster was received at a late hour we have been able to gain only the above particulars concerning the boat and her cargo for today's issue and have put them together hurriedly. A more complete account will appear tomorrow.

A Later Report

Intelligence confirmatory of the destruction of the steamer Carroll at Hot Springs, yesterday morning was received last night by the arrival of Walter A. Burleigh, Jr.,

at half past eleven o'clock. He came down in a yawl, making the trip of about one hundred and seventy miles in twenty hours. He abandoned the wreck about the time that the fire had burned it down to the water's edge and as nothing more could be done made haste to reach Yankton with the books and papers. The steamer Meade, which arrived this forenoon brought down a number of passengers who were on the Carroll and from Judge Leeper we have gained a few particulars of the disaster.

The Carroll tied up for the night to the east bank of the river, near Hot Spring Island, shortly after dark. Their landing place was against a high steep bank, the face of which was perpendicular from the water and in places even overhung the boat. Most of the passengers retired as early as half past nine o'clock. Between eleven and twelve o'clock an alarm of fire was given and the passengers all aroused, but were given plenty of time to dress themselves. Fire had been discovered in the hold just under the ash pan, where a quantity of baled hay was stowed. The heat from the coals raked into the ash pan had fired the charred wood of the decking underneath, a hole burned through and fell into the hay and fired it. The hatches were immediately closed and the hold was filled with steam from the boilers by means of pipes which had been provided for that purpose when the boat was built. For about an hour the flames were confined to the hold and it was thought the boat would be saved, but they finally found vent and the work of destruction from that time was speedy and complete. During this interval the passengers and their baggage had been removed from the boat. This was no easy task, owing to the steep bank, and it was only accomplished by placing planks from the upper deck to the shore. Most of the passengers were drawn up the planks by ropes and their baggage was landed in a like manner.

Very little freight was saved, most of it being piled on the lower deck and in the hold. The light freight and baggage was stored on the upper deck where it was easily reached and mostly taken off. While the passengers and the goods saved were being landed and during the whole of the exciting

scene the officers and crew of the boat labored in the coolest possible manner and it is the testimony of all on board that they are entitled to the highest credit for their presence of mind and the efficiency with which they labored. After the passengers had landed efforts were made to scuttle and sink the boat, but she was so much lightened up that all attempts proved unsuccessful. After the flames had broken from the hold the work of destruction was rapid. The hold was largely stored with inflammable material and needed only air to spread the fire over the whole interior. A large quantity of seasoned lumber was piled near the boilers and when this got well to burning the heat was so intense that the boilers and machinery were rendered wholly worthless. It is thought that a portion of the hold cargo may yet be got out in good condition, but this is only surmise, as no inspection has been made.

Most of the passengers were taken on board of the Key West, which passed yesterday forenoon, and carried to Fort Pierre, while the balance returned to Yankton on the Meade, the Carroll officers paying their passage to both points. They were handsomely treated by the officers of both these boats, everything which would tend to their comforts being attended to.

The Western owned by the Coulson line, a stern wheeler 212x34 feet was cut down by the ice at Yankton in the great gorge of March 29, 1881. A large field of ice ran against her with such force as to flatten her port boilers. She was built in 1872 and was deemed worth \$15,000 at the time of her loss. The first injuries were not fatal to the vessel and hope was entertained for raising her when the water subsided. However the water did not immediately recede as anticipated but rose to unprecedented heights and ice piled mountain high about the wharves. April 21st the Press and Dakotan completes its story:

"The Steamer Western lies where she was cast by the flood a crushed and disintegrated mass of wood and iron. Through the melting mass of ice can be seen enough of the wreck to convince the explorer that the Western was com-

pletely chewed up, in the jaws of the gorge. The forward part of her hull lies upon the bank right side up and the stern projects over and against the bank apparently in an inverted position. The ice has not melted away sufficiently to establish the fact that the hull of the Western broke in the center and the stern half turned bottom side up."

A half dozen other boats at the Yankton wharf or near by were roughly handled but most of them were repaired within reasonable cost. They were the Helena, Black Hills, Livingston, Nellie Peck, Rosebud and Butte were among these.

The General Meade was forced into winter quarters at Pease island about ten miles south west of Geddes, and thirteen miles above Ft. Randall by the extraordinary early freezeup in the fall of 1880. The crew went down to Yankton for the winter leaving the boat in care of S. M. Richardson and a young Norwegian boy whose name is not recalled. During the long winter evening this youth was regularly instructed in the mysteries of navigation, particularly that portion that relates to the spring smash up. On Saturday, March 27th the break-up came with a heavy flood and the Meade was torn from her fastenings and carried off in the raging torrent in a field of floating ice. Richardson immediately started ashore with a heavy line in the hope that he could secure a turn around a tree, but the rope was pulled away from him leaving him on shore while the boy was left alone on the renegade vessel which soon took a position stern down stream and followed the principal channels. Mr. Richardson undertook to follow it on the shore but soon ran into Pease Creek impassible from the flood and was compelled to go back and find a skiff and take his chances amid the crushing ice floes of the channel. When the boy reached Fort Randall he made himself heard on shore telling of his helpless situation and asking that points below be notified that means of rescue might be devised. From Randall all the lower points were notified and guards were kept out at Niobrara, Springfield and Yankton throughout the night but the vessel did not appear. At White Swan the boy assured the

people that it was impossible to guide the vessel into the shore. In the meantime however Mr. Richardson was following with all diligence and eight miles below Randall he overtook the boat and relieving the boy of his charge succeeded in landing her over a quarter of a mile from the river back on the prairie. He says the Meade is uninjured.

Mollie Moore, the largest boat on the river, 225x33 feet, 1400 tons, in the Fort Benton trade, caught on the bank in a falling river at Chamberlain and over turned in 1881.

Minnie Hermon, a small boat running from Sioux City to Le Beau was snagged five miles below mouth of Moreau river and lost, August 3rd, 1887.

Senator, a ferry boat was burned at Yankton, 1888.

New Ella, ferry boat sunk and lost at Fort Pierre, 1881.

NAMING THE CHILD

The following account of the proceedings and ceremonies of the Rosebud Sioux in naming a son born in 1915 to Hon. John H. Scriven, superintendent of the agency, is worthy of preservation not only because of the prominence of the Scriven family in South Dakota affairs but as well for its revelation of an ancient custom fast passing away among the Dakotas:*

During an Indian Fair held at Rosebud Indian Reservation, South Dakota in 1915, a number of the Indian chiefs had gathered in one of the council tents to talk over times and smoke the pipe of peace. Each chief related some instance in which the Rosebud Sioux had taken a prominent part in the early days, and especially the manner in which the Rosebud Sioux had demonstrated their superiority, as a band, over other tribes.

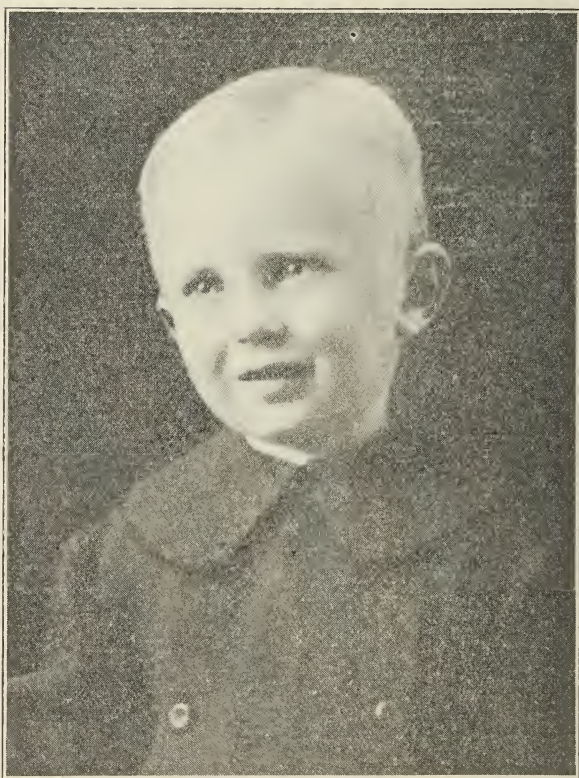
After many hours of listening to old-time stories and the passing and repassing of the pipe of peace, High Pipe, one of the most noted living Sioux Indians and a leading chief, arose and wrapping his fine colored blanket about his magnificent form walked to the center of the council tent, and by his proud and dignified manner at once showed that he had something important to say.

Standing erect as a young pine, Chief High Pipe began:

"My brothers, we have gathered here today to enjoy ourselves and to meet our old-time friends, and talk over old-time pleasures. We have spent many pleasant hours. Each of you has told of some great past event of the Rosebud Sioux. I now have something to say about an event of the present day and of which you are all aware.

"For a great many years the Good Father at Washington has placed a white man at the head of our tribe, to be

*Mr. Scriven says: "I am sending the articles as printed in the Mitchell Daily Republican about the whole affair. You may have seen this writeup for it was first published in a Valentine paper after which I saw it in more than a dozen Indian papers besides also seeing it in papers published as far east as Illinois. I never did learn who wrote the article but always suspected Clement Whirlwind Soldier, who graduated at Carlisle, Penn."



JAMES RILEY SCRIVEN
Wake chunza Waste (Good Leader)

our leader and to have charge of our land and other property, and to teach us the ways of the white brother so that we might become self-supporting and good citizens of the State of South Dakota. Different leaders have taken charge of our affairs and some were good leaders and some were not. Some leaders would come here and take us back many years into the old trails, with the idea of starting from the roughest and hardest part of the trail, and then taking a new and different trail, in the endeavor to lead us to the best path to success. Many leaders took us the wrong road and would soon be replaced in charge. Some leaders were bad men and as soon as our brothers found a bad leader they lost faith in him and refused to follow his orders.

"Two years ago our Father at Washington sent us a leader which made our leaders glad at heart, because they had known this man many years and had seen him walking over our land with a large stick measuring our land and putting posts in the ground so that each of our brothers would know where to build his house and put up a fence.

"I say this made the heart of our brothers glad, and when the new leader picked out a trail for us to follow he did not take us back to the old rough trails, but took up the trail where the last man had left us. We have not traveled a very long distance under our new leader, but the trail has become much easier and all our brothers seem to feel that we are now nearer to the easy and smooth road of living than ever before, and I say our hearts are glad.

"You all know that when a baby boy is born to a great chief of the Sioux the other chiefs gather together as we did today, and talk over the old-times and smoke the great pipe of peace. And then the best friend of the chief who has the new baby, will make a talk and name the baby. Our leader today has a new baby, three days old, and I am a great friend of our leading chief. I feel that I should make a name for this new baby, and I hope my brothers will help me and be pleased with the name I think best.

"We had one great chief named Spotted Tail (at the mention of the name of Spotted Tail the pipe of peace was passed to High Pipe and he with great ceremony lighted the

pipe, blew a few puffs of smoke, and passed the pipe to the next chief—the pipe being passed to each chief in turn. This next chief—who also blew a few puffs and passed the pipe to the next chief—the pipe being passed to each chief in turn. This is the manner in which the Indians pay homage to a great name spoken) and in trying to decide a name for this new baby my heart would be near many of our dead chiefs. But Spotted Tail (again the pipe was lighted and passed around) was a great fighter and while it was right to fight in the old days, our good Father at Washington now wants us to do all our business in a peaceable manner, and for that reason the name of our great chief would not do. Another one of our great chiefs was not a friend of the white people—you all know him—(the name was not spoken)—and that name would not do. I thought of another great name, but one time the Good Father punished him, and I do not think that name would do. But here is what my tongue tells—when in the old days one of our brothers did a great thing, we would name his first baby boy so that all our children would remember what the father of the boy did, and now I say that the father of this new baby has made us a good leader and I call this baby, “Good Leader.”

“At once the chiefs in council answered, “How, How, How” and the pipe was again passed to High Pipe, who, after lighting, blew three puffs of smoke and passed the pipe to the next chief, and in this manner the pipe went the rounds.

“After the pipe had again been placed on the council hide, Goes To War arose, and with the same dignity assumed by all leading chiefs, walked to the middle of the council tent and began:

“My brothers, you have listened to a long story told by Chief Pipe and what he said we know to be true and our hearts are glad today, and when our hearts are glad we feel like doing something good. This pipe which makes us brothers and which is our promise to help and stick to each other, was given me by one of the greatest chiefs of the Sioux and before he died he told me that this pipe was the best friend the Rosebud Sioux ever had and it should be given to someone who would always be a good friend and be

always kept by a friend because it has been such a friend to our brothers.

"Now brothers, we have named this new baby boy Good Leader and for him to be a good leader he must have many friends, and as I promised that this pipe should always be in the hands of a friend to our brothers, my heart tells me to give this pipe to Good Leader to help him to be our friend."

"The chiefs again responded with that greeting "How, How, How." The pipe was passed to Goes to War, and with the same solemnity as shown by High Pipe, Goes to War lighted the pipe, blew three puffs of promise, and again the pipe went from one chief to the other.

"Spotted Owl, who was recognized as the chief in charge, he being the oldest chief, spoke and said that as the council had done some wise things the people should be informed; and appointed Goes to War to ride to each camp and proclaim the name of the new baby and tell the people that Good Leader would be the keeper of the pipe of peace, to keep and protect it until passed along to the next great leader. Spotted Owl also said that the chiefs should go to the Agent's home and see Good Leader and present him with the pipe of peace.

"Goes To War mounted his horse, (the horse being decorated with fine beaded and quill work, while Goes To War wore his most gorgeous costume of buckskin and headdress of feathers.) Riding from camp to camp, Goes to War, with all the dignity of a great orator, spoke from his horse:

"My brothers, I come to tell you what great things the council of chiefs did today. Our Agent has a new baby boy three days old and because our Agent has been a good leader, your chiefs have named the new baby Good Leader, and we will give to Good Leader the greatest friend of the Rosebud Sioux, the pipe of peace, to help him to be our friend. You must tell all your brothers about what great things the council did today."

"The day after the Indian fair closed, eight of the leading chiefs appeared at the Agent's house to present the pipe of peace to Good Leader, and the pipe was placed near the baby, while each chief passed by, and each chief touched the left hand of the baby to indicate that their wish was, that as

the left hand would hold the pipe of peace so should the left hand ever be raised to keep peace.

"This pipe of peace belonged to Iron Shell, an Indian Chief, who secured it in 1825 in a fight with another Indian, the victor to become the leading chief and to have the pipe of peace. At the death of Iron Shell the pipe was presented to Spotted Tail; and after Spotted Tail was killed the pipe came to Two Strike, who after becoming too old and feeble to carry on the work of chief, presented the pipe to Hollow Horn Bear, who until his death in Washington about one year ago, was recognized as the leading chief of the Sioux. This pipe has figured in all the great Sioux treaties since 1825 and has been smoked by General Harney, General Crook and General Miles, and was the pipe used in the treaty after the Custer Massacre, also during the Council of the Black Hills treaty.

"Mr. John H. Scriven, superintendent of the Rosebud Indian Agency was a prominent citizen of Mitchell up to the time of his appointment as allotting agent at Rosebud, and having finished the allotment work, and having become so well acquainted with every quarter-section of land on the reservation and the ways of the Indians, he was appointed Superintendent when the allotment work was finished.

"Mr. Scriven is justly proud of the good feeling of the Indians in naming his new son, and especially the great distinction of making the baby keeper of the pipe of peace."

ENDING THE OUTBREAK¹

It was due to the common sense of Gov. Newton Edmunds² that the War of the Outbreak was brought to a close long before the military branch of the government would have accomplished it. He was very dissatisfied with the results of the military campaigns against the Sioux. In his first report dated September 20, 1864, referring to the campaign of 1863 he says: "I am convinced that little if anything was accomplished towards the subjugation of the Indians. These two expeditions were immensely expensive to the government. I am not prepared to say why they were failures." He further discussed means of bringing about a permanent peace through negotiation.

As soon as the legislature of 1864-5 adjourned on January 13, 1865, he put his affairs in shape and left for Washington. Some time elapsed before he got the ear of the president but Lincoln was soon convinced of the business sense of Edmund's proposal to settle up the war by negotiation. He took one of his personal cards and wrote upon it: "Thad Stevens: Give Governor Edmunds what he wants. A. Lincoln."

This card Governor Edmunds gave to Thaddeus Stevens, chairman of the House Ways and Means committee and likewise a member of the Committee upon Indian Affairs. The Indian Appropriation Bill H. R. 682 had already passed the House on February 23. Stevens took Governor Edmunds first to the Commissioner of Indian Affairs William P. Dole. The commissioner had before talked the matter over with the governor and agreed to his proposition except in the matter of expense. Dole believed it would cost \$50,000 and Edmunds thought he could carry it through for \$20,000. The three went together to James R. Doolittle, United States senator from Wisconsin, and chairman of the Senate committee upon Indian Affairs who agreed to offer the amendment provided

¹The war of the Minnesota Outbreak began at Redwood Falls, Minnesota, August 18, 1862 and ended by the Edmunds' Treaties of October 1865. See Vol. II, p. 252 et seq.

²Gov. Edmunds. See Vol. I, p. 123.

it was confined to \$20,000. This he did on March 1, when the following debate occurred:

Mr. Doolittle. I now move to insert after the amendment that has just been adopted the following:

To enable the superintendent of Indian Affairs of Dakota Territory, under the direction of the President, to negotiate a treaty of peace and amity with the hostile Sioux and other hostile tribes allied with them, \$20,000.

I should like to call the attention of the Senator from Ohio to this proposition. If the subject is sufficiently understood I will not take up the time of the Senate upon it. I have no doubt that this is one of the wisest appropriations that can be made. The truth is that the military expedition that has gone with artillery and infantry over the plains at this immense expense to the Government, so far from effecting anything against the hostile Sioux, has been almost a failure. A single regiment on horseback, in my judgment, would have accomplished five times as much. It has cost the Government an immense sum; the Sioux are still hostile; and I believe that the right persons appointed by the President to take the necessary means to negotiate for peace with these hostile Sioux can effect a peace and save all this immense expenditure to the Government, and the whole army can be sent to the front, where they can do something for the benefit of the country. The Secretary of the Interior has recommended that the sum of \$50,000 be appropriated for this purpose; but the committee, on consultation with the superintendent of Indian affairs of Dakota, who is here present, believed that for the sum of \$20,000 the thing might be accomplished.

Mr. Sherman. I do not know but it is useless to talk about Indian appropriations, and I generally make no resistance to them; but I never will vote, as I stated at the last session, to authorize the Commissioner of Indian Affairs to send a party of people to negotiate and treat with Indians. I think it is the most ridiculous farce that can be transacted in our Government. It is the most shameless prostitution not only of the money of the Government but of the name, and credit, and fame of the Government. Let me illustrate it. Two

years ago the honorable Senator proposed to send somebody out to negotiate and treat with the Chippewas, I believe. The consequence was, that after awhile a treaty came back to us, was sent to the Indian Committee, and ratified, and the first we know about it is an appropriation of one or two hundred thousand dollars per annum to carry into effect an Indian treaty with some Indian tribe that we know nothing of. This is the effect of it. The Committee on Finance have reported a new appropriation to this bill for one Indian tribe of \$200,000. We had no resort but to do it.

Mr. Doolittle. The Senator will find that these large appropriations are for the first year for removing these Indians, their subsistence, the building of the agencies, and the other buildings which are necessary; and after that the appropriations per annum are very small. The treaty to which the Senator alludes is a treaty which was negotiated in Minnesota, and which acquired for the Government of the United States the relinquishment of the Indian title to a country almost as large as the State of Ohio. The treaty was negotiated by the honorable Senator from Minnesota (Mr. Ramsey) and I have no reason to believe that the treaty was not negotiated upon a fair basis.

Mr. Sherman. I do not attack the treaty at all. I only say that this appropriation must be followed undoubtedly by a treaty probably providing for the payment of millions of dollars, because one installment alone on a modern Indian treaty will probably be \$100,000. This bill appropriates \$2,500,000 for the support of how many Indians? I do not know how many; but comparatively few in number.

Mr. Brown. They number about three hundred thousand.

Mr. Sherman. Of whom probably about one third are what are called treaty Indians; and the balance, the wandering tribes of Camaches, Etc., get comparatively little. It seems to me that an end ought to be put to this business of making treaties. Some three or four years ago the Senator from Wisconsin himself agreed to provide some other system, and a Senator from California not now with us (Mr. Latham) also agreed to the same thing, and it was understood that a different system was to be adopted in the man-

agement of the Indian tribes; that we were no longer to treat them as equal powers, but we were to provide for them as dependents. That ought to be done.

I have before me an account of one of these treaties which I think is the best illustration of an Indian treaty I have ever read. It is the history of the treaty of Grenville, made by General Wayne. General Wayne, after having slaughtered a good many thousand of the Indians, convened them all together at the town of Grenville, or the hamlet of Grenville, and there he made a speech to them. I will give the substance of his speech. He said there were many white people who had come to Cincinnati, and one or two other places in Ohio, and they were very poor and needy; that they had their wives, and their wives were begging for bread; that they had their children and their children were crying for clothing. General Wayne appealed to the Indians to give to the poor whites a little land to enable them to earn a living for their women and children. That was the substance of General Wayne's appeal. The Indians took it in grave consideration. They retired to their council; and the next day they came back, radiant with joy, and addressing themselves to General Wayne, they said, "Father, we have found a way in which we can reconcile all our difficulties. The Great Spirit has given us a road out of all our troubles. You say that there are but a few people at Cincinnati; that they are poor, needy, hungry, without clothing. You have offered to give us for our lands \$10,000 in gold, five hundred blankets, so many guns, so much ammunition. Now, let the Great Father who lives at Washington give all this money, and all these goods, and all these blankets, to the few poor white people at Cincinnati and make them rich and happy, and then let them go back from whence they came, and we will have no further trouble."

That is about the history of all Indian treaties. General Wayne did not see it in that light; and the consequence was that the Indians were compelled to give up one half of the State of Ohio; and they have been driven westward and westward until they are gradually disappearing. The idea of treating with these Indians as separate and independent na-

tions in my judgment ought to be abandoned. I therefore never will vote to send a commission out there to negotiate with roving tribes of Indians as free and independent nations. Let the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, or the Secretary of the Interior, or the President of the United States, or some authority, prescribe laws or rules or regulations, subject to the action of Congress, for the government of these poor people who are dependent upon our bounty. Let us help them and aid them; but do not let us continue the two systems. We have now with many Indian tribes arrangements by which we give them help upon their farms; send women to teach their children; send school masters and blacksmiths and laborers to them. That is the proper way to dispose of the Indians. In the present condition of affairs I am not in favor of making any more Indian treaties. If the Senator says to me that the Indian service requires \$10,000 or \$20,000 to relieve these Indians temporarily, to enable them to obtain homes for themselves, I will feel myself bound to vote for whatever he says is necessary in that respect; but to negotiate any more Indian treaties, it seems to me, is simply to enable some people to rob and plunder the Indians, and prescribe laws for them without our sanction or supervision.

Mr. Doolittle. I am quite sure that the attention of my honorable friend from Ohio has not been drawn to the consideration of the present relation of the Government of the United States to the Sioux nation of Indians and the hostile tribes upon the plains that are allied with them. I say to my honorable friend that he is voting here upon the appropriation bills millions and millions of dollars for transportation and subsistence to carry on a warlike expedition against these very Sioux. They are in hostility with the Government of the United States, and trying to ally with them all the Indians of the plains. It is believed by the superintendent of Indian affairs of Dakota Territory, that for the little sum of \$20,000, by which he can furnish the kind of presents that may be necessary to induce their chiefs to come in and hold a talk or treaty, peace can be obtained between the Government of the United States and these Sioux, and thus put an end to this immense expenditure. I

say to my honorable friend that while I have not the slightest doubt that under the Indian department there are many expenditures which never ought to be incurred, and there are undoubtedly men who are interested in contracts for provisions and supplies and transportation who may be making money out of it, yet as compared with what is going on in relation to the army which is dealing with this very question, they are not one drop in the bucket.

The amendment offered by Doolittle was agreed to and the bill having been made a special order for 7 p. m. March 3, passed.

A few days later President Lincoln appointed as a commission to treat with the northwestern Indian tribes under the authority of this amendment, Newton Edmunds, S. R. Curtis,³ Orrin Guernsey⁴ and Henry W. Reed,⁵ Henry H. Sibley.*

Gov. Edmunds remained in Washington for a few days and on March 11, 1865, addressed Commissioner Dole upon the subject as follows:

"Washington, March 11, 1865. Sir: Congress, just before it adjourned, made an appropriation of twenty thousand dollars for the purpose of negotiating a peace with the hostile Sioux nation in the territory of Dakota.

I think you will agree with me as to the importance of making an early effort to secure this very desirable object, especially when calling to mind the efforts which are to be made the present season to open a wagon road through the Sioux country to Montana and Idaho, and the liberal appropriations made by the last congress for that purpose.

In order to open the two lines of road across Dakota the present season peace must be consummated with the hostile Sioux, or else the war department will have to detail a large number of troops to accompany the working parties on both lines; hence I am clearly of the opinion that an early effort

³Gen. Samuel Ryan Curtis, a native of Ohio, graduated from West Point in 1831. He died the next year, Dec. 26, 1866.

⁴Orrin Guernsey. No data.

⁵Henry W. Reed. A citizen of Iowa.

*Gen. Henry Hastings Sibley, Minnesota. See Vol. I. p. 125.

should be made to accomplish the object for which congress made the appropriation.

There are other and more important considerations to be urged why a treaty of peace should be early made with these hostile tribes, the most important of which is to avoid, if possible, the enormous expense attending a military expedition against them.

I beg leave to state that in my opinion, the object can be accomplished by sending some friendly Yanktons among those hostile bands and inviting them to come in at some place designated and state their grievances to the government agents.

I beg leave to further state that I believe, this can be further promoted by enlisting the active cooperation of such persons as are well known to these Indians, who have established a reputation among them of being their friends, by friendly acts since the war has been in progress. Such men can easily be found in our territory.

Should you, upon reflection, regard this matter of paramount importance I trust you will at as early a day as practicable, prepare the necessary instructions for my guidance, and have the amount of twenty thousand dollars placed to my credit in New York, to be expended in effecting the desired object; and thus by an early action save, if possible the enormous expenses of another military expedition which costs millions of dollars.

I am, sir, respectfully your obedient servant,

NEWTON EDMUNDS,

Governor and Ex-Officio Supt. Indian Affairs.

Hon. Wm. P. Dole, Commissioner of Indian Affairs.⁶

To which letter the territorial delegate Dr. W. A. Burleigh added as a postscript "I fully agree with Governor Edmunds in the plan suggested, and ask the immediate attention of the Commissioner of Indian Affairs to it."

Governor Edmunds at once returned to Yankton and with characteristic vigor began preparations to carry out the work in hand. April 6, Commissioner Dole wrote him with

⁶Report of the Indian Commissioner, 1865, p. 191.

general instructions and providing the money and supplies for the enterprise.

On April 19 Edmunds addressed a letter to Gen. Alfred Sully in command of the Northwest Indian Expedition asking for the cordial cooperation of the military⁷, the reply to this came under date of May 8, from Gen. John Pope,⁸ commanding the Military Department of the Missouri and it proved to be a cold douche:

Saint Louis, Mo., May 8, 1865. Hon. Newton Edmunds, Governor of Dakota Territory and exofficio superintendent of Indian Affairs, Yankton, Dak. Ter.: Sir: Your letter of the 19 ultim., to Brevet Major General Sully has been laid before me. In reply thereto I have the honor to inform you that there are no Sioux Indians in Dakota Territory with whom it is judicious to make such treaties of peace as you propose. The hostile Sioux still in arms against the government are public enemies who are not entitled to any consideration until they themselves express a desire to cease hostilities. They are in a state of war and are therefore under the proper jurisdiction of the military authorities and not of the civil officers of the Indian department. There can certainly be no good reason for rewarding such Indians for the massacres and outrages they have committed by giving them presents of goods and money, etc., and thus encouraging them to further hostilities every time they need more supplies. However, the policy of such treaties as may have been made by the Indian Department, may be viewed and acted upon at Washington, in relation to other Indian tribes, it is certain that the hostile Sioux in Dakota are not now in such condition of mind as would justify the making of such a treaty as you suggest with them. Being in a state of war they must be dealt with by the military authorities, and I regret therefore to inform you that for the present I do not feel authorized to assist, or permit any arrangements for a treaty with them. Whenever they choose to have peace instead of war, the commanding officers on the frontier

⁷This letter has not been found. It is not in the Rebellion Records.

⁸Gen. John Pope, of Kentucky, graduated from West Point, 1842. Served in Mexican and Civil Wars. Died Sept. 23, 1899.

are instructed as to terms, which do not involve the giving of presents nor any expenditure whatever of public money. Those Indians lately hostile who have already come into the military posts and begged for peace are prisoners of war of the United States and are under the control of the military authorities. With such prisoners I do not understand that the Indian Department has anything to do. The Indians who have delivered themselves up at the military posts or who have sent in to ask for peace have been met kindly and informed that there will be peace with them so long as they keep the peace; that any hostile acts on their part toward any white man or friendly Indian will be visited by immediate hostilities against their tribe by the troops from all the military posts in their country. This arrangement the Indians thoroughly understand and it furnishes them much stronger inducements to keep the peace than can be offered by any presents of goods and money annuities. Such is my belief and understanding of these matters so far as relates to the Sioux Indians in Dakota Territory and I regret that I feel obliged to decline acceding to the arrangements for making a treaty with them set forth in your letter unless I am otherwise ordered by superior military authority.

I am, sir, very respectfully, your obedient servant,

JOHN POPE,

Major General Commanding⁹.

Governor Edmunds received the foregoing on May 10, and at once transmitted it to Hon. James Harlan¹⁰, Secretary of the Interior.

Dakota Territory, Executive Office,
Yankton, May 10, 1865.

Hon. James Harlan,

Secretary of the Interior, Washington, D. C.

Sir: The circumstances which induced the last congress, just at the close of the session to pass an appropriation for making a treaty of peace with the hostile Indians of this

⁹Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 357, Rebellion Records.

¹⁰Hon. James Harlan, one of Iowa's most distinguished men. Born Clark County, Illinois, Aug. 25, 1820. United States Senator, 1855-1865. Secretary of the Interior, 1865-1866. Senator 1867-'73. Died Oct. 5, 1899.

territory are doubtless yet familiar to you. Immediately upon my return from Washington to the Territory I took such steps in relation thereto as I believed calculated to bring about the very desirable object—desirable not only to our own citizens, but specially in a pecuniary point of view to the government, feeling confident from the information in my possession that a very large majority of the hostile Indians earnestly desire peace. Indeed I believe that they very reluctantly joined the Sioux of Minnesota, (Sioux of the Mississippi) in hostilities against the government, and could not have been induced to have done so but for the cooperating influence of disloyal men, (rebels at heart) from the state of Missouri and other border slave states, who were numerous in the country and earnest in their efforts in this direction, believing that thereby they were rendering important service to the rebel cause. Earnestly desiring to see an early peace as a result of this action of congress I made every effort in my power to get word to all hostile camps and the result is that there is now at this early day 600 or 700 lodges on the Missouri river, near Fort Pierre (equal to about 4000 persons) ready and anxious to treat for peace and they are rapidly being joined by other bands. With the view of securing the cooperation of the military authorities in this district, I on the 19 ultimo wrote to Brevet Major General Sully, who is in command, inviting his cooperation and I beg leave to transmit a copy of that portion of his reply touching this important subject as follows, viz:

“I cannot at present give the order you request to military commanders in regard to sending for Indians, as it conflicts with orders I have just received from General Pope, dated April 17, being a copy of a letter to Major General Halleck, an extract of which I send to you as follows: ‘I understand, too, that it is proposed to send agents to make treaties with the bands of the Sioux on both sides of the upper Missouri. The military commanders were long since instructed to permit no treaties to be made with these Indians for the present, except such understanding as the military commanders consider necessary, and that no presents or ammunition be given or provided. Until my orders are

set aside by superior military authority, such treaties cannot be made;' and I am directed by General Pope to conform to this until further orders."

From the above it is clear that the military commander of this department has his face firmly set against making peace with these Indians, notwithstanding the evident desire of congress to consummate this very desirable object, by which millions upon millions of dollars will be saved to the government in so doing, judging by the history of the last three campaigns against them. A revocation of the military order above quoted seems necessary before any action can be taken on my part to treat with the Indians and I trust that such action may be taken at the War Department as will cause the military commander of this district to cooperate in carrying out the design of congress in making the appropriation, feeling confident that such action will enable me to establish friendly relations with all of these tribes and enable the government vastly to reduce its military expenditures in this section of the country.

I am, sir, very respectfully your obedient servant,

NEWTON EDMUNDS,

Governor and ex-officio superintendent of Indian Affairs.¹¹

Governor Edmunds likewise wrote a similar letter to Commissioner Dole and in the closing clause expressed his personal feeling by saying: "The small appropriation made by congress at its last session, (\$20,000) I am certain will establish a permanent and lasting peace with all these hostile bands. This once done "Othello's occupation will be gone,"¹² and the government will be enabled to curtail its military operations in this country and save millions upon millions of money in the future. Is there no way, let me ask, to secure the adoption of a common-sense and humane policy upon the subject."

Secretary Harlan promptly took the matter up with the War Department upon May 29, and addressed the following letter to Secretary Stanton:

¹¹Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 661, Rebellion Records.

¹²"Othello's occupation's gone." Oth. Act. 3, Scene 3, line 357.

Department of the Interior,
Washington, D. C., May 29, 1865.¹³

Hon. E. M. Stanton,¹⁴

Secretary of War.

Sir: I have the honor to enclose a copy of a communication, under date of the 10 instant recently received by this department from Newton Edmunds, Governor of Dakota Territory, and ex-officio Superintendent of Indian Affairs, also other papers. On page 539 Statutes at Large, Volume 13, page 539 will be found the legislative provision he refers to which makes an appropriation to enable him to negotiate a treaty of peace with the hostile Sioux and other hostile tribes allied with them. The provision affords conclusive evidence of the desire of congress for the restoration of friendly relations with those Indians and of a belief in the practicability of negotiating a treaty by which that desirable object will be accomplished. You will perceive that Governor Edmunds feels confident that a majority of these Indians "earnestly desire peace." He states the significant fact that about 4000 of them are on the Missouri river near Fort Pierre "ready and anxious to treat for peace," and that they are rapidly being joined by other bands. He has not been able to secure the cooperation of the military authorities. Indeed they evince a settled determination to oppose the negotiations of any treaties with those Indians. In Major General Pope's letter by which the action of General Sully is controlled it is announced that the policy therein indicated will be maintained within the limits of General Pope's command until it is overruled by superior authority. It is a subject of regret that there should be any conflict of action between the officers responsible to this department and those commanding the military force in that region. It is of the highest importance that the civil and military authorities should alike conform to the policy adopted in relation to the Indian tribes. I invite your early attention to the facts and views communicated in these papers, and I have the honor to

¹³Harlan was a senator until March 4 and took part in the passage of the Indian appropriation bill.

¹⁴Hon. Edwin M. Stanton, continued as Secretary of War under President Johnson until the disruption in 1867.

request that any instructions or orders emanating from your department relating to the Indians to which these papers refer may be communicated to me.

I am, sir, very respectfully your obedient servant,

JAMES HARLAN, Secretary.¹⁵

The conflict of authority became a source of great interest and almost of scandal. Dr. Burleigh¹⁶ then in congress took an active interest and the people were almost unanimously on the side of the civil authorities. The northwestern press gave publicity to the subject and on June 2 Pope wired to Sully then at Sioux City:

"If any publications have been made in the papers at Sioux City or elsewhere abusive to any army officers and making public the contents of any official communications which can be directly traced to any officer of the Indian Department, please send me copies with a list of witnesses to substantiate the publication by these parties. I will at once lay the matter before the new secretary of Interior who I am satisfied will not permit any differences of views and policy between officers serving under the interior and War departments to be made the subject of controversy and abuse by the newspapers. At all events I will test the matter fully."¹⁷

Sully replied the next day.

"As a boat is to go down the river with Colonel Dubois¹⁸

¹⁵Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 661, Rebellion Records.

¹⁶Dr. Walter A. Burleigh, then delegate in congress from Dakota Territory. Vol. I, p. 130. Dr. Burleigh's opinion of and attitude toward the work of the military forces in dealing with the Indians had been stated the year before in his annual report as Indian Agent at Greenwood Agency: "Nor do I believe that the 'moral influence' of the military authorities, even if the Indian were placed under their exclusive control, would add materially to the inculcation of a higher state of civilization, or do more towards the spread of Christianity among them, than is done under the present Indian system." and again later in the same report "That the military stationed upon our frontiers who were formerly guardians of the Indians, are the best suited to this end, I do not believe. I am free to admit that they have made many efforts at improving the condition of the Indians. Their close contact with the Indians has given them every opportunity to test their theory, yet, amongst the hundreds of living examples of their charitable and humane efforts to improve the race, demoralization and debauchery shows itself a thousand fold more promiscuously than in the thorough-bred Indian." Report of Indian Commissioner, 1864, p. 283.

¹⁷Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 742, Rebellion Records.

¹⁸John Van Dusen Du Bois, of New York, graduated from West Point, 1855. Retired in 1876 and died July 31, 1879.

I write you in a hurry a few lines. The Colonel will tell you about the antics of Burleigh and Company."¹⁹

Mr. Harlan immediately wrote to the Indian Commissioner concerning the alleged indiscretions of the various agents in the Indian country and recommending such a policy as was in use with the War Department, that of official reports only and no unofficial comments through the newspapers. The correspondence follows:

Department of the Interior
Washington, D. C. July 11, 1865

Sir: It is deemed proper, and it will be the policy of the department, in the further management of our Indian relations with tribes or bands in hostility with the United States, to subordinate its action and intercourse with them to the policy and operations of the War Department pending such hostilities; and on the other hand, with respect to the Indians in amity with the United States, it is expected, and not doubted, that the officers of the War Department will co-operate with the peaceful intercourse with those tribes.

I have therefore to request that you will instruct the several superintendents and agents not to deliver goods, money, or other property to any Indian nation, tribe, or band while they are in hostility with the government, and to suspend all intercourse with such Indians, except so far as the same may be sanctioned by the officers of the War Department.

In enforcing the civil policy of the government with Indians who are at peace with the United States, you will direct the superintendents and agents, when necessary, to request the assistance and co-operation of the proper military authorities. They should also be instructed to refrain from publishing any facts in relation to Indian affairs, or imparting to anyone information on the subject, with a view to its publication. They should also be directed to communicate all such information to this department, or to the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, for such action as may be considered necessary.

¹⁹Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 766, Rebellion Records.

Should any superintendent or Indian agent at any time entertain the opinion that the officers of the army are innocently, or otherwise improperly, interfering with the rightful authority and prerogatives of this department in its management of Indian affairs, he should report the facts to the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, or to the Secretary of the Interior, and the department will confer with the Secretary of War upon the subject, if deemed necessary.

JAMES HARLAN, Secretary.²⁰

D. N. Cooley, Esq., Commissioner Indian Affairs.

Circular to superintendents of Indian affairs and Indian agents.

Department of the Interior, Office of Indian Affairs,
Washington, D. C., July 27, 1865

Sir: It appearing that differences have arisen between the superintendents and agents appointed by this department and the military authorities, at and near Indian reservations and agencies, as to the treatment of and intercourse with the Indians who are hostile to the United States, it is deemed necessary to inform you of the policy adopted by this department in its connection with the military authorities during the continuance of such hostilities. This department will subordinate its actions and intercourse with the tribes and bands in hostility to the United States to the policy and operations of the War Department pending such hostilities; and, on the other hand, support the agents and employees of the Interior Department in the performance of their official duties, and in the enforcement of the rules and regulations governing our intercourse with the Indians in amity with the United States.

In consonance with this policy, therefore, you are hereby instructed not to deliver goods, money, or other property to any Indian nation, tribe, or band, while they are in hostility to the government; you will be especially vigilant that no trader under your supervision has any trade or intercourse with any member of such disaffected tribe or band, under penalty of revocation of his license and expulsion from within

²⁰Report Indian Commissioner 1865, p. 201.

your jurisdiction; and you will suspend all intercourse with such Indians, except as far as the same may be sanctioned by the military officers in charge of operations against them.

You are further instructed to refrain from furnishing to the public, or to individuals in such manner that it may be laid before the public, information upon the subject of Indian affairs. In regard to this subject, your attention is called to the circular instructions from this office of January 26, 1865, in which the communication to the public of information of pending affairs relating to the Indians, and a neglect to advise this office or the Interior Department of matters of importance receiving or needing attention, was mentioned as being sufficient cause for dismissal from office.

Where difficulties arise in enforcing the civil policy of the government with Indians who are at peace with the United States, you will request the assistance and co-operation of the proper military authorities.

If at any time it shall appear that the officers of the army are interfering with the proper execution of your duties as civil agents of the government, or that they fail to render you such aid as is necessary to enable you to enforce the regulations, adopted alike for the good of the whites and the Indians, you will content yourself with making a full representation of the facts at once to this office, or the Secretary of the Interior, when measures will be taken by the department to bring about, if possible, the co-operation of the military officers with you in such measures as may be deemed proper.

You will hereafter make a full and explicit monthly report to this office of the condition of the tribe or tribes under your charge, with such suggestions as you may deem beneficial to them.

D. M. COOLEY, Commissioner.

(Indorsed)

The concurrence of the War Department in the within is expressed in the following letter:

War Department, Washington City,
July 22, 1865.

Sir: I am instructed by the Secretary of War to inform you that he concurs in the views expressed in your communication to the Commissioner of Indian Affairs, a copy of which was enclosed in your letter of the 15th instant, and also to state that the Adjutant General has been directed to transmit to Major General Pope a copy of the communication in question.

THOS. T. ECKERT,
Acting Assistant Secretary of War.

Hon. James Harlan,
Secretary of the Interior.

Although not stated in the correspondence, yet it appears beyond doubt that Stanton summoned Pope to Washington and Harlan called Edmunds down.²¹ They met there in July and a compromise was arranged so that the Edmunds commission were permitted to go to the Indians in October. Meanwhile Sully had made another utterly futile expedition to the Devil's Lake region.

The following correspondence between the representatives of the two Departments will give a full understanding of the conflict of opinion which for several months interfered with the work of the commission.

Headquarters Military Division of the Missouri,
Saint Louis, Mo., June 14, 1865.

Lieut. Gen. U. S. Grant,
General-in-Chief of the Army:

General: * * * In relation to the two letters from Hon. Newton Edmunds I have only to say that the Sioux Indians have been attacking everybody in their region of country, and only lately, long since the date of these letters, attacked in heavy force Fort Rice, on the Upper Missouri, well fortified and garrisoned by four companies of infantry, with artillery. They have also made several raids into Minnesota and at least one along the Iowa border. If these

²¹See Pope's letter to Edmunds at page 1218, Vol. 48, pt. 2, Rebellion Records, in which he says: "in accordance with an understanding between us at the conference held in Washington in July."

things show any desire for peace, I confess I am unable to perceive it. There are some of the Sioux bands of the Dakota Territory who are peaceably disposed and we are using every effort to get them into the military posts to effect peace with them, and I hope we shall soon be able to separate them from the hostile bands. The Indians now in hostility need some exhibition of force and punishment for the atrocities they have committed before they will be peaceful. I transmit copies of my orders and instructions to commanders on the frontier. My views and opinions on this subject are well known to the War Department. They were communicated long since and at various times through Major-General Halleck, first as General-in-Chief and then as chief of staff, and are doubtless now on file. The exact course I am pursuing I long since notified him I intended to pursue, and all the information needed will be found in his office. The treaty of peace which Governor Edmunds proposes to make, and which he thinks the Indian will be willing to make, is, I presume, such a treaty as it has been the unvarying practice of the Indian Department to make heretofore. A supply of food and presents to induce the Indians to assemble and to satisfy them during negotiations is just bought and transported to the place where the Indians are to meet the negotiators. A treaty is then made which provides that the United States Government will pay certain annuities of goods and money as long as the Indians remain in peace; in other words the Indians are bribed not to molest the whites. Past experience shows very conclusively what the Indians think of such a transaction. No country ever yet preserved peace either with foreign or domestic enemies by paying them for keeping it.

It is a common saying with the Sioux that whenever they are poor and need powder they have only to go down to the overland routes and murder a few white men and they will have a treaty to supply their wants. If such is the kind of treaty which will be satisfactory to the Government I do not doubt that Governor Edmunds is right in saying he can make one, either with the Sioux or any other Indians whatever. He has only to notify the Indians, hostile or not, that

if they will come to a certain place he will insure their safety going and coming, and will give them presents and food and make arrangements for continuing to supply them, provided only they will sign a paper promising to keep peace toward the whites. But the very Indians with whom he now proposes to treat have signed such a paper and gone through the same absurd performance once before, at least, some of them oftener. Is there any reason to suppose that they are going now to keep their word any better than they did then? Of one thing we may be sure, and that is that they will now demand a higher price for signing such a promise than they did before, and in six months or less will be ready for another treaty at a still higher price. It seems idle to pursue the subject. It seems to me that no man can fail to understand, if he wishes to understand the matter at all, that such a practice as this only encourages the Indians to commit hostile acts. Every time they do it they are thus paid for it. The treaties I have directed military commanders to make are simply an explicit understanding with the Indians that so long as they keep the peace the United States will keep it, but as soon as they commence hostilities the military forces will attack them, march through their country, establishing military posts in it, and as a natural consequence their game will be driven off and killed; that the Indians can avoid this by keeping peace, and in no other manner. This is a peace which involves no expenditure of public money for annuities or presents, and is no doubt objectionable to Indian officials on that account, but as it certainly will not involve any more Indian wars than have hitherto occurred and will be certain again to occur under the present Indian system, it will have the merit at least of greater economy. Indians will keep the peace when they fear the consequences of breaking it, and not because they are paid (and badly paid, too) for keeping it, and when they can by the present system of treaty making really make more by committing hostilities than by keeping the peace. The Indians with whom Governor Edmunds proposes to treat are Indians who are now violating a former treaty. What have they done to entitle them to presents and annuities or to greater

confidences in their promises, unless, indeed, the violation of former treaties and the murder of whites is to be thus compensated? I am very willing to unite with the Indian officials, or anybody else, to secure peace with the Indians, but am not willing, if I can prevent it, to pay Indians for outrages committed upon innocent women and children, and thus encourage them to a renewal of the same atrocities. I oppose the proposed treaty of Governor Edmunds, because it will only lead to renewed hostilities and very certainly in the future, as in the past and the present, involve the necessity of exactly the same operation in treaty making.

At the same time, if the Government and the people concerned will hold the military authorities blameless for any hostilities which may result from a treaty, I will very willingly aid the Indian agents in making one; but unless the Indian Department will hold itself responsible for any murders of white people by the Indians with whom they make a treaty—Indians who have already violated one or more treaties of the same kind, and upon whom we have no greater hold now than hitherto—I am not willing to consent. Whenever Indian hostilities or massacres occur on the frontier the military are held responsible for them, and by none are they so promptly and violently than by the officials of the Indian department who have made treaties with the very Indians concerned which would not fail to lead to an outbreak. Either the War or Interior Department should have the sole management of Indian affairs. This divided jurisdiction leads to nothing but evil. The Indian officials are anxious, in season and out of season, to make treaties for reasons best known to themselves. The military commanders foreseeing the inevitable result of these bribing treaties, and knowing that they will be held responsible for all the Indian hostilities which will result from such treaties, oppose treaty making of this character; hence, constant differences of opinion and conflicts of jurisdiction, which can only be avoided in one of two ways: First to return to the War Department the whole management of Indian Affairs, or, second, to provide for making treaties with Indians without the expenditure of money or goods. Having no power to effect the former arrangement,

I am endeavoring to effect the latter. Permanent or even long-continued peace with Indians, under the present system of treaty making, even if conducted with strict honesty and good faith with the Indian, I believe to be hopeless. I again invite attention to my letter on this subject to the Secretary of War, dated February 1 (6), 1864, and published in the Official Army and Navy Gazette of April 23 (26), 1864. Wisdom and humanity alike dictate a change in the present system of Indian management. The development of the mining regions in the Territories of Colorado, Nevada, Idaho and Montana has attracted such a horde of emigrants that the Indian country is penetrated in every direction, highways are made through it, and the game driven off or destroyed. The Indians are more and more confined to circumscribed areas, where they are less able every day to subsist by hunting. A few years more and they will be driven to extremities. No one can say what outrages are committed upon Indians by these irresponsible crowds of white men flocking through their country. It is only what the Indian does to the white man that is published to the country; never what the white man does to the Indian. I have not a doubt that the Indians could be pacified if they did not hope from day to day that by keeping up hostilities they would secure a treaty such as has always before been made with them, and which supplies their wants. By sending troops enough the Indians can of course be exterminated, but surely such cruelty cannot be contemplated by the Government. The question is now squarely before us. Either the extermination of the Indian tribes or a humane policy which would save them from so cruel a fate, and at the same time secure from danger white emigrants.

The present system of Indian policy has only to be pursued a few years longer, and in view of the past results in this direction it is certain that no Indians will be left to treat with. Where are the great tribes of Indians to whom we applied this system of treaty making so short a time since? Has there been a people on earth who have been so rapidly destroyed under the pretense of kind treatment? It is a simple process to calculate how long is the term of life of

the tribes which still remain. Nothing can save them from the same fate unless the Government changes its course, gathers them together, and places them in such a position and condition that they will no longer be objects of cupidity to unscrupulous whites. So long as they receive money and goods they will be a constant source of temptation to white men and will be wronged and plundered. It is surely unnecessary for me to pursue this subject further. I am only reiterating opinions and views long since officially communicated to the War Department, and which I am convinced the new Secretary of the Interior would gladly examine and consider courteously. To his predecessor it has been useless to present such matters. I beg, therefore that this communication, with its enclosures, be laid before the Hon. Mr. Harlan. I feel confident that he will very willingly adopt the plan suggested or some other to save his Department from discredit and the Government from shame of inhumanity. I shall pursue the course I have begun without change, unless I receive orders to the contrary from my proper superiors. Since beginning this letter the inclosed dispatches have been received. The Indians thought by Colonel Leavenworth to be so anxious for peace are those mainly concerned in the reported outrages. Opportunity has been and is being given to him to make peace with these Indians. He has been once robbed of his stock and driven out of their country. My impression is that this time he will lose his life.

I transmit also copy of a letter just received from General Dodge, commanding Department of the Missouri, which touches upon some of the points in question.

JNO. POPE, Major-General, Commanding.²²

Headquarters Department of the Missouri
Saint Louis, Mo., June 17, 1865

Maj. Gen. John Pope,

Commanding Military Division of the Missouri, Saint
Louis:

General: There is no doubt but that all, or nearly all,

²²Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 879, Rebellion Records.

the tribes of Indians east of the Rocky Mountains from the British Possessions on the north to the Red River on the south are engaged in open hostilities against the Government. It is possible that in a few of the tribes there are some chiefs and warriors who desire to be friendly, but each day reduces the number of these, and they even are used by the hostile tribes to deceive us as to their intentions and keep us quiet. The Crows and Snakes appear to be friendly, but everything indicates that they too are ready to join in the hostilities, and the latter, (the Snakes) are accused of being concerned in the depredations west of the mountains. In my opinion there is but one way to effectually terminate these Indian troubles, viz, to push our cavalry into the heart of their country from all directions, to punish them whenever and wherever we find them, and force them to respect our power and to sue for peace. Then let the military authorities make informal treaties with them for a cessation of hostilities. This we can accomplish successfully, for the Indians will treat with the soldiers, as they fear them, and have confidence in their word. Any treaty made now by civilians, Indian agents, or others will, in my opinion, amount to nothing, as the Indians in all the tribes openly express dissatisfaction with them and contempt for them. The friendly Indians say that whenever the hostile bands are made aware of our ability and determination to whip them they will readily and in good faith treat with our officers and comply with any demands we may make. If we can keep citizen agents and traders from among them we can, I am confident, settle the matter this season, and when settled I am clearly of the opinion that these Indians should be dealt with entirely by competent commissioned officers of the Army, whom they will respect and who will not only have the power to make them comply with the terms of the agreements made, but will also have the power and authority to compel troops, citizens, and others to respect implicitly and to comply strictly with the obligations assumed on our part. The cavalry now moving into the Indian country will, I doubt not, if allowed to proceed and carry out the instructions given them,

accomplish designed by bringing about an effectual peace and permanent settlement of our Indian difficulties.

G. M. DODGE, Major-General.²³

Headquarters Military Division of the Missouri
Saint Louis, Mo., June 19, 1865

Hon. James Harlan,

Secretary of the Interior, Washington, D. C.:

Sir: I have the honor to submit for your consideration the inclosed letters and documents in relation to Indian affairs. I feel sure under the present administration of the Department of the Interior that all matters of grave interest to the public service and which properly come under the jurisdiction of that Department will be carefully considered and acted upon honestly and with fidelity to the public interests and to the character and reputation of the Government. A perusal of the inclosed papers will inform you of my views of the policy pursued hitherto toward the Indian tribes and its results—views which you will find concurred in by every army officer who has ever served on the frontier, beginning with the General-in-Chief of the Army. Whether these views be sound or unsound they are worthy of courteous consideration, as being held by those who are equally interested with the Indian superintendents and agents in a correct administration of Indian affairs. I assume, of course, that it is equally the purpose of the War and Interior Departments to preserve peace with the Indians, and in that view to adopt toward them a policy dictated alike by wisdom and humanity, and executed with at least common honesty. It is not at all surprising that difference of opinion as to the policy of our Indian system should arise between officers serving under the War Department and those serving under the Department of the Interior, and especially is it common in particular instances for officers of those Departments to disagree about the proper course to be pursued. The officer serving under the War Department reports the case and his views thereon to the War Department in official communications, and instructs those under his command to execute his purposes as

²³Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 911, Rebellion Records.

far as the matter is within his own jurisdiction, as is frequently the case, and would be so more frequently still but for the reasons herein stated. He writes his views and intentions officially to the Indian superintendent or agent. It will not be disputed that when such differences of opinion arise they should be referred by each officer in official communications to the head of the Department under which he is serving, and that when such differences of opinion are so serious as to require the action of higher authority the Secretary of War and the Secretary of the Interior are the proper persons to decide upon what should be done and to instruct the officers of their respective Departments accordingly.

Whilst it is the practice of army officers to guide themselves by these rules of official propriety, I regret that the same cannot be said of the agents of the Interior Department serving on the frontier. If the views of army commanders in the same region do not accord with their own, resort is had to the public papers of the frontier, not to discuss the question but to villify and abuse the army commander and attack his personal character and motives. It has come to such a pass that I am myself very unwilling to write to any of these agents on official business, lest, if he does not agree with me, I find the substance of my letter and all that I propose to do paraded in the newspapers in the unfairest possible manner, and my motives made the subject of gross abuse and misrepresentation. Of course, this is not done over the signature of any official, but there does not exist a doubt about the authors. It is unnecessary to say to you that such a course utterly destroys all hope of harmonious action between officers of the War and Interior Departments on Indian affairs, brings the Government into disrepute, and is in all respects improper and ungentlemanlike. Besides all this, it at once establishes conflicts between the War and Interior Departments on the frontier, alarms and confuses the people to be protected against Indians, and puts in the popular mind two of the great administrative Departments of the Government in opposition to each other in matters of common public interest. As the military are very properly prohibited from using the newspapers for the discussion of

the public business confided to them, they are placed in a false and very difficult position. I believe it to be only necessary to bring this subject to your attention to secure such restrictions in future as the interests of the Government and its authority and respectability require. If the views of the Army on the question of Indian policy be unwise they will not, of course, be adopted, but it is surely proper that the mere expression of them to the War Department, or in official communications to the officers of the Indian Department, should be received courteously and not made the subject of coarse abuse in the newspapers. If the officer of the Indian Department is right, it needs no such abuse of another, and no articles in the newspapers to sustain his position. He has only to convince the secretary of the Interior that he is so, and he will, without doubt, have his way. Where it is found necessary to resort to personal abuse, the case indeed must be weak. I speak plainly on this matter, because it is a crying evil which has done more to excite alarm and uneasiness on the frontier and bring discredit to the Government than anything I know.

I present for your consideration the views and opinions contained in the inclosed letters. If true, some correction of the evils set forth should be applied. If I am found to be mistaken I shall submit very cheerfully and bend all my efforts to carry out successfully the present or any other policy adopted by the Government. It is not, perhaps, necessary to go into any further details concerning the manner in which the present Indian policy has been administered. I do not doubt, sir, that you will examine fully and carefully into the matter, and that you will take such action as is judicious to correct whatever abuse or wrongs have been or are committed.

JNO. POPE, Major-General, Commanding.²⁴

To this letter Secretary Harlan replied on July 6th as follows:

Sir: Your communication of the 19th of June last, addressed to this Department through the Secretary of

²⁴Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 933, Rebellion Records.

War, and letters from Major-General Dodge and from you addressed to Lieutenant-General Grant on the subject of Indian hostilities and Indian intercourse, have been received and carefully considered. In reply allow me to say that the manifest indisposition mentioned by you of subordinate officers of this Department to act in harmony with the policy of the War Department, and the alleged publication of uncharitable strictures reflecting on the character and conduct of those in command of troops in the Indian country, are without the sanction or approval of the Secretary of the Interior, and measures will be adopted to terminate such conduct. It is the desire of the secretary of the Interior to subordinate the action of the agents of the Department to the policy of the Secretary of War in relation to the Indian tribes at war, and to secure the support of the military authorities in carrying out the civil policy of the Government in relation to those Indians at peace with the United States. The policy of the Government in relation to nearly all of the latter class of Indians has been settled by the President and the Senate, in treaty stipulations, which carry with them the plighted faith of the nation and the force of law. Whether this policy is wise or unwise is not now a practical question for the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of War, nor for the President in his character as Commander-in-Chief or Chief Executive officer of the nation. Treaties made and ratified must be enforced by the President until abrogated by the same power which made them. All the Indians referred to by you as annuity Indians are in this category. It is on this account that the Secretary of the Interior recommended, and, as he supposes, the President approved the designation of some suitable person to proceed to the Indian country, to be on the ground when the proper moment should arrive to represent the President in negotiating for peace, and for the settlement of the Indians in districts of country as remote as practicable from the great lines of travel across the plains and unsettled Territories. It is true a general or other military officer might be thus designated by the President, were it not that Congress had provided by law that such treaties shall be negotiated by an

officer of the Indian Department. For that reason it was, in the opinion of the Secretary of the Interior, necessary to send some such officer, conversant with the subject and the probable views of the Senate, to act in concert with the military authorities, whose presence and power would awe the Indians into obedience. Otherwise all would be futile on account of the non-compliance of the Indians or the refusal of the Senate to ratify the new arrangements. Hence, whether a new policy shall be proposed or the old policy enforced, a prudent, careful, and well-informed negotiation will be needed.

The evils growing out of the settlement of the Indians on the borders of our frontier mentioned by you, and which you propose to remedy by removing them far in the rear of settlements, have not escaped the observation of this Department. But it is no more than just to the Government, and is at the same time in support of the wisdom of your suggestion, to say that when these Indians were first settled on their present reservations they were far in the rear of our settlements. That the rapid growth of the nation has brought our people to their doors, and surrounded them in some cases with a white population, is no fault of theirs and is no misfortune of ours. And if it does not render their removal and relocation desirable to us and to them, the practical inquiry arises "where can you find for them a place and habitation" free from this returning evil? There is not now one foot of territory belonging to the United States except the comparatively small district west of Arkansas not embraced within the limits of an organized territory. And this excepted district is owned in fee simple by the Indians who now occupy it. It is hoped that they may be induced to open this territory to settlement by other Indians who have obtained the same degree of civilization with themselves. Should the Department succeed in this arrangement, provision may be made for such of the Indians who residing in Kansas and Nebraska as may agree to remove to that territory. So far as it may be practicable to execute this design, your suggestions will be carried into effect, but beyond this the Government has no home to offer them where they would be free from constant friction with the worst classes

of white people. They must, therefore, remain on their reservations for the present. And it is just to say of some of these that they are doing comparatively well and are increasing in numbers. But the more difficult question still remains. What shall be done with the wild uncivilized or blanket Indians, who live by the chase, now that the encroachments of the white people are pressing them on every side and permeating their country in every direction, destroying and driving off their game on which they have chiefly relied for support.

As Congress has organized civil governments in these Territories, and has thus invited their settlement by civilized people, it is no longer possible for the Secretary of the Interior or the Secretary of War to preserve them unbroken for a habitation for the Indians. It is equally clear that these Indians cannot long support themselves by their former pursuits. They must, therefore, perish by the sword if they remain hostile; by starvation should they become peaceful and avoid plunder, or they must resort to pastoral and agricultural pursuits. As their extermination cannot be entered upon by a great and Christian nation, there is but one course left for consideration. The Government must attempt to civilize them, and the first step to be taken in this policy is to give them a local habitation. They must be induced or compelled to live on some limited district of country designated by metes and bounds, which they will learn to regard and which others can be compelled to respect, as their home, where they will gradually adopt from necessity and by imitation pastoral and agricultural pursuits. At first the district of country assigned to each tribe may be large, and afterwards diminished from time to time as game disappears and the Indians become more and more accustomed to civilized pursuits. During the transition period it will become the duty of the Government to supply them with a portion of the means of subsistence commensurate with the deficiency occasioned by the destruction of the game by our advancing settlements. To this policy there are great objections, but it is doubtful whether there will any other practical mode of procedure devised that will not be liable to

greater embarrassments. In the selection of such reservations the agents of this Department will be expected to avail themselves of the great knowledge of the character of the country and of the various Indian tribes acquired by the military officers in command of expeditions against any of these Indians, and in command of the military posts located in their vicinity, and as far as practicable to act in harmony with their views.

JAMES HARLAN, Secretary.²⁵

Headquarters Department of the Missouri,
Saint Louis, Mo., August 1, 1865

Col. R. M. Sawyer,

Asst. Adjt. Gen., Mil. Div. of the Mississippi,
Saint Louis:

Colonel: * * * (Page 1152.) * * *

It is idle to talk of making treaties of peace with the Indians when not even an unmolested home in the great region which they claim can be promised with any sort of certainty that such a promise can be fulfilled. The very soldiers placed to protect the limited district which the Government could alone protect against the incursion of the white men would render it impossible for the Indian to maintain himself in the only manner known to him. It is useless to think of the Government trying to subsist large bodies of Indians in remote and inaccessible districts. Whatever may be the abstract wrong or right of the question, all history shows that the result in this country must inevitably be the dispossession of the Indian of all his lands and their occupation by civilized men. The only practical question to be considered is, how this inevitable process can be accomplished with the least inhumanity and the greatest moral and physical benefit to the Indian. We are surely not now pursuing such a course, nor are the means used becoming to a humane and Christian people. My duties as a military commander require me to protect the emigration, the mails, and the settlements against hostile acts from the Indians. I have no power under the laws of the United States to this except

²⁵Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 1056, Rebellion Records.

by force. This necessity demands a large military force on the plains, which will have to be increased as the Indians are more and more driven to desperation, and less and less able to protect the game, which is their only means of life. The end is sure and dreadful to contemplate. Meantime, there is, so far as my power goes, nothing to be done except what is being done, and if this condition of affairs demands considerable military force and heavy expenditures they must either be accepted by the Government or the troops must be withdrawn and the plains again given up to the Indians. It would probably not be difficult to make such a peace now with the Indians as has been the custom in times past, but useless to do so unless we can at the same time remove the causes of certain and speedy renewal of war, when by withdrawing our forces we will be far less prepared for it than now. These treaties perhaps answered the purpose (though I think they were always unwise and wrong) so long as the Indians continued to occupy the greater portion of their country and the war only involved small encroachments by whites on its borders. Hitherto the process of dispossessing the Indian of his lands, although equally certain, was far slower and far less alarming. Today we are at one grasp seizing the whole region of country occupied by the Indians and plunging them without warning into suffering and starvation. Treaties such as have been made with them in time past will no longer answer the purpose. I have presented my views on this subject and suggested what seems to me the proper course to be pursued so fully and so often to the War Department, and have so frequently urged the matter upon the attention of the Government, that it seems unnecessary and hardly consistent with official propriety that I should reiterate them in this manner. I only do so now because the telegram from the General-in-Chief, which you inclose to me, seems to indicate dissatisfaction that so many troops are employed in the Indian country. Either a large force must for a time be kept there, or we must furnish insufficient protection to our citizens in that region.

It is hoped that during the present season the expeditions now marching against the Indians will be able to in-

flict such damage upon them that they will prefer to undergo much wrong and suffering rather than again break out in hostilities. This is a cruel process, but the only one which under the present system seems to be in my power. I will withdraw and muster out of service all the troops I possibly can from day to day, and by the close of the season I will endeavor to reduce to much less force the troops serving on the plains. It is proper for the Government, however, to realize that owing to the changed condition of affairs on the plains, arising from the rapid development of the mining regions and the great emigration to and rapid settlement of the new Territories, a much larger force will for a long time be required in that region than we have heretofore considered necessary. The remote stations of these troops and the necessity of hauling in wagons from the Missouri River all supplies needed for them, renders the protection required and demanded by the mail service, the emigration and the remote settlements an expensive undertaking, the propriety of which must be determined by the Government itself. The military commander ordered to furnish such protection has only to carry out his orders in the best and most economical manner. I trust I have no purpose except to perform my duty in this matter and in this manner. I have assigned Major-General Dodge, a well-known and most efficient and careful officer, to the command of all operations in the Indian country west and south of the Missouri River, with orders to reduce forces and expenditures as rapidly as it is possible to do so. His subordinate commanders are men entirely familiar with Indians and Indian country.

In conclusion, I desire, if it be consistent with the public interests, to be informed upon two questions, in order that I may act with more full understanding of the purposes of the Government: First. Is it designed that such military pressure be kept upon the Indians that small parties of adventurers prospecting the plains and mountains in every direction, and in the most remote and uninhabited regions of the country, will be unmolested by Indians, whatever such parties may do or wherever they may go? I need not say that protection of so general and universal a character will

require a large military force, which will be mainly needed to protect the Indians, by watching these white men and preventing them from committing acts for which the Indians will assuredly retaliate. Is the commander of this department responsible for hostile acts of Indians against such parties? Second. In case treaties of peace, such as have been usual, are made with the Indians by the proper officers of the Indian Department, and the troops withdrawn from the Indian country in accordance with such a treaty, is the army commander to be held responsible if the Indians violate the treaty and renew the war? In short, is the army to be made responsible for every murder or outrage committed on the great plains by Indians or white men, who are officially at peace according to the records in the office of the Commissioner of Indian Affairs? When there is divided action, as in the case now in the management of Indian affairs, there should be divided responsibility. Army commanders are very willing to be held responsible for military operations under their immediate command, but they are not willing and ought not to be held responsible for breaches of treaties made by other departments of the Government which they did not approve, yet to terms of which they are obliged to conform. If these questions which are respectfully asked can be answered without official impropriety the question of troops needed in the Indian country and attendant expenses can be easily settled.

JNO. POPE, Major-General, Commanding.²⁶

Headquarters Department of the Missouri
Saint Louis, Mo., August 28, 1865

Hon. Newton Edmunds,
Yankton, Dak. Ter.:

Sir: I have the honor to acknowledge the receipt of your letter of the 17th instant. I communicate freely with the Secretary of the Interior on the subject of Indian affairs, in accordance with an understanding between us at the conference held in Washington in July, and I am and always shall be very glad to confer freely with you, or any other

²⁶Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 1149, Rebellion Records.

gentleman holding high official positions under the Interior Department, on the subject of Indian difficulties. I shall be glad to receive from you at any time whatever suggestions you may deem useful in relation to the operations of the military forces in the region of country over which your superintendence extends, and will always receive and consider your suggestions with greatest respect. Unless there be harmony and cordial co-operation between the military authorities and the officials of the Interior Department in the Indian country, no good result can be hoped for in the settlement of our Indian affairs. I rejoice to infer from your letter that you are willing to establish these harmonious relations, and proceed to answer your letter in the same spirit of frankness in which it seems to be written. In view of the reports from General Sully, of much later date than the paragraph quoted in your letter, I recommended to the Secretary of the Interior (to whom I have sent copies of all reports from officers in the Indian country) the appointment of commissioners to negotiate with the Indians of the Upper Missouri, and have received from him a letter informing me of the appointment of commissioners for that purpose, of whom you are one. Generals Curtis and Sibley, also on the Commission, have not yet reached here, though letters received from General Curtis inform me that he will be here in a day or two. I will send up by him orders to General Sully and all military commanders in that region to assist you in every way in their power in your negotiations, and to furnish you with escorts, transportation, and whatever else you may require which it is in their power to furnish. I have only one suggestion to make to you in relation to negotiations of peace with the Indians in question, and I deem it of much importance, in view of permanent peace, that I ask your earnest consideration of it. The Indians are unwilling to make peace simply on condition that they are not molested by white men. I am greatly opposed to money or other annuities being given to Indians, as it is my belief that they consider such presents as evidences of fear on the part of the Government, and of a desire to bribe them to keep the peace. Such a belief on the part of the Indians has a most unfortu-

nate effect upon them, and simply leads to the renewal of hostilities in the hope of more presents of money and goods. I am satisfied that you will find that they will agree to as favorable terms of peace without the promise of money and goods as with it, and that such a treaty will be much more likely to be permanent. I beg you will consult General Sully, and whomever else you please, on this subject. I am very anxious indeed that you should view this matter as I do, as I believe that upon the decision arrived at will depend largely the stability of our peaceful relations with these Indians hereafter. I wish you every success in your negotiations, and shall hold myself ready to carry out the provisions of any treaty you may negotiate to the full extent of the means at my command. General Curtis will carry up with him the necessary orders to General Sully and other commanders.

JNO. POPE, Major-General, Commanding.²⁷

St. Louis, August 16, 1865.

Sir: I am expecting every day to hear from General Sully the result of his conference with the Sioux and Cheyennes at Fort Berthold. I should think it well for the commissioners to go up the river to Fort Rice, and from there communicate with Sully. The Indians would probably prefer to meet commissioners either at Fort Berthold or Fort Randall.

It is highly probable that a satisfactory treaty can be made with the Sioux of the upper Missouri this autumn. If too late in the season for this, a cessation of hostilities will be effected, and the final treaty made in the spring. It seems to me desirable however, that the commissioners shall go at once to Fort Rice, where they can, at least, see and confer with the Indians who have separated from the hostile bands, and are desirous to make permanent peace. In this way, too, more Indians might be separated from the hostile camps until these camps were designated (probably decimated).

If the commissioners will come this way, I will confer

²⁷Vol. 48, pt. 2, p. 1218, Rebellion Records.

freely with them, and give them all the aid and information at my command.

JOHN POPE, Major General.²⁸

Hon. James Harlan,

Secretary of the Interior.

The Treaty Commission met the Sioux at Old Fort Sully,²⁹ located three miles east of the present city of Pierre, in October, and there concluded satisfactory treaties with the Indians. In his report for 1866, the Indian Commissioner says:³⁰

Nine treaties concluded last year with as many bands of Sioux, by the commission appointed by the President, consisting of Governor Edmunds, Superintendent Taylor, General Curtis, General Sibley, Rev. H. W. Reed, and Orrin Guernsey, were submitted to the Senate, and their ratification advised March 5, 1866, and the treaties proclaimed March 17, 1866. Below is appended a list of the bands thus treated with, with the estimated number of persons belonging to each band:

Two Kettles	1,200 persons
Lower Brules	1,200 persons
Oncpapas	1,800 persons
Minneconjous	2,200 persons
Yanctonnais	2,100 persons
Sans Arcs	1,680 persons
Upper Yanktonnais	2,400 persons
Ogallallas	2,100 persons
Blackfeet Sioux	1,320 persons

Total.....16,020 persons

The nine treaties above referred to are all of the same tenor, and establish peace with the various tribes of Sioux of Dakota, with whom hostilities had continued for two or three years, at great cost to the government. The Indians agree to abstain from all hostilities with the whites and with other tribes, and in case of differences with other tribes

²⁸Report of Indian Commissioner 1865, p. 203.

²⁹Old Fort Sully was built in the autumn of 1863 and was occupied until July 25, 1866. See Vol. I, p. 372.

³⁰Report Indian Commissioner 1866, p. 4.

to submit them to the arbitration of the government; to allow the establishment of routes of travel through their country, and to place no obstacles in the way of any of their people who may be disposed to turn to the pursuit of agriculture for a living. The government, in view of the fact that the buffalo and other game, by means of which these nomadic tribes subsist, are being driven from the country by the whites who traverse it, agrees to pay the Indians, at different points, in goods adapted for their use, at the rate of about fifteen dollars per head per annum, and whenever any of them will settle down to the cultivation of the soil, to increase this to twenty-five dollars per head; and when one hundred lodges shall concentrate for that purpose, an agency to be established for them and a farmer employed to instruct them. These treaties were made in the fall of 1865, and the Indians, in spite of great suffering from cold and want of food, endured during the severe winter of 1865-66, and consequent temptation to plunder to procure the absolute necessities of life, faithfully kept the peace. In several of the bands, some of the chiefs stated their intention to plant corn at various places and portions of the two or three bands have come in at Crow Creek, (abandoned by the Santee Sioux,) and at the Yankton reservation, and seem disposed to make a fair attempt to abandon their wandering mode of life. It may properly be stated here that, on the occasion of the visit of the commissioners to the Upper Missouri during the last summer, they were met by several chiefs of the Yanktonnais who were not present at the treaty of the previous year, and who affixed their signatures to a copy of the treaty, in testimony of their satisfaction with its provisions. It may reasonably be hoped that, by careful and judicious management of these tribes, and a scrupulous fulfillment of the stipulations of the treaties made with them, no further occasion will arise for expensive military expeditions to be employed in compelling them to keep the peace.

Newspaper Reports

Some interesting newspaper correspondence showing much that the official reports do not reveal were sent out from Fort Sully and is reproduced herewith. That for the

fall of 1865 seems to have been written by John Gordan³¹ and that for 1866 by Moses Armstrong.³²

Chicago Tribune, Nov. 2, 1865: Fort Sully, Dakota Territory, Oct. 10. The Peace Commissioners are now working steadily day after day, from morning until night, in council with the Indian chiefs; or deliberating upon propositions. To-day, as the result of a prolonged council with the chiefs of the powerful and active tribe of Minneconjoa Sioux, they concluded and signed, with all due formality, a treaty of perpetual peace and amity with that tribe, providing for the cessation of hostilities between them and the whites; their assistance in enforcing continuous peace with their neighbors; the free transit of troops and citizens through their territory; the right to build one or more roads through their country to the Rocky Mountains, should the same be deemed necessary; acknowledging the sovereignty of the government of the United States; requiring them to refer all subjects of dispute between them and neighboring tribes or whites, to the arbitrament of the President, or officers designated by him; and, as a compensation for the diminution in their means of support which a line of travel would soon produce, an annuity of \$10,000 for twenty years. As representatives, more or less duly accredited from eleven different tribes of the great Sioux nation are here to negotiate, there is a fair promise of a substantial peace.

The recent publication of the proceedings of the Southwestern Commissioners has made the public fully acquainted with the policy of the Indian Department adopted by Secretary Harlan. Similar instruction to those furnished to them, except that the subject of slavery was omitted, were given to the Northern Commissioners, though it should be remembered that the wild Sioux and Cheyennes of this wilderness are different enemies to pacify from the semi-civilized Indians of the Cherokee and Choctaw country, and many instructions as to the organization and improvement of those Indians are impracticable here.

The pacification of the savages—provision for opening

³¹I am unable to identify this man.

³²Moses Armstrong, pioneer and delegate to Congress, 1870-72. See Vol. III, p. 94.

roads through the Territories wherever they may become necessary—the removal of tribes, where practicable, from the great lines of travel—the attempt, where there was any promise of success, to induce the Indians to confine themselves to reservations, and adopt agricultural and pastoral pursuits—compensation for their lands, where taken, in the form of annuities—assistance by the Government in their efforts to obtain a living by new modes—the tribes kindred or friendly to each other being placed upon adjacent reservations, with the general idea of finally uniting them into one body of people, assisted for a time by the government, but in the end a self-supporting community—these are the principal features of the instructions by the Secretary to the Commissioners, so far as they are applicable to the untamed, tomahawk-and-blanket savages who roam over the vast wilderness of the Upper Missouri.

While on their way, at the Yankton Sioux Agency, about 250 miles below here, the Commissioners held a brief council, unimportant in results, with the friendly Yanktons, chiefly to ascertain their condition, and a preliminary council with half a dozen chiefs of the Lower Brule bands, recently hostile, who had come to that point. It was finally decided to bring the Brule chiefs up on the boat with the Commissioners, that they might confer with the other high contracting parties, their allies, the Sioux. So this distinguished party—the Buck, Red Thunder, Medicine Bull, and so forth—some in picturesque simplicity of costume, some glorious in painted faces, feathered heads, gay beaded leggins, and majestic robes—all stately and grave, stalked on board and made the voyage with the Commissioners. The admiration excited by their dignity wore away as they ceased to be a novelty, but wonder at their prodigious appetites and capacities grew with each day's observation. Indian feasts, where they gorge themselves after one period of starvation preliminary to another, are often spoken of by travelers as marvels of gormandizing; but such spasmodic efforts are less surprising than a sustained power of consuming great piles of victuals, steadily and regularly exerted, morning, noon and evening, day after day.

Just here comes an episode of love and marriage. A young Brule warrior, tall, strong of limb, whose swart features were not uncomely, and whom his brothers in the chase called "Four Bears," disappeared from our party the first evening we left Yankton Agency, when the steamer laid up at the bank for the night. The others reported that he had been taken suddenly ill, and had returned to Yankton to see a native "medicine man." We steamed on next day without seeing a sign of the missing brave, until stopping at Fort Randall, about 17 miles above, he solemnly walked on board, followed by the handsomest and neatest dressed young Indian woman I had seen. He was cured and there was the medicine. She came of a distinguished family of the Yanktons, the daughters of which were all fair in his eyes. He had long before married her eldest sister, and with these people disposing of daughters, as with auctioneers selling goods in lots, you take "one with the privilege of all." He had been smitten with the younger during his brief visit to Yankton, from his home among the hills off toward the Rocky Mountains where the Brules roam, and had found the tie so strong on starting away that he had determined to slip away from his party on the boat, return and exercise his privilege. So they had a marriage in high life, and a great feast and dance, and the next morning the newly married couple girded themselves up, struck out over the hills and overtook the steamboat before she had run twenty miles—a pretty beginning for a honey-moon trip. When he re-appeared, he stood up before Gen. Curtis in presence of all, his squaw sitting down modestly beside him, and asked that his new wife might have passage with him. Of course, permission was at once granted by so gallant a soldier as the hero of Pea Ridge.

We had them with us all the way, and how fond they were, spite of Indian stoicism! While the other chiefs, gathered in a group, talked in deep, stern gutturals, the bridegroom and his squaw, the "Flying Frost," sat apart in some sunny corner and murmured to each other in low spoken words of softest Dacotah. Love is timid in savage or civilized breasts; and they tried to shun the crowd to whose gaze

they were exposed on the deck all day and all night—their seat a coil of rope, their couch a blanket; and whenever the boat stopped for wood at some heavily timbered bank, away sped the lovers to the deepest recesses of the thicket for seclusion and quiet converse. She leaped from one stone to another and from one fallen trunk to another with a motion as light as the frost from which her poetical name was drawn. She was tall, but her little foot was as dainty as ever trod a brussels carpet, and her step as airy as ever danced in quadrille.

She was the first to master the use of knives and forks—a mystery that for a few days puzzled the brains and fingers of the old councillors. Their efforts at the art of polite eating were interesting. At first all was confusion. They had only the notion that in the best white society, such as that in which they thought themselves, all food must be eaten with the help of some instrument—a spoon, a plate, a knife or a fork. But they confused their uses sadly. While the renowned warrior Iron Nation vainly endeavored to manage a parboiled potato with a spoon, the venerable Buck was drinking gravy from a plate, and the mighty Medicine Bull with a knife, fork and spoon in the same fist, was struggling with a beef steak. In one thing all succeeded, though by many curious ways—in getting all the food on the table into their mouths,—always leaving it bare.

On the 4th the Commissioners reached Crow Creek where are placed the remains of the ferocious Santee Sioux of the Upper Mississippi, who participated in the Minnesota butcheries, now under the management of government agents. Here dispatches were received from Gen. Sully urging the Commissioners to hurry on by land, as the hostile chiefs, who had come in and were waiting for them at Fort Sully, could with difficulty be detained longer. Leaving the boat to pursue its tedious way, the Commissioners in ambulances rode through to Fort Sully, sixty miles, arriving on the evening of the fifth. General Sully gave them a hearty welcome. They found here chiefs from many tribes—large delegations from the Minneconjous and Sans Arcs, and others represented.

A general council, with all the chiefs of the several tribes present, was held on the 7th. All expressed the desire for peace, but only in the most general terms. Lone Horn,³³ head chief of the Minneconjous, a man of ability, was the principal speaker for the Sioux. From his very cautious and sensible reply to the opening address by Gen. Curtis, it was apparent that he represented in a certain degree, but not sufficiently to execute a binding treaty, ten powerful and warlike tribes of the great Sioux nation, numbering over three thousand lodges; while he stood surrounded by the principal chiefs of his own tribe, the Minneconjous, and fully authorized to make peace for the 370 lodges of that tribe. The Commission therefore determined to hold a separate council with the Minneconjous, as they were must fully represented, and were very desirous of departing for their fall hunt for the buffalo.

On Monday, the 9th, a council with this tribe was held. Gen. Sibley explained to them the position of affairs—that the rebellion was subdued and the Government free to turn its forces upon them, if peace were not made; that the Commissioners were not there to buy peace, as many of them believed; that the President wished for their good; that peace was for the interest of all on both sides; that they must make a treaty, or the war would go on.

The head chief, Lone Horn, replied in moderate and sensible language. He wanted peace. He had been averse to war, but the whites had come in and scared the game away upon which his people relied for a living; his young warriors, whom he could not easily restrain, had come in conflict with the whites; war had ensued. He regretted the war, but did not know how to point to any method of settling a peace which would not soon be broken by refractory spirits while white men were in the country driving away the Indian's subsistence—the game. He spoke with every appearance of sincerity and with anxious caution. He said he had not intended making a final treaty at this time, but returning to the various tribes of the whole Sioux Nation with the

³³Lone Horn, generally called One Horn, was long a well-known and respected chief. Catlin painted his picture in 1832.

word he received, upon which they would then all act. In this sense he spoke for and was listened to by the Cheyennes, Unkpapas, Blackfeet, Sioux, Sans Arcs, Ogalalas, Brules, Arappahoes, Ke-ak-sahs and To-ken-chink-ah-wo-tahe. For his own tribe he seemed authorized but not willing to now make and sign a treaty. Another Chief, the Young White Bull, spoke in a similar tone of peace and general complaint.

At this point, Lame Deer, the chief of the Minneconjous, next in rank to Lone Horn, entered—a powerful, symmetrical, light moving Indian, of calm, determined face and quick, resolute step—a veritable king of the forest. When he rose up to speak, his fine figure stood straight as a column, and his strong voice was heard over half the Fort. He charged the whites with having destroyed or driven from his people all that the Great Spirit had given them to sustain life—the game. Long ago Gen. Harney had come there and made a treaty with him; but the whites treated the paper Gen. Harney gave to him with contempt.³⁴ If this commission came from the President, he wished them to go back to him and tell him to take away the military posts along the Missouri river, and the red men would live in peace after the whites left their country. He had heard of these commissioners coming, and had come in to see them, that they might give him some powder and lead, which he needed. He wanted them also to tell the traders to let him have blankets for his robes on better terms than they had done. He did not like the proposition to sign a paper of peace—a treaty. They had talked together; that was enough.

In the afternoon Gov. Edmunds, the President of the Commission, read the reply of the Commission to the speech of Lame Deer, and the substance of the terms to be proposed; that this country cannot be left for the Indians; that the whole country belongs to the Government; that our people must be allowed to pass through unmolested, when they see fit to do so. While the Indians were friendly they would not be interfered with, but they must let white men

³⁴Refers to the Harney treaty of March, 1856, made at Fort Pierre, in which the Indian police principle was recognized through which the tribes were to become self-governing. It was rejected by Congress.

alone. Soldiers will be kept here to compel them to let others alone. Roads are to be opened through here to the mountains. Indians must in no case interfere with them. But the President is their friend, and while they are friendly, will help them with food and clothing, teachers and tools. The Commission would not give them powder. They must now choose peace or war.

This firm tone had an effect on the Indians very favorable to peace. Like children they had been trying to see how far they could go. They suddenly dropped their tone, by turns ambiguous and defiant.

Lame Deer, who had made so violent a speech in the forenoon, rose first to reply. Before saying a word he threw off his robe and stood, save a breech clout, perfectly naked before the Commissioners, and their eyes never rested on a finer form. "So" he cried, "I stand naked in this land! Why will you trouble me for my land!" He pointed to the other routes to the mountains—"why not take them?" He spoke of the poverty and trouble around him—the soldier drove away his game, and the trader, who had grown rich off of him, would do nothing for him. He wanted powder to hunt buffalo, that he might live.

Rev. Mr. Reed, of Iowa, one of the Commissioners, and long among the Indians, then took them back over the late troubles to the time when there was peace between whites and Indians and happiness; showing them that war, which brought armies, scared away and destroyed game far more than the peaceable whites. Then the Indians began this war, and with it, ten times greater troubles than they ever had before—soldiers marching over the country scaring all the buffalo away. The whites have brethren beyond the mountains and must be allowed to go to see them. These routes would be opened whether the Indians consented to it or not. Then why keep up a war and bring more soldiers here? We want Indians to have the buffalo, to sell the skins, to live comfortably, if they will, like white men, when the buffalo are all gone, as they soon will be. In this the white men will help them.

The objections of the Indians soon narrowed down to a question whether a route should be opened through their country. Gen. Curtis showed them its necessity to the nation, and after an hour's further debate, they gave a consent, qualified by some to making a treaty. This was signified by their producing the pipe of peace—a fine piece of Indian workmanship—which was charged with tobacco and killikinnick bark, lighted, and passed to Gen. Curtis and the other Commissioners, each taking the three talismanic whiffs, when it was passed around the Indian Chiefs and head men in the Council, some dozen in number.

Today, a written treaty, containing the provisions mentioned in the opening of this letter, was presented to them for their signaures—that is, for each to touch the end of the pen before the mark was made for his name. The treaty was carefully interpreted to them. Again and again they manifested their dislike of the provision allowing the opening of a route through their country. It was plain that the annuity of ten thousand dollars, which was first broached to them today, was not regarded as an equivalent for giving their formal consent to admitting the whites forever. Still they consented to sign.

But when the last moment came, and each one after the other was called up by name to sign, their almost invincible aversion to touching the pen that threw open their country, broke out in the action of some of the more determined. Lame Deer rose reluctantly, looked intensely at the hated instrument said, "I do not want to touch it; I do not want this route; but you ask it, you must have it, and for the sake of the life of my nation I will do it." Then he touched the pen.

Another chief, "He who flies when going," paused long, called upon the good God to hear him and hear the words that had been spoken to him as the truth. He bent his piercing black eyes in the face of each commissioner, asking if the Great Father, the President, had in truth sent them, and enjoined them to tell the truth and no lies, and if they had spoken the truth.

His deep excitement was evident in the nervous tension

of his strong limbs, the slight, quick movements of his face, and the fierce brightness of his eyes, which were remarked by all, as he rose, spoke and hesitated and spoke again; but when he touched the pen it was with a calm hand as if he was now resolved.

Then came a long distribution of presents which had not been announced before and were therefore a surprise. The Minneconjou tribe of Sioux with whom peace has thus been effected, are among the finest Indians in America. Their simplicity, good sense, frankness, bold bearing, confidence in the word of an enemy in thus entering, a handful in number, into a fort more than a hundred miles from their people, apparently without a thought of distrust, their fine personal appearance, most of the chiefs being over six feet high, would seem to justify the name I have heard given to them of being a leading band of the Sioux nation. Tomorrow a council will be held with the Brules.

Fort Sully, D. T., Oct. 25, 1865.

Since the 20th, the Indian Commission have been waiting for the arrival of a party of Indians coming down from Fort Rice, among whom are chiefs of the Oglala, Blackfeet and Sans Arc bands of the Sioux. So far the Commission have concluded treaties with the following bands of the Sioux: Ihanktona, Minneconjou Blackfeet, Sans Arc, Two Kettle, Brule and Unkpapa, and will no doubt succeed in effecting a treaty of peace with the Oglala band before their departure for St. Louis. The terms of the different treaties are similar, and are in substance as follows: They provide for perpetual peace between the United States and the tribes above named, and for peace among the Indians themselves—all questions arising among them involving the questions of peace and war being required to be submitted to the arbitration of the President or his authorized representatives. The Indians treating to use physical force if necessary to maintain the peace and protect white persons and their property from molestation. By each treaty the Government of the United United States reserves the right to locate and construct roads as may be required, through every part of the Indian country.

As the game will be thus scared off and diminished, the Government is to pay annuities, various in gross amount, to the different bands, but upon the basis of thirty dollars per lodge for twenty years, provided the treaty is maintained and observed in good faith. Provision is also made in most of the treaties for aiding and protecting such Indians as may settle upon reservations and apply themselves to raising corn, etc. Whenever twenty lodges shall so locate and work in earnest, the Government is to pay in addition to the annuities twenty-five dollars per year for five years, to each lodge, to be expended in purchasing tools and farming implements. After one hundred lodges shall have settled, the Government will furnish a farmer and blacksmith to instruct them in peaceful arts; a little over fifty dollars per year to each family is thus to be paid as an inducement to the Indians to "bury the hatchet" of barbarism and become peaceful and industrious people.

Since the 21st the weather has been changeable and cold, from rain to sleet and snow. Yesterday three inches of snow fell, and the weather is decidedly winterish. The river is again falling, but the steamer Calypso, by starting this week, can reach St. Louis certainly by November 20.

The Commissioners expect to complete their work here by the 28th, and return to the States immediately.

The various bands of Indians who have concluded treaties are now on their way to their hunting grounds; but few lodges remain in sight.

Special Correspondence St. Paul Press.

Sioux City, Iowa, Oct. 26, 1865.

The disposition of troops which I indicated in my last as likely to be made is now an accomplished fact, and our Battalion, though not whipped is badly scattered. Company D, at Sioux Falls; Company C, at Ft. Randall; Company B, with Headquarters at Ft. Randall and the men scattered along a courier line of over two hundred miles up the river from this place; Company A, is on its way to this post where it will remain with the Headquarters of the Battalion for the winter.

General Sully has returned from the plains and established the headquarters of the district of Dakota at this

place. The citizens of the town as a token of their appreciation of his character as a man and his conduct as a soldier have presented him with a beautiful house and grounds in the finest part of the town, and in addition, have furnished the house in a style seldom surpassed in as remote a frontier town.

In my last, I wrote you of the ridiculously small gathering of Indians at Fort Sully, to meet the Peace Commissioners. The next day after I wrote, however, their number was increased to something over twenty all told, representing the Cheyennes, Ogalalas, Minnekonzas and Souzacks,* (I give the spelling as near to the pronounciations as I can in the absence of better authority.) These Indians were or professed to be chiefs of their tribe, and claimed that they wished for peace with the whites. Their principal demands were for powder and for assurances that the whites should not travel through their country. The first they got in small quantities, the last, of course, could not be guaranteed to them. The commission, with its circumlocution, its formalities and its parliamentary rules of discussion was a nine days wonder to them. It was too much for their simple understandings, and, when after several days' consecutive labor they were asked if they would sign the treaty which the Commissioners supposed had been fully explained to them, they professed entire ignorance of the whole intention of the writing and refused to sign any paper until its contents was explained to them, and as a consequence the work had to be all gone through with again, all this, however, did not proceed without some episode worthy of note. One day when the Council opened, the savages sat mute before the Commission. Nothing would move them to speak. They sat and gravely listened, but said not a word. Of course the negotiations were at a stand still. After patient inquiries as to where the trouble lay, it at last came out that they had no confidence in the interpreters, and it was only when they could talk through their own interpreter that they would talk at all. Of course this trouble was remedied as soon as discovered.

*Sans Arcs.

Another day when one of the honorable gentlemen of the Commission had been several times interrupted in the middle of a sentence by his colleagues, whereupon long and vexatious debate had ensued, and while the savages were waiting in stupid wonder for the remainder of the half-finished sentence, one of the Chiefs turning to Col. Thornton, of the 4th U. S. Volunteers, pointed to General Sully who sat opposite, and in a tone of admiration said "Wash-ta," (good,) then with a look and gesture of contempt, he pointed to the Commissioner, and said "Sechee." (bad or useless.) Another day the proceedings had advanced to that stage where it became necessary that the pipe of peace should be smoked. Slowly and gravely from hand to hand, and from lip to lip the sacred tube was passed, each sedately smoking a few whiffs, each passed it to his neighbor. At last it reached the patriarch of the Commission, a man, who despite his gray beard and venerable appearance, has worn his two stars on more than one hard fought field. But he whose heart had never failed him amidst the din and carnage of battle, whose stomach had never succumbed before, met his Waterloo, and he found that though he had a stomach for fighting, he had none for the Indian peace pipe, and at the second whiff he was forced to lay down his arms and fly the field in wretched state to cast up his accounts in the darkness of the outer circle, while as near a laugh as the gravity of the occasion would allow, convulsed both savage and civilized spectators.

Our battalion was relieved and ordered to Fort Thompson before any progress in treaty-making had been accomplished; but before we left there, it was reported that a treaty had been made with the chiefs of one band; but I could not learn anything definite except that among the stipulations were an agency, a farm and annuities to the amount of ten thousand dollars a year.

This may or may not be matter of importance. The band known as the Two Kettle band have been very friendly for the past two years, have wintered in the vicinity of the forts, have furnished valuable information many times, and done good service as scouts and couriers whenever called upon, and have brought in more than one scalp when sent in

pursuit of the hostile Sioux. General Sully, at one time, had a band of soldiers belonging to this tribe constantly in his employ. The Minnekonza band long ago divided into two parts on the question of friendship for the whites, and the larger part—about one hundred lodges—have, at all times, been perfectly peaceable and friendly, and the Sowzocks* are in nearly the same condition. The Two Kettles, with other friendly Indians who have joined them, number about three hundred lodges; the other two bands about one hundred and sixty lodges each. If the treaty made is with either of these bands, it is, so far as future peace or war with the Indians is concerned, of very little consequence if it be with the other and more hostile bands, we will hope that great results will follow.

The Commission is still above, but from the little which can be learned of their operations, the probability is that they will do little more than pave the way for a successful treaty next year. A story was current at Fort Sully when we left, which, whether true or false, was a sharp joke upon the Commission, and well illustrates the cunning of the Indian. The story runs in this wise: An Indian of the Two Kettle band had a squaw at the Yankton Agency, below Fort Randall, whom he wished to visit. Being well known at Fort Sully, he applied to the commandant there for a safe conduct, which was given him, and he started on his journey. On arriving at Yankton Agency, he heard of the Peace Commission, and thinking he espied a chance for a speculation, he pocketed his certificate of good character, and taking with him fifteen of the Agency Indians, to represent fifteen lodges, boldly presented himself to the Commission, proclaimed himself as having been hostile and as being repentent, and so well did he succeed, that the Commission received his adhesion to the cause in good faith, and on the strength of it gave him subsistence and presents for the ninety persons represented by his fifteen lodges. I do not vouch for the truth of this story, but I had it from an officer on the General's staff who believed it to be true.

Major Brackett is in command at this post, and will probably remain here for the winter. The great sources of

life and trade in this town are the army and the trade of the mines of Idaho, this being at present the highest point on the Missouri River which has free and uninterrupted communication with the outer world. Some idea of the growing importance of the mining regions of the Upper Missouri may be gained from the fact that within the past seven days more than two thousand four hundred men have passed this point, on their way from the mines, in Mackinaw boats and barges. One of these boats, it is claimed, had made the distance from Fort Benton here in nine days, making over three hundred miles in twenty-four hours. All these miners bring more or less dust, and all agree in their accounts of the richness of the mines and the intention of returning again in the spring.

In view of the great and increasing trade which is springing up in this region, the question arises, what has Minnesota done to improve the natural advantages which she possesses in regard to situation and distance from the mines? And the answer is, nothing but talk and fail. Some time ago I wrote a few items in regard to a wagon road from Minnesota to the mines of Montana and Idaho. The kindness of Major Von Minden enables me now to continue the subject and compare the advantages of the several routes proposed and opened, to which the attention of the people has of late been drawn. The Major has furnished me, from official sources, the following distances and locations which he assures me are more reliable than can be gained from any other source.

From Omaha, or St. Joseph, to Virginia City.

	miles.
From St. Joseph to Ft. Kearney.....	282
From Ft. Kearney to Ft. Laramie.....	359
From Ft. Laramie to Virginia City, by the new Bridger route	660

Total distance1,301

The distance by this route from Omaha would probably be some twenty miles less.

By the Northern route from St. Paul to Virginia City.
miles.

From St. Paul to Ft. Abercrombie.....	220
From Ft. Abercrombie to Ft. Union.....	404
From Ft. Union to Ft. Benton.....	362
From Ft. Benton to Last Chance.....	110
From Last Chance to Virginia City.....	130
Total from St. Paul to Virginia City.....	1,226

Showing the distance seventy-five miles in favor of the route from St. Paul; and when you add to this the eighty miles of railroad from St. Paul to St. Cloud, it still further increases the advantage.

By the middle route from St. Paul to Virginia City:
miles.

From St. Paul to Fort Ridgely.....	107
From Fort Ridgely to Fort Pierre.....	333
From Fort Pierre via north fork of Big Cheyenne River and northern foot of Black Hills to Powder River..	275
From Powder River to mouth of Big Horn.....	124
From mouth of Big Horn to Virginia City.....	265
Total from St. Paul to Virginia City.....	1,104

A fourth route might be had by diverging from the northern route at Fort Union at mouth of the Yellowstone, and going up the Yellowstone. The distances would be:

	miles.
From St. Paul to Fort Union.....	624
From Fort Union to mouth of Big Horn.....	234
From mouth of Big Horn to Virginia City.....	265
Total from St. Paul to Virginia City.....	1,123

It will be seen from the above distances that the middle route or the route by the Yellowstone has the advantage in point of distance over the others but there are drawbacks which for years to come must give the preference to the Northern route. The mines on the Prickly Pear known as the "Last Chance," where most of the Minnesotans now are, are amongst the richest yet discovered, and by the Northern route these mines are reached in 1,096 miles from St. Paul while by the Southern route it is 1,431 miles from St. Joseph,

which gives an advantage of nearly four hundred miles in favor of the Northern route. Again the new mines lately discovered on the headwaters of the Marias and Teton Rivers, tributaries of the Missouri, which discharge themselves near Fort Benton, being farther to the North, are still more easily reached by the Northern route than by either of the others.

Of the Southern route from St. Josephs and Omaha, it can only be said that it is old and well established. All that the Government could do to insure its safety has been done, yet it is very far from being safe as yet. It traverses vast treeless plains, and almost inaccessible mountains. On the other hand the Northern route is supplied with timber at such distances that it is probable that on no part of the route would more than three days' march without wood occur. Grass and water are plenty. There are neither swamps nor mountains on this route. From the point where it strikes the Missouri river near the mouth of the White Earth to the Last Chance it lays along the left bank of the Missouri, with no natural obstructions to cross, which are at all formidable. The first point where ferries are needed would be at Milk River, far above Fort Union; and the stream, I am told, can easily be forded most of the year.

Very little trouble need be apprehended upon this route from Indians, and certainly one-half the government protection which has been extended to the Southern route would render it perfectly safe. It is true, there are hostile Indians in that part of the country, but everything goes to show that they are dispirited and fearful, two expeditions, having entirely failed to find them the past season, while on the opposite side of the Missouri they have been as active and determined as ever.

The route by the Yellowstone necessitates the crossing of the Missouri river at Fort Union, and a long march along the borders of the most hostile and determined of the Sioux tribes, and while it is shorter than the other it has more natural obstacles.

The middle route by Fort Pierre and the Black Hills is at present merely a possibility, and must remain so until

such times as either negotiations or force shall make it possible to travel in that direction.

The Black Hills are the last great stronghold of the Sioux, and they cling to that country with more tenacity than to life. All their negotiations are to the end that neither troops nor emigrants shall be allowed to penetrate there. This, of course, is an obstacle which must be overcome before that route can be opened.

There are many other facts connected with these routes which want of time compels me to reserve for the present, but I look upon it as an established fact that through Minnesota lies the shortest and most direct road to the mines of Montana, and that it only requires that the people should seize upon the advantages they actually possess to secure themselves their full share of this important and lucrative trade. But to secure this end it is important that no more such contemptible fizzles as those of the last two years should be inaugurated. Those who take hold of the matter must do so with determination that, even if government fail to respond, they will depend upon themselves, and with this spirit success is certain.

JAMES GORDON.

Fort Randall, D. T., Nov. 6, 1865.

The steamer Calypso seven days from Fort Sully, with Col. Taylor and Rev. Mr. Reed of the Indian Commissioners, on board, arrived here yesterday evening, the other members of the commission having gone overland to their respective homes. The Commission have concluded treaties with nine bands of the Sioux tribe of Indians, all of them being of the same nation as those alluded to in my letter from Fort Sully. The Hon. A. W. Hubbard, M. C., from Iowa, is on board the Calypso, bound for Washington; he has been investigating the frauds perpetrated by the various Indian Agents upon the different bands in this country, and it is earnestly hoped that when Mr. Hubbard renders his report, a number of these rascals will be removed and punished as their crimes merit. Lt. Col. Thornton, with two companies of the 4th U. S. volunteers, arrived at this post to-day for

garrison duty this coming winter; four companies of the 4th, with Lt. Col. Thornton commanding, will complete the garrison.

Mr. C. L. Hamilton, photographer, is here from Fort Sully, where he has been engaged in securing pictures of the Indian Chiefs who have signed treaties of peace and those who declined so doing, copies of which will be forwarded to Washington.

Captain J. W. Mott, Commissary of Subsistence to the Indian Commission, has arranged all his business satisfactory and will arrive in St. Louis by the steamer Calypso about December 1st.

The river being very low and still falling there is doubts whether the Calypso can reach St. Louis this winter; however she is pretty light and every exertion made upon the part of Captain Burton to accomplish that desirable object.

Major A. J. Shreve, Paymaster U. S. A., is here paying off the troops and will leave for Fort Leavenworth about the 9th.

Journey up the Missouri by Steamboat.

I last wrote you from Crow Creek agency, under date of May 29 (1866). The steamer Ben Johnson, with the remaining members of the Indian commission and 240 tons of annuity goods and treaty presents, arrived at the place on the 5th of June, and, after putting off some agricultural seeds for the Brule and Yanktonnais Indians, proceeded up the river for Fort Sully, reaching the last mentioned place on the 5th inst. This steamer is chartered by the government, at \$330 per day, to make the trip to Fort Union. She left St. Louis on the 7th of May, and was consequently twenty-nine days in making Fort Sully—a distance of 1,400 miles. The distance from the Crow Creek agency to Fort Sully, about 100 miles, was made in ten days, the boat being obliged to stop at the Cedar Islands and skirting forests to “wood up.” Boats on the upper waters of the Missouri are unable to run in the night hours, on account of the uncertain channel and shifting sandbars.

The Indians, who had been waiting with commendable patience for their annuity of goods for nearly three weeks, on our arrival, came dancing and singing across the plain to the river, all painted, and dressed in the wild costume of the red man. They had but a few days before performed the terrible ordeal of the Sun Dance, wherein twenty-one young men went through most excruciating tortures of the flesh, to become brave men and favored warriors in the eyes of the Great Spirit. A pole was raised on the plain, and thongs tied to its top, reaching nearly to the ground. The victims were then taken by their comrades, and with a sharp knife slits were cut in their breasts and back, through which the ropes were fastened. The young men then danced to a discordant jargon of music, ever gazing at the shining sun, until the flesh broke out from the body, and let the victims loose. One young man danced around the village with the ghastly heads of four buffalo bulls dangling from his bleeding body.

Up to this date seven bands of the Sioux nation have appeared in council with the commissioners—the Lower Yanktonnais, Brules, Blackfeet, Minnecongoes, Sans Arcs, Two Kettles, and Uncapapas. By the treaties made last fall, to succeed the old Laramie treaty, which expires this year, the government stipulates to pay to each lodge or family of Indians, who settle down and plant and cultivate it, lands, twenty dollars in money and twenty-five dollars in agricultural seeds and implements. Aside from this, \$6,000 to \$10,000 annually, in clothing and provisions, is given to each band, for the loss of game occasioned by the opening of the new government routes across the plains through the Indian country; the Indians, on their part, relinquishing the right of way, and agreeing not to molest the passage of trains along the lines of travel. About sixty tons of flour, pork, sugar, coffee and clothing were distributed to these Indians on the 12th inst. from our steamboat load.

These treaties run for a period of twenty years. Many of the chiefs, in council this spring, declared that they misunderstood the provisions of the treaties made last fall. They still claim that the lands and roads are theirs, and that a

boat load of goods every year would not replace them the loss of buffalo occasioned by the great trains of white men passing through their hunting grounds. Bone-Necklace, head chief of the great Yanktonnais tribe, made a very eloquent and effecting speech, which I will give you in full at some future time. All the chiefs who have thus far spoken in council—numbering twenty-three in all—have expressed the sad dependency of their tribes, and seem to want the Great Father to understand that, if he will keep his white soldiers out of their country, and give them guns, and powder and lead, they will take care of themselves without annuities, by chasing the buffalo and raising their little corn patches along the streams, which abound with fish and small game. The Indians of the Northwest are yet a wild and superstitious race of people, and should be treated more like children than men. They are jealous among themselves, and often expressed in council that they knew not what was best for themselves, whether to plant or to hunt, and wished their Great Father to direct them what to do. It is high time that some uniform system were established for the successful management of our Indian tribes. There are now too many hands at the bellows, and the Indians become confused and bewildered in the multifarious councils and plans of the Great Father. The rival fur traders in the country, and the introduction of liquor among the Indians, consequent upon the steamboat navigation of the Upper Missouri, are fast working the moral destruction of the natives. Indians barter the virtue of their young daughters to the soldiers for food and raiment, while the well-meaning precepts of the government are falsified by the example of some of its own children. The steamer Cora was arraigned last week by Agent J. R. Hanson for selling liquor in the Indian country, and four men shot in the hospital here by a raving maniac, recovering from the delirium tremens. Such are the effects of whisky everywhere.

Speech of Bone-Necklace

(Head Chief of the Yanktonnais Tribe, before the Northwestern Indian Commission, June, 1886.)

Friends: My name is Bone-Necklace. I am head chief of the Lower Yanktonnais tribe. My tongue is not forked. I speak the truth, and offer you clean hands. This country belongs to us, and this great river (Missouri) is my own. These medals here upon my neck were given me by the Great Father's white men many long summers ago.

I long ago sent my words to our Great Father, but I have received no answer. I fear they were lost. Every year the Great Father's white children come out to us with good words for my people; but that is all. Why don't our Great Father fulfill his promises with his red Children? I see white men touch the Bible when they tell the truth. I have done so, too, and have come here to talk plainly.

The Great Spirit made multitudes of people, and placed them over the world where he wanted them. He placed the red men here, and gave them these rivers and forests, and rolling plains, with the elk and buffalo for their living. But now my Great Father is sending his white soldiers all over our country, and is driving the wild game from my children's mouths. Where shall we go? What shall we do? On the east of us the Santees long ago sold their lands to the whites, and, because the Great Father was slow to bring them food to live on in the place of game, they rebelled and murdered white women and children, and now they are scattered all over our country, fleeing from the white soldiers.

My fair land is all turned over as by a whirlwind. No more can our warriors plant and fish in safety by the wooded brook-side, nor my young men hunt the buffalo on the plains. When I look to the north, and see the smoke of the white man's trains rise from the plains, and find a great wagon-road over my hunting grounds, it makes my heart sad and I think my Great Father has forgotten his red children.

I look out on the face of my native rivers and plains, and I love them well. I also love the whites, and do not want to fight them; but I cannot hold my young men from going to war when they see the game driven from their

country. When the whites come out among us they always move in large armies; but I am not afraid to go among them and shake hands. We do not want the whites to travel through our lands on great highways, but they may navigate the river. It would take more than a boat-load of goods every year to pay my people for the loss of game, in feeding and clothing their children. What we want our Great Father to do for us, is to send us guns, powder and ball, and let us live unmolested on our own plains, and hunting-grounds.

I never planted in my life, but I think I can learn, if my Great Father will but help me; but my people would rather pursue the hunting of game. This is our way of living; planting is yours. Our furs will buy our flour and sugar, and our guns and powder will kill our meat, while the skins will help to cover our nakedness, and then we will be friendly and happy. I don't say that you ever stole anything from us, but the Yanktons sold a portion of my land to you.

I hope that these words will reach the ears of my Great Father, that he may know the wants of his red children.

Indian Sun-Dance Officially Reported.

Fort Sully, June 25, 1866.

The whole of the three thousand Sioux camped about us gave early information of their design to have their annual sun dance at this time and place, the season of the year, the trees in full leaf, having now arrived; and they wished us to inform Col. Recor, the commander of the soldiers, that however boisterous their demonstrations might be, they would all be peaceable and of a pious character.

A herald rode or ran through camp on the evening of the 29th, calling on the tribe to unite in the religious ceremonies that were to commence on the day following. A spot was selected near the central part of the great Indian camp, which extends some three miles along the river, and lodges were removed so as to give ample room for the erection of the great lodge or tent which they afterward erected.

On the 30th there was a procession on foot bearing poles for the tent, escorted by a hundred horsemen covered with bushes, the whole looking like a moving forest coming down from the green high hills that skirt the eastern side of the

plains. As they arrived on the plains, the horsemen started at full speed running through camp, swinging their green boughs, and yelling and gesticulating as none but painted, half-naked Indians can. This riding and running was attended with singing and howling through the camp for about an hour, when the large and small bushes and poles were deposited at the place designated for the great meeting.

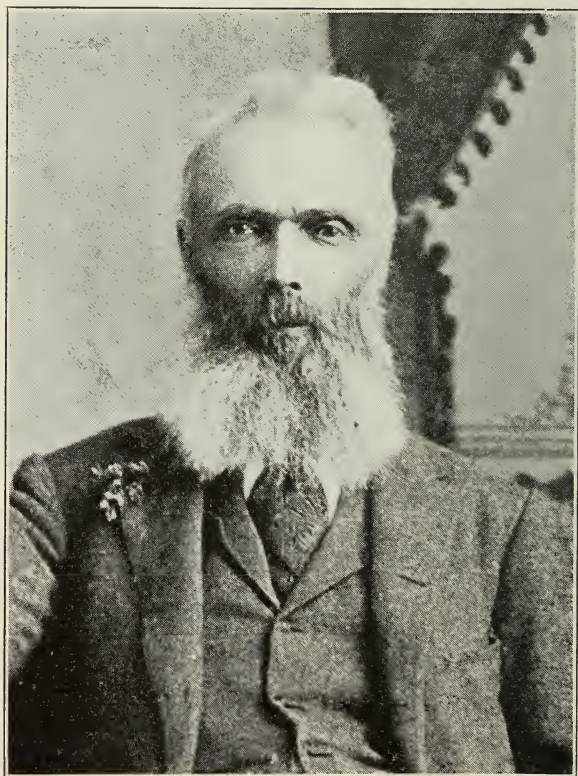
During the night and early next morning, new riding and racing feats went on, and the big tent was erected. A tall pole in the center with bushes and red streamers near the top, about thirty feet high, was the center and sort of sacred tree. Around this a circle of bushes about six feet high, with an opening to the east, was carefully arranged, and a partial roof from this bush wall was spread over in round tent form, making a pavilion about sixty feet in diameter.

About twelve o'clock the musicians seated themselves on the south side; they were about fifteen in number. They had a large Indian drum made of a large bull's hide for instruments, upon which they began their monotonous, doleful Indian notes, by pounding with clubs and sticks, and all singing the usual sorrowful Indian dirge. Twenty-five men and women, facing the sun, began the religious dance. The men were decorated with head-dresses of feathers and strings of furs, their naked bodies painted generally a blue clay color, and from their waists down they wore a skirt made of deer or antelope skins. Each had a little whistle made of bone in his mouth. The women were more modest in their costume, but all were painted hideously in the face, and all, with eyes upturned toward the scorching noonday sun, began their dance, each keeping time with the drums by a short hitch of the body, raising the heel, and uttering a squeak, squeak, squeak, with the whistle as the drum went tum, tum, tum. Occasionally they could stop and smoke, but were not to eat or drink, and did not during the twenty-four hours of the performance.

The dancing was delayed at intervals to allow tortures to be inflicted. Two or three men stood over the devotee with needle and knife, very quietly performing penance according to the customs of all these sacerdotal rites, as follows:

First they cut the arms in several places by striking an awl in the skin, raising it and cutting out about half an inch. This is done on both arms, and sometimes on the breast and back. Then wooden setons, sticks about the thickness of a common lead pencil, are inserted through a hole in the skin and flesh. Then cords or ropes are attached to these sticks by one end, and to the pole at the other end, the victim pulling on the ropes till the seton sticks tear out the flesh and skin. We saw one with two setons thus attached to his breast, pulling till it seemed to draw the skin out three inches, and finally requiring nearly his whole might to tear out the seton. One painted black had four ropes attached at once. The pulling out is done in the dance, and is carried on in the time of the music by jerk, jerk, jerk, and the eye, head, and front all facing the sun in a form of supplication. One had four setons attached to four dry buffalo head bones. These were all strung and suspended to his flesh by ropes that raised each head some three feet off the ground. He danced hard to tear them out, but they would not break the skin. One came off the stick accidentally, but it was again fastened. Finally these heavy weights (each at least twenty-five pounds weight) not tearing out by their own weight and motion, the devotee gave a comrade a horse to take hold of the horns and tear out the setons. While these men were being thus tortured, their female relatives came in and had pieces cut out of their arms to show their appreciation of the valor and devotion of their kinsmen. Still as soon as the victim could be prepared, the music was renewed and the dismal dance went on, the victims' bodies now mingled with blood, paint and setons.

There being several steamboats and many soldiers here, a great crowd of spectators rather embarrassed the performers so they concluded the ceremonies at twelve o'clock, having only danced twenty-four hours instead of forty-eight, as they usually do. All the devotees gave away their ponies and other valuables to their friends, had their wounds carefully dressed by attendant medicine men, and sat down to an abundant feast of dog soup and buffalo meat.



GEO. W. DOUD

THE DOUD DIARY.

Through the courtesy of Mr. Ben F. Doud of Gillette, Wyoming, the Department of History has come into possession of a diary kept by George W. Doud, private of the Company F, 8th Regiment Minnesota Volunteers, serving on the frontier during the Indian troubles of 1862-63. Mr. Doud was a young farmer residing at Castle Rock, Dakota county, when the Sioux uprising at Redwood occurred and he at once joined the militia and reached New Ulm on September 11, being thirty-one days after the first outbreak. His story is crudely and boyishly told but is nevertheless interesting and chiefly valuable for its corroboration of some disputed statements pertaining to the period. Some of his descriptions of the horrors of the Indian warfare and the results of it are most graphic. The irreverence of the people of New Ulm has been a matter of much discussion and the fact of the burning of an effigy of Jesus has been asserted and disputed by creditable authority. Upon the subject Doud says:

September 19: We took a few hours to ourselves to view the once beautiful town of Newulm. The town is a complete reck." The respectable portion is all gone, but the lowest class is left, such as whiskey sellers and gamblers. On Sunday they have a spree; they do not regard the teaching of the bible at all; they have gone so far as burn the image of Christ. Their misfortune is the judgment of God upon them."

It will be observed that Mr. Doud does not charge this blasphemy to the respectable population of New Ulm but to the riff raff which they found still remaining there after the massacre.

His detachment remained at New Ulm until November 11, engaged in burying the dead, protecting settlers, helping farmers gather up their scattered cattle and reinstating the more daring upon their farms. He has many gruesome recitals. At the approach of winter the regiment was ordered back to Fort Snelling and from there was sent in small details to protect the settlements along the upper Mississippi and the winter and following spring was spent in this employment and his diary reveals little of interest in

South Dakota history. He seems to have been a young man of high ideals and was continually shocked by the misconduct of his officers particularly in the matter of drinking to excess.

In August of 1863 his company was ordered to Fort Ridgely upon the upper Minnesota, to escort a supply train carrying supplies up for Sibley's army, which was then campaigning in Dakota Territory. When on August 9th they were within 5 miles of Fort Ridgely they came upon a contraption which is likely to continue to hold an important place in the history of transportation facilities. He says:

"We came to Maj. Brown's famous steam wagon which he was going to traverse the northwest and carry freight to and around the country. He got it from Henderson there and the iron horse gave out and he never could make it work any more, so he gave the thing up as a hoax."

This was Maj. Brown's first invention and perhaps the first attempt to produce a self propelling road vehicle in the country. Brown had been compelled to abandon this machine but when the massacre began the year before and his entire household were made captives he was absent endeavoring to construct a better and more practical vehicle and after the war was over he soon went to New York and was engaged in the construction of a new "steam wagon" from which he hoped much at the time of his death.

They reached Ridgely that night, August 9th, and Doud describes the effects of the battle of the previous year upon the post. "The building showed the scars of Indian bullets very plain. One old barn which stood below the fort was completely riddled with balls. It looked as spotted as the side of a house would after a severe hail storm." They unloaded, gathered up a large number of Indian captives which had been assembled there and returned at once to Snelling with them.

Again the detachment was sent up the river to Fort Ripley and Princeton where the winter was spent and in the spring they moved west leisurely until Fort Ridgely was reached again May 30th just in time to meet some scouts

returning from the Cottonwood where they had met "Three of the red breatheren. Shot one and brought him in. Doc dissecting him for anatomy." "3 boys of Co. H, 8 vs, bucked and gaged for getting tight."

At Fort Ridgely the Minnesota Battalion was made up under Col. M. T. Thomas and started to join Sully upon the Missouri, on the way escorting the train of 125 wagons belonging to the Idaho immigrants and known as the Fisk Expedition. They crossed the Minnesota and traveled up the south side to Lac qui parle. Thence up the Lac qui parle and Inkpa to Lake Chanopa whence they took the Indian trail up the spine of the coteau to Waubay whence they turned down to the James river, crossing that stream near the present Tacoma park and proceeding slightly south of west joined Sully near the mouth of Swan Lake Creek. This route is confirmed by the orders and reports of Thomas and Sully and disputes the accuracy of Lieut. Kingsbury's map published in Volume VIII Minnesota Historical Collections which shows the route up the Minnesota to Big Stone and thence in a direct line to Fort Rice via the present Columbia, Brown county.

With the Sully and Thomas Brigades consolidated they proceeded to a point opposite the site of Fort Rice, North Dakota, and crossed over. There were five hundred wagons in the train and the little steam boats, "Tempest" and "Isabel" could carry but two wagons at a time so that it was no small enterprise to get the column over.

The account of the trip to Killdeer mountain, the battle there; the desperate enterprise through the Bad Lands and the crossing of the Missouri, or the return to Fort Rice does not reveal anything that throws new light upon that much exploited campaign.

September 15th the Brigade started upon the return trip across Dakota to Minnesota, keeping well north, almost directly east from Fort Rice and Crossing the James River seventy miles north of the South Dakota line whence they turned directly southeast toward Fort Wadsworth, then just being built. On September 19, when near Sulphur lake Dr.

Murphy, the brigade surgeon, met with an adventure which our diarist recites as follow.:

"One pm one buffalo tries to brake our ranks. Dr. Murphy got upset by a buffalo. he rode toward the buf & fired. his hors jumped and throwed him off. Old bull never turned his cours. But run over him goring him with one horn & injuring some of his ribs. When he proscribed for the sick he kept his bed."

They reached Fort Wadsworth on September 26th and remained a few days and found "Shoulder Straps of the drinking kind. Sutlers store and squaws admitted inside but no private soldier admitted in doors. They go to a window and get down upon their knees and beg for what they want."

On the 29th they continued down through the beautiful lake country and down the coteau to the Whetsone valley which they follow to the vicinity of Milbank whence they cross over to the Yellowbanks leaving Dakota before reaching the latter stream, and thence to Ridgely without incident. The diary is as stated at the outset chiefly useful in its corroboration of other recitals, and it does throw a certain light pertaining to the camp life and the relations between officers and men not revealed by any other writer. Doud is so truthful in known matters that his accuracy in this particular cannot be doubted. Some of the officers seemed to be almost constantly under the influence of drink and their treatment of their men was consequently bad.

A copy of the diary comprising 178 typewritten pages has been made by Mr. Stevenson and the same will be preserved in the archives of the Department of History.

BUFFALO BILL'S BLUFF.

By MAJ. M. F. STEEL, U. S. A.

(The following account of the arrest and killing of Sitting Bull which occurred at his home upon Grand River, near Bullhead Station, South Dakota, December 15, 1890, is interesting because of new incidents related but especially because of the light it throws upon the conduct of William F. Cody,—Buffalo Bill,—at that time. There has been current all these years a tradition that Cody was seriously "piffligated" when he started from Fort Yates for Grand River but this is the first publication of the official action taken by the military authorities to put him under the "influence".)

The 14th of December, 1890, fell on a Sunday. Darkness had settled down upon the valley of the Missouri and the officers at old Fort Yates were, most of them, in the midst of their dinners when the stillness of the evening was suddenly broken by the sharp notes of an infantry bugle. It was sounding "officers' call," that signal which makes every officer of the garrison spring to his feet and start for the commandant's office.

"That means we shall get out tonight," I remarked as Lieutenant Baker (Lieutenant David J. Baker, 12th Infantry) and I rose from the table. Mrs. Steele and I were taking Sunday dinner with the Bakers, and Baker and I hurried away leaving our wives to have their dessert and coffee by themselves.

We had been in a state of tense expectation in the garrison for several weeks. An Indian Messiah had risen somewhere in one of the tribes farther west and old Sitting Bull and his following had taken up the cult and were acting in a rebellious and defiant manner toward the authority of the agent.

Standing Rock Agency, where this tribe of the Sioux nation drew their supplies, was adjacent to Fort Yates and the agent, Major McLaughlin, was one of the ablest, most efficient Indian agents in the country. His wife was part Sioux, a fine Christian woman who devoted her whole time

and labor to the betterment of her people. She was truly a help-meet for McLaughlin in his duties of agent.

Up to this time all the Indians of the agency had used to come to Standing Rock every second week to draw their beef and the other supplies issued by the Government. But since this Messiah craze had come among them Sitting Bull and his adherents had not been near the agency. They had kept their children away from the schools and done other things in defiance of the regulations of the agency, and were spending their whole time in the so-called "ghost dance" and other forms of religious frenzy, and were manifesting in every way a sullen and hostile attitude. McLaughlin had sent requests and orders to Sitting Bull to come in, but the old man had refused or failed to obey.

Meantime there was trouble among other tribes of the Sioux farther south and a large force of them were gathered under the leadership of Big Foot in South Dakota. McLaughlin had fears that Sitting Bull would take his following to that rendezvous. There were attached to the agency twenty uniformed Indian police, as courageous and loyal a body of warriors as ever trod the prairie in moc-casins. With these men McLaughlin was keeping close watch upon every movement that Sitting Bull or any of his people made. He and our post-commander, Colonel Drum (Lieutenant Colonel, 12th Infantry) were acting in full harmony and accord. McLaughlin was anxious to handle his Indians without the intervention or assistance of the military. He knew, and Colonel Drum knew, that the instant soldiers take a hand in the control of Indians it means war. The Indians will either resist and fight or they will take to flight and leave their reservation. So up to this time, the 14th of December, no exercise or show of military authority had been made in connection with the troubles in this reservation. All troops had been kept strictly in the garrison in order that Sitting Bull and his people should have no cause for alarm or suspicion, and in order that Major McLaughlin might have a perfectly free hand in the management of his wards. But it was fully agreed between him and Colonel Drum that the moment he should not be able to handle the

situation with his police force, then the military should take hold.

Meantime an incident had occurred which caused Colonel Drum and McLaughlin intense anxiety for about twenty-four hours. Just in the midst of our suspense, while we were waiting and watching to see what Sitting Bull and his people were going to do, Buffalo Bill (William Cody) arrived on the scene. He was accompanied by a member of the staff of the St. Paul Pioneer Press and one other man. He announced to Colonel Drum that he had come to arrest Sitting Bull and he backed up his announcement by presenting General Miles' visiting card on which that officer, who was at the time the Division Commander with headquarters at Chicago, had written an order directing the commanding officer of Fort Yates to let Colonel Cody have such assistance as he demanded to enable him to make the arrest of Sitting Bull.

It was certainly a very extraordinary order for a division commander to send to one of his post commanders, and it was written and transmitted in a very extraordinary manner; nevertheless it was an order and must be obeyed, unless countermanded by Miles or higher authority.

Personally I do not now believe, and I did not then believe that Colonel Cody had any intention of attempting to arrest Sitting Bull. I believed then, and still believe, he was merely making advertisement. He had had Sitting Bull with his Wild West Show some years previous and, no doubt, thought he could safely visit the old Indian in his home, and. I suspect, purposed trying to persuade or bribe him to return to the show.

But Colonel Cody stated that he was going to arrest Sitting Bull, and that is what General Miles' note ordered our post-commander to aid him in doing. All Colonel Cody asked of Colonel Drum was a team to take him down to Sitting Bull's camp. He did not want any soldiers; he was going to make the arrest single-handed.

Well, Major McLaughlin and Colonel Drum and all of us knew that if Colonel Cody made any such attempt he would be killed and it would be the beginning of war with Sitting Bull's band. So Buffalo Bill must be stopped if possible.

He must be kept at Fort Yates until telegrams could be got through to Washington and replies received back. Meantime Buffalo Bill with his companions must be "entertained" at the officers' club to detain him,—and it took the Indian agent and the post-trader and all the convivial officers of the garrison serving in relays to "entertain" them. But the scheme worked in so far as to hold Colonel Cody at the fort the remainder of that day and night. Early next morning, however, he demanded his team and set out for Sitting Bull's camp on Grand River. No message had arrived from Washington calling him back, but two Indian couriers were stationed on the door step of the adjutant's office with the reins of their ponies in hand, ready to mount and fly after Colonel Cody the instant such a message should come.

And another ruse had been arranged. Two roads from Yates to the Grand River villages. They were parallel to each other and four miles apart. It could not be sure which one Buffalo Bill would take. A man was therefore sent out on each of these roads several hours before Colonel Cody's departure, with confidential instructions. One of these men was met about twenty-five miles out by Cody's party. The man, a half-breed who spoke English, was apparently coming in from Sitting Bull's village on Grand River. He greeted the party and asked them casually which way they were bound for.

"Oh we are just going down to make old Bull a visit," Colonel Cody answered.

"No use going down there to see him," the half breed replied, "old Bull is on his way to the agency at this minute on the other road."

They parleyed a little more and Colonel Cody convinced himself that the half breed knew what he was talking about, and then turned round and started back for Yates with his party.

Meantime the message arrived which Colonel Drum and Major McLaughlin were hoping for and anxiously expecting from Washington, message directing that Colonel Cody be recalled. A few minutes after Colonel Cody started back he was met by an Indian courier riding at full speed and was

handed a copy of the message. Colonel Cody and his party drove on back to Yates and a few hours afterward set out for the railway station at Mandan, and the incident was closed.

It was a fortnight or two after this event when we were summoned from our six o'clock Sunday dinners by the sound of "officers' call." Fort Yates was a very compact little post built in the days when the Sioux were fresh from the war path of 1876. A loopholed block-house, relic of those times, guarded it on one side. The commandant's office stood in the center of the little square parade-ground, which was surrounded on three sides by the barracks of the enlisted men and on the fourth by the line of officers' quarters.

Within five minutes after the bugle ceased blowing, every commissioned officer of the garrison was in the "K. O.'s office. Colonel Drum was at his desk facing the center of the room and Major McLaughlin was seated at his side.

"Gentlemen," the colonel addressed us, "I have called you here to tell you that Major McLaughlin has just received information that Sitting Bull and his people have made all their arrangements to leave their village. The Major has had his confidential policemen watching every movement these Indians have been making for several weeks, and one of these policemen has just galloped up from Grand River to report that Sitting Bull and his whole band are all ready to get away at daybreak in the morning. They expect to join the Indians in South Dakota who are off their reservation.

"Now I have an order from the Division Commander directing me to 'secure the person of Sitting Bull.' I received this order several days ago, but at Major McLaughlin's suggestion and request I have delayed acting on it in order to give him every chance to control his people if possible by his own means. And I am still going to let him do so. He will arrest Sitting Bull with his police force, and we won't take any hand in it unless it is absolutely necessary.

"As you all know, Major McLaughlin has twenty uniformed policemen; but in addition to these he has put on twenty others for this occasion. You will recognize these special police by a big white cloth which every one of them

will wear round his neck. Well, these police are at this moment on their way to Sitting Bull's camp at Grand River. They have the agent's orders to arrest Sitting Bull just at daybreak.

"Now, Captain Fechet, I want you to take your two troops of cavalry and march them tonight so as to be near enough at hand to support the Indian police if they have any trouble in making the arrest. If they make the arrest without help, they will turn Sitting Bull over to you and you are to bring him up here and confine him in the post guard-house. In any case you are to bring back the person of Sitting Bull. Are there any remarks any of you desire to make or any questions you want to ask?"

There were none and we were dismissed.

The cavalry at Fort Yates at that time consisted of two troops of the Eighth, "F" commanded by Lieutenant Stephen l'H. Slocum, and "G" commanded by Captain E. G. Fechet. Captain Fechet being the senior officer of cavalry at the post would, of course, have command of the two troops, the immediate command of his own troop "G" falling to Lieutenant E. H. Crowder. The writer was the second lieutenant of "F" troop, and E. C. Brooks was the second lieutenant of "G" troop.

Exactly at midnight the little column of cavalry, about one hundred troopers, trotted out of the post. It was a beautiful moonlight night and not very cold for that time of the year. We wore our light blue overcoats and carried no blanket rolls on our saddles. We had between forty and fifty miles to ride before dawn and the horses must not be weighted down with packs. The gait was the trot from start to finish.

Halfway from Yates to Grand River our trail crossed Oak Creek where the command was halted, and Captain Fechet called the officers to him at the head of the column. "Gentlemen," said he, "Colonel Drum told me an Indian courier would meet us here and tell me how the Indian policemen are getting on with their job and guide us to them. We have been here several minutes but there is no sign of the courier. My orders are to secure the person of Sitting

Bull. What do you think we should do, wait here for the courier or 'go ahead?" Our unanimous answer was "Go ahead."

"That is precisely what I had already made up my mind to do," he answered, "but I am glad you agree with me. You may return to your troops."

In a minute or two the command "Prepare to mount. Mount" was given by word of mouth, (trumpet signals carried too far on the still, crisp night air), and the troopers who had been dismounted to rest their horses swung themselves back into their saddles and the trot was resumed.

Day was beginning to break and we were still about two miles from the edge of the steep slope down which the road leads into the valley of Grand River, when suddenly we saw ahead of us the dim figure of a horseman riding at break-neck speed toward us. Soon we could make out that it was an Indian riding without bridle or saddle, pounding the animals ribs with his heels to urge it on. Our column halted but the Indian's horse never slackened its gallop until it stopped in front of us.

Louis Primeau, our half-breed interpreter, was riding at the head of the command with Captain Fechet, and the officers of the two troops without any invitation from our commanding officer hurried to the front, also, to find out what news the Indian brought. It was Hawkman, one of McLaughlin's policemen. He was terribly excited and the interpreter reported that he said that the police had arrested Sitting Bull, but had been set upon by his whole band and that every policeman except himself had been slain. I took his Winchester out of his hand and smelt its muzzle. The bore smelt of fresh-burnt powder.

We supposed from his report and from his haste and excitement that the hostile Indians were close on his heels. We expected to see them come galloping over the first rise of ground ahead of us, the next instant. So Captain Fechet quickly deployed the leading troop and moved us forward.

We had not advanced many hundreds of yards before we descried another Indian galloping to meet us. This one was more coherent and intelligible. He informed us that

the police had arrested Sitting Bull and that he had resisted and given the alarm, and then his whole band had attacked the police; that Sitting Bull and some of his men had been killed; but Bull Head, chief of the police, and several of the policemen were dead, and the rest had taken refuge in one of Sitting Bull's cabins. The whole of Sitting Bull's band, he said, were now in the thick timber near the cabin pouring a heavy fire into the cabin, and the beleaguered policemen had fired nearly their last cartridge, and if we didn't make haste to relieve them they would surely all be killed.

"Forward, march!" Captain Fechet commanded, and the trumpeter sounded "Gallop". Away we went across country for the edge of the valley which it was now light enough for us to see about a mile ahead of us.

When we reached the crest of the slope we found ourselves immediately above the cabin in which the policemen were surrounded. It was now broad daylight, and we could distinguish this hut from the rest by a dense blue ring of rifle smoke which floated over it. The Indians in the woods near by were still firing heavily at it. No doubt they would soon have charged it and murdered every policeman sheltered there.

We were about a thousand yards from the wood and a hundred feet or more above it. We opened fire upon it and the Indians therein immediately returned our fire; but we were too far from them and too high for their shots to take effect. Keeping up our fire we moved down the grassy slope to the next bench, while the Indians continued their fire from the cover of the timber.

If we had been dependent wholly upon the fire of our carbines we should have had a sharp fight and a hard task to dislodge the hostile Indians. Every advantage was on their side. They outnumbered us and had repeating rifles while we had single loaders; and they had a wood for cover, which is about the best natural cover troops can have against small arm fire. But luckily we had not forgotten to bring with us the little mountain Hotchkiss gun. It fired an explosive shell about an inch and a quarter in diameter.

This little gun was hurriedly dragged to the crest of the slope and trained on the woods below. Immediately after the first shell exploded among the Indians they began to move out and by the time the third shell had burst, they could be seen going by the dozens out of the woods and up the slopes on the opposite side of the valley as fast as their ponies could carry them.

As soon as the fire in the river bottom had ceased and the wood was silent, a white flag was seen to wave from the window of the cabin. Thereupon the command "Cease firing" was sounded by our trumpeters and we moved down the slope in skirmish line.

An Indian policeman bearing the white flag came out of the cabin and met us half way down the hill. He pitched the flag down when he reached our line, and I told one of the troopers to take it along as a souvenir. He detached it from the pole it was tied to and holding it up called to me that it was a little shirt. It was afterwards identified by one of Sitting Bull's squaws as the shirt worn by her little daughter Wok-in-nogin in the ghost dance. Some time afterwards Slocum and I sent this little shirt to the Army Museum at Governor's Island, New York.

When we reached the ground about Sitting Bull's two cabins at the bottom of the valley the beleaguered police came out to meet us. In a space hardly ten yards square in front of the cabin where they had taken cover lay the bodies of twelve dead Indians. Four of them were policemen, and Sitting Bull and seven of his followers were the others. Two policemen inside, shot in the abdomen, were mortally wounded, and another had a very painful wound through one of his insteps. Three of Sitting Bull's people were wounded.

In the cabin not occupied by the policemen we found Sitting Bull's two squaws and several other Indian women. I took a squad of soldiers into the cabin to examine it. I noticed that two or three of the squaws sat fast upon the bed which was very low. This aroused my suspicion and we pulled them off and lifted the heavy tick. There beneath it, flat on his stomach and face, lay Sitting Bull's son, a mute about eighteen years old.

In this room there hung an oil portrait of Sitting Bull in a deep gilt frame. It had been painted by a Mrs. Welden, a woman from the East who had spent several weeks visiting Sitting Bull the summer before. I had forbidden the soldiers to touch anything in the room, but suddenly I saw one of the special Indian policemen snatch this picture from the wall and smash its frame with his rifle. He also punched a hole through the canvas, but I got the portrait away from him before he completed its destruction. I carried it back to Yates with me and informed Major McLaughlin of the circumstance, and told him I should like very much to keep it, if the dead chief's squaws could be induced to let me do so. A day or two later McLaughlin told me the squaws said I might have it for two dollars. I handed him the two dollars for them, and I still have the torn canvass which I keep as a valuable relic.

Sitting Bull's people, some four hundred men, women and children had fled, but Captain Fechet's orders were to "bring back the body of Sitting Bull" to Fort Yates. So we made no pursuit. In a log stable hard by was tied the fine horse that Colonel Cody had given to Sitting Bull several years before at the time when the old Indian quitted the Wild West Show to return to his home on Grand River. Upon this horse an Indian messenger bore Captain Fechet's report of what had happened back to the commanding officer at Yates.

We have never known exactly how the combat was brought about between the police and Sitting Bull's braves; but the story as it was interpreted to us at the time, and as I recall it to-night, twenty-six years after, was like this: The policemen approached Sitting Bull's cabins without arousing any of his people, about half-past five o'clock. The chief of police, Lieutenant Bull Head, and Sergeant Shave Head went into the cabin where the old man slept and started out with him between them. Then a guttural sound of alarm was uttered, some said by Sitting Bull himself, but more probably by his deaf and dumb son who slept with him. This aroused some of his bucks who came running

out of their tepees rifles in hand. The old chief called on them to rescue him from his captors.

Thereupon Catch-the-Bear fired, hitting Bull Head who instantly shot and killed Sitting Bull before he himself fell to the ground. Then the scrimmage became general and the little body of police were soon overpowered and driven into the old man's cabin, and the hostiles withdrew to the woods near by. The police defended themselves until their ammunition gave out, then Hawk Man, one of their number, slipped out and mounting a bareback horse, which he found in the village, rode at full speed to meet our column.

Later in the day we started back to Fort Yates. Along with us in Indian wagons, for we had no wagons of our own, we hauled the bodies of Sitting Bull and our dead policemen. We also took our wounded policemen and Sitting Bull's two squaws with us. That night we bivouacked at Oak Creek, twenty-five miles from Yates. It was the place where the Grand River Indians habitually camped on their way to and from the agency to draw their supplies. Not a stick of fire wood was to be had and we had no bedding except our saddle blankets, so it is needless to say that we were all too cold to sleep.

About three o'clock the next morning, however, the rumbling of wagon wheels broke the cold silence of our bivouac, the most joyful sound that could have fallen on our ears. In a little while Colonel Drum, kindly, beloved old soldier, arrived with two companies of the 12th Infantry bringing rations and our tentage and bedding rolls. After breakfast the whole command, infantry, cavalry and Indian police, returned to the post and the agency.

The day after our return the dead policemen were buried in a single grave at the agency with full military honors, and at the same hour in the cemetery at Fort Yates the body of Sitting Bull was buried by the prisoners of the post guard-house unaccompanied by any honors or ceremonies.

SIOUX GAMES.

DR. JAMES R. WALKER.

According to the information given by the older men among the Lakota, the games described in the following pages have been played among them as far back as the memory of man goes. They all believe them to be very ancient. These games are played but little now, as they have been replaced by others, most of which have been introduced by the white people. Owing to the paucity of their language it is difficult for these Indians to give a differential description, and to secure full and accurate information from them in regard to any matter that is complex is a tedious process. It was necessary, in order to get the correct rules of these games, to see them played, and to question the players in regard to every step relative to them, for no Indian was able to give the rules completely. But after they were secured and written, all who were questioned about them, or to whom they were read, agreed that they were correct.

The writer has used the word "Lakota" instead of "Dakota," because it represents the Teton dialect, while "Dakota" represents the Santee and Yankton dialect, and because the information relative to these games was gathered among the Tetons. The spelling of the Lakota words herein given is that adopted in the "Dakota-English Dictionary, North American Ethnology, U. S. Geographical and Geological Survey," vol. vii.

Apparently the original Sioux language was composed entirely of words of a single syllable, and the vocabulary was very limited. Things, conditions, and actions, not named in the original language, were described by phrases composed of the original words. These phrases became agglutinated, and formed compound words, and the language as spoken at the present time is largely composed of these compound or phrase words. Because of the primitive ideas expressed by the elements of these compound words it is difficult to make an exact translation of them into English, and for this reason the translations herein given are liberal.

The following is a list of the games, in Lakota and English:

LAKOTA WOSKATE EMANA		SIOUX GAMES, ANCIENT
A.	Wayekiyapi Woskate Wiscasa.	Gambling Games for Men.
	Painyankapi	Wands and Hoop.
	Takapsice	Shinney.
	Canwiyusna	Odd Sticks.
	Hehaka	Elk.
B.	Wayekiyapi Woskate Winyan	Gambling Games for Women.
	Tawinkapsice	Women's Shinney.
	Tasiha	Foot Bones.
	Tanpan	Dice.
	Icaslohe	Bowls.
C.	Woimagaga Woskata Wicasa	Amusement Games for Men.
	Tahuka Cangleska	Webbed Hoops.
	Hutanacute	Winged Bones.
	Pteheste	Young Cow.
	Canpaslohanpi	Throwing Sticks.
	Ogle Cekutepi	Coat Shooting.
D.	Woimagaga Woskate Hoksila	Amusement Games for Boys.
	Paslohanpi	Javelins.
	Canwacikiyapi	Tops.
	Titazipi Hoksila	Boy's Bow.
	Hohu Yourmonpi	Bone Whirler.
	Tate Yourmonpi	Wind Whirler.
	Ipahotonpi	Popgun.
E.	Woimagaga Woskate Wicincala	Amusement Games for Girls.
	Hepaslohanpi.	Horned Javelins.
	Hosingagapi	Dolls.
	Tipi Cikala	Little Tipi.

Some of the Sioux dances could be included in a list of their games, but as they are all accompanied with more or less ceremony, they more properly belong in a list of their entertainments and ceremonies. In describing the various implements used in the games the measurements given are vague, because these Indians had no fixed standard, and could give approximate measures only.

The only previous account of Sioux games is by Louis L. Meeker, published in the "Bulletin of the Free Museum of Science and Arts," University of Pennsylvania, Vol. III, No. 1. In this publication the author gives most of his attention to the objects used in playing the games, without giving very full information as to the rules for playing. As

the games played by the Sioux are known to all of the Indians of the Plains, it seems advisable to have a complete account of the rules governing them, for comparative purposes. As the illustrations in the paper by Mr. Meeker are quite satisfactory, the writer will dispense with illustrations of his own.

1. Woskate Painyankapi

(Game of Wands and Hoop.)

Painyankapi is an ancient gambling game played by men. The Indians took great interest in this game, and some became very skilful at it. Sometimes a band of Indians would go a long distance, taking with them their families and all their possessions, to gamble on a game between expert players. Such games were watched by interested crowds, and, as they offer many opportunities for trickery, fierce contests arose over disputed points, which sometimes ended in bloodshed and feuds.

The implements used in the game are: congleska, the hoop; cansakala, the wands.

The cangleska is made from one piece, as long as the tallest man, taken from an ash sapling in the spring, while the sap is flowing. This is held in the fire, with the bark on, until it becomes pliable, when it is bent into the form of a hoop. It is then trimmed to a uniform diameter of about one inch, the ends lapped about three inches, and fastened together with thongs of rawhide.

Beginning near the lap, on each side of the hoop, four shallow spaces are cut so as to divide the hoop into quadrants. These spaces are about two inches long and half an inch wide, and those on one side are exactly opposite those on the other. Three transverse grooves are cut in each of the spaces nearest the lap, and these are called canhuta, or the stump. Two oblique grooves crossing each other at right angles are cut on each of the two spaces next the lap, and these are called okajaya, or the fork. Six transverse grooves are cut on each of the two spaces opposite the stump, and these are called wagopi, or the stripes. The two remaining spaces are blackened, and are called sapa, or black.

The cansakala are made of ash or choke-cherry wood, about four feet in length and three fourths of an inch in diameter. One end is flattened, or squared, for about ten inches. From the flattened portion to within about eight inches of the other end they are wrapped with a rawhide or buck skin thong, applied in a spiral manner. They are held together in pairs by a buckskin thong about eight inches long, fastened to each about one third of the length from their rounded ends.

Any one may make these wands, but it is believed by these Indians that certain men can make them of superior excellence, and give to them magic powers which may be exercised in favor of the one who plays with them. It is also believed that certain medicine men can make medicine over the wands, which, if carried when playing with the wands, will give the player supernatural powers in playing the game. But if an opposing player has the same medicine, they counteract each other, or if an opposing player has a more powerful medicine, this will prevail in the game. It is also believed by these Indians that if a player in any game has a talisman, properly prepared by ceremony and incantation, it will protect him against the evil effects of any kind of medicine or form of magic.

The rules governing the game are:

Before beginning the game the players must choose an umpire, a hoop, and the wands, and agree upon the number of points in the count.

The umpire must watch the game, decide all contested points, and call aloud all counts when made.

One hoop must be used during the entire game.

Each player must use his own pair of wands during the entire game.

If the hoop or a wand becomes unfit for use during a game, the game is declared off, and a new game must be played.

If a player persistently breaks the rules of the game, the game is declared off.

The players roll the hoop alternately.

To roll the hoop, the players stand side by side. One

of them grasps the hoop between the thumb and the second, third, and fourth fingers, with his first finger extended along the circumference, with the hoop directed forward, and by swinging his hand below his hips, he rolls the hoop on the ground in front of the players.

If a player rolls the hoop improperly, or fails to roll it when he should, his opponent counts one, and rolls the hoop.

After the hoop leaves the hand of the player it must not be touched or interfered with in any manner until after the umpire has called the count:

After the hoop is rolled the players follow it and attempt to throw their wands upon the ground so that the hoop will lie upon them when it falls.

After the hoop has fallen the umpire must examine it and call the count aloud.

The count is as follows:—

To count at all one of the marked spaces on the hoop must lie directly over the wand.

One marked space lying over one wand counts one.

One space lying over two wands counts two.

Two spaces lying over one wand counts two.

Two spaces lying over two wands count two.

Three spaces lying over two wands count three.

Four spaces lying over two wands counts the game.

The first who counts the number agreed upon wins the game.

If at the end of a play both players count the number agreed upon, the game is a draw, and a new game must be played.

Since this game seems to have important ceremonial associations, the following narrative is added:

Hoop Game

A band of Sioux Indians were traveling in the lake country of Minnesota. Game was very scarce, and they had little to eat for a long time. When they were nearly exhausted their chief decided to camp. One of his young men requested that he be allowed to fast for four days. Permission being given, he went to the top of a high hill in full

view of the camp. After two days and two nights the watchers from the camp saw a buffalo approach the man on the hill. The buffalo circled around him, and then disappeared on the opposite side. At midday the young man returned to the camp. He stopped and sat down on the top of a small hill, and his younger brother went out to him. The young man told his brother to stand back and not approach him. He said, "I have a message for you to deliver to my father. Tell my father to place a tent in the middle of the camp circle. Tell him to scatter sage grass around the inside, and that he must select four good men to enter the tent and await me." Then the young brother returned to the camp and delivered this message to his father. Every one knew that the young man had something important to tell his people.

The father did as requested. He believed the young man because the people of the camp had seen the buffalo on the hill with him. When the tent was ready, and the four good men had entered, the younger brother was sent to notify the young man. The young man approached, walking slowly. He stopped near the entrance of the tent, and after a few moments he moved still nearer and paused. He then approached the door, walked entirely around the tent, and entered. He produced a large pipe wrapped in sage grass. He sat down at the back of the lodge and asked the four good men to send for a good young man to act as his assistant. When the assistant came, the young man said to him, "Go out and cut a stick for me." When the assistant returned with the stick the young man ordered him to peel it. When this was done, the young man asked the four good men to make a sweat house.

When this was ready, the young man and the four good men entered the sweat house, while the assistant waited outside. When the ceremony in the sweat house ended, the party returned to the tent. Then the young man told them that a buffalo had come to him on the hill, had given him a pipe, instructions, and a message to deliver to his people. He ordered his assistant to bring a coal of fire. With this he made incense with sage grass, held his hands in the smoke

four times, took up the bundle containing the pipe, unwrapped it, and took out the pipe. The stem of the pipe was red, and the bowl was of black stone. "This pipe," said the young man, "was given me by the buffalo that you saw upon the hill, and he also instructed me as to its use."

The young man ordered his assistant to go out and cut an ash sapling and four cherry sticks. When these were brought, he gave a cherry stick to each of the four good men for them to peel. He, himself, took the ash stick and began to remove the bark. This done he bent it into a hoop and tied the ends with sinew threads and buckskin strings. He held the hoop in the smoke from the sage grass, then took red paint in his hands, held his hands over the smoke as before, and painted the hoop. Then he placed his assistant at the door of the lodge, himself at the rear, and two of the good men on each side. He instructed the four good men to paint their cherry sticks red in the same way that he painted the hoop. The assistant then smoothed the floor of the tent, while the young man sang four songs. The words of the songs were as follows:

1. I have passed by the holy floor (earth, smooth and level like the floor of a tipi.)
2. I have passed by the holy robe.
3. I have passed by the holy shell.
4. I have passed by an eagle feather, it is good.

Then the young man said, "Now, I shall roll the hoop. It will circle the tent. You are to watch the tracks made by it. You will see that it leaves buffalo tracks, returns to me, and lies down." So the young man sang the four songs again and rolled the hoop. The hoop circled the tent and returned to the young man as he had said. The four good men saw in the trail left by the hoop the tracks of buffalo. The young man said that, on the fourth day from this time, there would be many buffalo. Then he took strips of raw hide and wrapped them around the cherry sticks. He tied red cloth around one and blue around the other. Then he put on a buffalo robe and asked the men to follow him. The young man passed out of the door, and the four good men took the hoop and the sticks and played the hoop game, as they walk-

ed behind the young man. The people of the camp watched them, and wherever the hoop rolled, buffalo tracks appeared.

The young man requested his assistant to call a good old man. The people of the camp were in a state of famine. When the assistant brought the old man to the tent, the young man requested him to harangue the camp, as follows: "Ho, Ho, Ho, this young man wishes the people to make arrows, to sharpen them, and to sharpen their knives. He says that four buffalo will be here tomorrow morning. Let no one bother them, let no dogs chase them, let them go through the camp in peace. The four buffalo will come from the west."

Early the next morning the four buffalo came as predicted. They passed slowly through the north side of the camp and disappeared in the east. Then the chief of the camp sent a sentinel to stand upon the hill where the four buffalo were first seen. The sentinel looked down into the valley on the other side of the hill, where he saw vast herds of buffalo moving toward the camp. The chief had instructed the sentinel to run back and forth when buffalo were visible. The people of the camp who were watching saw him run back and forth upon the hill, and began to prepare for the hunt. The young man, who was still in his tent, sent out his assistant to call the people to his door. He requested that they stand around and keep quiet. The sentinel who had returned now addressed the people, telling them of the buffalo he had seen, the direction in which they were moving, etc. The young man then addressed the people, giving them permission to chase the buffalo.

They had a great hunt. Buffalo were everywhere. They even ran through the camp, and were shot down at the doors of the tents. The people had meat in great abundance.

When the hunt was over the young man requested the four good men to keep and care for the hoop and the sticks with which they had played. A tent was always kept in the middle of the camp circle, and the four good men spent most of their time in it. Whenever the people wished to hunt buffalo, the four men played the hoop game, and the buffalo appeared as before. In the course of time all these men

died, except one. This last man made the four marks we now see upon the hoop. After his death, the game was played by all the people, and became a great gambling game.

From this narrative it appears that the origin of the game was ceremonial and that the hoop used here is the same as the sacred hoop or ring so often used by the Sioux.

2. Woskate Takapsice

(Game of Shinney)

Takapsice is an ancient gambling game played by men, and is their roughest and most athletic game. They often received serious wounds, or had their bones broken while playing it, but serious quarrels seldom resulted.

It may be played by a few or by hundreds, and formerly was played for a wager. The wager on important games was often very large; men, women, and children betting, sometimes all they possessed, or a band of Indians contributing to a bet to make it equal to that offered by another band.

In former times one band of Indians would challenge another to play this game. If the challenge was accepted they would camp together, and play for days at a time, making a gala time of it, giving feasts, dancing, and having a good time generally.

The implements used in the game are: cantakapsice, the club; tapatalapsice, the ball.

The club was made of an ash or a choke-cherry sapling, taken in the spring when the sap was running, and heated in the fire until it was pliable, when the lower end was bent until it stood at right angles to the rest of the stick, or into a semicircular crook, about six inches across.

The shape of this crook varied to suit the fancy of the maker.

After the crook was made the stick was trimmed down to a uniform diameter of about one and a half inches, and cut of such a length that the player could strike on the ground with it while standing erect.

Any one might make a club, but certain persons were supposed to make clubs of superior excellence, and some persons were supposed to be able to confer magical powers on

clubs, causing the possessor to exercise unusual skill in playing. These magic clubs were supposed to be potent, not only in games, but to work enchantment in all kinds of affairs, for or against a person, as the possessor chose. The medicine-men sometimes included such clubs among their paraphernalia, and invoked their magic powers in their incantations over the sick.

Certain medicine-men were supposed to have the power to make medicine over clubs, so that any one in whose favor this medicine was made, by carrying it and the club during the game for which the medicine was made, would be on the winning side.

One possessing a magic club boasted of it, and the matter was generally known, but one who had medicine made over a club must keep the matter secret, for a general knowledge of the existence of the medicine would either destroy its potency, or others knowing of the medicine might have a more powerful medicine made against, or the magic of a talisman could be exercised especially against it, and defeat its power.

A player who possessed a magic club was feared by those who did not, and the latter tried to avoid coming in contact with such a club while playing the game. This gave the possessors of such clubs decided advantages over others, and they were eagerly sought as players, and heavy wagers laid on their playing.

The clubs were generally without ornament, but they were sometimes ornamented by pyrographic figures on the handle or body. Certain clubs were highly prized by their owners, who took great care of them, frequently oiling and polishing them.

When a club was held for its magic power alone, as by the medicine-men, it was often highly ornamented with feathers, bead work, porcupine quills, or tufts of hair.

The ball was made by winding some material into a ball, and covering it with buckskin or rawhide, or of wood. It was from two and a half to three inches in diameter.

The game is played where two goals can be set up with a level tract of land between them.

The rules of the game are:

Any number of men may play, but there must be an equal number on the opposing sides.

In a series of games the same persons must play in each game of the series.

After the game begins, if any player stops playing, a player from the opposing party must stop playing also.

The players of a game must fix the goals before beginning to play.

Each of the two goals must consist of two stakes set about fifty to one hundred feet apart, and a line drawn from one stake to the other, which must be nearly parallel to the line drawn at the other goal.

The goals must be from three hundred yards to one mile apart, as may be agreed upon between the players, for each game.

After the goals are fixed the players choose their goal, either by agreement or by lot.

After the goals are chosen the players arrange themselves in two lines, about half way between the goals, all the players on one side standing in one line, and each side facing the goal it has chosen, the lines being about thirty feet apart.

After the players are in line the ball is placed as nearly as can be half way between them.

After the ball is placed on the ground it must not be touched by the hand or foot of any one until the game is ended.

If at any time during the play the ball becomes so damaged that it is unfit for use, the game is called off, and another game must be played to decide the contest.

The club may be used in any manner to make a play, or to prevent an opponent from making a play.

After the ball is placed on the ground, at a given signal, each side attempts to put the ball across its goal in a direction opposite from the other goal.

The side that first puts the ball across its goal in the proper direction wins the game.

3. Woskate Canwiyusna

(Guessing the Old Stick.)

Canwiyusna is an ancient gambling game played by the Sioux men.

It may be played at any time, but was generally played during the winter, and at night.

The wagers on the game were generally small.

The implements used in the game were canwiyawa, counting sticks.

These are a large number of rods of wood, about the size of an ordinary lead pencil. They are of an odd number, and generally ninety-nine. They may be plain, but they are generally colored, and when so the color on all is the same, but applied differently, as some may be colored all over, others half colored, or striped, streaked, or spotted.

The rules of the game are:

The game may be played by two or more men.

Before beginning the game the players must agree upon the number of counts that will constitute the game.

One player must manipulate the sticks during the entire game.

The one who manipulates the sticks must keep his counts with each of the other players separate from that of all the others.

To play, the player who manipulates the sticks hides them from the other players, and divides them into two portions, and then exposes them to view of the other players.

After the portions are exposed to the view of the players they must not be touched by any one until each has made his guess .

Each player may make one guess as to which portion contains the odd number of sticks.

If a player guesses the portion that has the odd number of sticks in it he counts one point, but if he does not the manipulator counts one.

The one who counts the number of points agreed upon wins the wager.

4. Woskate Hehaka

(Game of Elk.)

Hehaka is an ancient gambling game played by the Sioux men.

It was usually played while hunting for elk, and was supposed to give success in the quest for game.

The wagers were usually small, and but little interest was taken in the game by others than the players.

The implements used in the game are: hehaka, the elk; cangleska, the hoop.

The hehaka is made of a round rod of wood about four feet long and three quarters of an inch in diameter, one end of which is squared or flattened for about ten inches. A small rod of wood about eighteen inches long and one half an inch in diameter at the middle, and tapering towards both ends, is fastened to the round end, and bent and held in a semi-circle by a string of twisted sinew or leather, curving towards the other end of the longer rod. This string is fastened at or near the ends of the curved rod and to the longer rod on about the level of the tips of the curved rod.

About eighteen inches from this two other rods are fastened crosswise on the longer rod, on a plane parallel with the plane of the curved rod at the end. One of these rods is similar to, but smaller than, the curved rod at the end, but it curves at a right angle to the longer rod.

The other is square or flattened, and about half an inch wide at its middle, tapering towards both ends.

About eighteen inches from these, towards the flattened end of the longer rod, two other rods like those above described are fastened in the same manner.

The longer rod is then wrapped with a buckskin or rawhide thong applied in a spiral manner from the curved rod at the round end to beyond where the cross rods are fastened to it, and all the curved and cross rods are wrapped in the same manner.

A banner about two by four inches in size, made of buckskin or cloth, and colored, is attached to the end where the curved rod is fastened.

The ring is about six inches in diameter, made of rawhide or sinews, and wrapped with a thong of rawhide.

The rules of the game are:

Two persons play the game.

Before beginning the game they must agree upon the number of points that shall constitute the game.

Each player must have one hehaka.

One hoop must be used in a game.

The players must toss the hoop alternately.

The hoop must be tossed up in the air.

After the hoop is tossed and begins to descend the players may attempt to catch it on the hehaka.

The hoop must be caught on the hehaka, before it touches the ground. If so caught after it touches the ground no count is made.

After it is caught on the hehaka, the hehaka must be laid on the ground with the hoop on the point where caught, before a count can be made.

An opposing player may, with his hehaka, take the hoop from a hehaka at any time before the hehaka is laid on the ground.

After a hehaka is laid on the ground no one must touch the hoop, either to remove or replace it.

If the hoop is caught on a hehaka, and the hehaka is placed on the ground, the count is as follows:

If the hoop is on the flattened end of the longer rod, nothing is counted.

If the hoop is on one of the cross rods, one is counted.

If the hoop is on two of the cross rods, two are counted.

If the hoop is on the curved rod at the end of the hehaka, three are counted.

If the hoop falls off the hehaka and strikes the ground it cannot be replaced, and nothing is counted.

The count is made for the player whose hehaka holds the hoop.

The player who first counts the number of points agreed upon wins the game.

5. Woskate Tawinkapsice

(Game of Woman's Shinney.)

Tawinkapsice is an ancient gambling game played by the Sioux women. The implements used and the rules of the game are precisely the same as those for takapsice, except that women only play at this game.

The women play the game with as much vigor as the men, and in former times at the meetings for playing takapsice the tawinkapsice was interspersed with the other games.

6. Woskate Tasihe.

(Game with Foot Bones.)

Tasihe is an ancient gambling game played by the Sioux women.

Men, boys, and girls practiced at manipulating the implement of the game so that many of them became expert, but it was considered beneath the dignity of men or boys to play the game in a contest for a given number of points, or for stakes.

The game was played by two or more women who sat, after the fashion of the Sioux women, on the ground.

Some women became very expert at the game, and others, men and women, would bet heavily on their play.

The implements used in this game are: tasiha, foot bones; tahinspa, bodkin.

The tasiha are made from the short bones from the foot of a deer or antelope. There are from four to six in a set, which are worked into the form of a hollow cone, so that one will fit over the top bone. From four to six small holes are drilled through the projecting points at the wider ends of the cones.

A hole is drilled through the articulating surface of the top bone, and all are strung on a pliable thong, which should be two and one-half times the length of the bones when they are fitted together. The bones are strung on this thong with the top bone at one end, and each with the apex of its cone towards the base of the cone next to it.

The apex of each cone should fit loosely into the hollow

of the cone next above it so that they will not jam, but will fall apart easily.

Four loops about one half an inch in diameter, made of some pliable material, are fastened to the end of the thong next to the top bone.

The tahinspa was formerly made of bone, and should be of the same length as the tasiha when they are fitted together. At one end a hole is drilled, or a notch cut, for the purpose of fastening it to the thong.

The opposite end is shaped into a slender point, so that it will pass readily into the holes drilled about the lower borders of the tasiha.

Latterly the tahinspa is made of wire of the same length as that made of bone, and with one end looped and the other pointed.

The tahinspa is fastened to the thong at the end opposite the loops.

Formerly the implement was without ornament, but latterly the loops are made of thread strung with beads.

The rules of the game are:

Only women may play in a game.

Before beginning to play the players must agree upon the number that shall constitute a game.

No player shall make more than one play at a time.

A player must hold the tahinspa in one hand and toss the tasiha with the other.

The tasiha must be caught on the point of the tahinspa after they have been tossed into the air.

If one tasiha is caught on the tahinspa this counts one.

If one or more tasiha remain on the one that is caught, this counts as many as there are tasiha so remaining.

If all the tasiha remain on top of the one that is caught, this counts the game.

If a tasiha is caught so that the tahinspa is through one of the holes at its lower border, this counts two.

If, when a play is made, the tahinspa passes through a loop, this counts one. If through two loops, this counts two. If through three loops, this counts three. If through four loops, this counts four.

7. Woskate Tanpan.

(Game of Dice.)

Tanpan is an ancient gambling game played by the older Sioux women.

This is an absorbing game, on which some women became inveterate gamblers, sometimes playing all day and all night at a single sitting.

The implements used in the game are: tanpan, basket; kansu, dice; canwiwawa, counting-sticks.

The tanpan is made of willow twigs, or some similar material, woven into a basket about three inches in diameter at the bottom and flaring to the top, like a pannikin, and about two and a half inches deep.

The kansu are made of plumstones, one side of which is left plain and the other carved with some figure, or with straight marks.

The figures usually represent some animal or part of an animal, though they may represent anything that the maker pleases to put on them.

There are six stones in each set, and usually some of these have only plain marks, and others figures on them.

The canwayawa are rods of wood about the size of a lead pencil and may be of any number, but there were generally one hundred in a set.

The rules of the game are:

The game may be played by two, four, or six old women, who must be divided into two opposing sides, with an equal number on each side.

Before beginning the game the players must agree upon how much each figure of the plumstones shall count, how many counting-sticks shall be played for, and place the counting-sticks in a pile between them.

After the game begins, no one must touch the counting sticks, except to take the number won at a play. No one shall play more than once at a time. To play, the player must put all the kansu in the tanpan, and cover it with the hand, shake it about, and then pour or throw out the kansu.

After the kansu are thrown out of the tanpan, no one

may touch them until after the count is made and agreed upon.

If the plain side of the kansu lies uppermost, this counts nothing.

If the carved side of a kansu lies uppermost, this counts what has been agreed upon.

When a player has played, and her count is made and agreed upon, she takes from the pile of counting-sticks as many as her count amounts to.

When the counting-sticks are all taken, the side which has the greater number of sticks wins the game.

8. Woskate Icaslohe.

(Game of Bowls.)

Icaslohe is an ancient gambling game played by the Sioux women.

The implements used in the game are: tapainyan, stone ball; canmibi, wooden cylinder.

The tapainyan are balls made of any kind of stone, from one to two and a half inches in diameter.

The canmibi are cylinders made of any kind of wood, from an inch and a half to two and a half inches in diameter, and from an inch and a half to three inches long.

The rules of the game are:

The game is generally played on the ice, but may be played on the ground.

Two women play at the game.

Each player must have a tapainyan and a canmibi.

Before beginning the game the players must agree upon the number they are to play for, and they must draw two parallel lines on the ice from ten to thirty feet apart.

The players must take their positions opposite each other outside the parallel lines, and must not be between the lines when they play.

Each player must place her canmibi on the line nearest her.

The players must bowl the tapainyan alternately, at the canmibi on the line farthest from them.

When the tapainyan is bowled it must strike the surface

before it crosses the line nearest the one who bowled it; if it does not the play counts nothing.

If the canmibi bowled at is knocked away from the line it counts one for the player, otherwise nothing.

9. Woskate Tahuka Cangleska

(Game of the Webbed Hoop.)

Tahuka cangleska is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux men.

This is an exciting game in which the Indians took great interest, gathering in large numbers to witness the play.

The implements used in the game are: tahuka cangleska, webbed hoop; wahukeza, spear.

The tahuka cangleska is made of a rod of wood from one half to one inch in diameter, which is bent so as to form a hoop from one to three feet in diameter. A web of rawhide is woven across the entire hoop, with interstices of from one-half to three quarters of an inch, that in the center being somewhat larger and called the heart.

The wahukeza is made of the sprout of a tree, or a young willow, and is from four to five and a half feet long, and about one half an inch in diameter at the larger end, which is bluntly pointed. The smaller end may be either straight or forked, and sometimes is ornamented with feathers, bead-work, or in any other manner according to the fancy.

The rules of the game are:—

Any number of persons may play in a game, but they should be equally divided into two opposing sides.

Each player may have as many spears as he wishes.

Before beginning the game the players must agree, upon how many innings will constitute the game.

Two parallel lines, about fifty yards long, and about fifty yards apart, are drawn.

The players take their positions opposite each other, outside these lines, choosing them either by agreement or by lot.

Any number of hoops may be used in a game, but there should never be less than four, and they should be of various sizes.

One player on each side must throw all the hoops.

The hoops must be thrown alternately, from one side to the other.

The thrower must not have either foot between the lines when he throws the hoops.

The hoop when thrown must cross both lines, and it may do so, either in the air or rolling on the ground; it may cross one line in the air, and roll across the other, or it may be thrown across one line, and strike between the lines and bound across the other.

After the hoop has crossed both lines, the players towards whom it was thrown, throw their spears at it.

If, while the hoop is in the air, it is speared through the heart, the count is five; if through any other interstice, the count is two.

If, while the hoop is rolling on the ground, it is speared through the heart, the count is three; if through any other interstice, the count is one.

If speared while the spear is held in the hand the count is nothing.

If speared after the hoop has stopped, nothing.

When the number of innings that have been agreed upon have been played, the side that has the most counts wins the game.

Another method of playing with these implements is:

The sides line up as in the former game, and the hoops are all thrown from one side towards the other, which keeps all the hoops they have speared, and returns all they have not, which are again thrown to them.

When all the hoops have been speared, the side that spears them chases the opposite side, and throws the hoops at them, and, if any one of the side is chased spears a hoop while it is in the air, the chase stops.

Then the opposite side throws the hoops, and the game is repeated.

10. Woskate Hutanacute.

(Game with Winged Bones.)

Hutanacute is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux men during the winter, on the snow or ice.

The implement used is hutaacute, winged bone.

The hutaacute is made from the rib of one of the larger ruminating animals. A piece about four to eight inches long is taken from the rib where it begins to narrow and thicken, and the wider end is cut square across, and the narrower end rounded up from the convex side.

Two holes are drilled in the wider end, lengthwise to the rib, and at such an angle that when the rods are in them their free ends will be about ten to twelve inches apart.

Two rods are made of plum sprouts, about one fourth of an inch in diameter, and about fourteen inches long. The smaller end of each of these is feathered like an arrow, and the other end is inserted into the hole in the bone.

The rules of the game are:

Any number may play.

Each player may have from two to four winged bones, but each player should have the same number.

A mark is made from which the bones are thrown.

The bones are thrown so that they may strike and slide on the ice or snow.

The players throw alternately until all the bones are thrown.

When all the bones are thrown, the player whose bone lies the farthest from the mark wins the game.

11. Woskate Pteheste.

(Game of the Young Cow.)

Pteheste is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux men during the winter, on the ice or snow.

The implement used in this game is pteheste, young cow.

The pteheste is made of the tip of a cow or buffalo horn, from three to four inches long. This is trimmed so as to make it as nearly straight as possible, and a feather-tipped arrow securely fastened into its base, so that it has the appearance of a horn-pointed arrow.

Any number of persons may play.

Each player may have any number of arrows, but all players should have the same number.

Two parallel lines are drawn from twenty to thirty feet apart.

The players take their position on one side of these lines.

A player must throw his horned arrow so that it may strike between the two lines and slide beyond them.

The players throw alternately until all the arrows are thrown.

At the end the player whose arrow lies the farthest from the line wins the game.

12. Woskate Canpaslohanpi.

(Game with Throwing Sticks.)

Canpaslohanpi is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux men in the winter on the snow or ice.

The implement used in this game is canpaslohanpi, throwing stick.

The canpaslohanpi is made of ash, and is about four feet long.

It is cylindrical on one side, and flat on the other. About five inches from one end it is about two inches wide, and an inch and a half thick. From this place it is rounded up to a blunt point on the flat side and tapers to the farthest end, which is about an inch wide and half an inch thick.

Each player has but one throwing stick.

Any number of persons may play.

The game is played by grasping the stick at the smaller end, between the thumb and second, third, and fourth fingers, with the first finger across the smaller end, the flat side of the stick held uppermost.

Then by swinging the hand below the hips the javelin is shot forward so that it will slide on the snow or ice.

The game is to see who can slide the stick the farthest.

13. Woskate Ogle Cekutepi.

(Game of Coat Shooting.)

Ogle Cekutepi is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux men.

The implements used in the game are: Ogle, coat; itazipe, bow; wanhinkpe, arrows.

The ogle is an arrow that is either painted black or wrapped with a black strip of buckskin, or has a tag attached to it, (sometimes it is a plain arrow).

The itaziye and wanhinpe are the ordinary bow and arrows.

The game is played by shooting the ogle high in the air so that it will fall from fifty to seventy-five yards away. Then the players stand where it was shot from, and shoot at it with the bows and arrows.

This is merely a game of skill, and not for points.

14. Woskate Paslohanpi.

(Game of Javelins.)

Paslohanpi is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux boys in the springtime.

The implement used is wahukezala, javelin.

The wahukezala is made of willow. It is from three to six feet long, and from three eighths to three quarters of an inch in diameter at the larger end, and tapers to the smaller end.

The bark is peeled from it and wrapped about in a spiral manner, leaving an exposed space about a half an inch wide. It is then held in smoke until the exposed part is blackened, when the bark is removed.

This marks the javelin with spiral stripes of black and white.

Each one who plays may have as many javelins as he chooses.

There are two ways of throwing the javelin. One is to lay it across something, as the arm, or the foot, or another javelin, or a stump of log, or a small mound of earth, or anything that is convenient, and grasping it at the smaller end, shoot it forward.

The other way is to grasp the javelin near the middle and throw it from the hand.

In throwing, the contest may be for distance, or to throw at a mark.

The game is merely a contest of skill in throwing the javelin.

15. Woskate Canwacikiyapi

(Game of Tops.)

Canwacikiyapi is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux boys.

The implements used in this game are: canwacikipapi, tops; icapsintepi, whips.

The canwacikiyapi is a wooden cylinder with a conical point. The cylinders are from an inch to two inches in thickness, and from a half to an inch and a half in length, and the conical point is from an inch to two inches in length.

The icapsinte has a handle and from one to four lashes. The handle is made of wood, and is from fifteen inches to two feet long, and about half an inch thick at its thicker end, and tapers to the other end.

The lashes are made of pliable thongs or strings, about twelve to fifteen inches long, and are fastened to the smaller end of the handle.

The tops are spun in the same manner as whip tops are spun by white boys. A game is played by marking a square about five feet across.

On three sides of this square barriers are placed, and the fourth side left open.

The players spin their tops outside of the square, and while they are spinning they drive them into the open side of the square.

After the tops cross the open side of the square they must not be touched.

After the tops stops spinning, the one that lies nearest the side of the square opposite the opening wins the game.

Another game is played by marking a circle about six feet in diameter and near its center making four holes a little larger than the tops and about six inches apart.

The players spin their tops outside the circle, and while they are spinning drive them into it.

After a top enters the circle it must not be touched.

The player whose top lies in one of the holes when it has stopped spinning wins the game.

If two or more tops lie in the holes when they stop spin-

ning, those who spun them must spin them again until one player's top lies in the holes more often than any other.

16. Woskate Titazipi Hoksila (Game with Boys' Bows.)

The Sioux boys have, from ancient times, indulged in amusement with the bow and arrow.

They play at various games, mimicking battles, hunting, and similar things.

They also shoot at a target, and for distance, but there appears to be no formal game or rules governing their play.

The boys' bow is like the bows for the men, except that it is smaller.

The boys' arrows are like those for the men, except that they are made with heads large and blunt.

17. Hohu Yourmonpi (Bone Whirler.)

The hohu yourmonpi is a toy that has been played with by the Sioux boys from ancient times.

It is made from the short bone of the foot of one of the larger ruminating animals, and is fastened to the middle of a string of sinews about twelve to eighteen inches long. At each end of the sinew string a short stick is fastened to serve as a hand hold.

These sticks are taken, one in each hand, and the bone whirled about so as to twist the string. The string is then drawn taut, which rapidly untwists it, and rapidly whirls the bone so that its motion will twist the string in the opposite direction. This process is repeated indefinitely, the motion of the bone making a buzzing noise.

The object of playing with the toy is to make the buzzing noise.

A game called "buffaloes fighting" is played with this toy, as follows:

A number of boys, each with a bone whirler, set them to buzzing, and imitate the actions of bulls fighting, the buzzing of the bones is supposed to represent the bellowing of the bulls. They approach each other and strike the bones to-

gether, and if the bone of a player is stopped from buzzing, he is defeated.

18. Tate Yourmonpi

(Wind Whirler.)

The tate yourmonpi is a toy that has been played with by the Sioux boys from ancient times.

It consists of a blade of wood, usually red cedar, about one eighth of an inch thick, two inches wide, and twelve inches long. One end of this is fastened to a wooden handle by a pliable thong about twelve to eighteen inches long.

The handle is from two to three feet long, and about one half to one inch in diameter.

By holding the handle above the head and swinging it rapidly with a circular motion, the blade is whirled rapidly and makes a buzzing noise.

The object of playing with the toy is to make the buzzing noise, and sometimes a number of boys contest to see who can keep it continually buzzing for the longest time.

19. Ipahotonpi

(Pop-gun.)

The ipahotonpi is a toy that has been played with by the Sioux boys from ancient times.

It consists of: tancan, the body; wibopan, the ramrod; Iyopuhdi, the wadding.

The tancan was formerly made from a piece of ash sprout, about six to ten inches long, from which the pith was removed, but since the Indians have obtained wire, they burn a hole through a piece of ash from eight to fifteen inches long, and from one and a half to two inches in diameter.

It is generally ornamented by pyrographic figures or markings.

The wibopan is made of some tough wood, a little longer than the tancan, and of such size as to pass readily through the bore.

The iyopuhdi is made by chewing the inner bark of the elm, and using it while wet.

A wad is packed tightly into one end of the bore, and a closely fitting wad is forced from the other end, rapidly

through the bore by means of the ramrod, when the first wad flies out with an explosive noise.

The object of playing with the toy is to make the report.

Sometimes the boys play at mimic battle with the pop-guns, or they mimic hunting, when one or more boys imitate the game, and the others try to hit them with the wads from the pop-guns.

20. Woskate Hepaslohanpi.

(Game of Horned Javelins.)

Hepaslohanpi is an ancient game played for amusement by the Sioux girls in the winter on the ice or snow.

The implement used in the game is hewahukezala, horned javelin.

The hewahukezala is made of a wooden javelin, about four to five feet long and from three quarters to an inch thick at the thicker end, tapering to a diameter of three eighths to one half an inch at the smaller end.

A tip of elk horn, about four to eight inches long, is fastened on the larger end.

The game is played by throwing the javelin so that it will strike and slide on the snow or ice, and the one whose javelin slides the farthest wins the game.

As many girls may play at the game as wish to do so.

21. Hoksinkagapi.

(Dolls)

From ancient times the Sioux girls have played with dolls.

The dolls were rude effigies, sometimes carved from wood, but generally made of buckskin, and stuffed with hair, with their features made by marking or painting.

The dolls were dressed with both male and female attire, which was adorned with all the ornaments worn by the Indians.

The girls would often have doll baby carriers, like those used for the Indian babies, and would carry the dolls on their backs, as their mothers carried their babies.

22. Tipi Cikala.

(Toy Tipis.)

From ancient times the Sioux girls have played with toy tipis varying in size from a miniature tipi of a foot or so in height to one large enough for a child to enter.

They played with these toy tipis in much the same way as white children play with toy houses.

—J. R. WALKER.

LEWIS AND CLARK IN SOUTH DAKOTA

By Doane Robinson

NOTE BY THE EDITOR

In the compilation of these pages the editor has relied upon the following authorities, in connection with a somewhat personal knowledge of the geography and topography of the region traversed:

"Original Journal of the Lewis and Clark Expedition," edited by Reuben Gold Thwaites, New York, Dodd, Mead & Company.

"The History of the Lewis and Clark Expedition," edited by Dr. Elliot Coues, New York, Frances P. Harper.

"The Trail of Lewis and Clark," by Olin D. Wheeler, New York, Putnam.

"The Expedition of Lewis and Clark," by James K. Hosmer, Chicago, McClurg.

"Gass's Journal, Lewis and Clark Expedition," by James K. Hosmer, Chicago, McClurg.

I am under special obligations to Mr. H. E. Quinney of the State Engineer's office for the maps.

LEWIS AND CLARK IN SOUTH DAKOTA

The Lewis and Clark expedition over the Missouri river, enroute to the Pacific Ocean was distinctively the enterprise of Thomas Jefferson. It was conceived, undertaken and well under way before the purchase of Louisiana from France. Lewis and Clark were west of the Alleghanies on their way toward the Pacific before information reached them that they were not to explore a foreign country but the domain of the United States. Jefferson not only conceived and promoted the enterprise but he formulated all of the rules and directions for the guidance of the explorers. Summarized these directions were as follows:

"The object of the enterprise was to explore the Missouri River and such principal streams of it, * * * as may offer the most direct and practicable water-Communication across the continent for the purposes of commerce."

"Beginning at the mouth of the Missouri take observations of latitude and longitude at all remarkable points * * * of a durable kind as that they may with certainty be recognized hereafter."

"Your observations are to be taken with pains and accuracy. * * * several copies are to be made and carried by several trustworthy persons. One copy to be made upon paper-birch."

"Acquaint yourselves with the names of nations, (Tribes of Indians) and their numbers.

"The extent and limits of their possessions

"Their relations with other tribes

"Their language, traditions and monuments.

"Their ordinary occupations in agriculture, fishing, hunting, war, arts, and the implements for these.

"Their food, clothing and domestic accommodations.

"The diseases prevalent among them and the remedies they use.

"Moral and physical circumstances which distinguish them from tribes we know.

"Peculiarities in their laws, customs and dispositions.

"Articles of commerce which they may need or furnish and to what extent.

"The state of morality, religion and information among them.

"Other objects worthy of notice will be:

"The soil and face of the country, its growth and vegetable productions.

"The animals of the country generally.

"Mineral productions of every kind, but more particularly, metals, limestone, pit-coal, salines and mineral waters.

"Volcanic appearances.

"Treat the natives in the most friendly and conciliatory manner,

"Allay jealousies among them.

"Acquaint them with the position, extent, character, peaceable and commercial dispositions of the United States.

"Induce some of the principal chiefs to visit us.

"Offer to bring back some of the children to be educated.

"Carry with you some matter of the kine-pox and teach them about vaccination.

"Use your discretion in emergencies; take no unnecessary risks; Err on the side of safety. Bring back your party safe even if it be with less information."

It was with these general instructions that the explorers started out. Before leaving the east Captain Lewis went to Philadelphia and remained three months where he took a course of scientific instruction under Dr. Benjamin Smith Barton, the most notable American Scientist of his age.

The personnel of the party of explorers as finally assembled was as follows:

Commandants.

Merriweather Lewis, captain First U. S. Infantry. Born August 18, 1774, near Charlottetown, Virginia, of one of the notable First Families of Virginia, related by marriage to the

Washingtons. He served in the Whiskey Rebellion, and was chosen as his private secretary by Jefferson, in which capacity he was serving when appointed for the northwestern expedition. He died mysteriously presumably by suicide, but perhaps was murdered, September 18, 1809, while enroute from St. Louis to Washington.

William Clark, second lieutenant U. S. Artillerists, promoted to captain and Engineer for this expedition. Born in Caroline county, Virginia, August 1, 1770, married first, Julia Hancock, who died in 1820; second, Harriet Kennerly. After the return of this expedition he was first appointed by Jefferson brigadier general and Indian agent for the Louisiana purchase, and upon the death of Captain Lewis he became governor of Missouri Territory. He was a younger brother of George Rogers Clark of Revolutionary fame. He died at St. Louis September 1, 1838.

Sergeants.

John Ordway, a native of New Hampshire and a grand uncle of Nehemiah G. Ordway, governor of Dakota Territory, 1880-1884, was most depended upon by the commandants of the expedition of any of the subordinates. The order book shows that whenever the captains were to be absent the command was conferred upon Ordway. He went home to New Hampshire in 1806 but soon returned to Missouri, where with family and New England foresight and thrift he bought up the land rights of his companions and located a large tract in the vicinity of New Madrid. Dakotans can well imagine his notable nephew doing likewise.

Charles Floyd, was a Virginian and a neighbor of Captain Lewis. He appears to have been an able young man. He died, as Captain Clark wrote in his journal of a "Biliose Chorlick," at Sioux City, on August 20th, 1804. A handsome monument now marks the grave.

Nathaniel Pryor was also a Virginian and a neighbor of Lewises, as well as a cousin of Sergeant Floyd's. He remained in the army and rose to the rank of captain; fought with credit through the war of 1812 and resigned his commission in 1815, when Captain Clark, then governor of Mis-

souri appointed him Indian agent to the Osages with whom he continued and died in 1831.

Patrick Gass, was elected sergeant by his comrades after the death of Sergeant Floyd. He was born at Falling Springs, Pennsylvania, June 12th, 1771 and was of Scotch-Irish origin. He kept a diary of the expedition which has been widely published. He served with credit in the War of 1812 and lived until April 3rd, 1870 being 99 years old at his death. He died at Wellsburgh, Pennsylvania, a member of the Disciples Church.

Privates.

William Bratton, was a blacksmith by trade and consequently especially valuable to the enterprise. The story of his early life is lost. He settled at New Madrid where he remained until the war of 1812 in which he served and then lived at Waynestown, Indiana where he married and raised a large family. He died there in 1841 and his monument bravely declares that he served with Lewis and Clark.

John Collins; record lost.

John Colter, was a native of Bedford county, Pennsylvania, but he joined the expedition from Kentucky. He was a valuable man. He resigned from the party when returning at the Mandan villages in August 1806. He returned to hunt along the Missouri and discovered Yellowstone Park which was long known as Colter's Hell. He soon entered the service of Manuel Lisa and had some hair-raising experiences with the Indians. He settled at La Charrette, Missouri where he married a young wife. Nothing further is known of him.

Peter Cruzette, chief waterman of the expedition, was of Spanish-French blood and a grandson of Don. Francisco Crusat, former Spanish, lieutenant governor of Louisiana. He it was who accidentally wounded Captain Lewis upon the return trip.

Joseph and Reuben Fields, were two brothers from Kentucky. They were admirable fellows of whom unfortunately nothing further is known.

Robert Frazier, was from Vermont. He kept a journal of the trip which he proposed to print as a business venture but nothing came of it. The journal has been lost.

George Gibson, a native of Mercer county, Pennsylvania, upon his return from the west settled, married and died in St. Louis shortly after. His death occurred in 1809.

Silas Goodrich was of Massachusetts and nothing further has been left of record pertaining to him.

Hugh Hall, of Massachusetts; no record.

Francois La Biche (deer). This is undoubtedly a soubriquet. He enlisted at St. Louis. Record lost.

Baptiste LePage, enlisted at the Mandans and was with the party on the return through South Dakota. Lewis said he possessed "no peculiar merit."

Hugh McNeal; no record.

John Potts. He resigned with Colter, at the Mandans and remained upon the upper Missouri where he was killed by the Blackfeet a few years later.

George Shannon was a boy of 17. He came of a good family, served faithfully and lost a leg in the battle with the Rees, in northern South Dakota in 1807. He studied law at Transylvania University, Kentucky and practiced at Lexington, Kentucky and at Palmyra, Missouri, where he was chosen judge of the circuit court; in 1836 at the age of 49 years he fell dead in the court room at Palmyra. His younger brother served two terms as governor of Ohio and one as governor of Kansas.

John Shields was the artificer of the expedition and was exceptionally useful. His record has been lost.

William Werner, settled in Missouri and was made an Indian agent by Captain Clark after he became governor of Missouri and superintendent of Indian affairs.

Joseph Whitehouse, kept a journal of the expedition which was recovered by Dr. Reuben Gold Thwaites in 1904 and published in his "Original Journals of the Lewis and Clark Expedition." No further knowledge of Whitehouse has been preserved.

Alexander Willard, a native of New Hampshire was, next to Shannon the youngest man of the company. He settled in St. Louis and became the father of a large family. Governor Clark was much attached to him. In his old age he removed to Wisconsin to live with one of his children and

soon after removed with his offspring to Oregon, and though he was 75 years of age he tramped sturdily most of the way driving a team of oxen. He died in Oregon in 1865 at the age of 88.

Peter Wiser, enlisted at Pittsburg; no further record.

Guides, Interpreters and Hunters.

Pierre Dorian. A French frontiersman picked up at St. Louis as guide and interpreter to the Sioux. He was then an old man and is frequently called "Old Dorian." He was married to a Yankton woman as early as 1785, and maintained some sort of a home with the Yanktons and may be said to be among the first, if not the very first white resident of South Dakota. His eldest son, Pierre, Jr. was guide and interpreter to the Astorians in 1811 and many of his descendants are still in South Dakota.

George Droulliard, (Drewyer) a mixed blood. He was a man of sterling worth and invaluable to the expedition. Upon this trip he incurred the enmity of the Blackfeet and a few years later was killed by that tribe. Many of his descendants are in Dakota and one of them, Joseph, rendered very important service to the settlers and to the government in the war of the Outbreak.

Toussaint Charboneau, picked up by the Captains at the Mandan villages and with them upon the return trip. Chiefly notable as husband of Sacajawea, the Birdwoman, who accompanied him.

In addition there were 13 French boatmen who were hired at St. Louis and went as far as the Mandans.

The party was divided into four messes.

1. The officers mess: Lewis and Clark, served by York, a slave belonging to Captain Clark.

2. First Squad, Sergeant Nathaniel Pryor in command. Privates Gibson, Shannon, Shields, Collins, Whitehouse, Wiser, Hall.

3. Second Squad, Sergeant Charles Floyd commanding. Privates McNiel, Gass, R. Fields, J. Fields, Winsor, Frasier.

4. Third Squad, Sergeant John Ordway commanding. Privates Bratton, Colter, Willard, Warner, Goodrich, Potts.

Several other men, notably Thomas P. Howard, John B. Thompson, Richard Worthington, John Robertson, John Boyle, Moses Reed, John Newman, were enlisted for the service but for one reason or another dropped out. Reed, was discharged at the Omaha villages for attempted desertion but kept along with the party as a laborer until the Mandans were reached. John Newman served as a private until as they were crossing the north line of South Dakota when he was tried for "mutinous expression" convicted and discharged from the military service but continued as a camp drudge to the Mandans. He and Reed were sent back to St. Louis in the spring of 1805 with the rivermen.

Throughout the trip Captain Clark was the engineer of the expedition, carried a surveyor's transit and kept a record of "coarse distances and references." While his indicated courses cannot always be followed, nor are his estimates of distances quite dependable in all cases, bench marks are so frequent at natural land marks which are unmistakable, that it is not difficult to determine every camping place with approximate accuracy. Occasionally meridian observations were taken to determine longitude, but these are found to be usually some minutes of longitude distant from the true longitude. In determining the camping places on the South Dakota stretch, Mr. Elwin H. Quinney, assistant state engineer very carefully checked Captain Clark's courses upon the Missouri River Commission map and determined the location of each.

In his field notes Captain Clark used the terms "S" meaning Starboard, and "L" meaning Larboard, to indicate the side of the stream upon which camps were made. This has frequently misled readers and some usually careful editors who have mistaken the signs to mean "south" and "left."

Captain Lewis left Washington, for this enterprise on July 5th, 1803; he was joined by Captain Clark at Louisville, Kentucky, and arrived in St. Louis, in the month of December. When at Pittsburg, enroute west, Lewis was overtaken by an express from Jefferson, telling him of the Louisiana Purchase and later, Jefferson instructed the captains to remain in St. Louis and assist in the transfer of the Louisiana

region from Spain, through France to the United States. The members of the party were assembled in St. Louis and settled in an encampment on the Illinois shore of the Mississippi where they remained until after the ceremonies connected with the transfer of Louisiana which occurred on May 9th and 10th, 1804.

The party was supplied with three boats, the largest fifty-five feet long and propelled with 22 oars; but also with sails to take advantage of favorable winds. There were decks in the bow and stern making comfortable cabins. The other boats were smaller being of six and seven oars respectively. Captain Clark enumerates the articles taken with them as follows:

14 bags of parchmeal of 2 bushels each, weight about 1200 lbs	
9 bags common meal	800
11 bags hulled corn	1000
30 half barrels of flour, gross weight.....	3900
2 bags of flour.	
7 bags of biscuit.	
4 barrels of biscuit	560
7 barrels salt, 2 bushels each.....	750
50 kegs of pork	3705
2 boxes of candles and one of soap.....	170
1 bag of candle wick	8
1 bag of coffee	50
1 bag of beans and 1 of peas.....	100
2 bags of sugar	112
1 keg of hog's lard	100
4 barrels of hulled corn	600
1 barrel of corn meal	150
Grease	600
50 bushels of meal.	
24 bushels hulled corn.	
21 bales Indian goods.	

Tools of every description.

Not a very extensive supply for forty-three men going into the wilderness for a two years campaign; but it was expected that much of their living would be secured from the hunt and in this they were not disappointed.

It rained in the morning of May 14th and the voyaguers remained in camp until 4: P. M. Captain Lewis had not returned from a visit to Saint Louis, but it was determined to start that evening and so at 4 o'clock, everything being in readiness they made the start and camped for the night four miles up the Missouri.

Thereafter, day by day they made their toilsome way up the turbid stream and more than three months had elapsed before on the morning of August 21st at about 9 o'clock they passed the mouth of the Big Sioux River and entered the present domain of South Dakota.

IN SOUTH DAKOTA.

At nine o'clock on the morning of Tuesday, August 21st, 1804; a beautiful warm, clear morning with a gentle breeze from the Southeast, Captain Clark stood on the top of War Eagle hill and for the first time looked upon the lower valley of the Big Sioux river, the windings of the Missouri through the great alluvial plain between Sioux City and Elkpoint and all of that unrivaled landscape that welcomes the traveler into the Sunshine state. With him was "Old Dorian," the guide and interpreter of the Sioux who told him the name of the smaller stream and described its course to Sioux Falls and beyond and especially told him of the picturesque Split Rock, and the Pipestone quarry and of the rights which all of the tribes held in common there. After surveying the attractive scene spread before him Captain Clark trained his transit upon the head of an island a couple of miles away and took the bearing to be south, 48 degrees west, and leaving the bluff the expedition set upon its way to follow the great river across the Dakota land. Soon clouds came up and a high wind made navigation difficult. Two days previous Droulliard and Colter had been dispatched up the west bank with the two horses to hunt and all day Tuesday the Captains looked anxiously for some sign from them but in vain; this was probably due to the fact that much of the time the course of the river kept them far away from the Nebraska high land where the hunters naturally traveled. In mid afternoon the explorers found themselves at the turn of the

"Heron Roost Bend" close up to Jefferson and only two miles distant from the Big Sioux River. Not much of importance is recorded, though Captain Clark was pleased to find a very excellent fruit resembling the red currant (*Buffalo berry*, *Shepardia Argentea*). They camped that night on the Nebraska shore on the west side of Miner's Bend. Latitude taken 4 miles above mouth of Sioux $42^{\circ} 28' 29''$ which is very nearly correct.

Wednesday, August 22, 1804.

At daylight camp was broken and sailing with the assistance of a strong south wind they soon made the three miles to Ponca Landing where they found Droulliard and Colter awaiting them, with the horses and two deer which they had killed. There the party took breakfast and the scientists set to work to discover the character of the material in Dixon's Bluffs. Just what tests they applied is not revealed but the results will always be a joy and delight to posterity. Captain Clark gravely records: "By exomination this Bluff Contained Alum, Copperas, Cobalt, Pyrites; a Alum Rock Soft & Sand Stone. Capt. Lewis in proveing the quality of those minerals was Near poisoning himself by the fumes & tast of the Cobalt which had the appearance of Soft Isonglass. Copperas & alum is verry pisen." The fact is they were getting their first observation of the Cretaceous; below this point the formation is pleistocene. The "clift" so carefully and scientifically "exomined" by the captains, contains according to the analysis made in 1839 by Nicollet, "argillaceous limestome, calcareous marl and a slightly ferruginous clay." All of the party were troubled more or less at this time with some seasonable ailment of the bowels, perhaps the same that in more violent form had carried off Charles Floyd a couple of days sooner. When however, they discovered the "verry pisen" elements of the bordering bluff they were convinced that these poisons were floating on the surface of the river and that they were affected by drinking the water. Thereafter they conserved their health by dipping deep below the surface to secure drinking

water and their maladies soon ceased. In those days the Missouri turned sharply east from Dixon's bluffs, at Ponca landing, cut up through what are now the Balenger and Mosher farms close to the School House in District 20 clear up to the Rasch and Freeman places and only a few rods from the present line of the Milwaukee Railway, where it turned sharply westward, washing the southern walls of the city of Elkpoint and returning to the present channel at the Chausee farm, three miles west of the city. Throughout the day they toiled upon their way, buffeted about by a high wind. On the higher prairie on the starboard shore, upon a point of land extending into the stream, the outlines of which are still visible, Captain Clark had discovered a lone tree which they resolved to reach for the evening camp and as the sun was setting they ended a long day's work, by pitching camp under that tree on the point. Every where about them the hunters discovered Elk sign and they named the place Elk-point.

The death of Sergeant Floyd at Sioux City had disorganized the party to some extent and the commandants recognized the necessity of selecting a leader for the Second Squad and wisely they determined to leave the choice to the men themselves, but not wishing to leave the choice wholly without limitation they devised the first primary election in Dakota land, by nominating William Bratton, Patrick Gass and George Gibson, from whom the privates were permitted to elect one. There have since been many political campaigns in Union county in which breathless interest was felt in the result, but perhaps not one fraught with more intense interest than this first election to be held by white men upon Dakota soil. The ballot was cast and the votes counted in the flickering light of the camp fire and Captain Lewis announced that Patrick Gass had received the votes of nineteen of his comrades, a clear majority, and was duly elected.

Politics and medical science came to South Dakota arm in arm for after the election Captain Clark writes: "Captain Lewis took a dost of salts." And so ended the second eventful day of the first official exploration of South Dakota.

Thursday, August 23, 1804.

They got off again at daylight this morning with a south-east wind helping them along. Captain Clark and Joseph Fields started off for a hunt, the captain remaining near the shore while Fields struck out in the fine meadow between Elkpoint and Burbank. Very soon the captain came in with a fine buck, but scarcely had he received congratulations upon his kill, when Fields arrived to announce that he had killed a fine buffalo bull. Captain Lewis at once took with him 12 men and went out and dragged the big beast to the river where they salted two barrels of the meat for future consumption. Reuben Fields who had been traveling on shore with the horses came up and added two deer to the larder. The wind turned west and blew a gale, raising clouds of sand from the bars so that travel was very difficult and was soon abandoned; they found shelter and "jurked the meat." Toward sunset the wind abated and they pushed on camping that night on the Nebraska shore within Kate Sweeney Bend and almost south of the present village of Burbank. It was not a very eventful day, though they got all the game they could use and saw much more. Two elk swam the river near to the boats and others were seen standing upon the sandbars. "One Beaver Caught" says Clark.

Friday, August 24, 1804.

A showery morning after a rainy night, but the camp was broken at sunrise and the party on its way following what is practically the present channel until they came to the "Hot Bluff," on the Nebraska shore, which "was too hot for a man to bear his hand in the earth at any depth." They were of the opinion that it was volcanic as were many, more scientific travelers, who followed them. It is now known that the heat is chemically produced by the decomposition of pyrites in the damp shales. The heat is sufficient at times to produce steam and even to fuse some of the sand and clay. They found more buffalo berries and Captain Clark testifies that they were "deliciously flavored and makes de-litefull tarts. The froot is now ripe." Clark and his negro

York and a French boy strolled along the Nebraska shore and got two buck elk and a fawn. Captain Lewis walked out to them and "it rained and it rained hard and we gott verry wet." They passed the mouth of the Vermillion and camped on the Nebraska shore in about the middle of the flood plain and directly south of the Milwaukee railroad bridge across the Vermillion. They call the latter stream the whitestone from the Indian name which they spell Was-sisha, which according to the adopted modern spelling is Wa-se-sha and means simply Red Paint. They passed a disagreeable night in the rain.

The chronometer stopped from some unknown cause and was kept going with difficulty. Thereafter the latitude is not so accurately ascertained.

Saturday, August 25, 1804.

Long before reaching the Vermillion the captains had been regaled by the Ottoes, the Omahas and other tribes with tales of the hill of Little Devils, where dwelt hordes of little people no more than 18 inches high but with inordinately large heads, and armed with exceedingly sharp arrows they were able to kill at a great distance and so alert were they that no human being could hope to escape who approached the hill. The voyageurs were seriously told that but a short time previously three mighty warriors of the Omaha tribe had fallen before the merciless fury of the Little Devils. The superstition pertaining to this hill was wide spread and very ancient. Radisson and Grossielier writing of their voyage down the Mississippi in 1654, one hundred fifty years before Lewis and Clark obtained from the Indians a good deal of information pertaining to the Missouri river and the tribes residing upon it. They learned that the men of the Missouri were large and strong, engaged in agriculture and producing exceedingly large pumpkins and melons; but that they were exceedingly afraid of "little men" and cry out in terror at sight of them and join in large bodies for protection against these little furies. There is little doubt that the story of Spirit Mound had filtered down to them at that early date.

Charles LeRaye, a trader coming from a noble French family was taken a captive by the Sioux in 1801 and visited Spirit Mound on the 21st of March 1802 two years and a half prior to the coming of Lewis & Clark and in his journal has this to say of it:

“Above the Sioux River and between that and the River Jacque is a small hill, destitute of timber, which the natives say is inhabited by spirits in shape of human beings of a very diminutive size, not being according to their description, more than six or eight inches high. Respecting these bodily spirits they have a number of ridiculous fancies. An old chief told me with great gravity that the occasion of their coming and living on this hill was because the Indians, a great many winters ago, were so wicked and foolish, as to strive to kill all of the animals made for their use. The Great Spirit saw them from above and were so angry with them that he sent these little beings, which the Indians call Wakons, to drive the animals out of the country, which they did, and many of the Indians starved for want of food. But after much entreaty and many sacrifices the anger of the Great Spirit was appeased and he permitted the animals to return; but directed the Wakons to reside on this hill to watch the conduct of the Indians, and should they again be so wicked, they are to drive all of the animals off, never to return. This impression has had an excellent effect on the natives as it prevents causeless waste of what is so necessary for their subsistence. They pretend often to see these little beings on and about the hill, as they are passing, but no consideration would induce an Indian to set his foot on this holy ground.”

Lewis and Clark had learned that “the Hill of the Little Devils” was located near the Vermillion some miles above its mouth and they resolved upon this rainy Saturday morning to visit the mound and learn the truth for themselves. They therefore took one of the smaller boats and accompanied by Sergeant Ordway, John Colter, Joseph Fields, Robert Frasier, Drulliard and two other men, they dropped back

down the Missouri to the mouth of the Vermillion where they left the boat in care of two of the men and set out for the hill of the superstition. Two hundred yards from the mouth of the Vermillion they reached the high prairie which indicates that at that time the mouth of the stream was not far from the bridge that now crosses the Vermillion upon the road leading from the city to the farms along the river south of Meckling. The trip up to the mound was not wholly an excursion of joy. Captain Clark thus relates the story: "We left the river at 8 o'clock, at 4 miles we crossed the creek 23 yards wide in an extensive valley and continued on. At two miles further our dog was so heated and fatigued we were obliged to send him back to the creek, at 12 o'clock we arrived at the hill. Captain Lewis much fatigued from heat the day being very hot & he being in a debilitated state from the precautions he was obliged to take to prevent the effects of the cobalt & mineral substance which had like to have poisoned him two days ago, his want of water and several of the men complaining of great thirst determined us to make for the first water which was the creek in a bend north east of the mound about three miles." In fact the distance to the creek is but two miles, but like the curate's sermon, under the circumstances, it seemed longer. Spirit Mound is located upon the west half of Section 14, and the bend of the creek where they went to get a drink is in the northwest quarter of Section 18 in the next township to the east. When the creek was reached and the party had quenched its thirst the men lay down for an hour and a half, Clark says "to recruit," they set off down the creek stopping once for an hour to gather some "delicious fruit such as grapes, plums & blue currents." They reached the mouth of the Vermillion at sunset and went up to the camp of the previous night where they remained until morning. Hon. P. W. Peterson, Clay county's erstwhile representative may justly place especial value upon his southeast forty of the northwest quarter of Section 18, Prairie Center township, where Lewis and Clark loafed for 90 minutes upon that hot August day while "recruiting."

Captain Clark says it was nine miles from the mouth

of the Vermillion to Spirit Mound. In fact the mound is $10\frac{1}{4}$ miles from the present mouth of the Vermillion river, but it perhaps was little more than 7 miles from the mouth of that stream as then located but they doubtless traveled 9 miles and more in reaching the mound. Dr. Louise Phelps Kellogg, the notable commentator upon the journals of Lewis and Clark thinks Captain Clark used some system of triangulation in determining distances, but Dr. Homer N. Derr the accomplished State Engineer says there is no known system by which he could have measured distances while traveling so rapidly, and that in his judgment the distances recorded were mere estimates, in which engineers become astonishingly accurate in practice.

I give herewith verbatim, Captain Clark's report upon Spirit Mound:

"This mound is Situated on an elevated plain in a level and extensive prairie, bearing N, 20 W. from the Mouth of White Stone Creek nine miles, the base of the Mound is a regular parallelogram the long side of which is about 300 yards in length the shorter 60 or 70 yards. from the longer Side of the Base it rises from the North & South with a Steep ascent to the height of 65 or 70 feet, leaving a level Plain on the top 12 feet in width & 90 in length. The North & South part of this Mound is joined by two regular rises, each in Oval forms of half its height, forming three regular rises from the Plain the ascent of each elevated part is as sudden as the principal mound at the narrower sides of its Base.

"The regular form of this hill would in some measure justify a belief that it owed its origin to the hand of man; but as the earth and loose pebbles and other substances of which it was composed, bore an exact resemblance to the steep ground which border on the Creek in its neighborhood we concluded it was most probably the production of nature.

"The surrounding plains is open void of timber and level to a great extent, hence the wind from whatever quarter it may blow drives with unusual force over the naked plains and against the hill; the insects of various

kinds are thus involuntarily driven to the Mound by the force of wind, or fly to Leeward for shelter; the Small Birds whoes food they are, Consequently resort in great numbers to this place in Surch of them; Particularly the Small Brown Martin of which we saw a vast number hovering on the Leeward side of the hill, when we approached it in the act of catching those insects; they were so gentle that they did not quit the place until we had arrived within a few feet of them.

"The only remarkable Characteristic of this hill, admitting it to be a natural production is that it is insulated or Separated a considerable distance from any other, which is verry unusial in the natural order or disposition of the hills.

"One evidence which the Inds give for believeing this place to be the residence of Some unusial Sperits is that they frequently discover a large assemblage of Birds about this Mound is in my opinion a sufficient proof to produce in the Savage Mind a Confident belief of all the properties they ascribe it.

"from the top of this Mound we beheld a most buti-full landscape; Numerous herds of buffalow were Seen feeding in various directions; the Plain to North N. W. & N. E. extends without interruption as far as Can be seen.

"From the Mound to the Mouth of Stone River is S 20 E. 9 Miles. to the woods near the mouth of River Jacque is West. to the highland near the Mouth of Soues River is S. 70 E. To the highland opposit side or near Maha Town, (across from Audubon Point) is S. 45 E.

"Some highlands to be seen from the Mound at a Great distance is to the N. E. (The Couteau region about Beresford) some nearer to N. W. (Turkey Creek Hills) No woods except on Missouri Points.

"if all timber on the Stone Creek was on 100 acres it would not be thickly timbered, the soil of those plains are delightfull.

"Great numbers of Birds are seen in those Plains

Such as black bird, ren or prairie burd, a kind of larke about the sise of a Partridge with a short tail etc.,”

T. H. Lewis a notable geologist and antiquarian visited this mound about 1890. He says of it: “The body of the hill is chalk-stone of the cretaceous group to within 30 feet of the top, covered with yellow clay, and this with a gravelly loam, which for some reason escaped erosion which cut away the surrounding surface.”

When the tired explorers reached the camp just above the mouth of the Vermillion that night they found that Sergeant Pryor had moved forward up the Missouri, but they were too weary to follow him and so slept about the old campfire. Pryor had conducted the remainder of the party about six miles up stream and camped on what is now the big sandbar within “North Alabama Bend,” less than four miles southwest of the present city where they were joined by the captains and party at 9: the next morning. Before retiring Saturday night the Captains had set the prairie on fire to notify the Sioux that they were approaching and desired to meet them on the river.

The hunters had made good use of the day. Reuben Fields brought in five deer and the boy, George Shannon brought down a monster buck elk.

While the voyaguers were thus so complacently inspecting Spirit Mound, hunting upon the bottoms or sleeping unguarded on the sand bars they were subjected to a hazard of which they were not aware and perhaps never afterward received knowledge. The large party of Sioux with whom LeRaye was prisoner had spent the years 1802, 1803 and the spring of 1804 in dragging him about over the northwest; they took him to the Yellowstone, across to the Minnesota, back to the Missouri at Big Bend and finally in August were hunting upon the Vermillion, where runners came to them with news of the approach of Lewis and Clerk, with their party, which they were led to believe was an army of invasion. On the very day Lewis and Clark were inspecting Spirit Mound and “recruting” in the shade of the trees on the Peterson farm, a great council was being held a few miles away in which lengthy debates were indulged in to

determine whether or not the army should be attacked. The council continued until the 29th when it was concluded that the whites would return down the river in the spring of 1805 and it would be best to wait, get assistance and take it by surprise and utterly destroy it.

Sunday, August 26, 1804.

It was 9: o'clock in the morning when the captains came up to the remainder of the party and some time was spent jerking the meat killed upon Saturday and in braiding the elkskin into a much needed tow rope. Presently however they got under way and proceeded nine miles to go into camp for the night, on Audubon's point on the Dakota shore. The two horses belonging to the outfit seem to have been hardly worth their keep for they constantly strayed away and made a great deal of trouble. They had taken occasion on Saturday night to make one of their ventures and Druillard and Shannon were sent in pursuit. During the day Captain Lewis entered in the Orderly book an order confirming the election of Patrick Gass as sergeant and assigning him to the command of the mess of the late Sergeant Floyd. In connection with the order of appointment Captain Lewis writes:

"The Commanding officers have every reason to hope, from the previous faithful services of Sergt. Gass that this expression of their approbation will be still further confirmed by his vigilant attention in future to his duties as a Sergeant. the Commanding officers are still further confirmed in the high opinion they had previously formed of the capacity, diligence and integrity of Sergt. Gass from the wish expressed by a large majority of his comrades for his appointment as Sergeant."

The camp of Sunday night appears to have been on the accretion lands at about the dividing line between the Myron and Weston farms. It was directly across from the mouth of Bow Creek, and they relate that this creek was named for Little Bow, a chief of the Omahas, who with 200 of his people rebelled against the despotic sway of Chief Blackbird

and settled there, but that they had reunited with the main tribe since Blackbird's death in 1800, so that the settlement was very recent at this date.

Monday, August 27, 1804.

On this morning the party was early astir and Captain Clark made a remarkable astronomical discovery, scarcely less remarkable than his mineral and chemical discoveries down at Ponca Landing. He writes:

"This morning the star calld the morning Star much larger than Common."

Drewyer appeared in camp at daylight and reported that he had failed to find the horses and had lost Shannon. John Shields and Jo. Fields were sent back to find the boy and horses and directed to report at Calumet Bluff. A gentle breeze from the South east filled the sails and bore them up the stream passing the first cliff where the chalkstone is exposed. Captain Lewis concluded that this was white clay, marl or chalk. In the detritus at the foot of the cliff he discovered "large stone much like lime incrustated with a clear substance which I believe to be cobalt, also ore embedded in the dark earth." The prairie was again fired as a signal to the Sioux to come to the river.

At two o'clock they reached the mouth of James river to find an Indian there who swam out to them. They were soon joined by two others. These Indians informed them that a large party of Sioux were encamped on the James not far from its mouth. Sergeant Pryor, one Frenchman and Old Durian the Sioux interpreter were sent to the camp to invite the Sioux to meet the white party at Calumet Bluff. Two of the Indians accompanied Pryor and his party, but one of them a mere boy of the Omaha tribe remained with the whites. He told them his people, the Omahas were off patching up a peace with the Pawnees.

They proceeded up the river to a sand bar on the Dakota side just east of Yankton and camped for the night having made 14 miles that day.

The latitude was taken this morning at the first chalkstone cliff, directly south of Gayville and fixed at 42° 53' 13"

which is about 5 miles off. Evidently the chronometer was not yet properly adjusted.

Tuesday, August 28, 1804.

Out again at day break, which Capt. Clark at times told us was the "usual" and at other times the "useal" time for breaking camp, they passed the present townsite of Yankton, which is called "a handsome prairie ascending gradually from the river" and at 8 o'clock stopped for breakfast under Mount Marty, where the Indian boy left them and set out for the camp on James river at about the Van Osdel farm. The wind high in the morning became a gale and made navigation difficult, and progress very slow. At 2 P. M. one of the boats was snagged while they were going by Smutty Bear Bottom and they came near to losing it and its valuable cargo, but Whitehouse says they finally "stoped the water from coming in by Stopping in one thing & another." and they got her across to the south shore under the lee of Calumet Bluff at a point directly opposite the Western Portland Cement works. The camp was on the bottom in groves of oak timber. Shields and Fields were awaiting their coming as they had been directed to do and reported that Shannon had gone on ahead with the horses and that they had been unable to overtake him. This fact caused the captains some uneasiness for the lad had not established a reputation as a successful hunter, notwithstanding the fact that he had brought down the big buck elk at Vermillion. John Colter was at once "started in pursute of him with provisions." At the Calumet Bluffs the party awaited the return of Sergeant Pryor from the Indian camp.

In anticipation of a prolonged council with the Sioux at this camp a high pole was planted and the American flag raised upon it.

An observation for latitude taken but not recorded.

Wednesday, August 29, 1804.

The voyageurs arose in a rainy morning. The captains spent the time in bringing up their journals and in writing letters to be dispatched by Dorian to the States. At 4 p. m.

Pryor appeared on the Dakota shore with sixty Sioux who camped where they were.

Old Dorian had found his son Pierre trading in the Sioux Camp on the James and brought him along. This would indicate that Pierre had already arrived at man's estate and gives some hint of when the old man settled with the Yanktons. It is a safe conclusion that such settlement must have been as early as 1780, perhaps earlier. Provisions were sent across to the Sioux and the chiefs were informed that they would be received in council by the captains upon the following day. The Indians brought with them 2 elk and 6 deer which they had killed while on the tramp from their camp on the James to the Missouri a distance of about 12 miles. There is every evidence that wild game was marvelously plenty in those days.

Sergeant Pryor brought to the captains a careful report of what he had found at the Sioux Village. When they approached the camp the men came out with a buffalo robe upon which to carry the visitors but Dorian told them they were not the chief men of the party and did not wish to be carried. He describes the tepees to be of skins but otherwise as we know them at this day. Except for the fire place in the center they found each tepee carpeted with buffalo robes. Each lodge had a separate kitchen. As a special delicacy the visitors were served with baked dog flesh. They found from 10 to 15 persons residing in each lodge. Whitehouse says this band were Bois-Brule Sioux, but there can be no doubt that in the main they were Yankton. Traditions have come down to us through the Yanktons pertaining to this meeting. When Dr. Burleigh first went to the Yanktons as their agent there were many men still living who as children took part in it. The suggestion of it all was a three days' carousal in which the white men gave unlimited license to their baser propensities, but there is nothing in the journals to justify a belief that this is true. Gass says there were no squaws in the party. The captains at least appear to have conducted themselves with the strictest propriety. Struck by the Ree, chief of the Yanktons, in early territorial times frequently boasted that he was born during this council

and that Captain Lewis learning of the event had the infant brought to him and pronouncing it an American, wrapped it in an American flag. There is no hint of this in any of the journals and it could scarcely have happened at the council at Calumet Bluff. It is possible that something of the kind occurred at the Village on the James and that it was Pryor and not Lewis who performed the "naturalization ceremony." Old Strike was so consistent in his Americanism and so convinced that it was conferred upon him at his birth that there must have been some foundation for his belief.

Thursday, August 30, 1804.

A thick fog enveloped the earth in the early morning shutting out a view of the Indian camp across the river, but it lifted at eight o'clock and the Indians were brought over for the formal council. Perhaps no more interesting account of what occurred can be made than to give verbatim Captain Clark's report, supplemented in some particulars by the notes of Private Whitehouse:

"we sent Mr. Dorion in a Perogue for the Cheifs and Warriors to a Council under an Oak Tree near where we had a flag flying on a high flagstaff at 12 oClock we met and Cap. L. Delivered the Speech & then made one great Chiff by giving a Meadel & Some Cloathes, one 2d Chief & three Third Chiefs in the same way, they rec.d those things with the goods and tobacco with pleasure To the Grand Chief we gave a Flag and the parole & Wampom with a hat & Chiefs coat, We Smoked out of the pipe of peace, & the Chiefs retired to a Bourey made of bushes by their young men to Divide their presents and Smoke eate and Council Capt. Lewis & My self retired to dinner and consult about other measures. Mr. Daurion is much displeased that we did not invite him to dine with us (which he was Sorry for afterwards). The Souex is a Stout bold looking people, (the young men handsom) & well made, the greater part of them make use of Bows & Arrows, Some fiew fusees I observe among them, notwithstanding they live by the Bow and arrow, they do not Shoot So Well as the North-

ern Indians the Warriors are Verry much Deckerated with Paint Porcupine quils & feathers, large leagins and mockersons, all with buffalo roabs of Different Colours. the Squars wore Peticoats & a White Buffalo roabe with the black hare turned back over their necks and Sholders.

I will here remark a SOCIETY which I had never before this day heard was in any nation of Indians, four of which is at this time present and all who remain of this Band. Those who become Members of this Society must be brave active young men who take a Vow never to give back let the danger be what it may, in War Parties they always go forward without screening themselves behind trees or anything else to this Vow they Strictly adhier dureing their Lives. an instance which happened not long sence, on a party in Crossing the R Missourie on the ice, a whole was in the ice imediately in their Course which might easily have been avoided by going around, the foremost man went on and was lost the others were draged around by the party. in a battle with the Crow Indians who inhabit the Cout Noir or black Mountain out of 22 of this Society 18 was Killed, the remaining four was draged off by their Party Those men are likely fellows the Set together Camp & Dance together. This Society is in imitation of the Societies of the de Curbo or Crow Indians, whom they imitate."

Friday, August 31, 1804.

"after the Indians got their Brackfast the Chiefs met and arranged themselves in a row with elligent pipes of peace all pointing to our Seets, we Came forward and took our Seets, the Great Cheif The Shake hand rose and Spoke to some length approving what we had said and promissing to pursue the advice.

Mar to ree 2d Cheif rose and made a Short Speech and refured to the great Chief Par nar ne arpar be 3rd. Chief rose and made a short speech Are ea we char che 3rd. Chief rose & Spoke at some length much to the purpose. The other Cheif said but little One of the Warriors Spoke after all was don & promissed to Sup-

port the Cheifs, they promised to go and See their Great father in the Spring with Mr. Dorion, and to do all things we had advised them to do. and all concluded by telling the distresses of their nation by not having traders, & wished us to take pity on them, they wanted Powder Ball, & a little Milk

last night the Indians Danced until late in their Dances we gave them (throw into them as is usual) Some Knives Tobacco & Bells & tape & Binding with which they were Satisfied.

We gave a Certificate to two Men of War, attendants of the Chief. gave to all the chiefs a Carrot of Tobacco. had a talk with Mr. Dorion, who agreed to Stay and Collect the Chiefs from as Many Bands of Sioux as he could this fall & bring about a peace between the Sioux and their neighbors &c. &c. &c.

After Dinner we gave Mr. Peter Dorion, a Commission to act with a flag and some Cloathes & Provisions & instructions to bring about a peace with the Seioux, Mahars, Panies, Poncaries, Ottoes & Missouries, and to employ any trader to take Some of the Cheifs of each or as many of those nations as he Could Particularly the Seuouex (down to Wash) I took a Vocabulary of the Suoux Language, and the Answer to a few queries such as referred to their Situation, Trade, Number, War, &c. &c. This Nation is Divided into 20 Tribes, possessing Separate interests. Collectively they are numerous say from 2 to 3000 men, their interests are so unconnected that Some bands are at war with Nations which other bands are on the most friendly terms. This Great Nation who the French has given the Nickname of Suouex, Call themselves Dar co tar their language is not peculiarly their own, they Speak a great number of words, which is the Same in every respect with the Maha, Poncarer, Osarge & Kansas. which clearly proves that those nations at some period not more than a century or two past are of the Same nation. Those Dar ca ter's or Suoux inhabit or rove over the Countrey on the Red River of Lake Winipeck, St. Peters & the West of the

Missippie, above Prarie De Cheen heads of River Demoin, and the Missouri and its waters on the N. Side for a great extent. they are only at peace with 8 nations, & agreeable to their Calculation at War with twenty odd. Their trade coms from the British, except this Band and one on Demoin who trade with the traders of St Louis. They furnish Beaver, Martain, Loups, Pekin, Bear & Deer Skins, and have about 40 Traders among them. The Dar co tar or Suouex rove & follow the Buffalow raise no corn or any thing else the woods & praries affording a suffcency, they eat Meat, and Substitute the Ground potato which grow in the Plains for bread.

The Names of the Defferent Tribes or bands of
the Sceoux, or Dar co tar Nation.

- 1st. Che cher ree Yankton (or bois ruley) (brule) now present inhabit the Suouex & Demoin Rivers and the Jacque. (200 men.)
- 2nd. Ho in de borto (Poles) they live on the heads of Souex and Jacques Rivers.
- 3rd. Me Ma car jo (Make fence on the river) rove on the Country near the big bend of the Missouries.
- 4th. Sou on, Te ton (People of the Prarie) the rove in the Plains N. of the Riv Missourie above this.
- 5th Wau pa coo tar (Leaf Beds) the live near the Prarie de Chain Near the Mississippi.
- 6th Te Car ton (or Village of Prarie) rove on the waters of the Mississippi above Prarie de Chain.
- 7th. Ne Was tar ton (big Waters Town) rove on the Mississippi above the St. Peters River.
- 8th. Wau pa tone (Leaf Nation) live 10 Leagues up St. Peters River.
- 9th. Cas Carba (White Man) live 35 Leagues up St. Peters river.
- 10th. Mi ca cu op si ba (Cut bank) rove on the head of St. Peters.
- 11th. Sou on (————) rove on St. Peters river in the Praries.

12th. Sou se toons (————) live 40 Leages up the St. Peters river.

The names of the other bands neither of the Souex's interpters could inform me. in the evening late we gave Mr. Dourion a bottle of whiskey, & he with the Cheifs & his Son Crossed the river and Camped on the Opposit bank. Soon after night a violent wind from the N. W. with rain the rain Continud the greater part of the night. The river a rising a little."

Private Whitehouse gives us a briefer, but more graphic story of the council and attending ceremonies:

"about 9 oClock the Indians was brought across the river in our pearogue our Captains counseled with them read a Speech to them, & made 5 of them chiefs & Gave them all Some Marchandize &c. &c. They received them verry thankfully divided them out among themselves, & play on their juze harps, Sung &c. they boys Shot with their Bows and arrows for Beeds and appeared to be merry, and behaved well among our parte. Capt. Lewis Shot his air gun told them that their was medician in hir & that She would doe Great execution, they were all amazed at the curiosity, & as Soon as he had Shot a fiew times they all ran hastily to See the Ball holes in the tree they Shouted aloud at the Site of the execution She would doe &c. The Captains gave them provisions &c. as Soon as it was dark a fire was made a drum was repaired among them. the young men painted themselves different ways. Some with their faces all white others with their faces part white round their forehead, & breasts &c. then they commenced dancing in curious manner to us. their was a party that Sung and kept time with the drumm. they all danced or all their young men especially. they Gave a houp before they commenced dancing, they would dance around the fire for Some time and then houp, & then rest a fiew minutes. one of the warrirs would git up in the centre with his arms & point towards the different nations, & make a Speech, telling what he had done, how many he

had killed & how many horses he had Stole &c. all this make them Great men & fine warrirs, the larger rogues the best men &c or the Bravest men & them that kills most gets the greatest honoured among them”

Patrick Gass too, adds his contributoin, and throws a little additional light upon the event.

“at nine o'clock the Indians came over the river. Four of them, who were musicians went backwards and forwards, through and round our camp, singing and making a noise. After that ceremony was over they all sat in council. Captain Lewis and Captain Clarke made five of them chiefs, and gave them some small presents. At dark Captain Lewis gave them a grained deer skin to stretch over a half keg for a drum. When that was ready they all assembled round some fires made for the purpose; two of them beat on the drum, and some of the rest had little bags of undressed skins dried, with beads or small pebbles in them, with which they made a noise. These are their instruments of music. Ten or twelve acted as musicians, while twenty or thirty young men and boys engaged in the dance, which was continued during the night. No Squaws made their appearance among this party.”

This last statement that there were no squaws is not quite consistent with Captain Clark's declaration that “the squars wore petticoats, etc.” Perhaps however it is susceptible of explanation. Clark's notes were made at the time. Gass's story was written by a third party, many years afterward from notes made by Gass and from his personal recollection.

From Calumet Bluff young Pierre Dorian was given a commission and sent with United States flags to the surrounding tribes to endeavor to make peace between them and the Sioux, while Old Dorian was sent to Washington with a delegation of Sioux chiefs. They left the camp on the south side and crossed the river to the Dakota shore.

Saturday, September 1, 1804.

Bright and early Old Dorian was back in the camp. He had "lift his Kittle" and was back to secure it. It had been a rainy night but the morning was delightful with a gentle breeze blowing up from the south. The voyageurs resumed their journey passing across near the north shore and under "White Bear Clift," so called because "one of those animals haveing been killed in a whole in it." The gentle breeze of the morning soon turned into a gale and more or less rain fell all day long. They made their way however to the foot of Bon Homme Island, where they camped for the night and enjoyed a feast of cat fish which were exceedingly plenty and of fine quality. "Drewyer" killed an elk and a beaver.

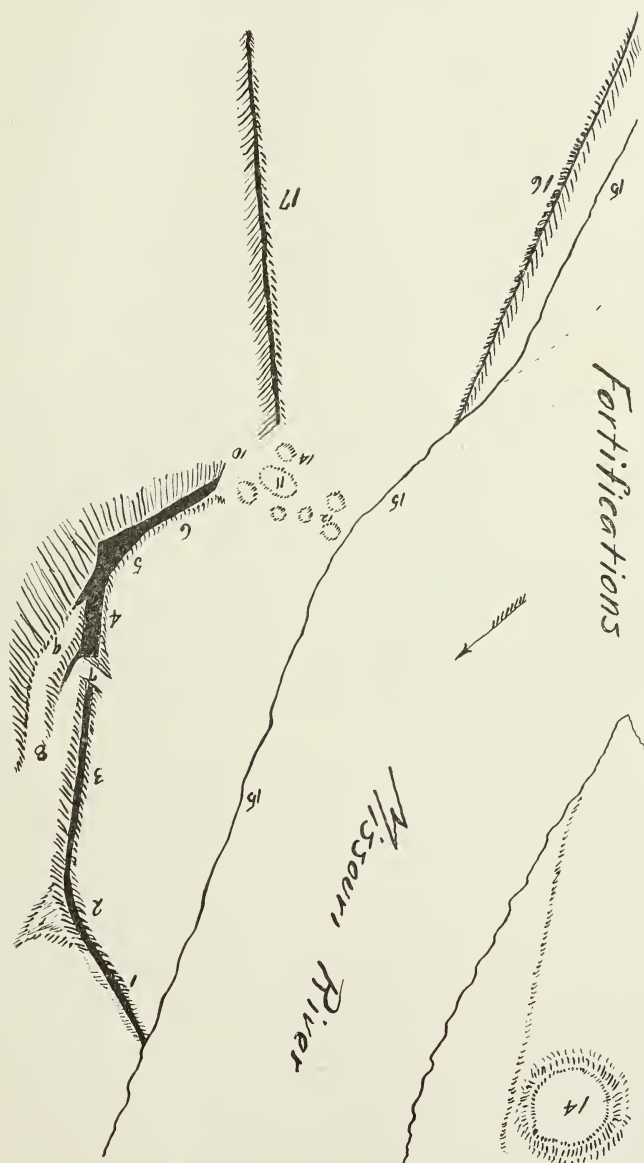
Sunday, September 2, 1804.

They got an early start but were soon halted by a landmark that appealed strongly to their scientific and antiquarian instincts. They went across to the north shore and pitched their camp and then devoted the day to the examination and measurement of "the antient works which is situated on a level plain about three miles from the hills which are high."

"A Discreption of the Fortification."

- (1) Commencing on the river opsi'd the Good Mans Island, first Course from the river is
S. 76 W. 96 yards thence
S. 84. W. 53 yards (at this angle a kind of angle or horn work)
N. 69. W. 300 yards to a high part, passing the gateway Covered by two half Circler works one back of the other lower than the main work the Gate forms a right angle projecting inward. ✓
N. 32 W. 56 yards
N. 20 W. 73 yards

This part of the work appears to have either double, or a covered way. from his Some irregular works appear to have been on mounds between this and



DRIFT AT BON HOMME ISLAND
ancient fortification.

the river, with a Deep round whole in the center of a Gorge formed by another angle. This part of the work is from 10 to 15 feet 8 Inches—the Mounds of Various hight the base of the work is from 75 to 105 feet, Steep inward and forming a kind of Glassee outwards.

N. 32 W. 96 yards to the Commencement of a Wall from 8 to 10 feet high this Course not on the Wall but thro to the commencement of another detached

N. 81. W. 1830 yards to the river & above where this bank Strikes the river is the remains of a Circular work.

in this Course at 533 yards a Deep Pond of 73 yards Diameter perfectly round is the Course of the bank which is about 8 feet high, from this Pond the bank lowers gradually. a bank about the same hight runs near the river, and must have joined the main work at a part which is now washed into the river, this is also perfectly Streight and widens from the main work, as the river above has washed in its banks for a great distance I cannot form an Idear How those two long works joined. where they Strike the river above, they are about 1100 yds apart,”

The numbers below refer to the numbers upon the sketch-plan made by Captain Clark, reproduced herewith.

- No. 1. a Wall of the Antient Work Commencing on the bank of the River and running on a direct line S. 76. W. 96 yard, about 75 feet baice and 8 feet high.
2. Wall Continued. and Course S. 84. W. 53 yards from an angle formed by a slopeing decent No. 13. has the appearance of a hornwork of nearly the same hight of the former angle No. 1.
3. the Wall Continued on a Course N. 69. W. for 300 yards in which there is a low part of the wall which is Covered by two Circular and lower Walls one back of the other. 8.8 which covers the gateway Completely, between those outer Walls 8.8. there appears to have been a Covered way out of the Main work into the vacancy between those two Walls No.

9. This Wall No. 3 is 8 feet high and about 75 Base.
4. a Wide part of the Wall which is about 12 feet high and 105 feet base on the Course N. 69 W. Continued from the gate way.
5. The Wall about 15 feet high and about 90 feet base on a course N. 32 W. for 56 yds.
6. the Wall Continues on a Course N. 20 W. for 73 yards and ends abruptly near a whole near Several Mounds prismscously in the Gorge of the Work between this and the river.
10. N. 32 W. 96 yards across a low place much lower than the Common level of the plain to the Commencement of a wall of 8 feet high this is an open Space, from whence there is Some appearance of a Covered way to the Water.
10. is a large hollow place much lower then the plain
12. 12. Several little Mounds in the gouge
7. the gateway to the Strong work.
14. a redoubt Situated on an Island which is makeing on the Side next to the Main Work, the wall forming this redoubt is 6 feet high
15. 15. The river banks at the waters edge.
16. a thick Wall of about 6 feet high passing from the Rivers edge at the gouge of the Work perfectly streight to the bend of the River above and there ends abruptly where the Missouri is under mineing its banks on this Wall maney large Cotton Trees of two & 3 feet diameter, the Bank passes thro' a wood in its whole Course
- No. 17. 19. a Streight wall of 1830 yard extending from the Gouge of the strong work on a Course N. 81 W. This wall is 8 feet high to a round pon (No. 18) from then it becomes lower and strikes the Missouri at a place where that river has the aplc of haveing incroached on its banks for a great distance. this wall passes in it's whole course thro' a level plain.

18. a Deep pond of 73 yards diameter in the Wall, perfectly round
20. Thro from the extremity of one Wall to the other 1100 yards.
21. a Small redoubt on the bank of the river.

The Strong part of this work which must be about $\frac{2}{3}$ of it's original Size Contains Twenty acres.

The part Contained between the two Walls is about 500 acres, and it is Certain that those Walls have been longer and must have contained a much greater Space"

The foregoing survey and description like very much of the untrained observation of the captains appears to have been with little of justification in fact. In 1889 Theodore Hays Lewis, an anthropologist of note who has done a tremendous amount of work in noting and preserving the ancient landmarks made a most painstaking examination of the "antient Works," at Bon Homme Island. He found them to consist wholly of sand drifts blown from the bars of the Missouri river upon the adjacent flood plain. The captains had been specially charged by Jefferson to bring back descriptions of "the monuments" of the natives and they were honestly doing their best to comply with the requirement. Neither is it surprising that they were mislead in this instance, for many of the wind drifts are so curiously placed as to seem to be works of men. While through their lack of scientific training they made many laughable mistakes, no question can be ever raised as to the serious and honest desire which actuated them in every report submitted.

During this day, while the captains were examining and surveying the "antient Works" Drewyer, Reuben Fields, Newman and Howard each brought in a fine elk and the men were busied in jerking the meat and in stretching the green skins over the boat to protect it from the snags which filled the stream.

The camp of that day and night were at the mouth of the draw that makes down to the river from the village of Bon Homme.

Monday, September 3, 1804.

Extremely cold weather followed the rain nearly freezing the unprepared explorers. They went on ten miles to the mouth of Emanuel Creek just above Springfield and stopped at noon to take an observation to determine the latitude, but though they noted the observation and gave the data secured did not determine the latitude of the point. On the Nebraska shore they saw signs that Shannon had passed up with the horses and perhaps that Colter was also ahead, but that they were not together. They found an abundance of finely flavored grapes and delicious plums. They camped that night on the Dakota shore two miles east of Running Water.

Tuesday, September 4, 1804.

Only eight miles were made, the night camp being pitched on the site of old Fort Mitchell, just above the mouth of the Niobrara. Captain Clark explored the Niobrara for several miles and the men went out to hunt for Shannon but got no trace of him. The boy had now been gone since the 24th of August and Colter had been after him since the evening of the 28th and real anxiety was felt for his safety.

Wednesday, September 5, 1804.

Another daylight start with a high wind at their backs which sent them rapidly up stream. They made five miles before stopping for breakfast, at the point where Spotted Tail Agency was located about 1879, at the mouth of Ponca creek. Two men were sent a couple of miles up the creek to visit the Ponca village but found the inhabitants absent upon the autumn buffalo hunt. They killed a buffalo in the village and a large buck deer near by. Going on they passed over to the Dakota shore to examine the saline springs which spout out from Chouteau bluffs just below the mouth of Chouteau Creek. In early times the Sioux resorted to these springs for their supply of salt, securing it by a system of evaporation. When LeRays was captive with them in the spring of 1802 they left the winter camp at Elkpoint in March to go to these springs to make salt. The high wind carried away their mast and they were compelled to camp at 4 p. m. upon an island which has disappeared, almost at

the 145 mile mark above the Sioux river, where they cut a cedar tree and shaped it for a mast and shipped it upon the big boat. They had come but 14 miles. They found signs that Shannon and Colter were still ahead of them. In addition to the buffalo and buck secured in the morning, they added to their larder three bucks and two elk. While waiting the meat was jerked for future use. They also secured some wild turkeys.

Thursday, September 6, 1804.

The party arose to face a severe storm blowing from the northwest; the rain soon ceased, but the northwest wind raged and it was extremely cold and they camped long before night in a patch of timber on the Dakota shore, having come but 8½ miles. It was perhaps the most uneventful day spent in the South Dakota stretch. The camp that night was at the present Yankton Agency.

Friday, September 7, 1804.

The movement for this day simply carried them forward a few miles and across the river to the foot of the Tower. On this day they for the first time came upon a village of prairie dogs, then utterly new to science and they spent the greater part of the day studying the interesting little rodents. The village was discovered by the hunters some distance out on the prairie and the captains went and examined it, but being unable to secure a specimen returned and ten men carried water from the river and with it they succeeded in drowning out one of them, which ultimately they were able to deliver to President Jefferson. They state that it required five barrels of water before the beast came out of his den. They attempted to dig to the end of the hole but after excavating more than six feet gave up the search. The captains also examined and measured the Tower, but for some reason failed to take its latitude. It is one of the most notable land marks on the river and mentioned by all travelers and explorers. Ten years, almost to a day, before Lewis and Clark were there, Jean Baptiste Trudeau camped upon the very spot where the explorers were resting at this time. Catlin painted a picture of it in 1832. Warren in 1856 made it the bench

mark from which he located the Fort Randall Military reservation. Captain Clark's memorandum of it says: "We landed near the foot of a round mounting, resembling a dome. Cap Lewis & Myself walked up to the top which forms a Cone and is about 70 feet higher than the high lands around it the base is about 300 foot." Gass with his characteristic bluntness says: "Captain Lewis and captain Clarke and some of the men went to visit a round knob of a hill on the prairie." On Sunday, August 31, 1806, when returning Captain Clark says: "At 4 P. M. Passed the doome." Of the prairie dogs Gass says: "Having understood that the village of those small dogs was at a short distance from our camp, captain Lewis and captain Clarke, with all the party except the guard went to it and took with them all the kettles and other vessels for holding water; in order to drive the animals out of the holes by pouring water in; but though they worked at the business till night, they caught only one of them." Close by the Tower on the river bank they found a scaffold covered with meat neatly dried. It had been left by John Colter the man "in pursoot" of Shannon.

Saturday, September 8, 1804.

A warm spell followed the cold storm and a gentle breeze came up the river this morning to help them on their way. They stopped almost exactly upon the point where the North line of Nebraska touches the Missouri river and took the latitude which they recorded so far as the astronomic data is concerned but were unable to take the meridian. These observations were made at 7:27 a. m. Soon afterward they passed the Trudeau or Pawnee House which was located upon what is now section 22, Town 95, Range 65 in Charles Mix county. Clark says Trudeau spent the winter of 1796 there, but we have no other evidence upon this point and he may be mistaken about the year. The house was built in November 1794 by Jean Baptiste Trudeau, representing "The Commercial Company for the Discovery of Nations of the Upper Missouri," of St. Louis. He selected this location sheltered by the chalk cliff and amid the timber where the little creek supplied pure water in the hope of escaping the attention of

any of the Indians, but the Omahas and Poncas soon found him out and moved in and lived off him during a most trying winter. In the spring Trudeau went to the Arickara and not long afterward was teaching the first public school in St. Louis. He may have been a very good school teacher but he certainly was not a success as an Indian trader. They passed the later site of Fort Randall. Drewyer who had been out with the remaining horse, shot a buffalo on the prairie, and placed his hat over the wound to keep off the flies while he came to the boat for help. Patrick Gass went out with him to bring in the meat but when they arrived at the place found that a pack of wolves had literally devoured the carcass of the buffalo, but what was worse had carried off the Frenchman's hat. Notwithstanding Drewyer's bad luck they had a successful day hunting. Captain Lewis got a buffalo who was swimming the river, a hunter got another and two elk, 4 deer, 3 turkeys and a squirrel were casually picked up. They stopped early on Chicot, or Big Cedar Island to jerk the meat, having come 17 miles from the Tower.

Sunday, September 9, 1804.

Sunrise found them on the way, the prairies, the river bottom and the stream itself were literally filled with game. Hundreds of buffalo fed unconcerned on the plains, every copse covered deer and elk. The bag that day contained four buffalo and three deer. Captain Clark got one beef, York 2 and Reub. Fields 1. Drewyer brought in the three deer. The whole party finding themselves in a sportsman's paradise were wild to hunt, but wisely the captains contented themselves with only so much as could be preserved. They traveled 14½ miles as their Sabbath's day journey and having spent a good deal of time curing the meat, kept on until sunset and camped on the west shore at the mouth of Whetstone Creek, where Spotted Tail's second agency on the Missouri was located and from which he speedily removed to get his braves further from the intoxicating liquors which flowed almost as freely on the Missouri, as did the muddy waters of the stream. The latitude this morning was taken as 43° 11' 56" almost right.

Monday, September 10, 1804.

A dark cloudy morning with a southeast wind threatened rain but the party set out at the usual early hour and at noon had made ten miles when they stopped to climb the west bank to examine "a ruck of bones," which proved to be some forty-five feet of the tail of a plesiosaurus, a pioneer settler of the Mesozoic whose grave had been desecrated by the post glacial wash, leaving his petrified carcass exposed on this hill top. A portion of the vertebra were picked up and may be still seen in the Museum of the Smithsonian Institution.

John Colter who had been looking for Shannon since the 28th of August came to the boat, not having overtaken his man, but certain he was ahead. Sergeant Ordway, after looking at the petrified remains of the saurus, started for a hunt along the bluffs of the west shore but soon came to the boat to report that he had found a remarkable salt spring about a mile and a half back from the river. They therefore came to, opposite Cedar Island, and while Captain Clark and some of the men went up to examine the spring Captain Lewis took the sun's latitude for the second time that day but in neither instance was the latitude deduced. Two springs were found pouring out an abundance "of remarkable Salt Water." They took a sample of it which finally reached Washington. They made a total of 20 miles that day and camped on the lower end of Hot Springs Island. They got three buffalo and one elk that day.

Tuesday, September 11, 1804.

Another cloudy disagreeable morning, but they were off before it was fairly light and picked their way over the sand bars for eleven and one-half miles when they halted in the attempt to get some specimens of the prairie dog, at about the Watson Ham Farm in LaRoche township, Charles Mix county, and took their dinner there. At one o'clock they saw a horseman coming down the west shore and they pulled across to him. It proved to be poor George Shannon looking disconsolate enough as he rode down the bank in the rain which now cold and biting was driving down from the northwest. The child had found the horses soon after leaving camp on the morning of August 28, near the mouth of the

Vermillion and thinking the party were ahead had pushed on up the river. He had but a few bullets with him and these were soon shot away. From the first he was ahead of the party, but did not himself reach that conclusion until he had reached the mouth of Bull Creek, in Lyman county, just south of the White River. Now believing that he had left the party behind he camped for several days, subsisting wholly upon grapes while the wolves howled around his lonely camp. Game was in plenty but he could not secure any save a rabbit which he shot with a bit of wood used in place of a bullet. Finally he came to believe he made a great mistake; that the party was really far ahead of him and that he could not hope to overtake it. So he had started back down the river hoping to come upon a trading boat which it was understood was to come to the upper river that autumn. When he reached the explorers he was in a starving condition but soon recovered and seemed to be no worse for his trying experiences. One of the two horses had been quite lost. They went on four and one-half miles further and camped for the night on the west shore at the mouth of a run, practically at the line projected, which separates Brule and Charles Mix counties.

Wednesday, September 12, 1804.

The morning continued cold and dark with a raging northwest wind and they found themselves in a narrow channel between an island (sand bar) and the west shore where the current was unusually swift and though they toiled like beavers all day were able to make but 4 miles against the current and head wind. They persevered until after dark and then went into camp for the night on the west side, opposite and a little below the old Spaulding Ranch. All of the journalists remark upon the difficulties of that day's voyage. Time and again the current would catch the boats and whirl them about. The men waded in the water up to their necks. On numerous occasions the cargoes were nearly dumped in the river. It drizzled all day and it was far from being a happy occasion. Captain Clark took Patrick Gass and John Newman with him and went for a hunt on the west side but got no game.

Thursday, September 13, 1804.

This was another cold, drizzly day the northwest wind continuing, but better progress was made. George Drewyer caught four beavers and Captain Lewis "Killed a Porcupin on a Cotton tree, feeding on the leaves and bowers of the said tree." They accomplished 12 miles and camped on the "stobbard" side under a high bluff where the "Muskeetors was verry troublesom." They were under the high bank in the vicinity of "Dry Island."

Friday, September 14, 1804.

The drizzly weather continued and conditions were most disagreeable. The water was so shallow "we had to waid & hall the barge over the bars." Captain Clark walked on the west shore looking "to find an old Vulcanoe, Said to be in this Neighborhood, by Mr. J. McKey, of St. Charles. I walked on the shore all day without Seeing any appearence of the Vulcanoe." Mr. McKey doubtless referred to the "burning bluff" in Gregory county which they had passed several days earlier. It is near the bank of the river in the northeastern corner of Gregory county and is quite an interesting phenomenon. Many observers have attributed the heat to natural gas, but Prof. James E. Todd, long state geologist, says of it: "I have no doubt it (the heat) was due to the oxidation of iron pyrites. There is an abundance of that material in the unexposed shales. As erosion causes fresh cracks from time to time the air enters and oxidation, not infrequently goes on so rapidly as to decompose the pyrite and set the sulphur on fire, producing according to circumstances, burning bluffs," such as those near Vermillion and in Gregory county.

While looking for the "Vulcanoe" Captain Clark saw and shot the first antelope which had come to their notice. He thought it a goat but takes pains to describe it fully and accurately. They made nine miles and camped at dark at the mouth of Bull Creek, on the site of the first Brule Agency and the spot where poor little George Shannon had spent a miserable week, starving on wild grapes. By the camp fire

that night, in the persistent rain, they "stufed the rabbit & Goat."

Saturday, September 15, 1804.

Two miles above the camp they passed the mouth of White River and stopped to explore it a bit. Captains went up the stream a short distance and finding it interesting, Patrick Gass and Reub. Fields were sent to make a fuller examination. They went up the stream 8 miles and camped for the night, Captain Clark says on the S. S. which ordinarily means on the Starboard, or east shore, but he says also it was opposite the mouth of a large creek on which there is more timber than is usually upon creeks in these parts. This camp was on the East shore almost opposite the mouth of American Crow creek, five miles below Chamberlain. "The evening is Verry Cold. Great Many Wolves of Different sorts howling about us."

Sunday, September 16, 1804.

It had been the plan to send Corporal Worfington back to St. Louis with some of the boatmen, upon the expiration of his term of enlistment, which occurred on August 4th when they were at Council Bluffs, but he had been prevailed upon to keep along with the party, and the experience of the last few days had convinced the commandants that they could not get on with fewer men than they already had. They put the matter up to Worfington and he readily consented to remain until spring. The continued rains had wet the baggage, the smaller boat had been gradually relieved of its load in anticipation of sending it back, and it was determined to rest a day or two, examine and dry the goods and reship them in a way to more equitably distribute the loads in the boats. They therefore crossed the river to a point a mile and a quarter above the mouth of American Crow creek and very near the present village of Oacoma and made camp in a "butifull plain Serounded by thin Timber." The tired men were rejoiced to get this rest. The weather had turned warm and delightful and they named the place Camp Pleasant. They found delicious plums in abundance and the acorns were just falling from the burr oaks and

the men feasted upon them. The goods were spread out to dry, several deer were killed to secure the hides to cover the boats.

Gass and Fields left their camp on the White river early and came across the hills until they struck American Crow Creek which they followed down to Oacoma and joined the party at Camp Pleasant at 4 p. m. They reported that they found pine burs and birch wood floating in White River.

The region had recently burned over and the continued rains had started a fine growth of new grass and every condition made the land seem a paradise on that beautiful September Sunday. While the men were engaged in renovating the cargo Captain Lewis determined to amuse himself by a tramp on land. He killed a buffalo and a magpie, a bird not known in the eastern states. Captain Lewis seems to have recognized it as a magpie but still called it a Crow and gave the name to the Creek where he found it; hence American Crow Creek. The rest in Camp Pleasant continued over Monday. Captain Lewis went up and explored American Island which was but a mile above the camp; it has moved up stream some distance since that date.

In overhauling the goods they came upon the thermometer, which had been hidden since the 14th of May, the day they started up the stream, and thereafter the temperature was recorded twice daily. This instrument had an interesting history. When they arrived in St. Louis they found there Dr. Saugrin, a French scientist of note, who was a refugee in America from the terrors of the Revolution. He convinced the captains of the necessity of having a thermometer in their kit, but there was not a single one in the Mississippi Valley. Madame Saugrin possessed among the few articles she was able to bring from France, where they had lived in luxury before the Revolution, a French plate mirror, which was the joy of her heart, but she heroically consented to sacrifice it in the interest of science. Dr. Saugrin carefully scraped the quicksilver from the back of the mirror, melted up the glass to make the stem of the thermometer and putting the quick silver into it and graduating it by careful tests, determined from the freezing point and normal human tem-

perature. Judging by known temperatures of this period the instrument seems to have been fairly accurate.

On both Sunday and Monday meridian observations were made but the latitude was not deduced.

Tuesday, September 18, 1804.

The party, rested and refreshed, started early with the boats in much better trim; but a strong head wind made progress slow. They killed an immense amount of game and camped early to jerk the meat at mile 260 above the Sioux river, being upon the point of the first bend above Chamberlain and on the west side. They passed American Island, but only note that there was "a large perportion of seeder" on it. Only 7 miles were traveled on the way this day.

Wednesday, September 19, 1804.

A beautiful morning with a southeast wind made navigation easy and they sped forward $26\frac{1}{2}$ miles reaching the gorge of Big Bend before they camped. The bag that day two buck elk, two buffalo and four deer. They made the acquaintance of the cactus this day and named one of the streams "Prickly Pear" in honor of it. They passed the three creeks that enter the Missouri river from the east at Crow Creek Agency, which they called the Three Rivers of the Sioux Pass. This point was a favorite crossing of the Missouri for all of the tribes and Clark says it was a place where all tribes had the right of asylum, as at Pipestone Quarry. A meridian observation was taken at the mouth of the Three Rivers, but the result was not deduced. At sunrise the thermometer registered 46 above and at 4: p. m. 71 degrees.

Thursday, September 20, 1804.

The camp of the previous night was upon the upper point of the lower of the two islands opposite the gorge of Big Bend. Drewyer and Shields were sent across the gorge with the lone horse, to hunt until the party had made the circuit of the bend. Captain Clark stopped to examine the gorge. He says: "I walked on shore with a view of examining this bend crossed at the Narost part which is high irregular hills of about 180 or 190 feet, this place the gouge

of the bend is 1 mile & a quarter from river to river across. From this highland which is only in the gouge the bend is a butifull plain through which I walked." Reub. Fields killed a female antelope: "She differs from Mail as to size being smaller with Small Horns, Streght with a Small Prong without any black about the neck. None of these goats has any beard, they are all Keenly made." Captain Lewis was likewise out prospecting the shore. A camp for the night was made on the "stobbard," side about five miles east of the "gouge" on the north side of the bend, and both captains joined the camp at dark. They slept on the sand bar too close to the river and at 2 o'clock in the morning the bank broke down nearly capsizing the boats and precipitating the men into the water. They crossed the river and camped on the other shore for the rest of the night, and at daylight the morning of the 21st went on five miles to the "gouge" to breakfast. The observations of Captain Clark we now know were very accurate except as to the distance around the bend. This he estimated at thirty miles, whereas it is but 24.

Friday, September 21, 1804.

After breakfasting at the gorge of Big Bend the remainder of the day was uneventful. They made 11½ miles and camped on the east shore in a cottonwood grove at the mouth of Reynolds Creek, in what is now Hughes county. At the mouth of Medicine Creek, then called Tyler's Creek, they found that Drewyer and Shields had killed and hung some game for them to pick up and had gone on. At this point was afterward located "Fort Defiance" and the Red Cloud Agency was also here for a brief period after the Laramie Treaty of 1868. They observed that the water fowl were flying South for the first time that day and took it to be a sign of early winter. It was a fine summery day with mercury at 58 at sunrise and rising to 88 at 4: p. m.

Saturday, September 22, 1804.

The fog was so heavy they could not make their way until after 7 o'clock but when it lifted they were entranced with the beautiful prairies which border on both sides of the river at this point. The pasture was excellent and the

plains on both sides were literally alive with buffalo which were rolling in fatness. They passed the Three Sisters, which consisted of the two Islands now known as Dorian Islands and Cedar Creek, and on to an island near the east shore that has since become incorporated with the east mainland in Hughes county, two miles below the mouth of Chapelle Creek and about the same distance from DeGrey post office. It was a beautiful, cedar covered island a mile and a half long and upon it Registre Loisel, of St. Louis had built a substantial trading post, a space about 70 feet square picketed in with cedar poles $13\frac{1}{2}$ feet above ground and with sentry boxes in two of the angles. Within this picketed square was a comfortable house, $32\frac{1}{2}$ x $45\frac{1}{2}$ feet divided into four equal rooms, one for trade, one for a common hall and two for living purposes. Just when this house was built is not certain but perhaps in 1796.

Loisel, who was a Canadian, located in St. Louis in 1793 and at once engaged in trade on the upper Missouri. It is scarcely possible that he was located here in 1794 when Trudeau was in the vicinity. He died in 1804 at St. Louis after Lewis and Clark left that place. There has been much dispute as to the exact location of this house, many authorities placing it upon Upper Dorion Island, but "Capt. Clarks Course, Distance & Refferences," for September 21, and 22, places it 25 miles above the gorge of Big Bend, and then to make certainty doubly sure marked it upon his map, which is in every respect remarkably accurate, just below the mouth of Chappelle Creek. After Loisel's death the property passed into the possession of Manuel Lisa and from him to the St. Louis Missouri Fur Company and burned in 1810 while filled with very valuable furs entailing a loss of more than \$10,000. There is much reason to believe that Manuel Lisa's establishment which he maintained for the benefit of the Sioux of the Missouri during the War of 1812 was located upon this island.

Drewyer and Shields who had again gone up the west shore with the horse, joined the main party at Loisel's house.

Patrick Gass says two of the rooms in the Loisel house were "a family house," and Private Whitehouse in speaking

of the use to which the rooms were put says: "and one for a famaly house," and this leads one to wonder if Mrs. Loisel, to whom he was married in St. Louis in 1800 spent her honeymoon here.

They camped for the night at the mouth of the Chapelle, in Hughes county.

Sunday, September 23, 1804.

A beautiful autumn morning, with a southeast breeze; though the equinoxial storm was scarcely over the purity and dryness of the atmosphere was noted and Captain Clark states: "Aire remarkably dry. plumbs & grapes fully ripe. in 36 hours two Spoonfuls of water aveporated in a sauser." It was fifty above in the morning and grew exceedingly hot before night. Reub. Fields was hunting up the east shore and came upon Medicine Butte Creek, and the captains, in honor of its discoverer named it Reuben's Creek. They found several small wooded islands that have disappeared. The prairies across in Lyman county were discovered to be on fire. The Tetons no doubt had secured information of the approach of the explorers and were signalling their friends to come in. They camped on what is now the McClure Ranch, opposite the mouth of Antelope creek and about two miles below Hackberry creek. Three Sioux boys swam the river to the camp and informed them that 80 lodges were camped near the mouth of Bad River and 60 other lodges were near by. They gave the boys a quantity of tobacco and ferried them back to the west shore. They deduced the latitude as $44^{\circ} 40' 42''$. It is $44^{\circ} 20'$.

Monday, September 24, 1804.

They called the very straight portion of the river from De Grey to Pierre, the Grand Reach. They passed Farm Island which was but $1\frac{1}{2}$ miles long at that time and the main channel of the river passed north of it. They "observed a great Deel of Stone on the Sides of the hills on the 'Stob-bard'." They felt some anxiety about the reception they would receive from the Tetons. Since Old Dorian left them at Yankton they had no interpreter who could speak the Sioux with any facility. They got their guns in trim and

also laid out a number of presents for the chiefs. John Colter had left the horse at the mouth of Antelope Creek and crossed over to Farm Island to hunt and had killed an elk, but when he returned for his horse it was not to be found, and the serenity of the occasion was not advanced when he came running to the boat to inform the captains that the Indians had stolen old Dobbin. Soon five Indians came to the shore and wanted to fraternize with them, but they "ankered out Som distance and Spoke to them informed them we were friends & Wished to continue So but were not a fraid of any Indians, Some of their young men had taken the horse, * * * and we would not Speek to them untill the horse was returned to us again." Whitehouse adds to this statement, "We could not understand them nor them us." It was early in the afternoon, but one of the boats had stopped down at Farm Island to dress the elk, and they waited where they were, midway between Farm Island and Perry's Island until the boat came up. They named Perry's Island, "Good Humored Island," and came on to the mouth of Bad river where they anchored 100 yards out in the stream. On Evans' map of the Missouri as far as the Mandans, which they carried with them, this stream was called the Little Missouri, but the captains at once changed the name to Teton, but the Indians called it "Seecha," (Bad) and their name has stuck. Captain Clark went ashore and smoked with the chiefs and arranged for a council on following day. They had much difficulty in making themselves understood, although one Frenchman of the party could speak a few words of the Sioux language. The chief said they would see to it that the horse was returned if one of their men had stolen it. More than half of the men remained on board that night, but a few of the hardier ones slept ashore with the Indians.

Tuesday, September 25, 1804.

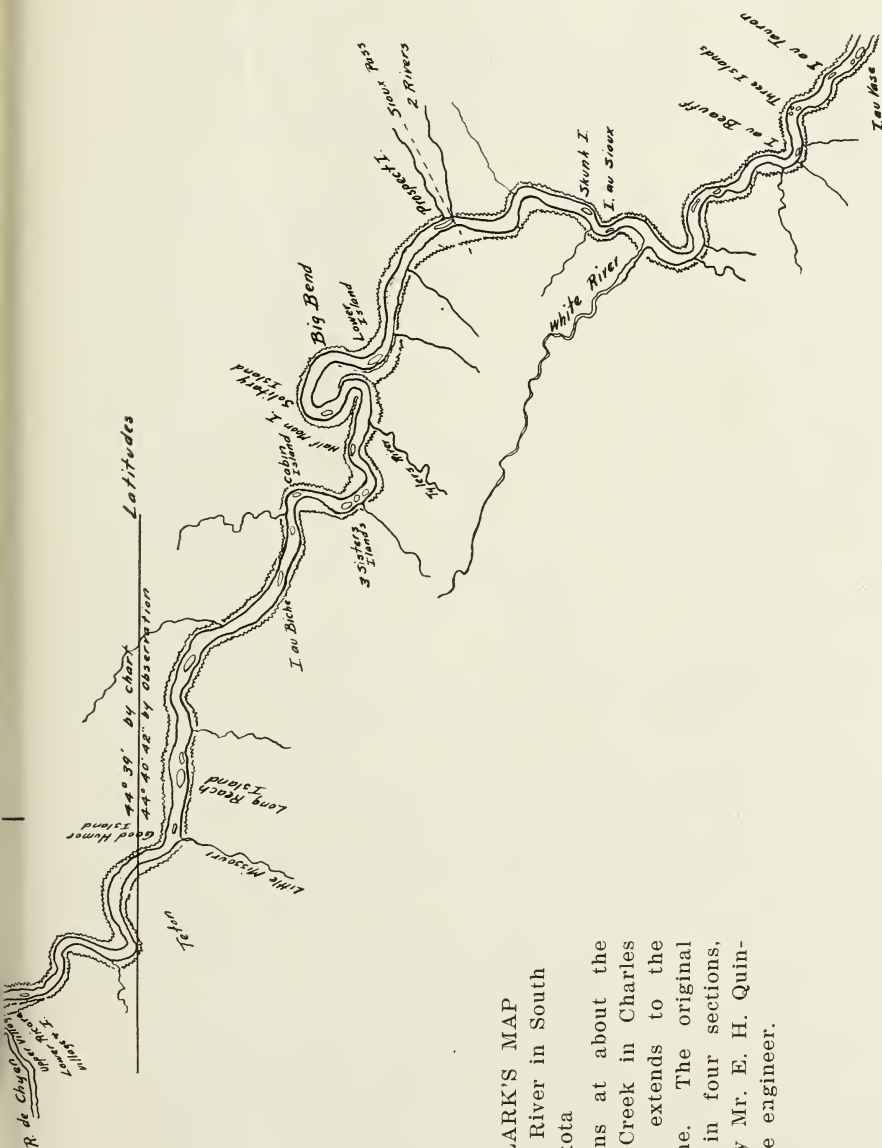
Captain Clark's journal entry for this day is so unique, characteristic and original, as well as entertaining that it is included herewith verbatim et literatim.

"A Fair Morning the Wind from the S. E. all well, raised a Flag Staff & made a orning or Shade on a Sand

bar in the mouth of Teton River, for the purpose of Speeking with the Indians under, the Boat Crew on board at 70 yards Distance from the boat The 5 Indians which we met last night Continued, about 11 OClock the 1.t & 2d. Chief Came we gave them Some of our Provisions to eat, they gave up great Quantitis of Meet Some of which was Spoiled we feel much at a loss for the want of an interpeter the one we have can Speek but little.

Met in Council at 12 oClock and after Smokeing, agreeable to the usueal Custom, Cap. Lewis proceeded to Deliver a Speech which we oblige to Curtail for want of a good interpeter all our party paraded. gave a Medal to the Grand Chief Calld. in Indian Un ton gar Sar bar in French Beeffe nure Black Buffalow. Said to be a good Man, 2 Chief Torto hon gar or the Parti sin or Partizan bad the 3rd, is the Beffe De Medison his name is Tar ton gar Wa ker 1. Considerable Man, War zing go. 2 Considerable Man Second Bear—Mato co que par.

Envited those Cheifs on board to Show them our boat and such Curiossities as was Strange to them, we gave them $\frac{1}{4}$ a glass of whiskey which they appeared to be verry fond of, Sucked the bottle after it was out & Soon began to be troublesom, one the 2d Cheif assumeing Drunkness, as a Cloake for his rascally intentions I went with those Cheifs (in one of the Peroques with 5 men—3 & 2 Ind.) (which left the boat with great reluctance) to Shore with a view of reconsileing those men to us, as Soon as I landed the Perogue three of their young Men Seased the Cable of the Perogue, (in which we had pressents &c) the Chiefs Sold r. Huded the mast, and the 2nd. Cheif was verry insolent both in words & justures (pretended Drunkenness & staggered up against me) declareing I should not go on, Stateing he had not received presents sufficient from us, his justures were of Such a personal nature I felt My self Compeled to Draw my Sword (and Made a Signal to the boat to prepare for action) at this Motion Capt. Lewis ordered all



CAPTAIN CLARK'S MAP
of the Missouri River in South
Dakota

This map begins at about the mouth of Platte Creek in Charles Mix County and extends to the North Dakota line. The original map was drawn in four sections, here articulated by Mr. E. H. Quinney, assistant state engineer.

under arms in the boat, those with me also Showed a Disposition to Defend themselves and me, the grand Chief then took hold of the roap & ordered the young Warrers away. I felt My Self warm & Spoike in verry positive terms.

Most of the Warriars appeared to have ther Bows strung and took out their arrows from the quiver. as I (being surrounded) was not permitted (by them) to return, I Sent all the men excep 2 Inps. to the boat, the perogue Soon returned with about 12 of our determined men ready for any event. this movement caused a no: of the Indians to withdraw at a distance, (leaving their chiefs & soldiers alone with me). Their treatment to me was verry rough & I think justified roughness on my part, they all lift my Perogue, and Councild, with themselves the result I could not lern and nearly all went off after remaining in this Situation Some time I offered my hand to the 1. & 2. Chiefs who refusd. to receive it. I turned off & went with my men on board the perogue, I had not prosd. more the 10 paces before the 1st. Cheif 3rd. & 2 Brave Men Waded in after me. I took them in & went on board.

We proceeded on about 1 Mile & anchored out off a Willow Island placed a guard on Shore to protect the Cooks & a guard in the boat, fastened the Perogues to the boat, I call this Island bad humered Island as we were in a bad humer."

The real names of the chiefs as now known are Tatonka Sapa or Black Buffalo. He was long a prominent chief of the Minneconjous and was the grandfather of the well known Hump, of recent years. Tawa ecedan okiya, the partisan, Tatonka Wakan, The Buffalo Spirit. I am unable to make any thing intelligible of the Indian names recorded of the two Considerable Men.

Bad Humored Island was of course Marion's Island lying in front of the capitol and across which the railroad now runs. It has become incorporated with the west shore and is no longer a true island.

Private Whitehouse tells the story of the day laconically but not the less graphically:

"We delayed to wait for the Indian chiefs and war-ries to come which we expected. about 10 o'clock they came about 50 in number. our officers made three of them chiefs and gave them Meddels & Some presents. 5 of them came on board & Stayed a long time. Capt. Clark and some men took to Shore in a perogue. the Indians did not incline to let us Go on any further up the river. they held the cable of the perogue and said they wanted one perogue at least to stay as they were poor. Capt. Clark insisted on going on board but they resisted for a long time. they sd they had soldiers on Shore as well as we had on board. Capt Clark told them that he had men and medicin on board that would kill 20 such nations in one day. they then began to be still and only wished we would stop at their lodges untill their Women & Children would see us. 4 of them came on board again & we proceeded on 1 mile and ankered out at the lower point of an Island in the middle of the river. the a Indians stayed with us all night."

Just how serious the situation was is difficult to determine at this time. The Indians had been given just enough liquor to make them somewhat irresponsible. If the captains had weakened they would no doubt have been pretty mean, but in the light of our present day knowledge of Sioux character I take it they were bluffing and when the bluff was called they yielded as graciously as possible.

Wednesday, September 26, 1804

At day break they set sail and went to what is known as the "Buffalo Pasture," directly opposite Snake Butte and anchored in the stream. The shores were literally lined with Indians of all ages, sexes and conditions. The men were armed with "fusees." All appeared very friendly and the chiefs pressed them to land and meet their families. Capt. Lewis and five men did go ashore and to the camp some distance back from the river. He was carried from the river to the camp on a buffalo robe by a party of the young men.

He was absent for three hours and Captain Clark became so uneasy by this prolonged absence that he sent one of the sergeants to ascertain why he was detained. The sergeant reported that Lewis was being finely entertained and that the Sioux were preparing for a great dance that evening. Presently Lewis was brought back to the boat and Captain Clark was carried out to the camp. He says: "I was received on a elegant painted B. Robe & taken to the village by six men & Was not permitted to touch the ground untill I was put down in the Grand Concill house on a White dressed Robe." As soon as Clark had been set down in the council house, the men returned to the river and again brought out Lewis in the same grand style. The pipe of peace was then smoked and a dog feast was indulged in and the feasting and smoking continued until night fall when dancing began and was continued until midnight. Captain Clark thus describes the function:

"Soon after they Set me Down, the men went for Capt. Lewis brought him in the same way and placed him also by the Chief in a fiew minits an old man rose & Spoike aproveing what we had done & informing us of their situation requesting us to take pity on them & which was answered. The great Chief then rose with great State to the Same purpote as far as we Could learn & then with Great Solemnity took up the pipe of Peace & after pointing it to the heavins the 4 quarters of the Globe & the earth, he made Some disertation, (then made a Speech) lit it and presented the Stem to us to Smoke, when the Principal Chief Spoke with the Pipe of Peace he took in one hand some of the most Delicate parts of the Dog which was prepared for the fiest & made a Sacrefise to the flag. after a Smoke had taken place, & a Short Harange to his people, we were requested to take the Meal (& then put before us the dog which they had been cooking, & Pemitigon & ground potatoe in Several platters Pemn. is Buffa. meat dried or jerked pounded & mixed with grease raw. Dog Sioux think great dish used on festivals eat little of dog—pemn. & Pote. good.) We Smoked for an hour (till)

Dark & all was Cleared away a large fire made in the Center, about 10 Musitions playing on tabereens (made of hoops & Skin stretched), long Sticks with Deer & Goats Hoofs tied so as to make a gingling noise, and many others of a Similer Kind, those Men began to Sing & Beet on the Tamboren, the Women Came forward highly Deckerated in their Way, with the Scalps and Tropies of War of their fathers Husbands Brothers or near Connections & proceeded to Dance the War Dance (Women only dance jump up & down—five or six young men selected accompanied with songs the tamborin making the song extempore words & music every now & then one of the com' come out & repeat some exploit in a sort of song—this taken up by the young men and the women dance to it) which they done with great Chearfullness untill about 12 oClock when we informed the Cheifs that they were fatigued &c. they then retired & we Accompl. by 4 Cheifs returned to our boat, they Stayed with us all night. Those people have Some brave men which they make use of as Soldiers those men attend to the police of the Village Correct all errors I saw one of them to day whip 2 Squars, who appeared to have fallen out, when he approached. all about appeared to flee with great turrow. at night they keep two 3, 4 5 men at difference Distances walking around Camp Singing the accurrences of the night."

But two weeks previously these Tetons had been upon a foray against the Omahas and killed a considerable number of them and taken 25 women and boys prisoner and these prisoners were in the camp. They exacted a promise from the chiefs to return these captives to Pierre Dorion in order that he might restore them to their people.

The captains again entertained the chiefs on board, after the dance that night.

Thursday, September 27, 1804.

Captain Clark having "Saw & Eat Pemitigon, Dog, Groud potatoe made into a Kind of Homney," slept very

badly and arose early to find his guests already up and the shores again lined with spectators. The guests unconcernedly and as a matter of course rolled up the blankets upon which they had slept and carried them off, together with a peck of corn apiece. They left the boat with "reluctience," but Clark speeded the parting guests by going ashore with them and was entertained all day, going from one lodge to another to be feasted. Later Captain Lewis came out and they remained for another dance that night and when "we were Sleepy, & returned to the boats" the chiefs again went with them. In rowing out to the big boat the oarsman awkwardly crossed the bow and broke the cable, losing the anchor. Clark in a loud voice ordered all hands to the oars, to keep the big boat from floating off, and the hustle and bustle "allarmed the Cheifs" who "hallowaed & allarmed the Camp or Town informing them the Mahas were about attacking us." In about ten minutes the bank was lined with armed men under the lead of Black Buffalo. Two hundred braves were in the line, but learning the situation many of them returned to their teepees while 60 remained and patrolled the shore until morning." The big boat was brought to shore and tied up. The conduct of the Indians at this time, while on the surface was friendly and apparently solicitous for the welfare of the whites convinced the captains that they were really hostile and would make them trouble when they started forward. In this view they were confirmed by information which Pierre Crusette secured from the Omaha captives. A strong guard was maintained until morning and no one slept.

Friday, September 28, 1804.

From daylight until 9 o'clock they dragged the river in hope to recover the lost anchor, but concluding that it was buried in the sand determined to start forward. A soldiers' lodge had been organized among the Sioux and the camp placed in their charge; that is to say, martial law prevailed. With great difficulty the chiefs were prevailed upon to leave the boat and go ashore, but as they were starting the soldiers' lodge siezed the cable. Black Buffalo was still on the boat having declared his intention to go up the river for some

distance with the visitors. "I told him the men of his nation set on the cable." He went out and told Captain Lewis, "the men who Set on the roap," were soldiers and wanted tobacco. "Capt. L. would not be forced into anything." After a good deal of debate Clark gave Black Buffalo a twist of tobacco which he threw to the soldiers and while they were scrambling after it "he jurked the rope from them and gave it to the bowsman." They got away aided by a fine breeze from the southeast. When they got about two miles up stream they observed old Spirit Medicine standing on the shore, beckoning to them. They stopped and took him on board. He told them the soldiers "who set on the roap" were acting under the orders of The Partisan," who spoke with a forked tongue. Shortly afterward another Indian was seen coming on horse back. He left his horse and came to the river. They took him on board to learn he was the son of Spirit Medicine's. By him they sent back a rather defiant message to the Sioux and then going over to the east shore improvised an anchor of stones and took dinner and then camped for the night on a sand bar in the middle of the river at an early hour, having made but six miles. They camped unusually early for they all needed rest. Clark says: "I am very unwell for want of sleep Deturmined to Sleep tonight if possible, the men Cooked & we rested well." This camp was about three miles below Oahe.

Saturday, September 29, 1804.

Got an early start and at 9 o'clock who should turn up on the west shore but The Partisan, with three men and a squaw. They wished to come aboard to ride to visit some of their friends further up the river. "We refused stateing verry Sufficint reason and was Plain with them on the Subject." Gave him a half twist of tobacco for his friends and at his request ferried him across to the east shore. Just above the mouth of Chantier creek they observed the remains of a Ree town, which had been abandoned but five years ago, that is in 1799. This I think is a mistake. It is not likely that any Rees remained after 1794. They anchored in mid-stream and passed the night there having made eleven miles.

The anchorage where they passed the night was not far from the mouth of the Okabojo.

Sunday, September 30, 1804.

As soon as it was light it became evident that the country was full of Indians. One came and wanted to ride to the Rees. He was refused. At 9 o'clock a large party was found camped upon the shore. They cast anchor 100 yards out and talked with them assuring them they could not be longer delayed and informing them of the bad treatment given them by the Tetons. They gave them a quantity of tobacco and went on. Each of the men of the party was given a glass of whiskey, perhaps to settle his nerves. The wind was blowing strongly from the southeast and presently the big boat ran onto a snag, "the boat turned and was very near filling before we got her righted the waves being verry high." Spirit Medicine, the brave chief was scared almost to death. He ran and hid himself, and then asked to be allowed to land, saying that he had now conducted his friends beyond all danger and he would go back. They set him on shore, gave him some presents and advised him to keep his men away. They went on and camped after making 20 miles in mid river at Cheyenne Island, having passed without notice the lower side of the gorge at Little Bend.

Monday, October 1, 1804.

They got up to a raw, cold wind and the temperature near the freezing point, and passing Cheyenne Island came to the mouth of the Cheyenne river. The river daily fell and the sand bars more difficult to negotiate. Above the Cheyenne they were so bad that at places the water was insufficient and they were compelled to haul the boats across them. The wind became so violent that they were compelled to lay up for three hours. After making 16 miles they camped on the river 11 miles above the mouth of the Cheyenne. Here they were manifestly surprised to find a trading house hid away in the willows on the "Lobbard Side." It was the property of John Valle, of Ste Genevive, a son of one of the notable old French families of Missouri. He was still living in 1827. Valle had with him a boy and a Frenchman.

They were awaiting the coming of the Sioux from the north to trade with them. This house was located at about the present Clement (Claymore) place, midway of the reach on the northside of Little Bend peninsula. Valle told them he had traded the previous winter far up the Cheyenne river and gave them some wonderful and mistaken information about the Black Hills. It was a bad night with a howling wind. When they arrived at the north side of the gorge of Little Bend they stopped to take the latitude and determined it at $44^{\circ} 19' 36''$. It is in fact about $44^{\circ} 45'$ or more than 24 miles off. The chronometer was evidently playing them tricks again.

Tuesday, October 2, 1804.

The voyaguers got up to a cold and blustering morning, but without frost. John Valle came out and rode with them a couple of miles to the gorge of Little Bend where they stopped for breakfast and to take the latitude at the foot of Devils Island. They took dinner on a large sand bar in the river. It is to be noticed that from the time they left Pierre, they invariably camped in the middle of the river and as far as possible avoided the mainland. This fact gives us a substantial understanding of the mistrust they felt for the Sioux. They heard a shot fired not far away while they were at dinner, which gave them some concern. At 2 p. m. an Indian came out of some woods on the west shore and shot his gun, beckoning for them to land. "We payed no attention to him." He followed along the shore some distance, and finally they engaged him in conversation. He said he was a Yankton and his camp of 20 lodges was just over the hill to which he invited them to go. They excused themselves and told him to go and see Pierre Dorion who had a message for them. He wanted trade and they referred him to John Valle, at the next bend below. This interview occurred just below Plum Island, directly opposite Fairbank. They expected an attack from these Indians and made every preparation against it. They concluded the Indians would be lying for them at the narrows on the west side of Plum Island, which they named "the Iland of Caution." They were not molested and camped after making but 12 miles for the

day on a sand bar a full half mile from the mainshore. This camp was about 6 miles above Fairbank. The thermometer registered 46 at 4 p. m. and the wind was southeast. There had been no frost.

Wednesday, October 3, 1804.

After a rainy windy night on the sand bar they went on at 7 o'clock and found great difficulty in negotiating the sand bars. Mice had gotten into the boat and were working havoc with the provisions and clothing and at noon they stopped for a mouse hunt, overhauling the entire cargo. After fighting the sand bars for a time without making any progress they camped and spent the afternoon prospecting ahead for a channel. They had come but 8 miles all day and were at what is now known as Pascal Island a short distance north of the Sully-Potter county line. At one o'clock that afternoon while they were still ferreting for mice an Indian came to the east bank with a wild turkey on his back and he was soon joined by four others, but they did not deign to notice them.

Thursday, October 4, 1804.

The result of the reconnoissance of the previous evening convinced the captains that they had missed the main channel, that they were in a cul de sac and that the only escape was through backing down and starting over again. This they did dropping back three miles and finding the main channel proceeded, gaining 12 miles above the camp of the previous night and 15 miles up stream for the day's work. They made quick work of the passage down stream before breakfast, and were toiling up the main channel when about 8 o'clock several braves appeared on the east bank and demanded that they land. As the voyageurs did not obey the Indian "sciped a ball before us. we payed no attention to him" but going on until 9 o'clock stopped on the west shore for breakfast. The Indians had followed up the east bank and one of them swam across to inform them the Sioux wanted traders, and begged for powder. They gave him a piece of tobacco and set him across on a sand bar and went on. They passed Dolphees Island, which Captain Lewis went

ashore to examine. He found in the center of it a deserted Ree village which has been occupied as late as 1797 and was called Lahoo-cat. They camped for the night on a sand bar which then made out from the upper end of Dolphees Island and about 5 miles below the present site of Forest City.

Friday, October 5, 1804.

The first white frost of the season occurred this morning. At 7 a. m. the thermometer stood at 36, but it had been colder in the night. This frost was seasonable as indicated by the long period of official observations in modern times. While in some years the first frost at Pierre is delayed until very late; November 5, in 1904 and October 20th in 1911 the average date since observations have been kept, covering 1868 to 1914 inclusive has been October 5, the exact date of Lewis and Clark's record. They got an early start, but at 7: a. m., three Indians, Teton Sioux appeared on the east bank begging for tobacco. They disregarded them and went on. Made the bend at Forest City, passed Little Cheyenne river and camped for the night on a sand bar near the east shore at the mouth of Stage Creek. They discovered and named White Brant creek that day. Since leaving Pierre they had secured scarcely any game, perhaps because they had not cared to take the chances of hunting in the Sioux Country, but upon this day they killed a buck and several antelope beside many geese and brants.

Saturday, October 6, 1804.

This day they traveled from the mouth of Stage creek to the mouth of Swan creek in the present Walworth county. Five and one half miles south of Swan creek, just above the mouth of Steamboat creek they passed a Ree village, deserted but in good state of repair. There were skin canoes, mats, buckets and other utensils and materials about the lodges, all giving the appearance of recent occupation by the owners.

It is very probable that it was at this village Trudeau found the Rees in the spring of 1795. This would correct a seeming inconsistency in his journal. Swan Creek then as now was notable for its strong flow of water being fed by unfailing springs.

Sunday, October 7, 1804.

They got a good start and went over to the mouth of the Moreau for breakfast. Here they came upon the tracks of a white bear. On the south side of the Moreau they found another Ree town of 60 lodges, palisaded. Every thing indicated it had been but recently occupied. Captain Clark walked for a mile or more up the Moreau Valley; during the day he also explored Blue Blanket Island and found the remains of a Ree town upon it, and also found an abundance of grouse upon it, for which reason they named it Grouse Island. They camped on the east bank at what was later known as the Revhiem place.

Monday, October 8, 1804.

Five and one half miles above the camp of last night they found the mouth of Grand river which they called the Weterhoo. They stopped long enough to determine the latitude as $45^{\circ} 39' 5''$ which is closer than most of the observations taken since the chronometer began cutting up down at Elkpoint. The real latitude is about $45^{\circ} 34'$ so that they were but 5 miles out of the way. They noticed Walpala or Oak Creek 2 miles above the Grand River where the Milwaukee Coast line now bridges the Missouri. They said the natives called it Rearpar, meaning beaver dam river, but they called it Maropa River. Few streams have been blessed with so many names within historic times; the steamboat men called it Rampart Creek because it flowed down from the range of hills known as the ramparts. Thus we have Rearpar, Maropa, Oak, Rampart and Wakpala. The latter is Sioux and simply means "creek" or literally little river.

Four and one-half miles further they came to having passed the famous towns of the Rees, located in what is now Corson county on the north bank of the Missouri at that point where the river runs directly west, where "I formed a camp of the french & the guard on shore with one sentinel on board the boat at anchor, a pleasant evening all things arranged for peace or war," and Captain Clark with two interpreters and two men went into the village. The visit was no surprise to the Rees for when they passed up the banks

were lined with curious people inviting them to land. The river and surroundings have changed very materially at this point since those days. Then an island three miles long lay in front of the villages, occupying the entire reach where the river runs west. It was separated from the west shore where the villages stood by a deep narrow channel 60 yards wide. The island was covered with the fields and gardens of the Rees where they grew an abundance of corn, beans, pumpkins, melons, tobacco and other crops. The main channel of the river then ran over against the Campbell county shore. The narrow channel where Captain Lewis anchored the boats is now covered with giant cottonwoods some of them four feet in diameter and where the pumpkins and melons grew in 1804 the Missouri has plowed out its main channel, the eastern channel has disappeared and what remains of the island has been incorporated with the Campbell county mainland.

Captain Lewis was not gone long until he returned bringing with him several Frenchmen among whom were Joseph Gravelines and Antoine Tabeau. It may safely be assumed that they were also accompanied by "the pestiverous Garreau." They were assured of the friendliness of the Rees and Gravelines who was a trader settled among them gave them much valuable information. He made a very valuable interpreter for them while there.

That evening Robert Frazer was enlisted into the service. He had been with the party at least since April 1, when Captain Lewis entered a note in the Orderly Book that he should be retained in the service until further orders. He was assigned to the mess of Patrick Gass.

The Ree towns consisted of three distinct villages the first of which was down opposite the middle of the island, the other two being higher up and separated only by a small creek that comes into the Missouri from the north. All were palisaded with ash poles set close together and bound in place at the tops with willows. These walls were about fifteen feet high and were a very good defense against enemies armed only with small arms and bows and arrows.

Tuesday, October 9, 1804.

The voyageurs remained in camp all day, it being so cold and the wind so high that a council with the Rees could not be satisfactorily held. The Indians thronged out to see them and with open eyed astonishment observed York the negro. They had not seen nor had they heard that a black race existed. York was a natural born wag and as strong as a horse. He told them that he had formerly been a wild animal and had been caught and tamed by Captain Clark. He showed them the most astonishing feats of strength and to his white companions made himself altogether too terrible, but he completely won the hearts of the Rees, especially of the ladies of the municipality with whom his crush was tremendous and they vied with each other in their attentions to him and the very personal favors they showered upon him, though in this particular they quite impartially favored all of the party who were susceptible. Even the dignified captains were greatly embarrassed by their civilities.

Wednesday, October 10, 1804.

A fine morning greeted them. Gravelines and Tabeau came up upon invitation and took breakfast with the captains and all plans were made for a grand council. At this juncture an important sociological condition, which happily is wholly confined to South Dakota, was forced upon the attention of the doughty commandants. Here were two rival towns located within a short distance of each other; the leading citizens of which were invited to meet in the council; the mayor and all of his satellites from the lower city were on hand, but though they waited impatiently until 12 o'clock, no representative of the upper town put in an appearance. "We have every reason to believe that a gellosie exists between these villages," writes Captain Clark. When noon brought no one down from the upper settlement, Gravelines was dispatched to ascertain what the difficulty might be. He was informed that it was understood that the new governmental regime was to recognize a great chief of the Aricaras, and that it was likewise understood that a citizen of the lower town had been pre-selected for the honor, and that they did not pro-

pose to participate in a political convention in which all the cards were stacked against them. Gravelines assured them they should have a fair opportunity and they reluctantly came down to the council. When the captains were confronted with the proposition they adroitly met the situation by naming a chief from each of the three villages with equal powers and honors. The three gentlemanly citizens of South Dakota whom the captains recognized that day upon behalf of the government of the United States as chiefs of the Aricaras were Lightning Chow, (Kakawissassa) Hay (Pocassee) and Eagle Feather (Piabeto.) The chiefs refused to seal the new compact by pledging it in whiskey and gravely rebuked the captains for offering them a drink that takes away men's sense. After the ceremony was over and York had made a special exhibition of his "turrbleness" the men set up a small corn mill they had with them and greatly interested the Rees in its operation.

Thursday, October 11, 1804.

All of this time the party had been encamped just above the lower village. They waited until 11 o'clock and then went into the village to hold a special council with the Lightning Crow. He pledged friendship, loyalty to the United States and an open road for traders bound for the upper river. At 1: p. m. they set out for the upper villages, taking Lightning Crow and his nephew with them. They visited the two villages consecutively and counseled the leaders and remained with them until ten in the evening, being treated with every civility, although "those people are both pore & Durty." Promising to council with each village separately, on the morrow they went off to bed upon the boats, but most of the men were accommodated that night in the mansions of the municipality. During the visit that day the captains were regaled "with bread made of Corn & beens boild a large Been which they rob the mice of the Prarie which is rich and verry nurrishing also quashes &c."

Friday, October 12, 1804.

The forenoon was spent in visiting the chiefs of the villages who loudly vociferated their loyalty. The captains

took pains to enlarge upon the power of the United States. There was an exchange of presents and at 2:00 p. m. the party resumed its voyage accompanied by all three of the chiefs. Lightning Crow and Hay soon left them but Eagle Feathers accompanied them to the Mandans. At that date the Rees had 500 fighting men. They advanced $9\frac{1}{2}$ miles and camped on the east shore at what is now known as the Campbell Landing.

Saturday, October 13, 1804

This morning information was brought to the captains that John Newman had been persistently indulging in contemptuous criticism of the enterprise and its commandants. They instantly arrested him and confined him upon the boat charged with "mutinous expression." When they arrived at Spring Creek, Campbell county they learned of a local tradition which Captain Clark relates thus: "A few miles from the river on the Starboard (east) Side 2 stones resembling humane persons and one resembling a dog is situated in the open prairie, to these stones the Ricores pay Great reverence make offerings whenever they pass those People have a curious Tredition of those Stones, one was a man in Love, one a Girl whose parents would not let marry (The man as is customary went off to mourn, the female followed) the Dog went to morn with them all turned to Stone gradually commencing with the feet. Those people fed on grapes until they turned and the woman has a bunch of grapes Yet in her hand." They traveled 18 miles and camped on the east shore on the bottom midway between La Grace and Vanderbilt and about on the line separating the Chillcot and Ferguson farms. That night they entered an order Constituting Sergeants Ordway and Gass, John Shields, Hugh Hall, John Collins, William Werner, William Bratte, George Shannon and Silas Goodrich as court martial to try John Newman. Captain Clark was to preside and see that all proper forms were complied with but he was to give no opinion. They proceeded at once to the trial. Newman pleaded not guilty to the charges against him and made what defense he could but from the testimony aduced, more than two thirds of the court agreed to his con-

viction and sentenced him to, on the following day, be given 75 lashes on the bare back, and be discharged from the service.

This sentence was confirmed by the captains who ordered that it be executed the next day between 1 and 2 o'clock p. m.

Sunday, October 14, 1804

All of Saturday night a heavy rain fell which continued through out Sunday and wet, cold and oppressed by the necessity to punish John Newman the party got on its way, but the progress was slow. At one p. m. they stopped on a sand bar at the state line, took a dinner for which no one cared and then John Newman was brought out and his back bared to the cold rain and seventy-five lashes were applied leaving him cut, bruised and bleeding. He was then ordered to the Red Perogue, the boat handled by the French river men, not enlisted regularly and made the camp drudge. His case was indeed a sorry one. He was really a good man with a bad temper who had brought his ills upon himself by talking too much. After his awful humiliation he did his utmost to reinstate himself in the good graces of the commandants and his army comrades. Every task imposed upon him he performed with fidelity. At Mandan he was especially useful. While hunting to supply food for the camp he was badly frozen in the hands and feet and suffered excruciatingly but did not relax his efforts to please. When spring came he begged to be reinstated, but the captains were inexorable and sent him back to St. Louis. On the way down he continued to be useful and on one occasion by his exertions saved the party and the boat from shipwreck. Captain Lewis filed a strong brief in his behalf in the War Department.

Having signalized their approach to South Dakota by compelling Moses Reed to run the gauntlet, they left it by whipping John Newman as they crossed the line into North Dakota.

From South Dakota to Pacific and Return

The Lewis and Clark party went on up the Missouri after leaving South Dakota and spent the winter of 1804-5 with the Mandan Indians at about the present site of Washburn,

North Dakota, where they built a substantial winter home. They arrived at the Mandans on October 27, and remained with them until 4 p. m. April 7, 1805 when they resumed the up river journey. At the same moment Corporal Richard Warfington accompanied by Moses Reed and John Newman, the discharged soldiers, John Robertson and John Boyley, Joseph Gravelines, as pilot, (two Frenchman and a Ree Indian to go as far as the Ree towns) and other unidentified persons to make up the number to 13, took the big barge, with letters, dispatches, and the collections of museum exhibits and returned to St. Louis. Of their passage through South Dakota we have no record save that they stopped at the Ree Villages and picked up one of the chiefs who accompanied them to Washington.

The party who left the Mandans that April afternoon to accompany the captains upon their further explorations consisted of 33 persons including the commandants themselves and the infant child of Sacajawea Charbonneau. They followed the Missouri to its head waters, crossed the continental divide to the headwaters of the Columbia and down the latter stream to its mouth on the Pacific where they built a house. They arrived at the Pacific coast on November 14th and remained there until March 23, 1806, when they started upon the return trip. They were delayed west of the mountains awaiting the melting of the snows but finally were able to cross the divide and reach the headwaters of the Missouri on June 29th. At this time the party was divided, Captain Lewis took nine men and five Indians who had joined them and cut across to the northeast striking the Missouri at the Great Falls and thence down to the mouth of the Yellowstone, but from Great Falls making a side trip to the headwaters of the Marias river. While Lewis says he had nine men with him his journal speaks of eleven, being Gass, Ordway, J. Fields, R. Fields, Drewyer, Thompson, McNeal, Werner, Fraser, Willard and Cruzette. On Monday August 11, Cruzette accidentally shot Captain Lewis in the thigh inflicting a deep and painful wound from which he suffered intensely for several weeks.

Captain Clark who had separated from Lewis at about

the present site of Missoula, with the remainder of the party crossed over to the Yellowstone, and passed down that stream, reaching the mouth several days in advance of Lewis and as the hunting was not good in the vicinity went on. Lewis overtook them August 12, at the mouth of the Little Knife, in western North Dakota.

They stopped with the Mandans and one of the principal chiefs known as Big White determined to accompany them to Washington. They left Charbonneau and Sacajawea at their home with the Mandans, but took with them Rene Jausaume and his wife and two children to interpret for Big White. They left the Mandans on August 18th, John Coulter having at his request been discharged there, and on August 20th, 1806, again entered the northern border of South Dakota.

BACK IN SOUTH DAKOTA

Thursday, August 21, 1806

The camp of the previous night had been very near the state line and at 8 o'clock this morning, just after reentering South Dakota they met three Frenchmen coming up the river from the Rees to the Mandans. One of these has been identified as Francis Rivet, who became a pioneer of Oregon, another is called Greinyea or Grienway and is believed to have been Philip Degie; they were accompanied by a young lad who formerly belong to the Northwest Company, (Canadian). The boy desired passage to St. Louis and was permitted to accompany the party. They informed the captains that the Ree chief who had accompanied Warfington and his party to the States in the spring of 1805 had died when upon the return trip, at the Sioux river. At 11:30 they came in sight of the upper Ree town and fired a salute of four guns. The salute was promptly returned from the village and was met by two of the three chiefs recognized by the Government when going up. The third was not there and I think was the chief who went to the States and died while returning to his people but there is some doubt of this. During their absence a new prophet had arisen in Israel and Lightning Crow gracefully presented Grey Eyes a young man of 32, who the old chief said was a greater man than himself and to whom he

had given the flag and medal with which Lewis and Clark had sealed his acknowledged chieftainship in 1804. Grey Eyes was absent when they went up. It would be most interesting to know just what sort of political revolution had occurred in the capital of the Aricaras in the intervening period. In any event Lightning Crow gave over to his successor in office all pretensions. Greyeyes was destined to become an important personage in the dealing of Uncle Sam with the Rees. He was the leader in the revolt of 1807, officious in the trafficking of the Astorians in 1811, incited the massacre of Ashley's men in June, 1823, and was himself killed by the first shot fired by Leavenworth in August, 1823, in his expedition to punish the Rees for the Ashley massacre.

The captains felt called upon to rebuke the Rees for violating their promise to them and making war upon the Mandans. Greyeyes attempted to explain the matter from the Ree standpoint, a chief of the Cheyenne's who was present volunteered the view that both Rees and Mandans were at fault, Big White the Mandan took a hand, or rather a voice in the argument and instantly the assembly was in a state of turmoil quite alarming. Captain Clark promptly took control of affairs. "I inform the Ricaras of this village that the Mandans had opened their ears to and followed our councils, that this chief was on his way to see their Great Father the P. of U. S. and was under our protection that if any enjorey was done to him we would all die to a man. I told the Ricaras that they had told us lies, they promised to be at peace with the mandans and Menetarres, that our back was Scercely turned before the went to war and Killd them and Stole their Horses & c." The captain's firmness seemed to have quieted the disturbance. "The Chief then envited me and the Mandan Chief to his house to talk there." They continued to visit with the Rees until 11:00 o'clock on the morning of the 22, when they set out down the river. Their conversations and councils were carried on through Joseph Garreau who had lived with them since 1792 having at that early date been induced to settle in South Dakota to take advantage of our liberal exemption laws, much to the chagrin of his numerous creditors in St. Louis and Canada. The captains es-

pecially counceled the Rees and Mandans to unite in opposition to the Sioux, for whom the voyageurs possessed no noticeable love or confidence.

Friday, August 22, 1806

They found here one of the numerous LaRoches, who as a boatman had accompanied them in 1804 as far as the Mandans. He had spent all of his wages and was literally upon his uppers. He asked to be allowed to work his way down to St. Louis and was permitted to do so. This old Canadian family has had a hand in most enterprises in the west at least from 1750 forward and many mixed bloods bearing the name are found in South Dakota as well as elsewhere in the region.

They were now almost entirely dependent upon wild game for their living and were grateful for a quantity of corn given them by the Rees. While the captains were at the Rees, Drewyer, the Fields brothers and two other men were sent down to Blue Blanket Island to hunt. Being in the Sioux country and having information that the Sioux were unfriendly they did not venture to hunt elsewhere than on the Islands. When the party came to them the hunters reported there was no game on the Island. Their bedding was wet and moulding and at the mouth of Grand river they stopped several hours to spread the blankets to dry and consequently made but 17 miles before going into camp at Sundown on a bar just below Blue Blanket Island. Captain Clark closes his journal this evening with this happy note:

"I am happy to have it in my power to say that my worthy friend Capt. Lewis is recovering fast, he walked a little today for the first time. I have discontinued the tent in the hole the ball came out."

The word tent, though uncommon is a good surgical term and means a roll of lint, linen or other absorbent substance used to keep open the wound.

Saturday, August 23, 1806.

A gale blew up the river making progress extremely slow and at 11:30 the river became so rough that they were obliged to land and wait until 3:00 p. m. when a shower passed

over after which the wind "lay" and they went on. When they stopped John Shields and Jo and Reub Fields were sent on to the next bottom to hunt. "we proceded on Slowly and landed in the Bottom (opposite Steamboat creek). The hunters had killed 3 elk and 3 deer the deer was pore and Elk not fat had the fleece & brought in. the Musqueters large and very trublesom." They made forty miles for the day and camped on a sand bar not far from Forest City. They do not note their courses upon the return and so, unless some natural land mark is noted it is more difficult to determine the exact location of the camps than upon the up trip. Captain Lewis continued to improve.

Sunday, August 24, 1806

They made 43 miles and camped for the night on the north side of the gorge of Little Bend, four miles east of the Valle trading house. The captain notes that the gorge is $1\frac{3}{4}$ mile through and 20 miles arond the bend." They got no game that day.

Monday, August 25, 1806

"Shields, Collins, Shannon and the two fieldses," were routed out long before day and ordered to take the two canoes and go on round the bend to Cheyenne Island, on the South Side and hunt until the main party came along. The captains stopped at the mouth of the Cheyenne river and took a meridian observation but unfortunately did not deduce it. These observations were usually if not always taken by Captain Lewis who learned the trick from Dr. Barton. The last previous observation was taken on Marias river before Lewis was shot. The observation at the Cheyenne was an evidence of his improved condition. The hunters found no game on Cheyenne Island and had gone on down river and the boats missed them. When at 5:00 p. m. no sign of them had been discovered the party in much concern camped in the timber just above Oahe. Drewyer providentially killed a deer close by the camp, but there was every evidence that the Sioux had recently hunted the section and driven the game away. They examined the Ree village site near by.

Shields had returned and they anxiously awaited "the 2 fields and Shannon."

Tuesday, August 26, 1806

"Shannon & the 2 fields came up at sunrise and we set out, they had killed only 2 small deer one of which they had eat." At 8 o'clock they had arrived at the place opposite Snake Butte where the council of 1804 was held and at nine, passed the mouth of Bad river. They indicated no desire to tarry in this region but hurrying along reached the Loisel House, near DeGray at 5:00 p. m. and found it unchanged. Fires had recently burned in the fireplaces. They went on and camped on the west shore at the mouth of Dry Creek in Lyman county. "Capt. L is Still on the Mending hand he walks a little. Discontinued the tent in the hole where the ball went in."

Wednesday, August 27, 1806

They went around Big Bend and camped on the island at the lower reach. Their meat was exhausted and though the hunters worked diligently they secured nothing until evening when they got two cows, a bull and a calf. Captain Clark went to help butcher the buffalo leaving his patient to his own devices. Lewis took a long walk on the sand bar, exhausting his strength and as a result passed a very bad night.

Thursday, August 28, 1806

They were reluctant to leave the region without specimens of the mule deer and antelope, "neither of which we have either skins or scellitens of." A large party of hunters were sent out on both sides to hunt for these animals while the boat crew went on and camped at the old "Pleasant Camp," of 1804 at Oacoma which they reached at noon. By sunset all of the hunters were in but without any specimens of the game so much desired.

Friday, August 29, 1806

Still determined to secure specimens if possible the hunters were started early down both shores, while Reub Fields in a small canoe kept pace with them in the river, to secure any game they might kill. The main party remained

in camp until 10 o'clock and set out passing White river at noon and making 20 miles camped near and below Dry Island. They got two elk and saw the prairies fairly covered with buffalo, but got no specimens desired. Jo Fields wounded a female mule deer but was unable to bring it in, owing to the lateness of the hour.

Saturday, August 30, 1806

At day break Joe Fields was sent back to get on the track of the wounded deer and bring it in if possible. Reub and George Shannon were left with a canoe upon a sand bar near by to pick him up when he returned to the river and the main party went on. Soon Capt. Clark accompanied by three hunters set out on the east shore to supply the larder with fat meat, and hunted the bottom in the vicinity of the Austin-Spaulding Ranch. Out of a plum thicket two big buck elk bounded and the boys got both of them. Capt. Clark ran down to the shore and stopped the boats and they brought in the meat which was fat and fine. The plums were most delicious and they laid by a good supply of them. This delayed them two hours. They had in the morning arranged a rendezvous on the west bank at the point of the bend near the southeast corner of Lyman county and they went on and came to this point "to wait for the 2 fields and Shannon." Clark at once observed several men on horse back, across the river on the Bijou Hills, to the northeast. With the assistance of his spy glass he ascertained they were Indians and a short time later twenty of them appeared on a hill near the river and immediately thereafter 80 or 90 others came out of the woods on the shore all armed with fusees and bows. They fired a salute, which the voyageurs returned. Not wishing to take any risks Captain Clark took three Frenchmen in a canoe and went out to a sand bar near enough to the east shore so that they could be heard across the channel. One Frenchman spoke Ree, another Omaha and one a little Sioux. Clark told the man who spoke Omaha to address them but got no response; he next tried the Ree language upon them with the same negative results, but when the Sioux was attempted they answered at once that they were

the Teton Band of Black Buffalo, from Bad River; the same they had met near Fort Pierre in 1804. The whites had no stomach for this crew but Clark could not let the opportunity escape him to let them know his opinion of them. His own story tells best what he said:

"I told those Indians that they had been deaf to our councils and ill treated us as we ascended this river two years past, that they had abused all the whites who had visited them since. I believed them to be bad people & should not suffer them to cross to the Side on which the party lay, and directed them to return with their band to their camp, that if any of them come near our camp we Should kill them certainly. I left them on the bank and returned to the party and examined the arms &c those Indians seeing some corn in the canoe requested some of it which I refused being determined to have nothing to do with those people. Several others swam across one of which understood Spanish, and as our Spanish interpreter was a very good one we had it in our power to inform what we wished. I told this man to inform his nation that we had not forgot their treatment to us as we passed up this river &c that they had treated all the white people who had visited them very badly; robbed them of their goods, and had wounded one man whom I had Seen. we viewed them as bad people and no more traders would be Suffered to come to them, and whenever the white people wished to visit the nations above they would come sufficiently Strong to whip any villainous party who dare to oppose them and words to the same purpose. I also told them that I was informed that a part of all their bands were going to war against the Mandans &c, and that they would be well whipped as the Mandans & Minutaries & had plenty of Guns Powder and ball, and we had given them a cannon to defend themselves. and directed them to a return from the Sand bar and inform their chiefs what we had said to them, and to keep away from the river or we Should kill every one of them &c &c. those fellows requested to be allowed to come across and make comrades which we

positively refused and I directed them to return immediately which they did and after they had informed the Chiefs &c. as I suppose what we had said to them, they all set out on their return to their camps back of a high hill. 7 of them halted on the top of the hill and black guarded us, told us to come across and they would kill us all &c of which we took no notice. we all this time were extremely anxious for the arrival of the 2 fields & Shannon whome we had left behind, and were some what consx. as to their Safty. to our great joy those men hove in Sight at 6 P. M. Jo. Fields had killed 3 black tail or mule deer. we then Set out, as I wished to see what those Indians on the hill would act, we steared across near the opposit Shore, this notion put them some agitation as to our intentions, some set out on top of the hill and one man walked down the hill to meet us and invited us to land to which invitation I paid no kind of attention. this man I knew to be one who had in the fall of 1804 accompanied us 2 days and is said to be the friend to the white people. after we passed. him he returned on the top of the hill and gave 3 strokes with the gun (on the earth—this is swearing by the earth) he had in his hand this I am informed is a great oath among the indians. we proceeded on down about 6 miles and encamped on a large Sand bar in the middle of the river about 2 miles above our encampment on Mud Island on the 10th Septr. 1804 haveing made 22 miles only to Day. Saw Several indians at a distance this evening viewing us. our encampment of this evening was a very disagreeable one, bleak exposed to the winds, and the sand wet. I pitched on this Situation to prevent being disturbed by those Sioux in the course of the night as to avoid the musquetors. Killed 9 whistling squirrels."

No sooner did "the 2 fields and Shannon" hove in sight, than the expedition was again on its way and although it was already 6 o'clock in the evening, they put fifteen miles behind them before they camped for the night on a bleak sand bar in the middle of the river opposite the mouth of

LeCompte Creek, Charles Mix county, but not withstanding their speed they were constantly made aware that they were kept under surveillance by the Sioux as heads might be seen peering over every hill top and occasionally a party would appear on some eminence.

Sunday, August 31, 1806.

It was a most unhappy night. Not only were they disturbed by the proximity of their enemies which kept them alert, but at 11 o'clock a terrific thunderstorm, accompanied by a gale struck them and in their defenseless situation played havoc with their shipping. Two of the canoes in which were Ordway, Big White, Jausaume, the squaws and Willard and Wiser were quite blown away but safely brought up on the east shore. Pryor followed them in another canoe and succeeded in navigating them back to the bar. At daylight with their guns primed, they again set off, a party of Sioux being sighted on the eastern hills to witness their departure. The Sioux kept them in sight until 9 o'clock when they gave up the chase. At four o'clock they passed the tower, nor did they slacken the pace until they were at the mouth of Chouteau Creek where they camped having come 70 miles since morning.

Monday, September 1, 1806.

After a night spent largely in fighting mosquitos they got off at dawn. The Fields and Shannon stopped on Ponca Island to try to get some fresh meat. The remainder of the party went along and when a couple of miles below the Niobrara nine Indians appeared on the Dakota shore. The whites thought they were the Tetons overtaking them and were confirmed in the belief when Pierre Cruzette tried his stock of Sioux upon them and got no response. Again "the 2 fields & Shannon," were behind and in peril and the Captains sought a good defensive position and landed. A quarter of an hour later they heard a volley of gun shots and feeling sure the hunters were being attacked Clark took fifteen of the best men and set back on shore at double quick, while Lewis, still scarcely able to walk hobbled up the bank with the remainder ready for war. When they arrived where they could get a

view of the situation the Indians calmly stood where they had left them watching the bobbing of an empty cask which the whites had thrown in the water and at which the Sioux could not resist the impulse to take a shot. The canoe with the hunters was seen coming on a mile above. Captain Clark walked up to the Indians who were standing on the levee at what is now the village of Running Water, South Dakota and gave them his hand. They proved to be a party of Yanktons among whom was a brother of Pierre Dorian's wife and others whom they had met at Calumet Bluff in 1804. They conversed with them until the canoe arrived learning that Old Dorian had successfully performed his mission of conducting the Yankton chiefs to Washington and had seasonably returned them to their people and that likewise a regular trading house for the Yanktons had been established on the Nebraska shore below the Sioux river. They got an elk at Bon Homme Island, and camped for the night on a bar directly in front of Calumet Bluff and observed that the flag staff which they had raised two years previously was still standing.

Tuesday, September 2, 1806.

At 8 o'clock the next morning they reached the mouth of Jim river and just below it on the Dakota side they found the remains of a trading house which had been built and abandoned during their absence. This house was built by Robert McClellan who spent the winter of 1804 and 1805 with the Yanktons. The wind blew so strongly up river that they were obliged to lay by and Captain Clark took 8 men and hunted buffalo on the north side, getting two cows. They were three miles from the river, but they butchered the animals and each man carried as much meat as he could lug back to the boats. Toward evening they got off again and made 22 miles from the Calumet bluffs for the day's run camping on the Dakota side directly south of Gayville, Yankton county.

Wednesday, September 3, 1806.

They made good progress and at 4 p. m. arrived at Elk-point where they met James Aird, a Scotch trader, bound to the Sioux, from Prairie Du Chien. He was associated with

Robert Dickson and their permit was for a single season's trade. They encamped at once and remained visiting with Aird until 8 the next morning. He brought to them the first news of any moment which they had had from home for more than two years and they eagerly drank in the story of the times. Their first inquiry was for the health of President Jefferson. Captain Clark crowds into a paragraph the important details he brought them:

"This Gentleman informed us of maney changes & misfortunes which had taken place in the Illinois amongst others the loss of Mr. Cady Chouteau's house and furniture by fire. for this misfortune of our friend Chouteau I feel myself very much concern &C. he also informed us that Genl Wilkinson was the governor of the Louisiana and at St. Louis. 300 of the American Troops had been cantuned on the Missouri a few miles above its mouth. Some disturbance with the Spaniards in the Nackatosh Country is the cause of their being called down to that Country, the Spaniards had taken one of the U. States frigates in the Mediteranean. Two British Ships of the line had fired on an American ship in the port of New York and killed the Cpts. brother. 2 Indians had been hung in St. Louis for murder and several others in jale. and that Mr. Burr & Genl. Hambleton fought a Duel, the latter was killed & c. & C.,"

A heavy rain came on in the evening and the captains were happy to shelter themselves in Mr. Aird's tent. They had not enjoyed the luxury of a roof since leaving Fort Clatsop on the Pacific.

Thursday, September 4, 1806.

They exchanged some corn with Mr. Aird for flour and bought some needed supplies from him paying him in orders on St. Louis. He proved a most agreeable gentleman, quite sustaining the reputation which followed him while he lived. At 8 o'clock they got away and passed out of South Dakota at 11: o'clock a. m. and reached St. Louis without notable adventure, all quite well, at noon on Tuesday, September 23rd, 1806.

On to Washington.

After some time spent with their friends in St. Louis, where they were feted and feasted, the captains set out for Washington, taking with them Big White. They were received with much eclat by Jefferson and his friends and they were the lions of the winter at the national capital. Scarcely less than the honors shown the captains were the attentions paid Big White, who dressed in the height of American fashion of the day was received every where that the first gentlemen of the land were welcome.

Return of Big White.

It was a part of the undertaking of the captains that the Mandan should be safely returned to his people the following season and consequently he was returned to St. Louis early in the spring of 1807 and Sergeant Pryor was detailed with a party of soldiers to conduct the chief to his home. In this party was the boy George Shannon who now was 20 years of age.

Late in May the party set out from St. Louis; there were in it Big White, his wife and one child. Rene Jessaume, his wife and one child; Nathaniel Pryor, now promoted to the rank of Ensign and 11 privates; Twenty-four Sioux Indians visiting St. Louis in charge of Old Dorian who were returning to Yankton at this time escorted by Lieutenant Joseph Kimball; A trading party of ten men bound for Yankton, under young Pierre Dorian, and a party of thirty-two men under Pierre Chouteau, Sr., one interpreter, one hunter and three hired boatmen; all told the party was ninety-five strong, there being 72 men besides the Indians.

At Yankton Kimball and Dorian, with the Sioux dropped out, but fifty men remained in the party that proceeded up river. They arrived at the lower town of the Rees, at 9 o'clock September 9, 1807. They were greeted with several gun shots aimed directly at the boats. Old Dorian asked them what they meant by such conduct and they in reply invited the party to land and secure a supply of provisions. The Rees had been so courteous the previous year that the whites were entirely off their guard and came to. They were

at once informed that the Mandans and Rees were at war and that several of the Teton bands were in league with the Rees and were then in the village. A Mandan woman, captive among the Rees came on board and informed them that the Rees had turned against the whites. That Manuel Lisa had recently gone up the river and that they stopped him and compelled him to give them a large portion of his stock and that they would have killed him and his men except that they had learned from him that the Chouteau party would soon arrive with a great stock of goods and they feared if they killed Lisa the news of it would reach the second party and they would turn back. Pryor at once barricaded Big White and his family in the cabin and went on to the upper towns. He was compelled to land there to pick up Dorian and Jessaume who had gone by land from the lower village. The denizens of the upper towns promptly informed them that they proposed to detain Chouteau. They seized the cable to his boat, proposing to attack the party where there were no soldiers. They ordered Pryor to go on. Chouteau tried to compromise by promising to leave them a trader and half of his goods, but they were confident they could take the whole supply.

Grey Eyes then came to Pryor's boat and demanded that Big White go ashore with him. This demand Pryor peremptorily refused. The Indians demanded a surrender of all of the arms and ammunition. Grey Eyes tore the medal given him by Lewis and Clark from his neck and threw it to the ground. One of Chouteau's men was struck down with a gun. Raising a general war whoop they fired upon the whites, hiding behind a fringe of willows fifty yards from the shore. Pryor opened upon them with his entire force and a red hot battle was fought for fifteen minutes, but the force of Indians was overwhelming and the complete destruction of the whites seemed imminent. Pryor ordered a retreat, but it was found that Chouteau's barge was fast on a sand bar and the men had to get out under the fire of the enemy and drag it off. At length they got loose and floated down the current, the Indians maintaining the fight for more than an hour. Black Buffalo and his band of Tetons from Bad river were present

and doubtless incited the Rees to hostility in order to revenge the slight put upon them by Captain Clark when returning home the previous year. Black Buffalo himself was severely wounded in the engagement but recovered. Three of Chouteau's men were killed, one mortally and three others severely wounded. Three of Pryor's men were wounded. One of these was George Shannon and another Rene Jessaume. Pryor proposed to undertake to conduct Big White home by land, but the chief would not consent and they returned to St. Louis.

Poor Shannon was in a desperate condition. The crude surgery of the upper Missouri was performed with unsterilized instruments. Long before they reached the lower river he was burning up with a fever induced by blood poisoning. At St. Charles he was taken from the boat to the hospital at the new military post, where Dr. Saugrin, the Frenchman who made the thermometer was post surgeon. No sooner did he see the poor suffering boy than he sent post haste to St. Louis for young Dr. Farrar to come to his assistance. Together they performed the first thigh operation in the Mississippi valley and brought their patient through to become a valuable citizen.

Big White remained in St. Louis until 1809 when he was returned safely to his home by the Missouri Fur Company.

INDEX

	Page		Page
Abbott, Charles L.....	46	Armstrong, Moses	8
Abeel, Orlin A.....	20	Thomas H., sketch.....	323
Academy, Charles Mix Co.....	395	Ayers, George	7
Adams, unidentified, Ft. Pierre	167, 227	Ayott, Cyprios	215
Adler & Ohlman, Yankton mer- chants	398	B	
Agaard, Louis	224	Bacon, Lieut. J. K., sketch....	308
Ainsworth, Cephas W.....	8	Stationed at Vermilion....	267
Ainsworth, Frank	7	Pursues Wiseman murderers	268
Aird, James, trader.....	592	At Whiteswan, 1863.....	269
Albright, L. B.....	7	Mentioned	243, 244, 273, 290
Alderson, Richard, Dakota sol- dier	312	Bachelor, steamboat sunk....	396
Aldrich, Irwin Dayton.....	7	Bad Lands, North Dakota....	389
Allen, Capt. James, sketch....	347	Bailey, Fred W.....	41
Writes to Kearney.....	357	Baird, unidentified	114
Allen, John E., sketch.....	312-323	Baker, Lieut. David J.....	475
Allen, Oliver, sketch.....	323	Ball playing	107
Alseth, John L., death.....	33	Ball Thomas, death of.....	20
Alvaripe, unidentified	118	Bailou Genealogy	44
Alvord, C. W., Kaskaskia papers	71	Bank deposits, 1916.....	17
American Ancestry	36	Bank deposits, 1917.....	26
American Sugar Co. at Belle Fourche	22	Bank deposits since 1898....	17
Amidon, Judge, killed.....	224	Batterton, J. J.....	7, 11
Ange, Henry, sketch.....	121	Barava, Johart (Barada)....	217, 218
Mentioned	124	Bercier, Antoine, note.....	186
Anderson, Andrew O., Vote of..	11	Barker, unidentified	221
Anderson, John Q.....	7	Barney, Com. Joshua.....	44
Anderson, Michael, sketch....	311	Barron, Charles H., death of..	33
Anderson, O. D., for Congress..	11	Barry, John Stetson.....	38
Andrews, Cornelius, sketch....	312	Bary, Joseph, note.....	96, 234
Annual Review, 1916.....	10	Bartine, John G., vote for....	11
1917	23	Bauvois, note	222
Antelope Creek, (Cabri).....	99	Bayless, genealogy	44
Antelope, steamboat burned...	395	Bean, John L., note.....	135
Apple Creek, North Dakota....	96, 145	Beauregard, Mrs. Nettie H....	83
Appropriations for 1917.....	25	Portrait	82
Ash, Ben C.....	7	Beckwith (Beckwourth), James, note	162
Ash, Henry C.....	395	Portrait	162
Ash Hotel, Yankton.....	301	Beebe, Marcus B.....	8
Ashley, Rev. Edward.....	7	Beecher Island	55
Assessment, 1916	13	Beeman, Frank, unidentified...	191
1917	26	Beemer, unidentified	139
Assinaboine, Steamboat	237	Beet sugar at Belle Fourche..	22
Aten, Judge William H.....	84	Belcour, Siprian	150, 237
Austin, Horace J., sketch....	310-246	Belding, John P., death.....	33
Austin, John O.....	40	Bell for Fort Pierre described..	79
Audubon's Missouri River Jour- nal	71	Belle Fourche Bee, camp story.	65
Automobile licenses 1917.....	30	Belle Fourche project.....	22
Arend, Henry, sketch.....	323	Belle Fourche river.....	50
Arend, Mrs. Henry.....	335	Beil, John	312
Archembeau, F., note.....	214	Bellows, Ben, sketch.....	312
		Wounded at Kill Deer....	283
		George, sketch	323
		G. W., sketch	312
		Henry, sketch	312

	Page		Page
Bellehumuer, Simon, sketch....	160	Boriser, Victor, note.....	216
Belgian relief funds.....	31	Bouchet, Joseph, sketch.....	121
Betz, John, sketch.....	33	Bouis, A. R., note.....	177
Heroic conduct of.....	285	Mentioned	203
Bellevue, Pilcher's Fort.....	131	Boundaries of South Dakota...	380
Benedict, Willis E., death.....	33	Bourbost, August, unidentified..	166
Benedict, W. W., sketch.....	313	Bourdan, J., unidentified.....	203
Benjamin, David, sketch.....	309	Bouret, Cosac, sketch.....	247
Bennett, Cassius C.....	7	Mentioned	248
Benoist (Benway), Francois,		Bourk, unidentified	118
note	201	Bower, J. C., death of.....	33
Benway, Joseph	234	Boyer, Baptiste	142
Berg, Otto C.....	8	Mentioned	235
Berger, Old, note.....	213	Boyle, John, with Lewis and	
Bergeron, Toussaint, note.....	208	Clark	521
Bernabai, Joseph	234	Boyles, Mrs. S. A., death of....	20
Bernabe	214	Brackett, Major, command at	
Bertrand, Edward, note.....	175	Ft. Sully	458
Berthune, Joseph	235	Brackett's Battalion	273
Bessan, Antoine	237	Bradley, Henry, sketch.....	247
Biennial meeting	9	Bradley, (John) George, sketch	213
Big Bend explored by Lewis		Bradley, John, sketch.....	223
and Clark	558	Bramble, Downer T.....	242
Bigelow, George M., death.....	33	Branch genealogy	244
Bigelow, Gilbert B., sketch....	323	Brauch, Emiel	8
Bigon, unidentified	166	Brasseau, Joseph, note.....	140
Big Sioux River, Le Seuer at...	337	Mentioned	235, 237
Described	355	Bratton, William, sketch....	518, 525
Big White's return.....	594	Bream, Charles	274
Bijou Hills	145	Bridger, James	209
Bijou, Joseph, note.....	160	Portrait	232
Billinghurst, Charles B.....	6, 7, 9	Briot, V. M.....	237
Bird, interpreter, note.....	155	Broadway, Yankton	242
Bird, James E., vote for.....	11	Brokenleg, an Indian.....	136
Bissonette, note	202	Brookings, Wilmot W.....	395
Mentioned	234, 237	Bross & Leeper, Fort Pierre	
Bixby postoffice	57	merchants	398
Black Buffalo, Minneconjous		Brown, James M.....	7
chief	566	Brown, Major Joseph's steam	
Black, carpenter on Kate Swin-		wagon	472
ney	394	Brown, Samuel J.....	7, 389
Blake, Charles B., death of....	220	Brown, Will C., death of.....	20
Blegstad, Ole, death of.....	20	Brown, William L., unidentified	159
Bordieu, Joseph	286	Drowned at Farm Island...	165
Boe, for Railroad Commissioner	212	Bruguier, Theophile, note.....	181
Boettcher, Fred W.....	7	Mentioned	268
Bogart, Catlin's companion....	159	Bruned, Christian C., sketch....	311
Boisseau, O. G.....	7	Buffalo killed east of Vermilion	269
Boissert, Francois, unidentified	210	Buffalo, great herds, 1864.....	295
Bone Necklace, speech of.....	466	On Big Sioux.....	355
Bone dry prohibition	26	In eastern Dakota.....	386
Bondieu, Prudent, stole skiff...	166	Buffalo Republic	389
Bon Homme settlement.....	245	Buffalo Bill's Bluff.....	475
Bonnin, Gertrude, note.....	229	Buffalo at Burbank.....	526
Booge, H. D., death of.....	20	Burke, Charles H.....	6, 7
Bordeau, Jacques	37	Burkhart, Robert	311
Michael, note	205	Bullhead, Lieut., killed.....	484

	Page		Page
Bullock, Seth	7	Cerre, G. P., with Prince of	
Bullock, Col.	273	Wartenburg	100
Bunn, Romanzo M.....	390	Drip's interpreter	195
Burleigh, Dr. W. A., mentioned		Cerre, Pascal, dines at Fort	
.....250, 396,	397	Pierre	98
Campaign in 1864.....	301	Mentioned.....112, 118, 125,	237
Note on Indian war.....	421	Cerre's house, note.....	122
Burleigh, Walter A., Jr.....	397	Cerre's establishment	95
Burleigh's farm at Bon Homme	301	Chamberlain, Milleau	38
Burt, Albert W., death of....	33	Chamberlain, Will, vote for...	12
		Champaigne, note	211
C		Champenois, note	165
Cabanne, origin	70	Pierre	235
Mentioned	131	Chancellor, steamboat, lost....	527
Cable, David B., death of.....	20	Chantier Creek Navy Yard.....	95
Cabri Creek, (Antelope Creek)..	99	Charbonneau, Toussaint, note...	160
Cadot family, note.....	208	With Lewis and Clark.....	520
Caldwell, C. C., vote.....	12	Chardon, F. A., sketch.....	110
Inaugurated	24	Mentioned.....111, 124, 139,	237
Calumet Bluff camp.....	534	Charles X dethroned.....	145
Camp Crook, Omaha.....	23	Chatterton, Henry, note.....	224
Camp, Wm. M., goes to Slim		Chatilion, Pierre	235
Buttes	46	Cheever, Walter M.....	7
Mentioned	48, 49,	Chemaur, Ivan	237
Discovery of battlefield....	55	Chenise, partner in French com-	
Portrait	66	pany	113
Campaigning with Crook, Gen.		Chenise	144
King's book	50	Chesnie, M. Antoine, note.....	129
Campbell, Colin, sketch.....	115	Chesin, note	129
Mentioned		Cheyenne Post	234
129, 154, 160, 221, 222, 231,	237	Cheyenne river trade.....	93
Campbell, David, sketch.....	313	Chilcott, Ellery V.	7
Campbell, Gen. C. T.....	283	Chittenden, Colonel Henry M.,	
Campbell, Louis C., death of...	33	sketch	393
Campbell, Robert	167	History of Fur Trade.....	71
Portrait	116	Choquette, Julian	142
Cancellais, Michael, note....	187, 235	Choteau family, origin.....	70
Candaire, Baptiste	337	Choteau, Charles P.....	74
Capitol Commissioner's report..	31	Pierre, Jr., portrait.....	204
Calhoun, Lieut. Pat, sketch....	351	Mentioned	73, 87
Carlisle, Martin G.....	7, 9	Choteau, Pierre, III.....	8
Cailot, Baptiste	237	Pierre M.....	392
Carney genealogy	44	Clark, Malcom	213
Carrier, Michael, note.....	237	T. Elwood, sketch.....	322
Carnee	143	William, sketch.....	517
Carrol 2, steamboat burned....	397	William (Grayhead)	132
Cartier, Leander, sketch.....	324	Claude, John, sketch.....	313
Case, L. W.....	302	Clay, M. J.....	8
Catch the Bear, Sioux chief....	485	Clement, (Claymore) Basil, por-	
Catlin, George, at Fort Pierre..	159	trait	226
Quoted	387	Clement, Henry	175
Cauffman, John, unidentified....	324	Clermont, New Hampshire.....	38
Caurrier, Chevalier	235	Clinton papers, George.....	41
Cavalier, Baptiste	237	Clyde, Sherman, sketch.....	324
Cedar Island, location of.....	99	Cody, Camp, troops at.....	23
Cerre family, sketch.....	97	Cody, W. F., Buffalo Bill.....	475
Cerre, C. V.....	159	Coffield, Edward P.....	62

	Page		Page
DeLane, mentioned	136	Pierre, sketch	520
Deleware genealogy	43	Sent to Washington....	543
DeLude, Antoine, unidentified...	165	Mentioned	150
Deman, note	215	Dormidy, James, sketch.....	324
Demeray, Louis	159, 161	Doud, Benjamin F.....	471
Deming, New Mexico.....	23	Diary	471
Demsey, unidentified private...	263	George W., portrait.....	470
Denoyer, Cyprian	144, 149	Douglas, Judge Walter B., note	
Dent, Elizabeth, death of.....	20	on Cerres	98
Departments created	25	Portrait	82
Depont, Louis	234	Dougherty, John	237
Derain, unidentified	136	Dowdell, Robert E., address....	9
Deroyer, unidentified	111	Draft of 1917.....	23
Derome, mentioned	136	Dragoons, History of.....	347
Deroy, Maxan	235	Drake, Samuel G.....	37
Derr, Homer N.....	530	Drips, Andrew, sketch.....	169
Derosier, Baptiste, unidentified.	210	Portrait	168
Noel	237	Commissioned as Indian	
Derouin, Etienne	235	agent	170
Derouis, Joseph	237	Instructions	173
Derussey, J. D.....	398	Establish agency at Fort	
Desautel (Deshotel)	212, 231	Pierre	173
Deschamps, family history.....	222, 237	Sergeant J. H. quoted..	265, 394
Descharette, not identified.....	152	Droppers, Garrett	7
Des Coteaux, Michael, note....	194	Droulliard, Geo., with Lewis	
De Smet, Father P. J.....	71	and Clark	520
Des Moines River.....	358	Drum, Col.	477
Desnoyer, Sylvester	234	Drum, Estalla, portrait.....	82
Note	144	Duchonquette, Brasseau.....	150, 235, 237
Desev, Louis H., sketch.....	324	Jean	236
Desond, Baptiste	151	John	237
Dessant, Louis	237	Ducharme, Francois	166
Dewell, Samuel G., death.....	21	Dudley, Edward C.....	242
Dewitt & Co., Indian traders...	398	Duesche, Auguste	237
Dexter, Franklin Bowditch....	41	Duly, Mrs. Wm. P., Shetak cap-	
Digman, Lawrence, sketch.....	324	tive	262
Digri, Charles	237	Dumond, unidentified	140
D'Iberville, report	339	Dunlevy, William Peake.....	7
Dickson, Thomas.....	135, 235, 237	Dupree, Frederick, note.....	224
Dickson, William, note.....	100	Buffalo herd	392
Mentioned	117, 135, 157, 237	Durand, G. H.....	394
Mrs. William, ill.....	125	Thomas	121
Dickson's uncle, a Santee.....	125	Durant	127
Dillon, Charles Hall.....	11	Dusman, Alexis, unidentified...	128
Dimick, Geo. W.....	324	Dyar genealogy	44
Dirks, Peter B., death of.....	21		
Ditillier, unidentified	143		
Dodge, General G. M., letter to			
Pope	432		
Dog, an Indian	165		
Dole, Wm. P.....	409		
Doolittle, Senator James R.....	409		
Dorian, Baptiste, kills Indian			
horsethief	160		
Note	99		
Mentioned	124, 152, 237		
Dorian, Paul	127, 146		

E

Ely, John K., sketch.....	325
Early Western Travels, by	
Thwaites	71
Eastman, David	7
Ebbits wintering ground.....	173
Ede, Ernest D., death.....	33
Edgar, Mrs., heroine of stockade	256
Edgemont oil well.....	32
Edmunds, Governor Newton....	409
Letter to Pope.....	414

	Page		Page
Letter to Dole.....	415	Fergen, M., for state treasurer.	12
Egan, G. W., candidate for gov- ernor	10	Fessependen, Wm. H.....	7
Elk Point named.....	525	Fetcoe, pilot on Kate Swinney.	394
Elk Point on return trip.....	592	Fields, Joseph and Ruben, sketches	518
Ellerman, Herman	7	Fielner, Capt. John, killed.....	275
Elliott, James D.....	7	Fielner's murderers beheaded..	476
Ellis, Joseph, sketch.....	254, 310	Fifer, Gabriel, note.....	151
Ellingson, Neils, sketch.....	314	Fillian, Iran	237
Elrod, Samuel H.....	7	Filling, Nicholas, sketch.....	325
Emanuel Creek discovered....	548	Fillion, unidentified	161
Employees, American Fur Co..	234	Finch, Nelson L.....	7
Englesby, Gen. Charles H., or- ganizes First Cavalry.....	24	Financial statement	5
English, A. M., sketch.....	309	Fisk, Jim, a financier.....	245
Mentioned	240, 241	Fisk's emigrant train.....	271
Hunts buffalo at Mitchell..	266	Train held up.....	297
Goes to James River.....	267	Fisher, David, sketch.....	249
Pursues Wiseman murderers	269	Fisher, Michael, sketch.....	314
Chases Fielner's murderers.	377	Discharged for disability...	305
Posts heads of Indians on poles	278	Fitsgibbon, John	325
Detailed for hazardous service	288	Fitzpatrick, Sublette & Bridger	185
History First Cavalry.....	307	Fjeltvet, Harmon P., sketch....	325
Enuth, Iagen, unidentified....	214	Mentioned	314
Equal suffrage defeated.....	11	Ford, John O., sketch.....	314
Estis, Benj. F., sketch.....	270, 309	Fonda genealogy	45
Evans, Mrs. Fred, died.....	34	Fort Defiance, near Big Bend...	559
Evans, J. W.....	253	Fort George, bad conduct at...	183
Ewert, Adolph W., Treas. Rural Credits	25	Fort Pierre Journals, history of	81
Executive Committee	6	Letter books	69
Expeditions in Dakota, 1844-5..	347	Fort Pierre occupied.....	154
		During the outbreak.....	260
F		Fort John, note.....	177
Fairbairn's Crests	36	Fox, Livingston & Co., note....	184
Fairbairn, James	37	Fort L'hullier	336
Falkenberg George	310	Fort Lookout	150
Petrified saw mill.....	290	Fort Racoon	349
Expedition to James River	266	Fort Randall, Lyman's adven- ture	241
Kills buffalo at Vermilion.	269	Fort Rice built.....	280
Falling, Nicholas	314	Fort Sully built.....	270
Fallon, Major Benj., note.....	139	Fort Tecumseh Journal.....	69
Fall River county oil prospects	33	Fort Tecumseh torn down.....	148
Family history	44	Fort Thompson built.....	264
Farm Island, visited by Lewis and Clark	562	Fort William, note.....	185
Farm products, 1916.....	19	Fort Wadsworth, conditions at.	474
1917	32	Foncannon, Charles B.....	7
Farnsworth, Samuel, sketch....	325	Fontenelle, Lucien, note.....	156
Farr, Edward P.....	6, 7	Origin	70
Farr, Mary Noyes.....	7	Business letter of.....	186
Farwell, E. A., note.....	205	Foot, Obid, sketch.....	256
Fate, W. H. H., sketch.....	325	Foster, Hattie, mentioned.....	89
Faye, Francois, unidentified....	100	Forsythe, Lieut. Geo. A.....	55
Fechet, Capt. E. G.....	481	Fowler, Lieut. J. K., resigns... 264	
		Sketch	308
		Mentioned	242, 250
		Fouchette, Andre	235
		Fowler, James W., death.....	21

	Page		Page
Fouchette, F.....	235	Gauslin, Pierre, died.....	141
Fouchette, Joseph	235	Gayville, Yankton county.....	248
Fougue, Louis	235	Gayvin, Louis, unidentified.....	100
Fournier, L., note.....	166	Gerbois, Louis	237
Founders of New England.....	37	George, Fort, mentioned.....	91
Fourth Regiment mustered out	23	Georgia genealogy	44
Flandreau Creek	359	Genealogical dictionary of New	
Fletcher, Lieut. Governor James		England	37
H., death	34	Genealogical works in state li-	
Fleury, Antoine, sketch.....	325	brary	36
Floeder, Julius	314	Gens du poche, a band of Indi-	
Floyd, Charles, sketch.....	517	ans	152
Frazer, Robert, enlists at Ree		German War, 1917.....	23
towns	577	Gerner, Carl, death of.....	21
Sketch	578	General Meade, steamboat.....	401
Frake, mason, unidentified....	216	Gibbeau, Pierre	235
Frank, H. J., death.....	21	Gibson, John, discharged for	
Frazee, John S., death.....	21	disability	305
Frederick genealogy	45	Gibson, George, sketch.....	519
French, Kathryn M.....	7	Candidate for sergeant....	525
French post, same as Papin's		Gili postoffice	529
house	95	Gillam, sketch	397
Frenier, Francois	235	Giroux (Giralt), note.....	142, 145
Jacques	235	Glass, Hugh, sketch.....	119
Louison, note	207	Glass, Wilbur S., death.....	34
Mentioned	220, 223	Glieman, Nicholas	237
Frick, Thomas, sketch.....	315	Goddard, Thomas M., death....	8
Frick, Louis, sketch.....	314	Goelet, unidentified	201
Mentioned	325	Gold, Sydney R.....	8
Frontenac, Governor of Canada	337	Golse, John N.....	234
Frost, first in 1804.....	575	Golsin, Pierre	137
First in 1844.....	360	Golpe, J. M.....	237
Funston, Camp	23	Golvin, Pierre, killed by Yank-	
Furlong, James J., sketch....	325	ton	137
Willian F., sketch.....	326	Gonpierras, unidentified	136
		Goodfellow, Ferd J.....	7
G		Goodfellow, Wm. R.....	326
Gagnim, Louis, sketch.....	107	Goodrich, Silas, sketch.....	519
Gagnier	140, 146	Good roads voted.....	11
Gaffy, Loring E.....	7	Goodykoontz, Stewart F., death	121
Gallerneau, Amable, note.....	210	Gordon, James, newspaper cor-	
Gallieau, Baptiste	151	respondent	462
Galpin, Major Charles, note....	201	Gordon, Joseph, of Burke.....	123
Gamble, Robert J.....	7	Gordon, Wm., note.....	133
Game Warden's report.....	36	Mentioned	144, 146, 148, 149
Gamlin, see Gamelin.....	107	Gore, Mahlon, death.....	21
Gandy, Harry, political faction	10	Goslin, unidentified	138
Vote for Congress.....	11	Goughran, Hugh, sketch.....	326
Gardner, Mrs. W. F., death of..	21	Grand de tour (Big Bend).....	128
Garrifille, see Gallineau.....	210	Grandieu, Ignace	237
Garreau, Pierre, sketch.....	123	Grand reach of Missouri.....	561
Portrait	164	Grant, Cardinal	156, 159
Mentioned	124, 140, 167	Grant, Ulysses S., letter from	
Gamelin, death of.....	109	Pope	425
Gass, Patrick, sketch.....	518	Gray, Benj., sketch.....	315
Elected sergeant	525	Gray, Ephriam	62
Gates, Louis, sketch.....	329	Gray, John, note.....	185

	Page		Page
Gray, Josiah	315	Harlan, James, letter from Ed-	
Green, Joseph M.....	8	munds	417
Green, Camp, at Charlotte No.		Harper, Robert T., note.....	205
Car.	22	Harrington, E., sketch.....	316
Greenway, J. B., attacked at		Harris, unidentified	208
James River	246	Hart, Benj., sketch.....	316
Gregor genealogy	45	Hart, Henry, unidentified.....	157
Gregory, John, sketch.....	326	Hart, James, death.....	21
Gray Eyes, Ree chief.....	583	Hart, John	238
Griffin, Dr. J. S., sketch.....	351	Hart, Samuel	234
Grigsby, Col. Melvin, death...	34	Harvey, Alexander, note.....	161
Grione, Louis	237	Hastings, Hugh	41
Gravelines, Joseph, with the		Hawthorne, James, unidentified	209
Rees	577	Hay, Henry	235
Groneau, Joseph	235	Hay, unidentified	118
Groton, Brown county.....	389	Mentioned	145, 151
Gudesoy, Louis	235	Hayes, John	7
Guernsey, Owen	414	Hayes genealogy	45
Guillard, Alexis	237	Hebert, David	238
Louis	237	Pierre	238
Gunderson, Harvey, death.....	34	Heck, German guide.....	266
Gunderson for auditor.....	11	Hedges, Nathaniel, killed.....	306
II			
Haafke, Wm. F.....	7	Hedger, Samuel C.....	7
Haggin, Zackariah, sketch....	315	Helgerson, G. H., Treasurer....	6
Hagman, Camp, at Redfield ...	10	Vote for	12
Haire, Rev. Robert W., death..	21	Helena, steamboat, No. 1, snag-	
Halsey, Jacob, sketch.....	101	ged	395
Writes Journal of Ft. Pierre	81	Henry, Claude M., Rural Credits	
Writes of Mandans.....	102	Com.	25
Mentioned	150, 161, 238	Herrick, George, discharged....	305
Hall's carbines	332	Herried, Charles N.....	7
Hall, Hugh, with Lewis and		Hibert, see Hebert.....	125
Clark	519	Highway Commissioner	26
Hall, John S., sketch.....	326	High water, 1844.....	357
Halley, James	7	High Pipe, Sioux chief.....	403
Hamm, Watson	553	Hipple, John E.....	7
Hamilton, C. L., photographer..	463	Hiram Wood, No. 1, steamboat	
Hamilton, J. A. (Palmer), note	135	sunk	396
Mentioned	143, 145	Pisega, South Dakota.....	53
Hamilton, J. V., letter.....	197	Hoadley, Charles J.....	41
Note	177	Hobler, P. F.....	315
Mentioned	220	Hodgkiss, W. D., note.....	189
Hamilton genealogy	25	Hoe, a Ponca chief.....	127
Hammond, James T., sketch....	326	Hogoboom, Milo C., died.....	344
Hampton, Thomas J., sketch....	326	Holbrook, Royal H.....	7
Handlin, James E.....	6	Holden, Peter F.....	309
Haney, Dick	7	Hole in the Mountain.....	349
Hanger, Sigrud O., death.....	34	Holiday, J. and R. T., note....	96
Hansen, Niels E.....	7	Holiday, Richard T.....	234
Hanson, Amond, sketch.....	311	Mentioned	
Hanson, Joseph Mills.....	7	99, 101, 114, 118, 139, 142, 143	
Hanson, Major J. R., at Snake		Hollywood station, White River	
Creek	301	trail	97
Death of	34	Hornaday, W. T., quoted....	386, 391
Mentioned	245	Horner, W. C., sketch.....	327
		Horse racing at Fort Pierre....	126
		Horton, Stephen, sketch.....	327

	Page		Page
Hosick (Hoosick), Geo., sketch.....	316	Illingworth, J. B., note.....	182
Hot bluff described.....	526	Iowa, Little	376
Hotten, John Camden.....	36	Immigrant lists	36
Hough, John, sketch.....	327	Imperial, steamboat sunk.....	395
Houck's History of Missouri....	96	Inauguration state officers....	24
House, Major A. E.....	271	Industrial Commissioners	26
Howard, Charles A.....	7	Insurance statistics	16, 29
Howard, Thomas P., with Lewis		Irish genealogy	37
and Clark	521	Iron Banks, Iowa.....	352
Hoyt, Melanchton U.....	327	Irrigation project at Belle	
Hubbard, A. W.....	562	Fourche	22
Hubbell, J. B.....	389	Irrigation amendment, approved	11
Hudson, George, unidentified....	210		
Hughes, Charles E., vote for....	11		
Hughes, Thomas P.....	36		
Humeau, Gabriel	235		
Joseph	235		
Huntoon genealogy	45		
Huncpapa's post	234		
Hutchinson, John, Sec'y. of Da-			
kota	242, 244		
Hyde, Charles L.....	7		
Hydrophobia at Fort Pierre....	147		
I			
Ida Reese, steamboat sunk.....	397		
Illustrations—			
Maps of Lewis and Clark's			
Ancient Works	544, 545		
James Beckworth	163		
Bell and Cannon, Ft. Pierre	78		
James Bridger	232		
W. M. Camp.....	56		
Robert Campbell	116		
Basil Clement	226		
Pierre Choteau, Jr.....	204		
Clarks Map of Missouri			
River	565		
Ramsey Crooks	102		
Geo. W. Doud.....	470		
Group of Officers, Missouri			
Historical Society	82		
Horse Racing, Fort Pierre.	126		
Jefferson Memorial Building	72		
Jefferson Statue	76		
Kenneth McKenzie	130		
General Anson Mills.....	48		
Col. D. D. Mitchell	134		
Pierre D. Papin.....	94		
Macellan St. Vrain.....	180		
Ceran St. Vrain.....	178		
Jno. B. Sarpy.....	120		
Major F. A. Sanford.....	230		
James R. Scriven.....	404		
Sioux Falls, 1863.....	362		
Slim Buttes at Reva Gap ..	64		
Louis Vasques	190		
		J	
		Jacobson, Elias	48
		Jacobsen, J. A., killed at James	
		River	267
		Jacque Marie, nick-name for	
		Basil Claymore	227
		Jarvis, Ulrick, sketch.....	327
		Jancas, J. B.....	237
		Jayne, Governor Wm., death....	21
		Mentioned	242, 243
		Jaynes, G. H., quoted.....	392
		Jewett, Charles A., death....	21
		Jewett, Madame Sarah, death..	34
		Jewell, Trobridge R., sketch....	327
		Jefferson, Thomas, instructions	
		to Lewis and Clark.....	515
		Jeunese, Antoine, note.....	175
		Jessaume, Rene, interpreter....	594
		Johnson, Senator E. S.....	10
		Johnson genealogy	45
		Johnson, John, sketch.....	316
		Johnson, Nathan P.....	7
		Johnson, Royal C.....	11
		Johnson, M. D.....	398
		Johnson, Willis E.....	7
		Jones, Annanias	271, 300
		Jones Creek	58
		Jones, Lewis	59, 67
		Jones ranch on Slim Buttes....	53
		Jouett, Joseph, sketch.....	93
		Mentioned	101, 107,
		113, 127, 146, 154, 155, 201, 218	
		Jury, five-sixth, defeated.....	11
		Justice genealogy	45
		K	
		Kampeska Lake	389
		Kansella, see Cancellai	187
		Kate Sweeney Bend	393
		Kate Swinney, steamboat.....	393
		Kaga Peta (Strikes Fire).....	224
		Kean, Jno. T.....	7
		Kearney, Col. S. W.....	357
		Keeler, Alec, sketch.....	327

	Page		Page
Keely, Daniel, sketch.....	328	Joseph, note	129
Kellar, Dr. A. H., death.....	34	Mentioned	165
Kellog, unidentified	205	LaComb, variant of La Compt	140, 235
Kellog, Dr. Louise, quoted....	530	La Junette, Joseph.....	238
Kennard, Geo. N., death.....	34	Charles	238
Kennedy, Charles B., life mem- ber	7	LaJenesse, Charles	235
Death of	34	La Jenesse, Joseph.....	235
Kennedy, Cornelius, death.....	34	La Rante, unidentified.....	218
Kennedy, Edward, killed at Slim Buttes	67	Larciene, Pierre	238
Kenney, James	316	Lafayette's army roster.....	36
Kerr, Robert F.....	6, 7, 9	LaFoure, John (Old Dakota)..	247, 248
Keya Paha River.....	265	La Frambois, Francois.....	217
Keyes, Lieut.	52	La Grave, Louis.....	165
Kill Deer Mountain Battle....	281	LaMire, Joseph, unidentified....	229
King, Brigadier General Charles	47, 48, 49, 51, 52, 53, 54, 55	Lamont	108, 143, 145
King genealogy	45	LaPlus, Louis	235
Kingsbury, George W...248, 250,	257	LaPlant, J. B., note.....	219
Rev. Lucien, death.....	34	LaTross, John	235
Mrs. Lucien, death.....	34	LaTaille, probably Letand.....	109
Walter R., death.....	34	Larson, Edward, death.....	21
Kipp, James, note.....	155	Larson, Mathias, sketch.....	328
Mentioned	237	Larson, Ole B., sketch.....	316
Kitson, Norman W., sketch....	374	Larpenteur, "Forty Years".....	71
Kleinsasser, Peter Paul.....	7	Larvie, John D., sketch.....	328
Knight, Nicholas E., Land Com- missioner	12	Larvie, Octave	328
Kyes, Dr. W. S.	7, 9	Lambough, Dr. A. J.....	398
L		Lame Deer, Indian chief.....	452
"L" of Slim Buttes.....	51	Landry, J., note.....	161
Labiche, Francois, with Lewis and Clark	519	Lange, Moritz A.....	6, 7
Lacqueparle	370, 389	Lanning genealogy	45
Lafferty, Michelle, note.....	29	La Sell, C. M.	7
Laidlaw, Wm.		La Sell, George.....	7
.....93, 101, 111, 112, 114, 136, 139, 145, 146, 148, 157, 159,	238	Lasserine, M. F.....	238
Laisey, E. W., of Gill.....	57	Lathrop, Merrill G., sketch.....	317
LaBarge, Louis	235	Mentioned	245
La Bauchame, Ponca chief....	129	Lavin, J. D.....	7
LaBelle, note	28	Lawrence, John	250
LaBerriere, Ugene	238	Lawrence, Phil	7
LaBourche, Alexis	238	Lebrrie, note	203, 238
Le Boue, Frederick, note	112	LeClerc, Narcisse, note	158
Kills Quennel	151	LeClerc's house at Bad River..	157
Mentioned.....111, 123, 235,	238	LeClerc establishes rival post..	150
LeBeau, Joseph	238	Goes to Cherry Creek.....	151
LaChapelle, David, sketch.....	117	Mentioned	123, 141
Mentioned 133, 135, 137, 142,	143	LeClare, P. N., note	137, 140
La Chepelle, Louis.....	237	LeDair, Oliver, unidentified....	121
La Charite, Francois, note.....	245	Lee, James, note.....	213
Mentioned	146, 235	Lee, Richard Bland.....	70
La Compt family.....	123	Legislature, guarded by soldiers	244
		Legislative session, 1917.....	24
		Legislative special session....	10
		LeGrave, voyageur	110
		LeGris, Pierre	238
		LeLond, Baptiste	238
		LeMay, Joseph, note.....	143

	Page		Page
Lemoyne, Pierre, D'Iberville sketch	337	turn	583
Leonis, Joseph, note.....	227	Second visit to Rees.....	583
Leonard, Charles, sketch.....	328	Trouble with Sioux, 1806...	589
Lepage, Baptiste, with Lewis and Clark	519	L'hullier, site of.....	339
LeRoy, Francois, note.....	96	Liberty Loans, 1917.....	31
Le Roy, Charles.....	528	Library, Free Commission, report	31
LeRelli, Lavant, unidentified...	119	Library War Fund.....	31
LeSeuer's family	345	Libbey, O. G.....	8
LeSeuer tradition in South Dakota	336	Lincoln helps Edmunds.....	409
Pierre, sketch	337	Lincoln, death of.....	305
LeSeuer & LaMoine conspiracy	337	Lincoln, Isaac	6, 7
LeSeuer's character	338	Lineage books	36
In jail	338	Lindland, George	7
Note	141	Lionot, Joseph, sketch.....	328
Letand, Jacques	107	Liepe, Gabriel Vital.....	338
Letend, J., (Letendre) sketch...	95	Little Bend, Peoria Belle sunk at	394
Letand	108	Little Cherry Band	89
Letris, unidentified	218	Little Cheyenne Post, note....	95
Levellier, unidentified	210	Little Crow	243
Lewison, G., sketch.....	317	Little Iowa	376
Lewis, Clark	398	Livingston, Don, Market Commissioner	26
Lewis, Merriweather, sketch...	517	Livingston, Dr. H. F.....	398
Lewis, Theodore H.....	532	Livingstone, steamboat sunk...	395
Lewis and Clark in South Dakota	514	Lloyd, David E.....	7
Journals	70	Loans, Liberty, 1917.....	31
Sketches	517	Loebs, John L., death.....	21
Supplies carried	522	Logire, Louis, unidentified.....	231
Thermometer used	557	Logan, John D.....	7
Enter South Dakota.....	523	Loisell house described.....	560
Take latitude	523	Loisell, Registre, note.....	560
Analyze soil	524	Longacre genealogy	45
Conduct election at Elk Point	525	Long, Charles, sketch.....	317
Council with Sioux.....	534	Long Island, genealogy.....	41
Mention Sioux bands.....	540	Long Point (Little Bend).....	193
Send Dorian to Washington	543	Lord, Louis K.....	7
Discover "Antient" works.	543	Lore, Louis	235
Discover Salt Springs.....	549	Loscire, Pierre	238
Discover Tower	550	Louison, the Brule.....	143
Discover prairie dogs.....	550	Louison	150, 235
Find Trudeau house.....	559	Loughborough family	188
Find bones of Plesiasaurus.	553	Lozier, unidentified	220
Visit Loisell house.....	560	Ludwick, Jacob, sketch.....	317
Quarrel with Tetons.....	563	Lugg, Charles H.....	12, 24
Camp at Buffalo pasture...	567	Lurty, unidentified	204
Describe Teton dancers....	568	Luse, Marvin R.....	242
Trouble with Sioux.....	571	Lutz, R. K., note.....	208
Find Valle house.....	572	Lundy genealogy	45
Find Tebeau at Arickaras.	95	Lyman, Wm. P.....	240, 250
Try and punish John Newman	580		
Reach Mandans	582		
Reach South Dakota on re-			

M

Macalester College	336
McArthur, death of.....	51
McBee, James H., sketch.....	317
Death	304

	Page		Page
McCoy, James, Supreme Judge.		Marquis, George H.....	11
..... 11, 24	317	Marson, Robert, sketch.....	329
McClellan, John, sketch.....	317	Martin, Doctor, vaccinates In-	
McClure, Pattison F.....	6, 7, 9	dians	161
McClure's Ranch, Lewis and		Marvick, Andrew	7, 9
Clark at	561	Maryland genealogy	44
McCumber, Henry, sketch.....	328	Massachusetts genealogy	39
McDaniels, Daniel N., sketch...	328	Massachusetts towns, list of....	39
McDaniels, Nathan	329	Massie, Capt. W. R.....	395
McDearmon, Ruby	7, 9	Mather, Fred G.....	41
McDermott, sketch	329	Mathews, Alexander, unidenti-	
McDonough, John, sketch.....	329	fied	129
McDuffin, Napoleon, killed at Ft.		Matlock, Indian agent.....	201
Pierre	216	Mathieson, George, sketch.....	329
McElderry, Samuel E., unidenti-		Mathieson, Richard, sketch....	329
fied	217, 229	Mauvais boef	132
McGarra, Capt. James.....	396	McVey, Mrs. W. H., death.....	21
McGillicuddy, Dr. V. T., with		May, Wm. P., sketch.....	121, 167
Crook	52	Meyoth	235
McKinney, Charles E.....	7	Medcalf, A. M., unidentified....	187
McKenzie, George Newbury....	37	Medicine Hill	111
McKenzie, Kenneth, note.....	128	Medicine Butte Creek.....	571
Portrait	130	Medals in trade.....	196
Mentioned	193, 238	Menechel, Louis	234
Rewards loyal Indian.....	141	Menard, John L.....	235
McKey, J., of St. Louis.....	555	Merryman, genealogy	45
McKitrick genealogy	45	Messier, Margaret, wife of Le-	
McKnight, John, sketch.....	128	Sueur	345
Mentioned	148	Metcalf, Martin D.....	330
McKnight, Jacob J., sketch....	329	William, sketch	330
McLear, unidentified	202	Meyers, Frank, "Soldiering in	
McLeese, Thomas A., sketch....	317	Dakota"	281
McLaughlin, Major James.....	475	Meigs, Simeon S., death.....	21
McMaster, William H.....	11, 24	Membership roll	6
McMillan genealogy	45	Miller, Daniel, note.....	183
McNamarow, Cornelius, sketch.	329	Miner, Captain Nelson, sketch..	308
McNeal, Hugh, with Lewis and		Commands rear guards in .	
Clark	519	Bad Lands	287
Malette, Antoine	235	Sent to find steamboats....	290
Mauksch, Adolph	311	Sent to Crow Creek.....	264
Mahanna, Captain B.....	262	Leads chase for Fielner's	
Maine genealogy	38	murderers	275
Maps—		Shoots Tamaza	303
Allan's route, 1844.....	250	Mentioned 242, 243, 246, 248,	
General King's tracing....	66	273	
Little Iowa	376	Miner, William, death.....	334
Supposed site Slim Buttes		Michaels, for Land Commis-	
battle	61	sioner	12
True Site Slim Buttes Battle		Michael, Paul	235
Marble, A. B.....	67	Military affairs, 1917.....	23
March, George Keith.....	7	Miller, William, unidentified....	21
Marechal, Louis	238	Miller, unidentified	126
Margry on LeSueur.....	340	Mills, Camp, at Minneola, Long	
Marion's Island	566	Island	26
Marketings, 1916	20	Mills, General Anson, portrait..	47
1917	32	On Slim Buttes location....	47
Market Commissioner	26	Arrangements for trip.....	53
		Book, "My Story".....	54

	Page		Page
Minde (Mind), Mathews J., sketch	318	Nash, George W.	7
Minnie Hermon, steamboat....	402	Nash, Newman Curtis	8
Minnesota massacre	243	Narcelle, Paul, note	225
Minnesota troops at Swan Lake	279	National Guard mobilized Texas border	10
Miskell (Markell), John, sketch	318	Navy Yard, (boat yard, Chantier creek)	95
Missouri Historical Society....	70	Necrology, 1916	20
Missouri History by Houck....	71	1917	23
Missouri River freezes.....	143	New England, founders of	37
Mitchell, site of, visited in 1363	267	New England genealogy	36
Mitchell, Earl	62	New England handbook	37
Mitchell, Col. D. D., portrait....	134	New England Historical genealogical register	37
Instructs Drips	174	New Hampshire genealogy	38
Note	135	New Hampshire Revolutionary Rolls	38
Mentioned	139, 140, 148, 167, 236, 238	New Jersey genealogy	42
Mitchell, W. W.....	59, 62, 65	New Kirk genealogy	45
Mitchell's ranch, near Slim Buttes	53	New Light on History, Northwest	71
Mobilization National Guard....	10	Newell, South Dakota	53
Mobilization of troops.....	23	Newman, William, sketch	309
Morcum, Edward D., for Governor	10	Mentioned	259
Moreland, Captain, kills Friendlies	65	Newman, John, with Lewis & Clark	521
Moreland lost while hunting....	279	Tried for mutiny	580
Moreau post, note.....	176	Neill, Dr. Edward Duffield, sketch	336
Moreau note	215	Nelson, Anthony, sketch	330
Moffat collection	234	Nelson, Wilmer D.	6, 7, 9
Moffat genealogy	45	New Ella, steam ferry sunk ..	42
Molain, Baptiste	235	New Ulm in 1862 described	471
Mollie Moore, steamboat....	402	New York genealogy	41
Mormon Battalion, sketch....	349	Nicollet, sketch	348
Morris, Frank A.....	7	Nieff, John, sketch	330
Morse genealogy	45	Niobrara river, (d'l'eau que course)	101
Morse, John J., sketch.....	318	Nobert, unidentified	227
Mortimer, Samuel, (Old Spot)..	259	Noble, partner in Papin & Co..	93
Morton, General Charles, visits Slim Buttes	58	Mentioned,	101, 112
Moncrevie, Isadore, note.....	217	Noble, Lieut. Patrick, sketch ..	351
Moncrevie, J. B., note.....	210	mentioned	358
Mongrain, a half breed.....	131	Nolan, Charles, sketch	252
Montaigne, Francois, sketch....	95	Norbeck, Peter	6, 10, 11, 24
Montgomery, death	34	North Alabama steamboat sunk	396
Monthly South Dakotan	240	Northwestern Fur Co. at Fort Pierre, 1864	360
Montalent, unidentified	235	Noteboom, E. H.	8
Mott, J. W.....	263	Notson, Gary T.	8
Mayotte, Jacob	142, 146	Nyberg, Peter J., death	34
Mullen plants in Dakota.....	277		
Mundt, Wm. J.....	7		
Munson, Albert.....	318		
Murphy, Mathew W.....	7		
Muster out, Fourth Regiment..	23		
Myron Farm	533		

N

Names of Indians, how acquired 393

O

Oacoma, Lewis & Clark camped there	557
Obachon, Louis	142, 234
Ochenreiter, Louis G.	8

	Page		Page
Octubise, Pierre, note	155	Pathmore, genealogy	45
Drunk	157	Pattee, Ferman, sketch	331
Mentioned	239	Pattee, Col. John, quoted	265
O'Fallon, Major Benj. note ...	139	Mentioned	241, 273
O'Flaherty, Rev. Charles E., 8,	9	Pauly, A. M., note	216
Oglallas	139	Pawling genealogy	145
O'Gorman, Bishop Thomas	8	Pawnee house	551
Oil excitement	33	Pearson, unidentified	201
Okobojo Creek, camp upon	275	Pechel, unidentified	219
Olney, Dr. Stephen, death	34	Peck, F. D., engineer of high-	
Olson, Andrew, sketch	318	ways	20
Olson, Bringle	330	Pelletier, Joseph	238
Olson, Colburn, sketch	330	Pennsylvania genealogy	43
Olson, James, sketch	330	Peoria Bell, steamboat	394
Olson, Ole, sketch	318	Perisho, Ellwood C. 8,	9
Olson, Theodore, sketch	331	Perrot, Nicholas, sketch	338
Olson, Mrs. Theodore	335	Perry, genealogy	45
Omaha Indians at Sioux Falls..	337	Perry, George H., death	34
Omeg, Peter, sketch	318	Perry's Island mentioned	562
Ordway, John, with Lewis &		Person, Robert E.	8
Clark	517	Peters, John E., sketch	319
Orland, Ole N.	319	Peterson, Hon. P. W.	529
Othello's occupation gone	419	Pettigrew, Mrs. R. F., death ..	21
Otter, a keel boat	129	Phelps, James O., sketch	331
Outbreak ended	409	Phelps, Loeman E., sketch	319
Owl creek, (Heecha Wakpa) ..	49	Phelps, Oscar, sketch	319
Oxen in Bad Lands	287	Philabert	145
P			
Packard, Harlan C., death ...	21	Phillips, Abel R., sketch	331
Paffiche, Joseph, unidentified..	133	Phillip, Scotty, buffalo herd ..	392
Painted Woods, North Dakota..	260	Phillips, Thomas, of Pierre ...	389
Palenir, Andre	238	Picotte, Honore, note	113
Palmer, Ed. D., death	34	Mentioned	114, 131, 153
Palmer, (J. A. Hamilton)	84	Picotte, Henry	238
Page, Mrs. Fanny	84	Pickering, Dr. L. A., death ...	21
Page, G. T.	21	Pierce, Henry M., sketch	319
Papiche, Vital	235	Pig eaters	157
Papin family, note	93	Pigette, Louis	225
Papin, Pierre D., portrait	94	Pike, George, sketch	319
Papin, P. D. & Co.	139	Mentioned	246, 304
Papin's House, location, note..	95	Pilton, A., express	165
Papin, Etienne	238	Pineau, Joseph	228
Papin, Louis	238	Pineau, the Yankton, note	112
Papin, P. D., mentioned.. 102,		Mentioned	126, 150
108, 112, 114, 118, 132, 154,	238	Pinney, G. M.	244
Papin, Cerre & Noble	111	Pinkham, genealogy	45
Papin & Co., sells to American	139	Piton, Louis, sketch	115
Paquette, an engage .. 96, 143,	238	Platte, Joseph	235
Parker, James, unidentified ..		Pleets, George, dispatch writer	299
..... 127, 143, 150		Plesiasurus found by Lewis &	
Parker, Sterling L., sketch	331	Clark	553
Parkins, James, a mulatto	147	Ploghoff, Frederick, sketch	308
Parmley, Joseph W.	8	Mentioned	242, 243
Partisan, Teton chief makes		Pocomoggin, unidentified In-	
trouble	571	dian	221
Passiche, unidentified	133	Pocohontas II, steamboat sunk	395
		Ponca Creek, Gregory county..	261
		Ponchatrain, scores Lemoyne	

	Page		Page
and LeSueur	339	1917	31
Pope, General John, letter to		Ramsey, Peter A.	319
Edmunds	416	Ravine, unidentified Indian ...	202
Pope, unidentified	209	Rawlins, genealogy	47
Porchic, Vital	238	Rayboine, Louison, not identified	143
Porcelain in the trade	96	Rhode Island genealogy	40
Potts, John, sketch	519	Rinehart, Orville V., for gover-	
Potter, Lieut. J. H., sketch	351	nor	10, 11
Paure, unidentified	227	Richey & Dix, Yankton mer-	
Powers, William, sketch	251	chants	398
death of	21	Richard, Noel	144
Powers, Thomas C.	264, 395	Mentioned	147, 238
Prairie, note	231	Richards' primary	11
Pratt & Caban, licensed traders	175	Richards, Richard O., for gover-	
Pratt genealogy	45	nor	10
Press & Dakotan, newspaper..	257	Riggs, Mrs. Mary, entertain's	
Presidential primary	10	Capt. Sumner	370
Precipitation since 1868	15	Riggs, Thomas L.	6, 8
Precipitation 1916	17	Riggs, Stephen	389
1917	31	Riggs, Theodore Foster	8
Primary elections	10	Rimer, Miles, sketch	331
Primeau, Charles, trader at Ft.		Riviere, Faustin	236
Pierre, 1862	261	Receipts of state, 1916	14
Primeau, Emillian, sketch	115	Red Cross funds, 1917	31
Mentioned	138, 148, 166	Redfield, Camp National Guard	10
Killed	191	Red River half breeds	370
Primeau, Honore, sketch ...	112	Ree Council	578
Primeau, Pierre	159, 238	Ree Post	234
Primeau, M.	126	Ree War, 1807	593
Printing Commissioner's report	30	Reed, Rev. Henry W., Sioux	
Prindle, Timothy, sketch	319	Commissioner	414
Mentioned	300	Reed, Moses, with Lewis &	
Privilee, Louis	238	Clark	521
Productions, 1916	19	Reed, Matt	258
1917	32	Reed, Tom	258
Prohibition wins	11	Reed, Washington	258
Prohibition act, 1917	26	Reese, General M., sketch	331
Proceedings	9	Renconter, Aleck, birth of	149
Provost, Etienne, note	147	Renconter, Zephine, sketch ..	123
Mentioned	148, 149, 238	Mentioned	143, 144, 149, 235
Pudhumme, Louis	238	Rendau, Baptiste, sketch	331
Prior, Nathaniel, sketch	517	Thomas, sketch	331
Commands expedition to		Renville, Louis	150
Mandans	595	Reorganization of state military	23
Puckett, Benj. F.	8	Reva Gap	59, 68
Pyie, John L.	8	Reviews of State progress, 1916	14
Q		1917	23
Quaife, Milo M.	8	Robain, Louison	144
Quenel, Francois, note on	97	Robart, Fred, sketch	320
Quinney, Elmer H., engineer ..	521	Roberts, A. C., chosen speaker	24
R		Robert, Fred, sketch	322
Radisson & Grosseilliers speak		Robert, Henry	214
of Spirit Mound	526	Roberts, James A.,	41
Railway mileage, 1916.....	16	Roberts, O. M.	398
1917	29	Robertson, John, with Lewis &	
Rainfall since 1868	18	Clark	521
1916	16	Robideaux family	185

	Page		Page
Mentioned	214	Sallin, Mathew	235
Robinson, unidentified	202	Salt Works	549, 553
Robinson, genealogy	45	Sampson, F. A.	8
Robinson, DeLorme W.	8	Sampson, Dr. I. J.	35
Robinson, Doane, Annual Re- views	22, 35	San Benito Texas, S. D. Na- tional Guard	10, 23
Genealogy	45	Sanborn, Josiah R., sketch	332
Notes on Slim Buttes	47	Sanford, Major F. A., sketch ..	115
Notes on Ft. Pierre Journal ..	70	Portrait	232
Letter from Pierre Choteau ..	72	Sarpy, Jean B., portrait	120
Edits Lewis & Clark	514	Peter A., note	182
LeSueur tradition	326	Thomas L., sketch	113
Robinson, Elijah K., sketch	321	Brings in pelts	115
Robinson, Harry A., goes to Slim Buttes	53	Death of	150
Report upon	53	Mentioned	119, 129, 239
Mentioned	58	Sather, Haldo, death	21
Robinson, Mrs. Lydia, sketch ..	335	Saugria, Dr. makes thermometer	557
Rock, Dr. J. H., Democratic Committeeman	10	Savage, James, genealogical dictionary	37
Rock Island, policed by Fron- tenac	337	Sawon Band, note	122
Roddlle, Wm. H.	8	Sawon post	234
Rogers, W., unidentified	132	Sawyer, Col. R. M., letter from Pope	438
Rollette, John C., note	222	Sawyer's expedition	306
Rondelle, pack peddler	217	Scarlet traders' cloth	96
Rood, Frank M.	6, 11, 24	Schaaf, v. Rural Credits	24
Rooney, James, Irish genealogy ..	37	Schamber, John	8
Roosevelt, Theodore, quoted ...	391	Schellinger, George J.	8
Rose, George, sketch	332	Schlegel, unidentified	221
Roster, employees American Fur Co.	234	Schoolcraft, Henry R., sketch ..	348
Rouse, John, sketch	332	School Fund, 1916	15
Rovundre, Charles	234	1917	28
Rowe, Henry S., death	21	School House at Vermilion	301
Roy, Francois	238	Scott, Dan, sketch	397
Roy, (LeRoy)	96	Scott, Samuel, death	35
Roy's Island, (Farm Island) ..	157	Scott, General W. S.	375
Ruland, Antoine, note	166	Scriven, James Riley, portrait ..	404
Rumford Oil well	32	Scriven, John H., sketch	393
Running Water, South Dakota.	395	Searight genealogy	46
Rural Credits established	11	Searls, William, sketch	332
Rural Credits act affirmed	25	Secretary of state, report	30
Rural Credits bonds	28	Selected draft, 1917	23
Russell, Crock	302	Senator Steam ferry sunk	402
Ryan, F. W., death	34	Seton, Ernest Thompson ..	386, 390
Ryan, Timothy, death	34	Schambaugh, Benj. F.	8
Ryerson, genealogy	45	Shanfelt, Dr. Thomas N.	8
S			
Sac & Fox Indians	348	Shanks, John C., state sheriff ..	26
St. Laurent, L.	239	Shannard, George H., death ..	22
St. Onge, Louis, sketch	332	Shannon, George, with Lewis & Clark	519
St. Pierre, note	229	Lost	523
St. Vrain, Ceran, portrait	178	Recovered	553
St. Vrain, Marcellan, note	206	Wounded	576
Portrait	180	Shaw, Amos, sketch	311
		In chase for murderers	278
		Teaches Vermilion school..	303
		Sheafe General Mark M.	398

	Page		Page
Shields, John, with Lewis & Clark	519	Stannage, John, sketch	247
Sheldon, Myron, sketch	333	Mentioned	257
Sherman, Senator John, on Indian treaties	410	Standing committees	6
Sherrill, Myrtle Richmond ...	8	Stanton, E. M., letter from Harlan	420
Sherman, Philip, sketch	320	Starr, Sol, death	45
Shetak captives released		State credits for volunteers 1917	23
..... 261, 279, 299		State debt, 1916	12
Shetak lake, Minnesota	353	1917	28
Shober, Howard C.	8	State finances	11
Sibley, Henry H.	414	State sheriff created	26
Silsby, George A., death	35	Stillwell, Victor K., death	35
Simoneau Island, note	187	Stites, William D. death	21
Sinnett, Rev. Charles N., genealogist	44, 46	Steamboat navigation	71
Sioux City II, steamboat sunk.	397	Steamboat wrecks in South Dakota	393
Sioux Falls evacuated	253	Steel, Prof. H. J., death	35
Sioux Falls, first recorded visit	363	Steel, Major M. F., on Buffalo Bill	475
Sioux Falls, history of	364	Stephens, James H.	8
Sioux Falls, Indian affair at ..	254	Sterling, Thomas	3
Sioux Falls, home of Omahas..	337	Stevens, Thad	409
Sioux Falls, picture of	362	Stevenson, C. Stanley	347
Sioux Falls post	243	Buffalo East of Missouri..	336
Sioux Falls stockyards	22	Mentioned	8, 9
Sioux games	436	Stoddard, Wm. H., genealogy ..	46
Sioux nations mentioned by Lewis & Clark	540	Stockade at Yankton	247, 255
Sirrick, John, sketch	333	Stockwell, W. S., death	22
Sitting Bull mentioned by Mills	53	Stockyards at Sioux Falls	22
Arrest and death of	475	Straw Cabin creek	142
Slim Buttes Battle field	47, 57	Stringer, Joseph, sketch	333
Illustration	64	Struck by the Ree	221, 229, 250
Origin of name	68	Struble genealogy	46
Smith, A. B., sketch	258	Student Body	16
Smith, DeWit C., promoted ...	264	Stutenroth, Dr. Charles W., death	35
Goes to Relief of Fisk	297	Stutsman, Enos	256
Resigns	280	Sumner, Captain E. V. in Dakota, 1845	347
Smith, Ellison G., Judge Supreme Court	24	Sketch	368
Smith, Frank Bradley, death ..	21	Sublette & Campbell, fur traders	167
Smith, Richard L.	8	Sublette genealogy	46
Snake Creek	165	Sutherland, John	8
Snow, Alberta Mead	8	Sun Dance described	466
George W.	8	Sully, General Alfred assumes command	270
Henry, discharged	305	Sully's expedition 1865	306
John B.	333	Sully posts head of Fielner's murderers	278
Snyder, William W., sketch ..	333	Sulte, Dr. Benj. sketch	338
Solberger, John, sketch	320	Canadian Francois	71
Summers, Jim, ranch near Chamberlain	301	Notes on LeSueur	341
Sons of American Revolution..	37	Suoux, Banal unidentified	159
Southmayd, O. H., death	35	Swartz, Wm.	393
South Shore oil drilling	33	Swift Bird, son of Chapelle ...	117
Stafford, Charles W., death ..	22		
Stafford, O. P.	398		
Stager, Charles B.	310		

	Page		Page
Swinney, Captain W. D.	392	Tiernon, John, Speaker	243
Sweeney, Thomas, death	35	Tilden, Rev. Horace W.	22
Swanson, genealogy	46	Tilton, H. G.	8
Swanson, Ole S.	8	Tison, (Strikes Fire) note	224
Sybilie, Adams & Co., note	177	Todd, General J. B. S. ...241, 247, 301	
Sybilie, John	235	Todd, James E., Slim Buttes 49, 55	
Spafford, Charles B.	38	Toin, unidentified	98
Spafford, Dr. F. A.	8	Toll, Lieut. Saml. J., expedition to James River	266
Spanish Regime	71	Toneha Caxab, (Tonekaksapi) Navy yard	166
Special session legislature	10	Townsend, Justus	243
Spirit Mound visited by Lewis & Clark	527	Townsend, Hezekiah, sketch ..	333
Visited by LeRaye	528	Trask, Eugene F., killed Tacket's	268
Split Rock Creek	361	Travercie, Alexis, sketch	333
Spotted Tail	405	Travercie, Paul, sketch	333
Spotted Owl	407	Travis, Stephen, Industrial Com- missioner	26
Sprague, Dempster, sketch	333	Trefethern, Rev. E. B.	8
T		Tripp, Captain Wm. sketch ...	321
Tallman, John, sketch	320	Commands pack train	284
Frozen	304	Mentioned	273
Tarbell, genealogy	46	Trucks, Abraham J.	320
Tate, Thomas, sketch	320	Trudeau, Jean Baptiste men- tioned	551
Mentioned	300	Trudella, Fawin	235
Tax levies, 1916	14	Trumbo, Frank	8
1917	28	Trumbo, John, sketch	321
Taylor, partner in Fox Living- ston Co.	184	Trumbo, William, sketch	334
Tebeau, Antoine, living with Rees	577	Trumbull, genealogy	46
Mentioned	141, 147, 211	Tubbs, Frank, at Crow Creek..	274
Tecumseh Fort, Journal	69	Tucker, unidentified	175
Note on	93	Tarcot, Louis	150, 166
Tell, John, discharged for dis- ability	305	Turgeon, Ferdinand, sketch ..	334
TeMaza, jealous Indian	303	Joseph, unidentified	216
Tempest, steamboat snagged ..	391	Turkey Ridge, Yankton County.	252
Tenge, Edward, death	35	Turner, John L., lineage	46
Teton river, note on	93	Two Woods Lakes	388
Reached by Lewis & Clark.	561	U	
Thermometer	567	Union Fur Company, note	191
Thibreau, Alexis	239	Upham, Warren	8
Thomas, E. M., death	22	Urilda steamboat sunk	395
Thompson, Col. Clark at Crow Creek	264	V	
Thompson genealogy	46	Vacha, Charles	239
Thompson, John, election com- missioner	301	Vaccination at Fort Pierre	161
Thompson, John B., with Lewis & Clark	521	Valentine, W. B.	257
Thompson, Thomas W., killed at James river	267	Valle, John, House at Little Bend	572
Thrall, Rev. Herbert W.	8	Louis, note	216
Thwaites, Reuben W., early western travels	71	Van Allen, genealogy	46
Quoted	390	Van Benthuyssen, Prof. S. D., death	35
Tibaut, Alexis	95	Vandemark, Walter, death	22
		Vanderberg, Henry, battle with	

	Page		Page
Black Feet	143	Wenzel, John, killed at Slim	
Killed by Black Feet	165	Buttes	67
Mentioned	143, 147, 148	Wells, Frank C., railroad com-	
Vandivier, Joseph W., sketch..	334	missioner	12, 24
Van Osdel, Abraham,	8, 9	Wells, Joachim, sketch	321
Samuel, sketch	334	Werner, William, with Lewis	
William, sketch	334	& Clark	519
Van Woert, Henry, death	22	Westdahl, John	8
Vapair, note	224	Western Portland Cement	
Vasseur, Joseph, sketch	122	Works	260
Mentioned	128, 137, 150, 157	Western Steamboat, destroyed..	400
Vasquez, Louis, note	189	Wheeler, S. A., death	35
Portrait	190	Whelpley, Dr. & Mrs. H. M. ...	84
Verendrye Brothers	89	Whiskey war	169
Papers	337	Whitcomb, Josiah, sketch	334
Vermilion garrison	244	White, Charles, scout killed at	
Verwyk, Berand, sketch	334	Slim Buttes	67
Vichard, unidentified	142	Whitehead, Prof. Bower T.,	
Villander, Joseph, note	119	death	35
Vione, Francis, sketch	119	Whitehouse, Joseph with Lewis	
Visher, Stephen S., boundary of		and Clark	519
South Dakota	380	White, resident at James river	247
Visina, Joseph	239	White River explored	556
Virginia genealogy	44	White River trade, note	95
Vital Statistics, 1916	16	Whitestone Hill, battle of	270
1917	29	Whitcher, Eph, death	22
Volcano, (Hot Bluff)	555	Wilbur genealogy	46
Volin, Louis, fire loss	398	Willcocks, unidentified	209
		Wilcox, Edward P., death	22
W		Wilkes, Edwin, sketch	311
Waggoner, Alvin	8	Will, Henry, sketch	335
Wagon roads to western regions	460	Wilson, Thomas, sketch	335
Wakeman genealogy	46	Willard, Alec, with Lewis &	
Waldron, George P.	253	Clark	519
Wales, Col. Boyd	23	Williams, David	8
Walker, Dr. James R.	486	Williams genealogy	46
Walker, Robert L.	389	Williamson, Rev. John P., death	35
Walpole, William, death	22	Willowcreek	261
Wambole, Charles, horse race..	270	Wilson, E. H.	8
Waniti, note	176	Wilson, Herman, sketch ...	309
Ward, J. P., death	22	Wilson, William, unidentified ..	216
Warner, Ernest J.	8	Wilson, Woodrow, President ..	11
Warren, Cyrus C.	9	Winnebagoes remove to Ft.	
Warren's Map	50	Thompson	271
Warren, Robert H., death	22	Winner, sketch	114
War activities	31	Wisconsin Historical Society ..	50
War Library fund	31	Wiseman Massacre	268
War on Whiskey	169	Wiser, Peter, with Lewis &	
Wartenburg, Prince, visits Ft.		Clark	520
Pierre	99	Wixson, Eli B.	22
Watson, Jesse B., sketch	310	Wolf, Capt. G. H.	261
Mentioned	278	Woman's Suffrage defeated ...	11
Death	35	Wood, Bucklin H., sketch	321
Watts, John	235, 239	Wood, Lieut. John R., sketch..	321
Weather conditions, 1916	17	Commands Sawyer's expedi-	
1917	31	tion	321
Weber, Jesse P.	8	Ward, Joseph, life of	395

	Page		Page
Wood, Lorenzo, sketch	335	Y	
Wood, Uriah, sketch	335	Yellowstone river	261
Note	240	Yellowstone steamboat at Fort	
Death	22	Pierre	156
Woodruff, Henry, sketch	321	Y. M. C. A. funds	31
Woods, Richard J., death	35	William Young, sketch	310
Wooley, M. P.	398	York, Clark's slave	578
Worthington, Richard, with		Z	
Lewis & Clark	521	Ziebach, Frank M.	245, 249, 251
Wright, Charles N., sketch	311	Mrs. Frank M., death	35
Kills Indian	255	Jacob E., Rural Credits Com.	24
Death	22	Zozke, Alfred W., Rural Credits	
Wright, Mrs. Julia, Shetak cap-		Com.	25
tive	262		

UNIVERSITY OF ILLINOIS-URBANA



3 0112 051857420